

<sup>1</sup>SOLDIER TRAINING  
PUBLICATION  
No. 19-95C1-SM

HEADQUARTERS  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY  
Washington, DC, 30 Sep 2003

## SOLDIER'S MANUAL and TRAINER'S GUIDE

### MOS 95C

### MOS 95C, Corrections Specialist, Skill Level 1, Soldier's Manual

### Skill Level 1

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
<b>Table of Contents</b> .....	i
<b>PREFACE</b> .....	vi
<b>Chapter 1. Introduction</b> .....	1-1
<b>Chapter 2. Trainer's Guide</b> .....	2-1
2-1. General .....	2-1
2-2. Subject Area Codes .....	2-3
2-3. Duty Position Training Requirements .....	2-4
2-4. Critical Tasks List .....	2-5
<b>Chapter 3. MOS/Skill Level Tasks</b> .....	3-1
<b>Skill Level 1</b>	
<b>Subject Area 1: NBC</b>	
031-503-1030 Prepare the Chemical-Agent Monitor (CAM) for Operation .....	3-1
031-503-1031 Use the Chemical-Agent Monitor (CAM) .....	3-3
031-503-1032 Prepare the Chemical-Agent Monitor (CAM) for Movement .....	3-4
031-503-3005 Submit a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) 1 Report .....	3-5
031-504-1008 Operate the M8A1 Alarm System .....	3-7

<sup>1</sup>DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

DESTRUCTION NOTICE: Follow the procedures in AR 380-5, chapter IX.

This publication supersedes STP 19-95C14-SM-TG, 26 March 1999, Skill Level 1.

031-507-1022 Decontaminate Equipment Using M13 Decontaminating Apparatus, Portable (DAP) .....	3-9
<b>Subject Area 2: Combat Techniques</b>	
052-192-1021 Locate Mines by Visual Means .....	3-12
071-326-0501 Move as a Member of a Fire Team .....	3-14
071-326-3002(SL1) React to Indirect Fire While Mounted .....	3-18
<b>Subject Area 3: Night Vision Devices</b>	
071-008-0001 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 on an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle .....	3-19
071-008-0002 Dismount a Night Vision Sight, AN/PVS-4, from an M16-Series Rifle .....	3-20
071-315-0003 Operate a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 .....	3-21
071-315-0030 Operate Night Vision Goggles AN/PVS-5 .....	3-24
071-315-2307 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 to an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle .....	3-29
071-315-2308 Engage Targets with an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle Using a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 .....	3-33
071-710-0008 Operate Night Vision Goggles AN/PVS-7 .....	3-36
<b>Subject Area 4: Weapons - M9</b>	
071-004-0001 Maintain an M9 Pistol .....	3-44
071-004-0002 Perform a Function Check on an M9 Pistol .....	3-51
071-004-0003 Load an M9 Pistol .....	3-53
071-004-0004 Unload an M9 Pistol .....	3-54
071-004-0005 Correct Malfunctions of an M9 Pistol .....	3-55
071-004-0006 Engage Targets with an M9 Pistol .....	3-57
<b>Subject Area 5: Weapons - MK19</b>	
071-030-0001 Maintain an MK19 Machine Gun .....	3-64
071-030-0002 Prepare a Range Card for an MK19 Machine Gun .....	3-82
071-030-0003 Zero an MK19 Machine Gun .....	3-85
071-030-0004 Engage Targets with an MK19 Machine Gun .....	3-87
071-030-0005 Load an MK19 Machine Gun .....	3-95
071-030-0006 Unload an MK19 Machine Gun .....	3-99
071-030-0007 Perform a Function Check on an MK19 Machine Gun .....	3-102
071-030-0008 Correct Malfunctions of an MK19 Machine Gun .....	3-104
071-030-0009 Mount an MK19 Machine Gun on a Vehicle .....	3-108
071-030-0010 Dismount an MK19 Machine Gun from a Vehicle .....	3-116
071-030-0011 Mount an MK19 Machine Gun on an M3 Tripod .....	3-118
071-030-0012 Dismount an MK 19 Machine from an M3 Tripod .....	3-125
071-030-0016 Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 on an MK19 Machine Gun .....	3-126
071-030-0017 Dismount a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 From an MK19 Machine Gun .....	3-127
071-030-0018 Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 to an MK19 Machine Gun .....	3-128
<b>Subject Area 6: Weapons - M249</b>	
071-010-0006 Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun .....	3-129
071-312-4004 Lay an M249 Machine Gun Using Field Expedients .....	3-132
071-312-4025 Maintain an M249 Machine Gun .....	3-134
071-312-4026 Perform a Function Check on an M249 Machine Gun .....	3-142
071-312-4027 Load an M249 Machine Gun .....	3-143
071-312-4028 Unload an M249 Machine Gun .....	3-146
071-312-4029 Correct Malfunctions of an M249 Machine Gun .....	3-148
071-312-4030 Zero an M249 Machine Gun .....	3-151

**Subject Area 7: Weapons - 12 Gauge**

191-381-1252	Perform Operator's Maintenance on a 12-Gauge Shotgun .....	3-155
191-381-1253	Operate a 12-Gauge Shotgun.....	3-158
191-381-1254	Engage Targets With a 12-Gauge Shotgun.....	3-161

**Subject Area 8: Urban Operations**

071-326-0541	Perform Movement Techniques During MOUT.....	3-165
071-326-0542	Enter a Building.....	3-172
071-326-0550	Prepare Positions for Individual and Crew-Served Weapons During MOUT .....	3-175
071-326-0556	Clear a Building.....	3-185
071-326-0557	Select Hasty Firing Positions During MOUT .....	3-187
191-376-5121	Search a Building .....	3-191

**Subject Area 9: Vehicle Operations**

071-326-0608	Use Visual Signaling Techniques .....	3-192
551-721-1352	Perform Vehicle Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS).....	3-215
551-721-1359	Drive Vehicle in a Convoy .....	3-217
551-721-1360	Drive Cargo Vehicle on Side Roads and Unimproved Roads .....	3-220
551-721-1363	Drive Vehicle With or Without Trailer/Semitrailer in Blackout Conditions .....	3-223

**Subject Area 10: Land Navigation**

071-329-1004	Determine the Elevation of a Point on the Ground Using a Map .....	3-225
071-329-1006	Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted ....	3-227
071-329-1011	Orient a Map Using a Lensatic Compass .....	3-231
071-329-1014	Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Intersection .....	3-233
071-329-1015	Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Resection .....	3-234
071-329-1030	Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Mounted .....	3-236
071-510-0002	Compute Back Azimuth.....	3-241

**Subject Area 11: Communications**

113-573-4006	Use the KTC 1400(*) Numerical Cipher/Authentication System.....	3-242
113-573-6001	Recognize Electronic Attack (EA) and Implement Electronic Protection (EP).....	3-244
113-573-8006	Use an Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI) .....	3-247
113-587-2070	Operate SINCGARS Single-Channel (SC) .....	3-250
113-587-2071	Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members) .....	3-252
113-587-2072	Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) Net Control Station (NCS).....	3-254
113-594-2014	Operate Switchboard, Telephone, Manual SB-22/PT .....	3-255
113-596-1068	Install Antenna Group OE-254/GRC (Team Method) .....	3-257
113-600-1012	Install Telephone Set TA-312/PT .....	3-258
113-600-3017	Perform Unit Level Maintenance (ULM) on Telephone Set TA-312/PT .....	3-260

**Subject Area 12: Maneuver and Mobility Support Operations**

191-376-4105	Operate a Traffic Control Post (TCP).....	3-262
191-376-4106	Operate a Roadblock and a Checkpoint .....	3-265
191-376-4108	Operate a Dismount Point.....	3-268
191-376-4109	Control Traffic at a Defile and Holding Area .....	3-270
191-376-4110	Perform as a Member of an In-Transit Security Team.....	3-272

**Subject Area 13: Emergency Procedures**

191-376-4119	Operate Riot Control Agent Dispersers (M33A1/M36/M37) .....	3-276
191-376-4121	Use a Riot Baton .....	3-283
191-376-4122	Position Yourself in Riot Control Formations .....	3-291
191-381-1250	React to a Bomb Threat and/or a Bomb in an Internment Facility.....	3-297

191-381-1258	Participate in Riot Control Formations to Control Internees .....	3-300
191-381-1320	Take Action in the Event of a Fire at an Internment Facility .....	3-305
191-381-1321	Take Action in the Event of Disorder at an Internment Facility .....	3-307
191-381-1322	Take Action in the Event of an Escape .....	3-309
191-381-1324	Apply Priorities of Force Within an Internment Facility .....	3-311
191-381-1369	Perform as a Member of a Forced Cell Move (FCM) Team .....	3-314
191-381-1370	React to an Internee Attack Using Self-Defense Techniques .....	3-325

#### **Subject Area 14: Crime Scenes**

191-376-5125	Collect Evidence .....	3-341
191-381-1371	Protect the Integrity of a Crime Scene in an Internment Facility .....	3-345
191-381-1372	Identify Evidence and/or Contraband Within an Internment Facility .....	3-347
191-381-1373	Conduct Interviews Within an Internment Facility .....	3-349

#### **Subject Area 15: Internment Administration**

191-376-5138	Prepare Department of the Army (DA) Form 4137 .....	3-350
191-381-1325	Check Department of Defense (DD) Form 2707 for Completeness and Accuracy .....	3-354
191-381-1326	Verify the Accuracy of Department of Defense (DD) Form 2718 .....	3-356
191-381-1327	Verify the Accuracy of Department of Defense (DD) Form 2708 .....	3-358
191-382-2342	Process an Internee Into an Internment Facility .....	3-360
191-383-3373	Prepare an Internment Facility Blotter .....	3-363
191-390-0139	Take Record Fingerprint Impressions .....	3-365

#### **Subject Area 16: Cellblock Close Confinement Procedures**

191-381-1251	Conduct an Inspection or a Shakedown of an Internee's Areas .....	3-367
191-381-1317	Observe Internees in Close Confinement .....	3-369
191-381-1319	Control a Shower and Shave Call Within Close Confinement .....	3-372
191-382-2347	Inspect the Physical Security of a Cellblock .....	3-375

#### **Subject Area 17: Basic Internment**

191-376-0002	Prepare Department of the Army (DA) Form 2823 .....	3-377
191-381-1298	Detect Symptoms of Unusual or Potentially Deviant Behaviors of Internees .....	3-382
191-381-1302	Perform as a Tower Guard .....	3-384
191-381-1328	Interact With Internees .....	3-387
191-381-1339	Prepare a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2713 .....	3-390
191-381-1340	Prepare a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2714 .....	3-393

#### **Subject Area 18: Visitors' Room Procedures**

191-381-1313	Search a Visitor Room Before and After Visits .....	3-397
191-381-1329	Inform an Internee of Rules and Regulations Regarding Visitors .....	3-398
191-381-1330	Assist in the Control of Internee Visits .....	3-400

#### **Subject Area 19: Escort Guard Duties**

191-381-1300	Escort Internees on Foot Outside an Internment Facility .....	3-402
191-381-1301	Escort Internees by Motor Vehicle .....	3-404
191-381-1540	Escort Internees by Aircraft .....	3-407

#### **Subject Area 20: Main Gate/Sally Port Procedures**

191-381-1304	Control Vehicle Entry To and Exit From an Internment Facility .....	3-410
191-381-1305	Control Packages and Materials at a Main Gate or Sally Port .....	3-412
191-381-1306	Control Personnel Entry to and Exit From an Internment Facility .....	3-414

#### **Subject Area 21: Custody and Control**

191-381-1315	Maintain Accountability of Silverware During Mealtimes .....	3-416
--------------	--	-------



191-381-1331	Restrain an Internee.....	3-418
191-381-1332	Control Internee Movement Within an Internment Facility.....	3-423
191-381-1333	Frisk an Internee .....	3-425
191-381-1334	Strip-Search an Internee .....	3-427
191-381-1335	Control Internee Movement in a Dining Facility .....	3-430
191-381-1336	Account for Internees .....	3-432
191-381-1337	Monitor Internee Movement Within an Internment Facility .....	3-435
191-381-1338	Issue Medication to Internees .....	3-437
191-382-2295	Segregate Internees by Internee Status .....	3-439
191-382-2352	Supervise Work Activities Within an Internment Facility.....	3-441
<b>Subject Area 22: Internment Operations</b>		
191-376-4100	Perform Enemy Prisoner of War/Civilian Internee (EPW/CI) Security and Control Activities at an EPW/CI Camp .....	3-444
191-381-1288	Process Authorized and Unauthorized Property Within an Internment Facility ...	3-447
<b>Chapter 4. Duty Position Tasks.....</b>		<b>4-1</b>
<b>APPENDIX A - METRIC CONVERSION CHART.....</b>		<b>90-1</b>
<b>Glossary.....</b>		<b>88-1</b>
<b>Supporting References .....</b>		<b>99-1</b>

## PREFACE

This publication is for skill level (SL) 1 soldiers who hold military occupational specialty (MOS) 95C and their trainers or leaders. It contains standardized training objectives in the form of task summaries that may be used to train and evaluate soldiers on the critical tasks that support unit missions. Trainers and leaders should actively plan for MOS 95C soldiers to have access to this publication.

All tasks in this manual are applicable to active-component (AC) and the reserve-component (RC) soldiers, which include the Army National Guard (ARNG) and the United States Army Reserve (USAR).

The proponent of this soldier training publication (STP) is the United States Army Military Police School (USAMPS). Users of this publication are encouraged to recommend changes and submit comments for its improvement. Comments should be keyed to a specific page, paragraph, and line of text in which the change is recommended. Reasons will be provided for each comment to ensure understanding and complete evaluation. Comments should be prepared using a Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 and forwarded directly to the Commandant, United States Army Military Police School, ATTN: ATSJ-MP-T, bldg 3203, 401 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 1069, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

**SPECIAL NOTE: The mission of the MOS 95C is changing to be more deployable in units as "internment specialists," who will operate field internment facilities for enemy combatants or detainees of any type, including those who are considered high risk. The experiences of the Army since 2001 have shown the need for the 95C skill set to manage the internment facilities at Guantanamo Bay and elsewhere. The new internment/resettlement company is a TOE company of internment facilities for detainees of any type in coordination with an MP guard company, which will provide additional security.**

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

## CHAPTER 1

### Introduction

1-1. General. This manual identifies the individual MOS training requirements for soldiers in MOS 95C, SL 1. It is designed to be used by commanders, trainers, and soldiers to plan, conduct, and evaluate individual training in units. This manual is the primary reference for supporting the self-development and training of every soldier.

1-2. Integration of Individual and Collective Tasks. This manual should be used along with STPs 21-1-SMCT and 21-24-SMCT; Army Training and Evaluation Programs (ARTEPs); and Field Manual (FM) 7-1 to establish effective training plans and programs that integrate individual and collective tasks.

#### 1-3. Task Summaries.

a. Task summaries contain information necessary to conduct training and evaluate soldier proficiency on tasks critical to the MOS. A separate task summary is provided for each critical task. These task summaries are, in effect, standardized training objectives which ensure that soldiers do not have to relearn a task on reassignment to a new unit. The format for the task summaries included in this STP is as follows:

- **Task title.** The task title identifies the action to be performed.
- **Task number.** A 10-digit number identifies each task or skill. Include this task number, along with the task title, in any correspondence relating to the task.
- **Conditions.** The task conditions identify all the equipment, tools, references, job aids, and supporting personnel that the soldier needs to perform the task in wartime. This section identifies any environmental conditions that could alter task performance, such as visibility, temperature, and wind. This section also identifies any specific cues or events (a chemical attack or identification of a threat vehicle) that trigger task performance.
- **Standards.** The task standards describe how well and to what level a task must be performed under wartime conditions. Standards are typically described in terms of accuracy, completeness, and speed.
- **Training and evaluation.** This section may contain a training information outline, an evaluation preparation subsection, and/or an evaluation guide. The training information outline includes detailed training information. The evaluation preparation subsection indicates necessary modifications to the task performance in order to train and evaluate a task that cannot be trained to the wartime standard under wartime conditions. The evaluation preparation may also include special training and evaluation preparation instructions to accommodate these modifications and any instruction that should be given to the soldier before evaluation. The evaluation guide identifies the specific actions, known as performance measures, that the soldier must do to successfully complete the task. These actions are listed in a *pass/fail* format for easy evaluation. Each evaluation guide contains a feedback statement that indicates the requirements for receiving a GO on the evaluation.
- **References.** This section identifies references that provide more detailed and thorough explanations of task performance requirements than that given in the task summary description.

b. Additionally, some task summaries include safety statements and notes. Safety statements (danger, warning, and caution) alert users to the possibility of immediate death, personal injury, or damage to equipment. Notes provide an explanation or a hint relative to the performance measures.

1-4. Soldier's Responsibilities. Each soldier is responsible for performing individual tasks that the first-line supervisor identifies based on the unit mission-essential task list (METL). The soldier must perform the task to the standards listed in the soldier's manual (SM). If a soldier has a question about how to do a task or which tasks in this manual he must perform, it is the soldier's responsibility to ask the first-line supervisor for clarification. The first-line supervisor knows how to perform each task or can direct the soldier to the appropriate training materials.

1-5. Interpersonal Communication Skills. The key to the performance of any military police (MP) task is the ability to deal with people. Therefore, an implied element of every task in this manual is that the MP soldier uses his interpersonal communication skills. To be effective, the MP soldier must learn to read body language; recognize trust, hurt, anger, fear, concern, and unconcern in others; and learn to respond to these types of behavior. By developing and using interpersonal communication skills, the MP soldier can defuse many tense situations and reduce the need to use force or physical restraints.

1-6. Noncommissioned Officer Self-Development and the Soldier's Manual. Self-development is one of the key components of the leader development program. It is a planned, progressive, and sequential program followed by leaders to enhance and sustain their military competency. It consists of individual study, research, professional reading, practice, and self-assessment. Under the self-development concept, the noncommissioned officer (NCO), as an Army professional, has the responsibility to remain current in all phases of the MOS. The SM is the primary source for the NCO to use in maintaining MOS proficiency.

1-7. Army Correspondence Course Program. Another important resource of NCO self-development is the Army Correspondence Course Program (ACCP). See DA Pamphlet [Pam] 350-59 for information on enrolling in this program and for a list of courses, or write to the Army Institute for Professional Development, US Army Training Support Center, ATTN: ATIC-IPS, Newport News, Virginia 23628-0001.

1-8. Training Support. This manual includes the following appendixes and sections that provide additional training support information:

- **Glossary.** The glossary is a comprehensive list of acronyms, abbreviations, definitions, and letter symbols.
- **References.** This section contains two lists of references, required and related, that support the training of all tasks in the SM. Required references are listed in the conditions statement and are required for the soldier to do the task. Related references provide more detailed information and a more thorough explanation of task performance.

1-9. Career Progression Chart. The Career Management Field (CMF) 95 Career Progression Model (CPM) shows the promotional potential or professional development of a soldier in each MOS within CMF 95, MP (Figure 1-1).

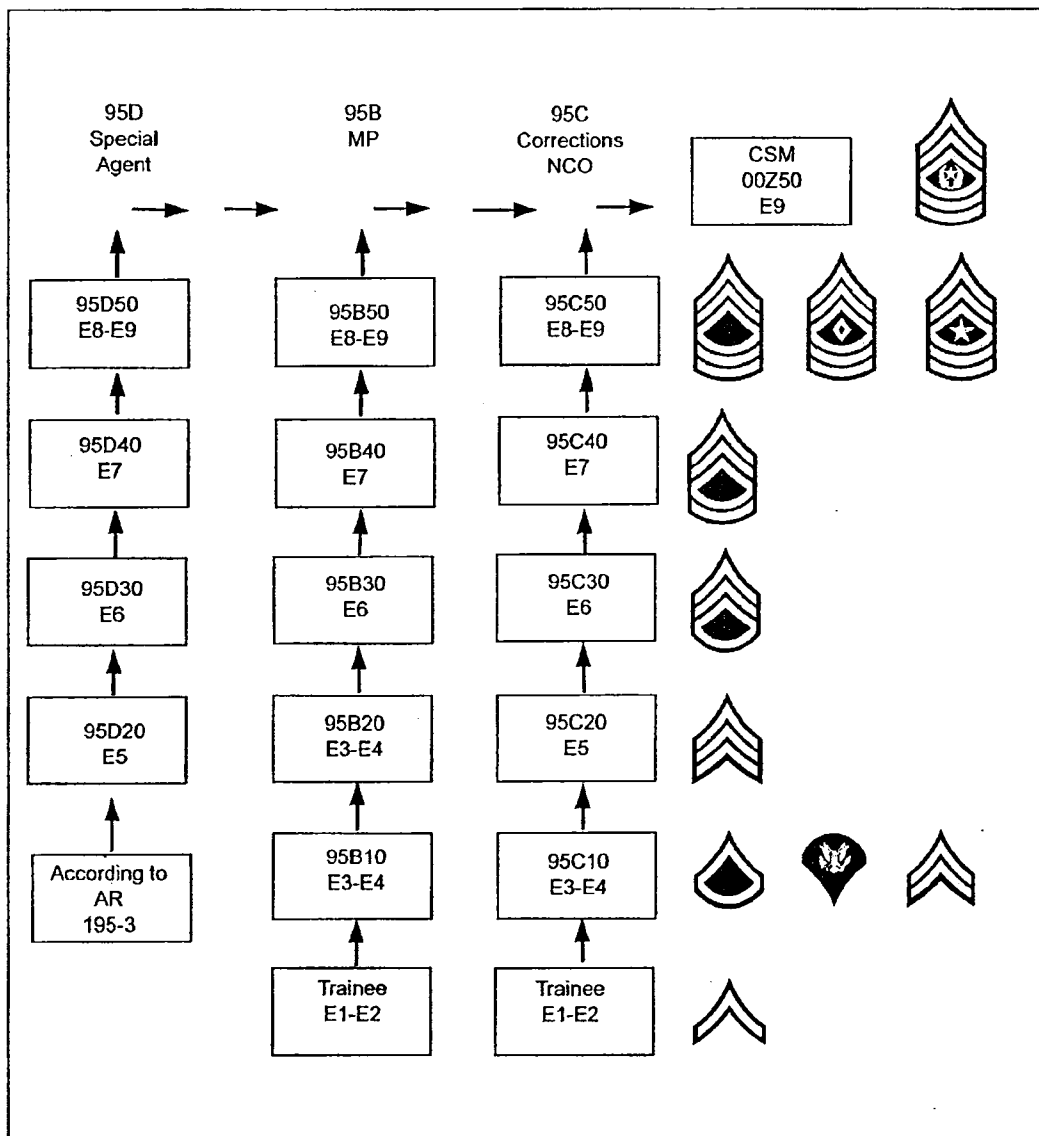


Figure 1-1. CMF 95 CPM

## CHAPTER 2

### Trainer's Guide

2-1. General. The MOS Training Plan (MTP) identifies the essential components of a unit training plan for individual training. Units have different training needs and requirements based on differences in environment, location, equipment, dispersion, and similar factors. Therefore, the MTP should be used as a guide for conducting unit training and not a rigid standard. The MTP consists of two parts. Each part is designed to assist the commander in preparing a unit training plan which satisfies integration, cross training, training up, and sustainment training requirements for soldiers in this MOS.

Part One of the MTP shows the relationship of an MOS skill level between duty position and critical tasks. These critical tasks are grouped by task commonality into subject areas.

Section I lists subject area numbers and titles used throughout the MTP. These subject areas are used to define the training requirements for each duty position within an MOS.

Section II identifies the total training requirement for each duty position within an MOS and provides a recommendation for cross training and train-up/merger training.

- **Duty Position column.** This column lists the duty positions of the MOS, by skill level, which have different training requirements.
- **Subject Area column.** This column lists, by numerical key (see Section I), the subject areas a soldier must be proficient in to perform in that duty position.
- **Cross Train column.** This column lists the recommended duty position for which soldiers should be cross trained.
- **Train-up/Merger column.** This column lists the corresponding duty position for the next higher skill level or MOSC the soldier will merge into on promotion.

Part Two lists, by general subject areas, the critical tasks to be trained in an MOS and the type of training required (resident, integration, or sustainment).

- **Subject Area column.** This column lists the subject area number and title in the same order as Section I, Part One of the MTP.
- **Task Number column.** This column lists the task numbers for all tasks included in the subject area.
- **Title column.** This column lists the task title for each task in the subject area.
- **Training Location column.** This column identifies the training location where the task is first trained to soldier training publications standards. If the task is first trained to standard in the unit, the word "Unit" will be in this column. If the task is first trained to standard in the training base, it will identify, by brevity code (ANCOC, BNCOC, etc.), the resident course where the task was taught. Figure 2-1 contains a list of training locations and their corresponding brevity codes.

<b>OSUT</b>	One Station Unit Training
<b>ASAC</b>	Apprentice Special Agent Course
<b>UNIT</b>	Trained in the Unit
<b>UI</b>	Unit Integration

Figure 2-1. Training Locations

- **Sustainment Training Frequency column.** This column indicates the recommended frequency at which the tasks should be trained to ensure soldiers maintain task proficiency. Figure 2-2 identifies the frequency codes used in this column.

<b>BA</b>	- Biannually
<b>AN</b>	- Annually
<b>SA</b>	- Semiannually
<b>QT</b>	- Quarterly
<b>MO</b>	- Monthly
<b>BW</b>	- Bi-weekly
<b>WK</b>	- Weekly

Figure 2-2. Sustainment Training Frequency Codes

- **Sustainment Training Skill Level column.** This column lists the skill levels of the MOS for which soldiers must receive sustainment training to ensure they maintain proficiency to soldier's manual standards.



2-2. Subject Area Codes.**Skill Level 1**

- 1 NBC
- 2 Combat Techniques
- 3 Night Vision Devices
- 4 Weapons - M9
- 5 Weapons - MK19
- 6 Weapons - M249
- 7 Weapons - 12 Gauge
- 8 Urban Operations
- 9 Vehicle Operations
- 10 Land Navigation
- 11 Communications
- 12 Maneuver and Mobility Support Operations
- 13 Emergency Procedures
- 14 Crime Scenes
- 15 Internment Administration
- 16 Cellblock Close Confinement Procedures
- 17 Basic Internment
- 18 Visitors' Room Procedures
- 19 Escort Guard Duties
- 20 Main Gate/Sally Port Procedures
- 21 Custody and Control
- 22 Internment Operations

STP 19-95C1-SM

2-3. Duty Position Training Requirements.

2-4. Critical Tasks List.

**MOS TRAINING PLAN**  
**95C1**

**CRITICAL TASKS**

Subject Area	Task Number	Title	Training Location	Sust Tng Freq	Sust Tng SL
<b>Skill Level 1</b>					
1. NBC	031-503-1030	Prepare the Chemical-Agent Monitor (CAM) for Operation	UNIT	AN	1-4
	031-503-1031	Use the Chemical-Agent Monitor (CAM)	UNIT	AN	1-4
	031-503-1032	Prepare the Chemical-Agent Monitor (CAM) for Movement	UNIT	AN	1-4
	031-503-3005	Submit a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) 1 Report	OSUT	SA	1-4
	031-504-1008	Operate the M8A1 Alarm System	UNIT	AN	1-4
	031-507-1022	Decontaminate Equipment Using M13 Decontaminating Apparatus, Portable (DAP)	OSUT	AN	1-4
2. Combat Techniques	052-192-1021	Locate Mines by Visual Means	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-326-0501	Move as a Member of a Fire Team	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-326-3002(SL1)	React to Indirect Fire While Mounted	OSUT	AN	1-4
3. Night Vision Devices	071-008-0001	Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 on an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle	UNIT	AN	1-4
	071-008-0002	Dismount a Night Vision Sight, AN/PVS-4, from an M16-Series Rifle	UNIT	AN	1-4
	071-315-0003	Operate a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4	UNIT	AN	1-4
	071-315-0030	Operate Night Vision Goggles AN/PVS-5	UNIT	AN	1-4
	071-315-2307	Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 to an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle	UNIT	AN	1-4
	071-315-2308	Engage Targets with an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle Using a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4	UNIT	AN	1-4
	071-710-0008	Operate Night Vision Goggles AN/PVS-7	UNIT	AN	1-4
4. Weapons - M9	071-004-0001	Maintain an M9 Pistol	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-004-0002	Perform a Function Check on an M9 Pistol	OSUT	AN	1-4

## CRITICAL TASKS

Subject Area	Task Number	Title	Training Location	Sust Tng Freq	Sust Tng SL
	071-004-0003	Load an M9 Pistol	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-004-0004	Unload an M9 Pistol	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-004-0005	Correct Malfunctions of an M9 Pistol	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-004-0006	Engage Targets with an M9 Pistol	OSUT	AN	1-4
5. Weapons - MK19	071-030-0001	Maintain an MK19 Machine Gun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0002	Prepare a Range Card for an MK19 Machine Gun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0003	Zero an MK19 Machine Gun	UNIT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0004	Engage Targets with an MK19 Machine Gun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0005	Load an MK19 Machine Gun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0006	Unload an MK19 Machine Gun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0007	Perform a Function Check on an MK19 Machine Gun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0008	Correct Malfunctions of an MK19 Machine Gun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0009	Mount an MK19 Machine Gun on a Vehicle	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0010	Dismount an MK19 Machine Gun from a Vehicle	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0011	Mount an MK19 Machine Gun on an M3 Tripod	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0012	Dismount an MK 19 Machine from an M3 Tripod	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0016	Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 on an MK19 Machine Gun	UNIT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0017	Dismount a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 From an MK19 Machine Gun	UNIT	AN	1-4
	071-030-0018	Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 to an MK19 Machine Gun	UNIT	AN	1-4
6. Weapons - M249	071-010-0006	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-312-4004	Lay an M249 Machine Gun Using Field Expedients	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-312-4025	Maintain an M249 Machine Gun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-312-4026	Perform a Function Check on an M249 Machine Gun	OSUT	AN	1-4

## CRITICAL TASKS

Subject Area	Task Number	Title	Training Location	Sust Tng Freq	Sust Tng SL
	071-312-4027	Load an M249 Machine Gun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-312-4028	Unload an M249 Machine Gun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-312-4029	Correct Malfunctions of an M249 Machine Gun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-312-4030	Zero an M249 Machine Gun	UNIT	AN	1-4
7. Weapons - 12 Gauge	191-381-1252	Perform Operator's Maintenance on a 12-Gauge Shotgun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	191-381-1253	Operate a 12-Gauge Shotgun	OSUT	AN	1-4
	191-381-1254	Engage Targets With a 12-Gauge Shotgun.	OSUT	AN	1-4
8. Urban Operations	071-326-0541	Perform Movement Techniques During MOUT	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-326-0542	Enter a Building	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-326-0550	Prepare Positions for Individual and Crew-Served Weapons During MOUT	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-326-0556	Clear a Building	OSUT	AN	1-4
	071-326-0557	Select Hasty Firing Positions During MOUT	OSUT	AN	1-4
	191-376-5121	Search a Building	OSUT	AN	1-4
9. Vehicle Operations	071-326-0608	Use Visual Signaling Techniques	OSUT	AN	1-4
	551-721-1352	Perform Vehicle Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)	OSUT	AN	1-4
	551-721-1359	Drive Vehicle in a Convoy	OSUT	AN	1-4
	551-721-1360	Drive Cargo Vehicle on Side Roads and Unimproved Roads	OSUT	AN	1-4
	551-721-1363	Drive Vehicle With or Without Trailer/Semitrailer in Blackout Conditions	OSUT	SA	1-4
10. Land Navigation	071-329-1004	Determine the Elevation of a Point on the Ground Using a Map	OSUT	SA	1-4
	071-329-1006	Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted	OSUT	SA	1-4
	071-329-1011	Orient a Map Using a Lensatic Compass	OSUT	SA	1-4
	071-329-1014	Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Intersection	OSUT	SA	1-4
	071-329-1015	Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Resection	OSUT	SA	1-4

## CRITICAL TASKS

Subject Area	Task Number	Title	Training Location	Sust Tng Freq	Sust Tng SL
	071-329-1030	Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Mounted	OSUT	SA	1-4
	071-510-0002	Compute Back Azimuth	OSUT	AN	1-4
11. Communications	113-573-4006	Use the KTC 1400(*) Numerical Cipher/Authentication System	OSUT	AN	1-4
	113-573-6001	Recognize Electronic Attack (EA) and Implement Electronic Protection (EP)	OSUT	AN	1-4
	113-573-8006	Use an Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)	OSUT	SA	1-4
	113-587-2070	Operate SINCGARS Single-Channel (SC)	OSUT	SA	1-4
	113-587-2071	Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members)	OSUT	AN	1-4
	113-587-2072	Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) Net Control Station (NCS)	OSUT	AN	1-4
	113-594-2014	Operate Switchboard, Telephone, Manual SB-22/PT	UNIT	AN	1-4
	113-596-1068	Install Antenna Group OE-254/GRC (Team Method)	UNIT	AN	1-4
	113-600-1012	Install Telephone Set TA-312/PT	UNIT	AN	1-4
	113-600-3017	Perform Unit Level Maintenance (ULM) on Telephone Set TA-312/PT	UNIT	AN	1-4
12. Maneuver and Mobility Support Operations	191-376-4105	Operate a Traffic Control Post (TCP)	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-376-4106	Operate a Roadblock and a Checkpoint	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-376-4108	Operate a Dismount Point	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-376-4109	Control Traffic at a Defile and Holding Area	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-376-4110	Perform as a Member of an In-Transit Security Team	OSUT	SA	1-4
13. Emergency Procedures	191-376-4119	Operate Riot Control Agent Dispersers (M33A1/M36/M37)	UNIT	SA	1-4
	191-376-4121	Use a Riot Baton	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-376-4122	Position Yourself in Riot Control Formations			

## CRITICAL TASKS

Subject Area	Task Number	Title	Training Location	Sust Tng Freq	Sust Tng SL
	191-381-1250	React to a Bomb Threat and/or a Bomb in an Internment Facility	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-381-1258	Participate in Riot Control Formations to Control Internees	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-381-1320	Take Action in the Event of a Fire at an Internment Facility	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-381-1321	Take Action in the Event of Disorder at an Internment Facility	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-381-1322	Take Action in the Event of an Escape	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-381-1324	Apply Priorities of Force Within an Internment Facility	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-381-1369	Perform as a Member of a Forced Cell Move (FCM) Team	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-381-1370	React to an Internee Attack Using Self-Defense Techniques	OSUT	QT	1-4
14. Crime Scenes	191-376-5125	Collect Evidence	OSUT	AN	1-4
	191-381-1371	Protect the Integrity of a Crime Scene in an Internment Facility	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-381-1372	Identify Evidence and/or Contraband Within an Internment Facility	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1373	Conduct Interviews Within an Internment Facility	OSUT	SA	1-4
15. Internment Administration	191-376-5138	Prepare Department of the Army (DA) Form 4137	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-381-1325	Check Department of Defense (DD) Form 2707 for Completeness and Accuracy	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-381-1326	Verify the Accuracy of Department of Defense (DD) Form 2718	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-381-1327	Verify the Accuracy of Department of Defense (DD) Form 2708	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-382-2342	Process an Internee Into an Internment Facility	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-383-3373	Prepare an Internment Facility Blotter	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-390-0139	Take Record Fingerprint Impressions	UNIT	SA	1-4
16. Cellblock Close	191-381-1251	Conduct an Inspection or a Shakedown of an	OSUT	QT	1-4

## CRITICAL TASKS

Subject Area	Task Number	Title	Training Location	Sust Tng Freq	Sust Tng SL
Confinement Procedures		Internee's Areas			
	191-381-1317	Observe Internees in Close Confinement	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-381-1319	Control a Shower and Shave Call Within Close Confinement	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-382-2347	Inspect the Physical Security of a Cellblock	OSUT	QT	1-4
17. Basic Internment	191-376-0002	Prepare Department of the Army (DA) Form 2823	OSUT	AN	1-4
	191-381-1298	Detect Symptoms of Unusual or Potentially Deviant Behaviors of Internees	OSUT	AN	1-4
	191-381-1302	Perform as a Tower Guard	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1328	Interact With Internees	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1339	Prepare a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2713	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1340	Prepare a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2714	OSUT	SA	1-4
18. Visitors' Room Procedures	191-381-1313	Search a Visitor Room Before and After Visits	OSUT		
	191-381-1329	Inform an Internee of Rules and Regulations Regarding Visitors	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1330	Assist in the Control of Internee Visits	OSUT	SA	1-4
19. Escort Guard Duties	191-381-1300	Escort Internees on Foot Outside an Internment Facility	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1301	Escort Internees by Motor Vehicle	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1540	Escort Internees by Aircraft	OSUT	SA	1-4
20. Main Gate/Sally Port Procedures	191-381-1304	Control Vehicle Entry To and Exit From an Internment Facility	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1305	Control Packages and Materials at a Main Gate or Sally Port	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1306	Control Personnel Entry to and Exit From an Internment Facility	OSUT	SA	1-4
21. Custody and Control	191-381-1315	Maintain Accountability of Silverware During Mealtimes	OSUT	QT	1-4



## CRITICAL TASKS

Subject Area	Task Number	Title	Training Location	Sust Tng Freq	Sust Tng SL
	191-381-1331	Restrain an Internee	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-381-1332	Control Internee Movement Within an Internment Facility	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1333	Frisk an Internee	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1334	Strip-Search an Internee	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1335	Control Internee Movement in a Dining Facility	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1336	Account for Internees	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-381-1337	Monitor Internee Movement Within an Internment Facility	OSUT	AN	1-4
	191-381-1338	Issue Medication to Internees	OSUT	QT	1-4
	191-382-2295	Segregate Internees by Internee Status	OSUT	SA	1-4
	191-382-2352	Supervise Work Activities Within an Internment Facility	OSUT	SA	1-4
22. Internment Operations	191-376-4100	Perform Enemy Prisoner of War/Civilian Internee (EPW/CI) Security and Control Activities at an EPW/CI Camp	OSUT	AN	1-4
	191-381-1288	Process Authorized and Unauthorized Property Within an Internment Facility	OSUT	SA	1-4

7381

CHAPTER 3

MOS/Skill Level Tasks

Skill Level 1

Subject Area 1: NBC

Prepare the Chemical-Agent Monitor (CAM) for Operation  
031-503-1030

**Conditions:** You are given a protective overgarment ensemble with a protective mask and attached hood, a CAM, Technical Manual (TM) 3-6665-331-10, Department of the Army (DA) Form 2404, a pencil, and a directive to prepare the CAM for operation in an area where chemical contamination may occur. This task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

**Standards:** Identify the components, controls, and indicators of the CAM. Perform before operation preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). Perform required troubleshooting procedures so that the CAM passes a self-test and a confidence test in both G and H modes.

Performance Steps

1. Identify the components, controls, and indicators.
2. Perform before-operation PMCS.
3. Perform a self-test.
4. Perform a confidence test.

**NOTE:** If the CAM passes a self-test and a confidence test, it is ready for operation.

5. Prepare DA Form 2404 with deficiencies if the CAM fails to respond after you followed troubleshooting procedures. Turn the CAM in for maintenance.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Give the soldier an operational CAM, TM 3-6665-331-10, accessories (carrying case and components), and the training devices and equipment necessary to perform the task.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to assume MOPP4 and perform the steps necessary to prepare the CAM for operation. Evaluation will be based on individual performance and adherence to safety precautions.

Performance Measures

1. Identified the components, controls, and indicators.
2. Performed before-operation PMCS.
3. Performed a self-test.
4. Performed a confidence test.
5. Prepared DA Form 2404 with deficiencies if the CAM failed to respond after following troubleshooting procedures. Turned the CAM in for maintenance.

GO      NO GO

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

STP 19-95C1-SM

**References**

**Required**

DA FORM 2404

TM 3-6665-331-10

**Related**

TM 3-4230-216-10

TM 3-4240-279-10

TM 3-6665-307-10

**Use the Chemical-Agent Monitor (CAM)****031-503-1031**

**Conditions:** You are given a CAM that has been prepared for operation and Technical Manual (TM) 3-6665-331-10. You are in the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) level. You are given the order to perform monitoring procedures for personnel and equipment.

**Standards:** Perform monitoring procedures for personnel and equipment according to TM 3-6665-331-10.

**Performance Steps**

1. Prepare the CAM for operation as outlined in Task 031-503-1030.
2. Perform operating procedures for changing modes.
3. Monitor the object or area.
4. Get to know the operating environment and local interferents.
5. Recognize malfunctions and troubleshoot following the steps in TM 3-6665-331-10.
6. Remove the CAM from operation.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Evaluate this task during a field exercise or during normal training. Gather all necessary equipment and materials. Provide an area large enough to properly set up the CAM and perform monitoring of personnel and equipment. Develop several sets of conditions for testing purposes. Use approved simulants for the CAM to simulate contamination.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to assume the appropriate MOPP level and perform the steps necessary to put the CAM into operation.

**Performance Measures**

	<u><b>GO</b></u>	<u><b>NO GO</b></u>
1. Prepared the CAM for operation as outlined in Task 031-503-1030.	_____	_____
2. Performed operating procedures for changing modes.	_____	_____
3. Monitored the object or area.	_____	_____
4. Got to know the operating environment and local interferents	_____	_____
5. Recognized malfunctions and troubleshoot.	_____	_____
6. Removed the CAM from operation.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
TM 3-6665-331-10

**Related**  
GTA 03-06-004

**Prepare the Chemical-Agent Monitor (CAM) for Movement**  
**031-503-1032**

**Conditions:** You are given mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 gear, the assigned protective mask with hood attached, M8 and M9 detector paper, an M291 decontaminating kit, an M256 detector kit, a CAM, Technical Manual (TM) 3-6665-331-10, and the directive to perform monitoring procedures for movement.

**Standards:** Decontaminate the CAM according to FM 3-5. Remove the CAM from operation, perform shutdown procedures, and perform after-operation preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) according to TM 3-6665-331-10.

**Performance Steps**

1. Decontaminate a contaminated CAM before shutdown. Decontaminate for—
  - a. Nuclear agents. Refer to TM 3-6665-331-10 and FM 3-5 for radiological material.
  - b. Biological or chemical agents. Refer to TM 3-6665-331-10 and FM 3-5 for decontaminating biological and chemical contamination.
2. Remove the CAM from operation.
3. Prepare the CAM for movement to a new location and for return to operation at the new location.
4. Place the CAM back into operation by performing a self-test and the confidence test as explained in Task 031-503-1030.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Evaluate this task during a field exercise or normal training. Gather all necessary equipment and materials. Provide an area large enough to properly set up the CAM and perform monitoring of personnel and equipment. Develop several sets of conditions for testing of personnel and equipment. Use approved simulants for the CAM to simulate contamination.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to assume MOPP4 and perform the steps necessary to prepare the CAM for movement.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
1. Decontaminated a contaminated CAM before shutdown.	_____	_____
2. Removed the CAM from operation.	_____	_____
3. Prepared the CAM for movement to a new location and returned it to operation at the new location.	_____	_____
4. Placed the CAM back into operation by performing a self-test and the confidence test.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

FM 3-5

TM 3-6665-331-10

**Related**

**Submit a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) 1 Report****031-503-3005**

**Conditions:** You are in an area where a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) attack has just occurred. Given a watch, a map, a compass, a protractor, a pencil, paper, and the NBC report format guide (Graphic Training Aid [GTA] 03-06-008 or Department of the Army [DA] Form 1971-7-R).

**Standards:** Submit a spot report (SPOTREP) to give attack notification. Submit the appropriate NBC 1 report in the correct format and with the correct content.

**Performance Steps**

1. React to an NBC attack or hazard.
  - a. React to a nuclear attack or hazard.
  - b. React to a chemical or biological attack or hazard.

**NOTE: The purpose of the SPOTREP is to give immediate notification of the NBC attack.**

2. Submit a SPOTREP immediately (use the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment [SALUTE] format if possible) for attack notification.
3. Submit an NBC 1 (observer's) report after gathering the available data.
  - a. Complete the required information as outlined in GTA 03-06-008, Field Manual (FM) 3-3 (chemical or biological), or FM 3-3-1 (nuclear) to include—
    - (1) Line B: The location of the observer (use grid coordinates or place name).
    - (2) Line D: The date-time group (DTG) of the attack (specify local or Zulu time).
    - (3) Line H: The type and height of burst (nuclear) or type of agent and persistency (chemical or biological).
    - (4) Line C, the direction of the attack in mils or degrees from the observer or Line F, the location of the attack, grid coordinates, or place name.
  - b. Select the proper communication precedence.

**NOTE: Flash reports should not be delayed for lack of information.**

- (1) Use flash precedence if this is the first attack of its type (the first nuclear attack, the first biological attack, or the first chemical attack)

**NOTE: A flash precedence is used to report the first use of NBC weapons against United States (US) troops.**

- (2) Use immediate precedence for all other attacks.

**NOTE: Line L (nuclear) is measured 5 minutes after the attack, and Line M (nuclear) is measured 10 minutes after the attack. Submit the NBC 1 nuclear report after Line L or Line M is measured. The M256-series chemical-agent detector kit takes 16 minutes to produce reliable results. Submit the NBC 1 report after this test is done.**

- c. Submit the NBC 1 report to the correct places.

**NOTE: Units selected by the division level NBC center (NBCC) as designated observers (applies only to nuclear bursts) also submit the NBC 1 report directly to the division level NBCC. All units submit the NBC 1 report to their higher headquarters (HQ).**

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Gather the items provided in the conditions statement. Develop a situation containing observer data (this information may be written). A different situation should be developed for each type of report.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier that the test will consist of submitting SPOTREPs and preparing and submitting NBC 1 reports. Give the necessary items to the soldier, including the data that you developed. Tell the individual to give a warning and prepare reports of an NBC event.

**Performance Measures**

1. Reacted to an NBC attack or hazard.

**GO NO GO**

\_\_\_\_

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
2. Submitted a SPOTREP immediately for attack notification.	_____	_____
3. Submitted an NBC 1 report after gathering the available data.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the solder GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the solder NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

References	Related
Required	
DA FORM 1971-7-R	
FM 3-3	
FM 3-3-1	
GTA 03-06-008	



## Operate the M8A1 Alarm System

031-504-1008

**Conditions:** Given an M8A1 alarm system, an M273 maintenance kit, BA3517/U and BA3030 batteries, a reel of field wire (WD-1/TT), a wire cutter, a licensed operator, Technical Manual (TM) 3-6665-312-12&P, and a directive to employ the alarm in the fixed-emplacement mode.

**Standards:** Perform an operator-level preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS), and operate the M8A1 alarm system according to TM 3-6665-312-12&P, without causing damage to the equipment. Standards are not degraded when this task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

### Performance Steps

**NOTE:** Before using the M43A1 detector, ensure that the operator has had training in radiation safety.

1. Perform an operator-level PMCS on the M8A1 alarm system according to TM 3-6665-312-12&P.

**NOTE:** If a cell or pump module is damaged, notify the nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) noncommissioned officer (NCO). The NBC NCO must notify the NBC officer and the radiation protection officer (RPO).

- a. Perform a PMCS on the M43A1 detector.
  - (1) Inspect the detector's exterior for corrosion, dirt, and broken or missing parts.
  - (2) Inspect the rain shield and the adapter assembly for dirt or broken parts.
  - (3) Inspect the flowmeter for dirt or cracks.
  - (4) Inspect the top case for broken, loose, or missing parts.
  - (5) Inspect the bottom case, paying special attention to heater contacts and the rubber seal.

**WARNING: DISCONNECT THE POWER SUPPLIES BEFORE PERFORMING MAINTENANCE. FAILURE TO DO SO COULD RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH.**

- (6) Conduct an operational check.
- b. Perform a PMCS on the M42 alarm.
  - (1) Inspect the alarm's exterior for dirt, corrosion, and broken or missing parts.
  - (2) Conduct a horn, light, and battery test.

**WARNING: DISCONNECT THE M10 OR M10A1 POWER SUPPLY FROM THE ALTERNATING CURRENT (AC) POWER OUTLET BEFORE REMOVING THE FUSES. FAILURE TO DO SO COULD RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH.**

- c. Perform a PMCS on the M10 or M10A1 power supply.
  - (1) Inspect the exterior for broken or missing parts.
  - (2) Inspect the cable assembly for cut, mashed, or frayed cables.
  - (3) Check the 2-ampere fuse. If the fuse is missing, replace it with a spare.
  - (4) Ensure that a spare fuse is present.
  - (5) Check for a broken or missing clamp catch.
- d. Perform a PMCS on the M182 or M228 mounting kit.
  - (1) Ensure that the mounting kit components are securely fastened to the vehicle.
  - (2) Check the cable assembly for worn, cut, mashed, or frayed insulation.

**NOTE:** Do not operate an M43A1 detector indoors without an outlet filter. Never operate an M43A1 detector inside a moving vehicle. Do not dispose of a used outlet filter except under the supervision of the NBC NCO, the NBC officer, or the local RPO. Wear disposable gloves when disposing of a used outlet filter.

2. Operate the M8A1 alarm system under usual conditions according to TM 3-6665-312-12&P.
  - a. Assemble the M8A1 alarm in a fixed-emplacement alarm system using one of the following five configurations:
    - (1) Configure the M43A1 detector and the BA3517/U battery.
    - (2) Configure the M43A1 detector, the BA3517/U battery, and the M10A1 power supply.
    - (3) Configure the M43A1 detector, the BA3517/U battery, and the M10 power supply.
    - (4) Configure the M43A1 detector and the M10A1 power supply.

Performance Steps

- (5) Configure the M43A1 detector and the M10 power supply.
  - b. Connect the M42 alarms to the M43A1 detector (one to five alarms per detector).
  - c. Follow applicable operation procedures for fixed emplacement according to TM 3-6665-312-12&P.
3. Operate the M8A1 alarm system under severe conditions according to TM 3-6665-312-12&P.
4. Correct all operator-level deficiencies, and report any uncorrected deficiencies to the supervisor according to TM 3-6665-312-12&P.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: This task can be evaluated during a field exercise. Gather the necessary equipment and supplies identified in the conditions statement. Simulate operational alert signals by allowing smoke (except cigarette smoke) to come into contact with the M43A1 detector unit. Allow the soldier to use TM 3-6665-312-12&P.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to perform all procedures according to TM 3-6665-312-12&P, without causing damage to the equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Performed an operator-level PMCS on the M8A1 alarm system. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Performed a PMCS on the detector.</li><li>b. Performed a PMCS on the alarm.</li><li>c. Performed a PMCS on the power supply.</li><li>d. Performed a PMCS on the mounting kit.</li></ul>	—	—
2. Operated the M8A1 alarm under usual conditions.	—	—
3. Operated the M8A1 alarm under severe conditions.	—	—
4. Corrected all operator-level deficiencies, and reported all uncorrected deficiencies to the supervisor.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

References

<b>Required</b>	<b>Related</b>
TM 3-6665-312-12&P	DA PAM 738-750

**Decontaminate Equipment Using M13 Decontaminating Apparatus, Portable (DAP)  
031-507-1022**

**Conditions:** Given an area of chemical contamination on a vehicle or a piece of equipment and a directive to decontaminate the area with an assembled M13 DAP. This task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

**Standards:** Decontaminate the specified areas by spraying decontaminating solution number 2 (DS2) from an M13 DAP and then scrubbing the area.

**Performance Steps**

1. Hold the brush of the M13 DAP about 3 feet from the contaminated area (Figure 031-507-1022-1).

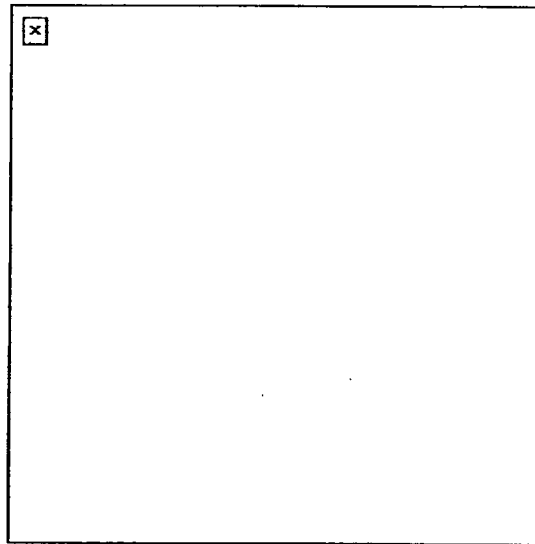


Figure 031-507-1022-1  
M13 DAP

2. Start at the highest point on the equipment and work down.

**NOTE:** This prevents contamination from flowing over decontaminated areas.

3. Open the pump valve by turning it to the "in-line" position (Figure 031-507-1022-2).

## Performance Steps

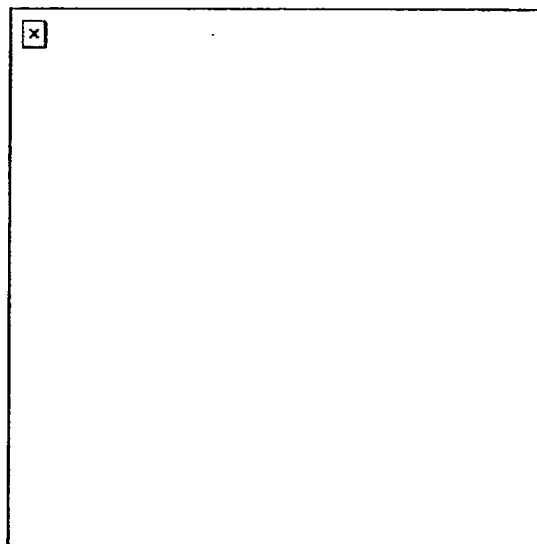


Figure 031-507-1022-2  
M13 Pump Valve

4. Operate the pump until DS2 flows from the hole in the brush.
5. Pump one stroke, sweeping an area of 4 to 5 feet while spraying DS2. Close the pump valve.
6. Use the brush to scrub DS2 over the contaminated surfaces.
7. Keep repeating steps 1 through 6 until the surfaces being decontaminated are wet.
8. Complete steps 1 through 7 in sequence.

**NOTE:** Whenever possible, remove DS2 from decontaminated surfaces after a contact time of 30 minutes by rinsing with water or wiping with rags.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Evaluate this task during a field exercise or a normal training session. For test purposes, the soldier must be in MOPP4 with an M13 DAP available and a selected piece of equipment or vehicle that is contaminated.

**NOTE:** Since DS2 should not be used during training, use a training container that is painted black and filled with water or a mixture of water and antifreeze.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to assume MOPP4 and perform the steps necessary to decontaminate a chemically contaminated area on a vehicle or equipment.

## Performance Measures

1. Held the brush of the M13 DAP about 3 feet from the contaminated area.
2. Started at the highest point on the equipment and worked down.
3. Opened the pump valve by turning it to the "in-line" position.
4. Operated the pump until DS2 flowed from the hole in the brush.

GO    NO GO

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
5. Pumped one stroke, sweeping an arc of 4 to 5 feet while spraying DS2. Closed the pump valve.	___	___
6. Repeated steps 1 through 6 until the surfaces being decontaminated were wet.	___	___
7. Completed steps 1 through 7, in sequence.	___	___
8. Used the brush to scrub DS2 over the contaminated surfaces.	___	___

**NOTE: Whenever possible, items that had been sprayed or scrubbed with DS2 were rinsed with water or wiped off with rags after 30 minutes contact time.**

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

<b>References</b>	<b>Related</b>
Required	TM 3-4230-214-12&P

Subject Area 2: Combat Techniques

Locate Mines by Visual Means  
052-192-1021

**Conditions:** You are given a mission to locate mines by visual means. You are given an area with a possible minefield and different minefield characteristics.

**Standards:** Locate possible mine sites, and visually search suspected areas for mines and trip wires. Ensure that no visible mines, parts of mines, or trip wires are overlooked.

**Performance Steps**

1. Locate possible mine sites by looking at the following areas:
  - a. Avenues of approach.
  - b. Key intersections and turnouts.
  - c. Trails, paths, and cleared spots in wooded areas.
  - d. Approaches and exits to bridges, fords, and tunnels.
  - e. Wood lines.
  - f. Depressions and ditches.
  - g. Open fields or grassland.
2. Search possible mine sites for suspected mines and trip wires by looking at the following areas:
  - a. Damaged vehicles.
  - b. Dead animals.
  - c. Areas avoided by the local population.
  - d. Signs of digging.
  - e. Signs of concrete or asphalt removal.
  - f. Holes or grooves in the road.
  - g. Boxes or parcels placed along the road or shoulder of the road.
  - h. Parked vehicles or bicycles without operators.
  - i. Wire on the road surface or extending onto the shoulder of the road.
  - j. Metallic devices on the road surface or extending onto the shoulder of the road.
  - k. Evidence of vegetation disturbance along the shoulder of the road.
  - l. Evidence of mine-peculiar supplies (such as wrenches, shipping plugs, wrapping paper, and safety collars from fuzes).
  - m. Disturbance of road potholes or puddles.
  - n. Difference in the amount of moisture or dew on the road surface.
  - o. Difference in plant growth (such as wilting, changed colors, or dead foliage).
  - p. Disturbance in previous tire tracks.
  - q. Signs posted on trees that covertly alert the local populace to the presence of mines.

**NOTE:** In addition to the above indicators, knowledge and recognition of likely threat mines, intelligence preparation of the battlefield, and plotting of likely ambush sites may also warn of buried mines.

3. Report all suspected areas to the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a mined or simulated mined and trip-wired area that has the different characteristics listed.

Brief soldier: Tell the soldier to look at the terrain and visually locate mined and trip-wired areas.

**Performance Measures**

1. Located possible mine sites.

<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
—	—

**Performance Measures**

2. Searched possible mine sites for suspected mines and trip wires.
3. Reported all suspected areas to the NCOIC.

**GO    NO GO**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

**References****Required****Related**

DVC 05-17  
 ENG 051-142  
 FM 20-32  
 IN0606  
 IN1002

## Move as a Member of a Fire Team

071-326-0501

**Conditions:** In a designated position (other than team leader) in a moving fire team.

**Standards:** You will react immediately to the fire-team leader's example by performing the same actions he does in the designated position within the formation.

### Performance Steps

1. Fire team formations describe the relationship of the soldiers in the fire team to each other. Standard fire team formations are the wedge (Figure 1), modified wedge (Figure 2), diamond (Figure 3), and file (Figure 4).
  - a. Fire team wedge (Figure 1). This is the basic fire team formation. It has the following characteristics:

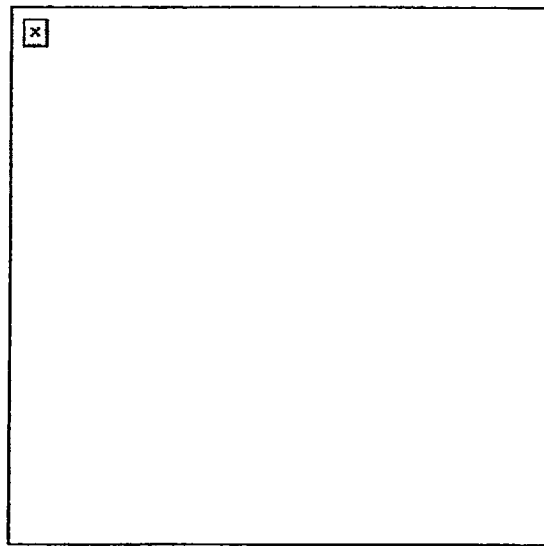


Figure 1. Fire team wedge.

- (1) Is easy to control.
    - (2) Is flexible.
    - (3) Allows immediate fires in all directions.
    - (4) Provides all-round local security.
  - b. Modified wedge (Figure 2). When rough terrain, poor visibility, or other factors reduce control of the wedge formation, the sides are closed up to (almost) a single file. When moving in less rugged terrain and control becomes easier, soldiers resume their original positions. The modified wedge can also be used for extended periods when traveling on roads or trails. It has the following characteristics:



## Performance Steps

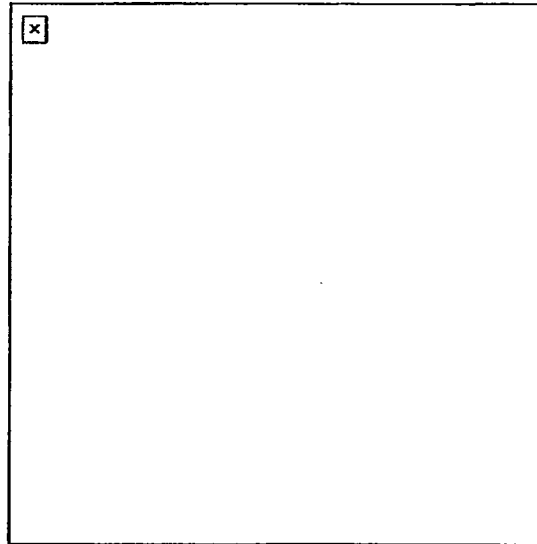


Figure 2. Modified fire team wedge.

- (1) Is easier to control in reduced visibility or rough terrain.
  - (2) Provides less security to flanks than a wedge but more than a file.
  - (3) Masks fires initially to the front and rear for the majority of the team.
- c. Fire team diamond (Figure 3). This formation is a variation of the wedge. It is most often used when the fire team is operating alone or is the lead security element (point) for a column or file. It has the same characteristics as a wedge except there is--

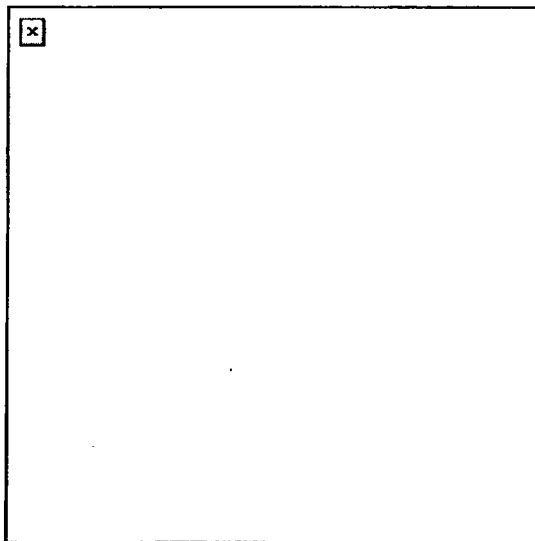


Figure 3. Fire team diamond.

- (1) Reduced frontage.
  - (2) Increased security to the rear.
  - (3) Immediate fires in all directions, but one man's fires are always masked.
- d. Fire team file (Figure 4). When the fire team is not using a wedge or diamond formation, it uses the file. The characteristics of the file are--

## Performance Steps

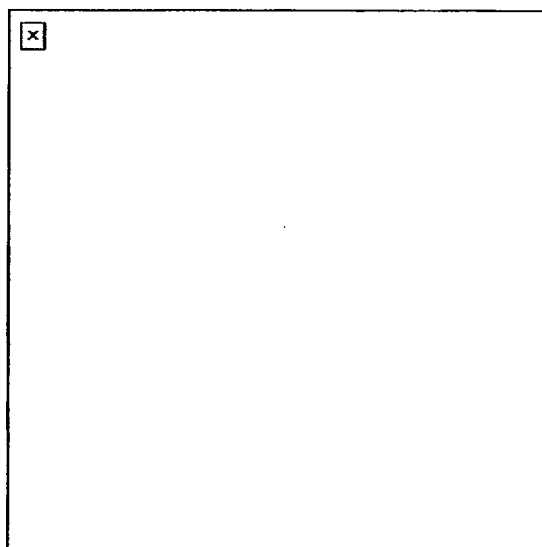


Figure 4. Fire team file.

- (1) Provides maximum control.
  - (2) Provides minimum frontage. It is the easiest formation to use in close terrain or vegetation.
  - (3) Facilitates speed of movement.
  - (4) Is less flexible than the wedge or diamond.
  - (5) Provides immediate fires to flanks, but it masks most soldier's fires to the front and rear.
2. The distances between soldiers in the formation depend on the terrain, visibility, and control factors. The normal interval in daylight is about 10 meters. Formations should not be held rigid, but should vary according to the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, and time available (METT-T).
    - a. The interval is increased in open terrain.
    - b. The interval is decreased when visibility is limited by underbrush, terrain, darkness, smoke, or dense fog.
    - c. The normal interval is resumed as soon as conditions permit.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: This task will be tested during a platoon or larger tactical exercise. The fully combat equipped soldier will move as part of a fire team, operating as part of a platoon conducting a dismounted movement to contact. The soldier may act as any duty position except team leader.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier that he is a member of a fire team moving within the fire team formation, that he must use proper movement techniques within the formation as dictated by terrain and visibility, and that he must follow the team leader's instructions or signals.

## Performance Measures

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Keeps relative distance within the formation.	—	—
2. Maintains visual contact with the team leader.	—	—
3. Performs the same action as the team leader while maintaining relative position.	—	—
4. Maintains the appropriate interval within the formation based on visibility, terrain, and the team leader's instructions and signals.	—	—

**Performance Measures**

**GO**    **NO GO**

5. Assumes the proper position within the formation as the formation changes.      \_\_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

**Related**

FM 3-21.71  
FM 7-7  
FM 7-8

**React to Indirect Fire While Mounted**  
**071-326-3002(SL1)**

**Conditions:** In a combat environment, given a combat-loaded tracked vehicle.

**Standards:** Reacted to indirect fire by moving the vehicle from the impact area, then continued the mission.

**Performance Steps**

1. Direct that all hatches be closed.
2. Direct movement away from the impact area.
3. Analyze the situation.
4. Give a situation report.
5. Continue the mission.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide all equipment and materials listed in task conditions statement. Use only dummy ammunition for training purposes. Take soldiers on a simulated march.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldiers that they must react to a simulated indirect fire mortar or artillery fire while mounted in a tracked vehicle.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Gives an order to close all hatches.	_____	_____
2. Directs movement away from the impact area.	_____	_____
3. Analyzes the situation.	_____	_____
4. Gives a situation report.	_____	_____
5. Continues the mission.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any steps are failed. If the soldier fails any steps, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

**Related**

FM 3-21.71  
FM 7-7

Subject Area 3: Night Vision Devices

Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 on an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle  
071-008-0001

**Conditions:** Given an M16A1 or M16A2 rifle, an operating AN/PVS-4 out of the storage case with batteries installed, empty cartridge case, and mounting knob assembly.

**Standards:** AN/PVS-4 is secured to the carrying handle of the rifle without causing damage to the equipment, and the night vision device is functioning properly.

Evaluation Preparation:

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<b>WARNING:</b> Be sure there are no rounds in the weapon before attempting to mount the AN/PVS-4. The weapon must be on SAFE. <b>CAUTION:</b> The AN/PVS-4 is a precision electro-optical instrument and must be handled carefully at all times.		
1. Inspect equipment.	_____	_____
a. Visually inspect equipment for obvious damage and/or missing parts.		
(1) Mounting knob assembly.		
(a) Stripped threads.		
(b) Missing nuts and/or washers.		
(2) AN/PVS-4.		
(a) Batteries.		
(b) Controls and indicators.		
b. If serviceability is questionable, return to maintenance personnel as non-operational.		
2. Mount the AN/PVS-4 to the rifle.	_____	_____
a. Position the sight in the groove on top of the rifle and align the threaded hole on the sight mounting adapter of the AN/PVS-4 with the hole in the carrying handle of the rifle.		
b. Attach mounting knob assembly.		
(1) Insert the threaded end of mounting knob assembly through hole in carrying handle into hole of AN/PVS-4.		
(2) Turn mounting knob clockwise until tight (if necessary, place empty cartridge case over the lever arm to increase leverage as the mounting knob assembly is tightened).		
<b>Note:</b> If you encounter difficulty, turn the sight and the rifle upside down. Place the rifle handle onto the sight mounting adapter, lining up the hole in the handle onto the sight mounting adapter. Place the mounting knob assembly through the hole in the handle and rotate clockwise.		
c. Test the AN/PVS-4 to ensure it is mounted securely. Grasp it and attempt to move it back and forth.		
d. If the AN/PVS-4 does move, retighten the mounting knob.		

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show him what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**Dismount a Night Vision Sight, AN/PVS-4, from an M16-Series Rifle**  
**071-008-0002**

**Conditions:** Given an M16-series rifle with mounted AN/PVS-4, storage case, and carrying bag. The AN/PVS-4 is in the OFF position, with batteries installed, and is mounted with the mounting knob assembly.

**Standards:** Removed the AN/PVS-4 night vision sight from the rifle, and removed the batteries from the sight. Placed the sight, batteries, and mounting knob assembly in the storage case without damaging them.

**Performance Steps**

1. Dismount the AN/PVS-4 from the M16-series rifle.
  - a. Unscrew mounting knob assembly in a counterclockwise direction until the assembly is free, then remove it from the weapon.
  - b. While removing the mounting knob assembly, hold the AN/PVS-4 and then remove it from the rifle.
  - c. Remove batteries.
2. Place items in the storage case.
  - a. Place batteries and mounting knob assembly into designated compartments in the storage case.
  - b. Place AN/PVS-4 into carrying bag and then into designated compartment in the storage case.
  - c. Close top of storage case and fasten all four latches.

**Evaluation Preparation:** SETUP: At the test site, provide all equipment and material shown in the task condition statement.

**BRIEF SOLDIER:** Tell the soldier to remove the AN/PVS-4 from the M16-series rifle and replace it in its storage case.

**Performance Measures**

1. Dismounted the AN/PVS-4 from the M16-series rifle.
2. Placed items in the storage case.

<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all performance measures are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any performance measure is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show the soldier what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
 TM 11-5855-213-10

**Operate a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4****071-315-0003**

**Conditions:** At night given an AN/PVS-4 in its carrying case and a BA-5567/U (lithium) battery or two BA-3058/U (alkaline) batteries with AA battery adapter.

**Standards:** Correctly place the AN/PVS-4 into and out of operation.

**Performance Steps**

1. Unpack the sight.

**CAUTION:** Relieve air pressure inside the carrying case by pressing the core of the relief valve, located near the handle, before releasing the latches.

- a. Release the latches securing the top of the carrying case, and remove the top.
- b. Remove the carrying bag from the carrying case. Open the bag and remove the sight.
- c. Inspect the sight for damage (cracks, chips, abrasions) and ensure that the decals are readable. Report deficiencies.

**CAUTION:** The AN/PVS-4 is a precision electro-optical instrument. They must always be handled carefully. Be sure to turn the ON-OFF /TUBE BRIGHTNESS and ON/OFF/RETICLE BRIGHTNESS switches OFF before installing batteries.

2. Install the batteries (Figure 1).

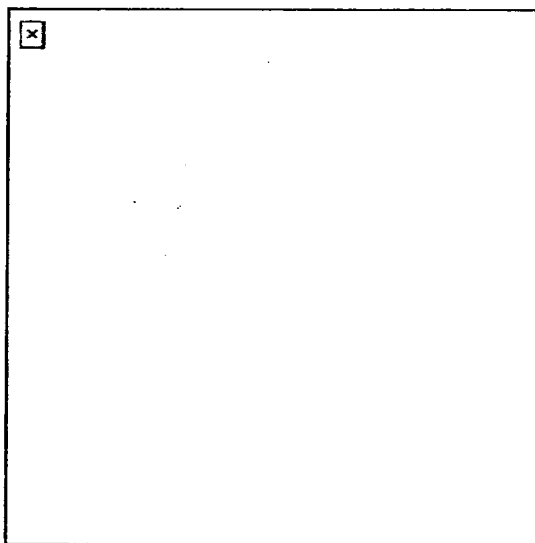


Figure 1  
Battery emplacement

- a. Remove the battery caps by turning them counterclockwise.
  - b. Insert a battery in each cap with the negative (-) terminal (raised end) facing into the cap.
  - c. Replace the battery caps and tighten them snugly.
3. Operate the device under normal conditions (Figure 2).

## Performance Steps

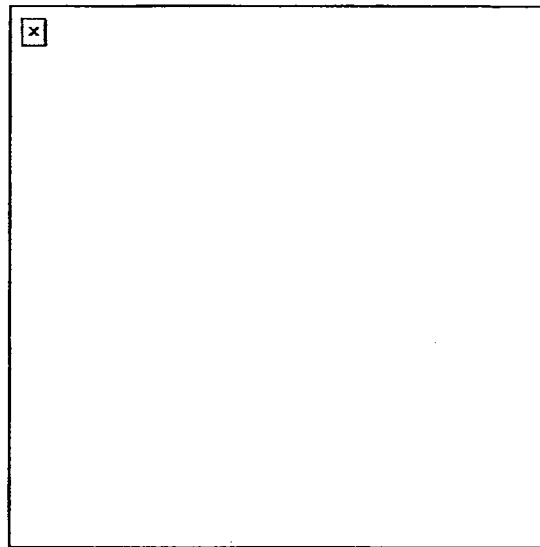


Figure 2  
Controls and indicators

**WARNING:** Using the sight without the eye guard installed may cause detection by the enemy and, when operated on a weapon, can result in physical injury to the operator because of weapon recoil.

**NOTES:** 1. The daylight cover must be installed during the daylight and removed at night.

2. Batteries must be removed when the sight is not in use, to prevent accidentally turning on the sight.

- a. Press the eye against the eye guard to open the rubber leaves that prevent the emission of stray light.
- b. Turn the ON-OFF/TUBE BRIGHTNESS control clockwise to turn on the sight.

**NOTE:** If the equipment fails to operate, refer to the troubleshooting procedures in Technical Manual (TM) 11-5855-213-10.

- c. Adjust the ON-OFF/TUBE BRIGHTNESS control to the lowest setting that provides good target-to-background contrast.
- d. Turn the ON-OFF/RETICLE BRIGHTNESS control clockwise to turn on the light-emitting diode. Adjust the light intensity so that the reticle is just visible against the background.

**CAUTION:** Excessive reticle brightness may damage the image intensifier tube.

- e. Turn the diopter focus ring (Figure 2) to obtain the clearest image of the reticle pattern.
- f. Turn the objective focus ring (Figure 2) until the target in the field of view is sharply defined.

**NOTE:** During surveillance or target engagement, the operator must adjust the objective focus to ensure a sharp image at different ranges.

4. Perform after-operation procedures.
  - a. Turn the reticle and tube brightness controls fully clockwise.
  - b. Remove both batteries.
  - c. Replace the sight in the carrying case.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide all the materials and equipment given in the task conditions statement.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to remove the AN/PVS-4 from its storage case and place it into operation. Tell him to take the AN/PVS-4 out of operation and replace it in its storage case.



**Performance Measures**

Note: Steps 1 and 2 are to be executed in sequence.

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Remove sight from the carrying case.	_____	_____
a. Release the air pressure.		
b. Release the latches.		
c. Inspect the sight for damages.		
2. Install the batteries.	_____	_____
a. Place the ON-OFF/TUBE BRIGHTNESS switch to OFF.		
b. Place the ON-OFF/RETICLE BRIGHTNESS switch to OFF.		
c. Remove the battery caps (two each).		
d. Insert the batteries (two each) correctly (negative [-] terminal facing into the cap).		
e. Replace caps (two each).		
3. Turn the ON-OFF/tube brightness control to ON.	_____	_____
4. Turn the ON-OFF/reticle brightness control to OFF.	_____	_____
5. Perform after-operation procedures.	_____	_____
a. Turn the ON-OFF/tube brightness control to OFF.		
b. Turn the ON-OFF/reticle brightness control to OFF.		
c. Remove both batteries.		
d. Replace the sight in the carrying case.		

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

Required

**Related**

TM 11-5855-213-10

## Operate Night Vision Goggles AN/PVS-5

071-315-0030

**Conditions:** At night, given a set of AN/PVS-5 goggles complete with batteries.

**Standards:** At night, given a set of AN/PVS-5 goggles complete with batteries.

### Performance Steps

1. Perform preoperational checks.

**CAUTION 1:** The AN/PVS-5 is a precision electro-optical instrument and must be handled carefully. Keep caps on objective and eyepiece lenses when not in use. Do not expose the unprotected objective lens to bright light with power applied to the goggles. Damage to the image intensifier can result.

- a. Remove the goggles from the carrying case.

**CAUTION 2:** The neck cord must be placed around the user's neck when the goggles are removed from the carrying case.

- b. Place the neck cord around your neck.
- c. Make sure the rotary switch is in the OFF position.

**CAUTION 3:** The rotary switch must be in the OFF position when the batteries are installed.

**WARNING:** Do not use mercury or rechargeable NiCad batteries. Using these batteries could result in system failure, which could cause personnel injury.

**WARNING:** Danger of explosion. Do not transport batteries in pockets or other containers containing metal objects such as coins, keys, etc. Metal objects can short circuit batteries and cause them to become very hot. The BA-5567/U (lithium) batteries could explode.

**WARNING:** The BA-5567/U (lithium) battery contains sulphur dioxide gas under pressure and should be handled in the following manner: (1) The BA-5567/U (lithium) batteries have safety vents to prevent explosion. When they are venting sulphur dioxide gas, you may smell it or hear the sound of gas escaping. When the safety vents have operated, the batteries are fairly safe from bursting but will be hot and must be handled with care. (2) Do not heat, puncture, disassemble, short circuit, attempt to recharge, or otherwise tamper with the batteries. (3) Turn off the equipment if the battery compartment becomes unduly hot. Do not open the battery compartment, but turn in the goggles to maintenance and report the problem.

- d. Install the BA-5567/U (lithium) battery or BA-3058/U (alkaline) battery.

(1) Remove the BA-5567/U (lithium) battery cap or BA-3058/U (alkaline) battery cap(s).

(2) Insert the BA-5567/U (lithium) battery with the recessed (+) side in first. Insert the BA-5567/U (alkaline) batteries with the flat (-) side in first.

**WARNING:** For AN/PVS-5B and AN/PVS-5C: Do not use the goggles with more than one type of battery at a time. Putting both battery types in your goggles at the same time draws off power and will severely reduce battery life of both types.

**NOTE:** The BA-5567/U (lithium) battery compartment is the same for the AN/PVS-5, AN/PVS-5A, AN/PVS-5B, and AN/PVS-5C. The upper battery compartment for the BA-3058/U (alkaline) batteries is on the top of the face mask for the AN/PVS-5B and for the AN/PVS-5C.

- (3) Replace the battery cap and tighten it firmly to ensure a watertight seal.

2. Prepare the goggles for operation.

- a. Snap the headstrap to the face mask, making sure all straps are extended to their maximum lengths.
- b. Move the objective focus knob and diopter adjustment ring throughout their range to make sure they rotate freely.
- c. Remove the eyepiece lens caps.
- d. Place the goggles on your head and adjust the headstraps.
  - (1) Bend your head so that you are facing the ground.

**Performance Steps**

- (2) With straps loosened, place the goggle headstrap on your head.
- (3) Grasp the headstrap side (horizontal) band adjustment with both hands and slowly pull band adjustment until face mask cushion just touches your face.
- (4) Continue pulling straight back on the straps until the goggles feel snug.
- (5) With your head still bent, grasp center (vertical) band adjustment and pull until snug.
- (6) Lift your head to a normal viewing position and make final adjustments on all bands until you have a comfortable, stable fit.
- e. Remove objective lens cap.

## 3. Operate the goggles.

**CAUTION 4: Perform the following procedures in the dark.**

- a. Set the rotary switch on the ON position. A green glow will appear in each eyepiece after a slight delay.
- b. Adjust the diopter adjustment rings. After the eye relief is set, the diopter adjustment ring adjusts between the eye and the eyepiece. Adjust both eyepieces by turning the diopter adjustment rings counterclockwise.
- c. Adjust the objective focus knobs. Adjust both objective focus knobs to infinity, all the way counterclockwise and back approximately 1/16 turn to infinity. If you are focusing on an object less than 100 to 200 feet away, adjust the focus knobs slightly to the right. Adjustment of the objective focus knobs regulates the target distance that is in focus. The objective focus knobs are located right on the objective lenses.
- d. Loosen the lever clamp (wing nut) counterclockwise and gently pull the monoculars apart to their fullest extent. Then, gently push the monoculars together to attain a proper sight picture.
  - (1) The proper sight picture has one circular image with a slight overlap.
  - (2) An improper sight picture may be due to the monoculars being improperly positioned in front of the eyes.
  - (3) Tighten the lever clamp (wing nut) clockwise finger tight. Do not over tighten the lever clamp (wing nut).
- e. Adjust the clamp knobs.
  - (1) Loosen the clamp knobs counterclockwise and adjust the monoculars to attain the desired monocular tilt. The monoculars have a tilt range of 25 degrees.
  - (2) The monoculars may be adjusted fore and aft in the slot of the face mask assembly within a 0.39 inch (10 millimeter) range. This adjustment changes your field of view. Start by placing the monoculars as close to your eyes as possible and then move them outward. The position is a matter of individual preference. Placing the monocular close to the eye allows an excellent view of the monocular image. If the monocular lenses are more than 0.71 inch (18 millimeters) from the eye, your field of view will be less than 40 degrees.

**NOTE: If the eyepiece lenses are not properly aligned with the eyes, optimal resolution will not be achieved. Proper alignment of the eyepiece lenses is achieved when the distance between the monoculars matches the distance between your pupils and the line of sight is the same as the vertical angle of the binoculars. When all the eyepiece adjustments (eyespan, vertical, and tilt) are properly set, the edges of the images in both monoculars will be clear.**

- (3) Tighten the clamp knobs clockwise, finger tight. Do not over tighten the knobs.

## 4. Adjust the focus.

**NOTE: When setting the diopter adjustment, you can achieve a clear image in each eye (monocular) and yet have a blurred image or develop eyestrain when viewing with both eyes.**

**NOTE: The following procedures is performed outdoors at night while wearing the goggles.**

- a. Preset the objective focus knob and diopter adjustment ring of both monoculars fully counterclockwise.
- b. Turn on the goggles.
- c. Look at the edge or some detail of a building or other man-made structure at least 100 feet (33 meters) away.
- d. Cover your left eye, or cup your hand over the left objective lens. Do not close your left eye. Be careful not to touch the lenses.

### Performance Steps

- e. Turn the right diopter adjustment ring clockwise until you first obtain a clear image, and stop.

**NOTE: If you continue to turn the diopter adjustment ring clockwise, the image may seem clear initially, but you could experience eyestrain or headaches after prolonged use.**

- f. Refine the focus of the right objective lens by very slowly turning the right objective focus knob until the sharpest image is obtained.
- g. Repeat steps 4c through 4f above for the left monocular.
- h. After adjusting both monoculars for best focus, cover the objective lens of the left monocular and view the image through the right monocular, checking to see if the image is still clear. Then cover the right monocular with the right hand and view the image through the left monocular. If either monocular is not clear, repeat steps 4c through 4g.
- i. With both eyes open, make final objective focus adjustments. If necessary make minor adjustments.
- j. Turn off the goggles.

5. Operate the goggles for reading.

**NOTE: Keep both eyes open when focusing.**

- a. Turn on the goggles to the infrared (IR) position by pulling the switch down and turning it clockwise. (On the AN/PVS-5, you do not have to pull the switch down to turn it to IR.)
- b. Check that the IR illuminator has been turned on by passing your hand directly in front of the goggles. If the contrast appears extra bright, turn the rotary switch to the ON position from the IR position.
- c. Turn the objective focus knobs fully clockwise to view up close.
- d. Cover your left eye. Keep both eyes open. Adjust the right diopter adjustment ring until the viewing area becomes as clear as possible.
- e. Adjust the right objective focus knob for the clearest image of your reading material.
- f. Cover your right eye. Keep both eyes open. Adjust the left diopter adjustment ring until the viewing area becomes as clear as possible.
- g. Adjust the left objective focus knob for the clearest image of your reading material.
- h. Have an observer wearing night vision goggles check carefully for stray light that may be visible at the edges of your face mask cushion.

**WARNING: The IR illuminator is for conditions of extreme darkness. The light from the illuminator can be detected by the enemy using night vision devices, so only use the IR illuminator for emergencies. The purpose of the IR illuminator is for viewing within approximately 6 feet (2 meters).**

6. Operate the IR illuminator.

- a. Pull down and turn the rotary switch to the IR position and observe that the area to your immediate front is lighted. (On the AN/PVS-5, you do not have to pull the switch down to turn it to IR.) As the IR illuminator is turned on, the momentary flash that you see is normal.

**WARNING: Two major disadvantages occur when the IR illuminator is used. First, it makes the night vision goggles an active IR system, and when illuminated, the operator is subject to detection by enemy systems. Second, when the illuminator is used, the battery power is consumed six times faster.**

- b. Check that the IR illuminator has been turned on by passing your hand directly in front of the goggles. If the contrast appears extra bright on your hand, the IR illuminator is lighted.

7. Install and remove the demisting shields.

**NOTE: Use the demisting shields if the eyepieces become fogged during operation. CAUTION: Demisting shields will be damaged if wiped while wet or with wet lens paper.**

- a. Remove the demisting shields from the goggles carrying case. Snap the demisting shields over the eyepiece lenses. Be careful not to smudge the eyepiece lenses or demisting shields.
- b. Remove the demisting shields by grasping them and pulling them off the eyepiece lenses. Place them back in the carrying case.

8. Operate the goggles in the standby mode.

**Performance Steps**

- a. During extended periods of nonuse, turn the rotary switch to OFF. Observe that the green glow disappears immediately from the goggles.
  - b. Remove the goggles from your head.
  - c. Let them hang by the neck cord around your neck.
9. Perform shutdown and storage procedures.
- a. Remove goggles.
    - (1) Shut down goggles by turning rotary switch to OFF.
    - (2) Unsnap side straps.
    - (3) Unsnap center strap.

**CAUTION 5:** When removing the headstrap at the fastener, lift snap only at LIFT DOT to avoid tearing the strap or breaking through the face mask. The white dot on the strap's button is the only place the button releases on its own. The LIFT DOT is not on the AN/PVS-5B headstrap.

- b. Replace the objective lens caps and eyepiece caps.
- c. Remove batteries.
  - (1) Unscrew the battery caps.
  - (2) Remove the BA-5567/U (lithium) battery or BA-3058/U (alkaline) batteries from the battery compartments.
  - (3) Replace the battery caps.
- d. Loosen the clamp knobs and lever clamp (wing nut).

**CAUTION 6:** Failure to loosen the clamp knobs and lever clamp (wing nut) before stowing could result in damage to the face mask.

- e. Place the goggles and batteries in the carrying case, and secure the latch.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Evaluate this task at night or in a classroom where you can control the light to simulate nighttime conditions. Provide the soldier with a set of AN/PVS-5 night vision goggles, complete with components and fresh batteries.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to prepare the goggles for operation, attach the components, operate the goggles, and shut down and stow the goggles under the following conditions: normal operation, extreme darkness, and rain or high humidity. Tell the soldier that he must notify you before turning the goggles ON and after turning them OFF, so you can darken or lighten the room accordingly. Tell him not to energize the goggles when the room lights are on.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Perform preoperational checks.	_____	_____
a. Remove the goggles from the carrying case.		
b. Place the neck cord around your neck.		
c. Make sure the rotary switch is in the OFF position.		
d. Install the battery(ies).		
2. Prepare the goggles for operation.	_____	_____
a. Install the headstraps.		
b. Remove the eyepiece lens caps.		
c. Put on the goggles and adjust the headstraps.		
d. Remove objective lens caps.		
3. Operate the goggles.	_____	_____
a. Turn the rotary switch to ON.		
b. Adjust all controls to obtain proper sight picture.		
c. Make sure the infrared illuminator is not turned on.		
4. Perform shutdown and storage.	_____	_____
a. Remove goggles.		
b. Turn the rotary switch to OFF.		

**Performance Measures**

**GO**   **NO GO**

- c. Replace the lens caps.
- d. Remove the battery(ies).
- e. Loosen the clamp knobs and lever clamp (wing nut).
- f. Place the goggles and battery(ies) in the carrying case.

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

## Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4 to an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle

071-315-2307

**Conditions:** Given an AN/PVS-4, mounted on a zeroed M16A1 or M16A2 rifle, a magazine with 18 rounds of ammunition, a silhouette target (with a 25-meter zeroing target attached) 25 meters from the firing point, and sandbags. Note: Ensure that the AN/PVS-4 has the M16, M203 sight reticle installed.

**Standards:** Place the center of a three-round shot group 7 centimeters (cm) below the target aiming point. Note: The sight may be zeroed during daylight or darkness. If zeroed during daylight, the daylight cover must be used. **CAUTION** Use of the sight under high light conditions without a daylight cover will damage the image intensifier assembly.

### Performance Steps

#### CAUTION

**Prolonged use of the sight under high light without a daylight cover will damage the image-intensifier assembly.**

1. Assume a good prone-supported position 25 meters from the target.
2. Place the sight into operation (see Task 071-315-0003, Operate a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4).

**WARNING: Do not use the sight without the eyeguard attached or weapon recoil may cause personnel injury.**

3. Adjust the azimuth and elevation controls so that the reticle aiming point is about in the center of the sight's field of view.
4. Fire three rounds to seat the sight on the weapon. Fire them into a safe area; try not to hit the zero target. Retighten the mounting knob.
5. Place the zeroing range aiming point of the reticle on the target aiming point; fire three rounds to obtain a good shot group (Figure 1). Use either the M16A1 25-meter zero target (NSN 6920-01-167-1392) shown in Figure 2 or the M16A2 25-meter zero target (NSN 6920-01-253-4005) shown in Figure 3. When zeroing the night vision sight, you can use either of these targets with either the M16A1 or M16A2 rifle. Use the marginal information on the target to adjust the sights on the rifle—not the night vision sight.

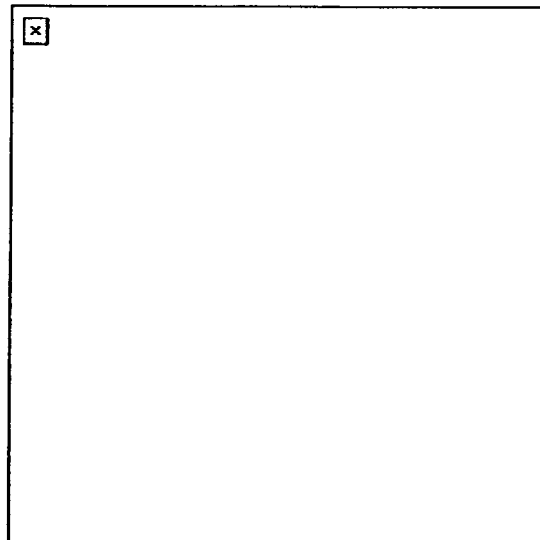


Figure 1. Zero aiming point.

### Performance Steps

6. Locate the center of the shot group. From the center of the group, adjust the reticle to move the center of the shot group to a point 7 centimeters (10 1/2 squares on the M16A1 target; 7.8 squares on the M16A2 target) directly below the target aiming point (Figure 2 and Figure 3). Mark the reticle adjustment actuators to show the direction of round impact movement.
  - a. Each click of the azimuth or elevation adjustment actuator moves the strike of the round 0.63 centimeter (1/4 mil or about 1/4 inch at a 25-meter range).
  - b. On the M16A1 zero target, 1 1/2 squares equals 1 centimeter and 10 1/2 squares equals 7 centimeters (Figure 2). On the M16A2 zero target, each square is .9 centimeter and 7.8 squares equal 7 centimeters (Figure 3).

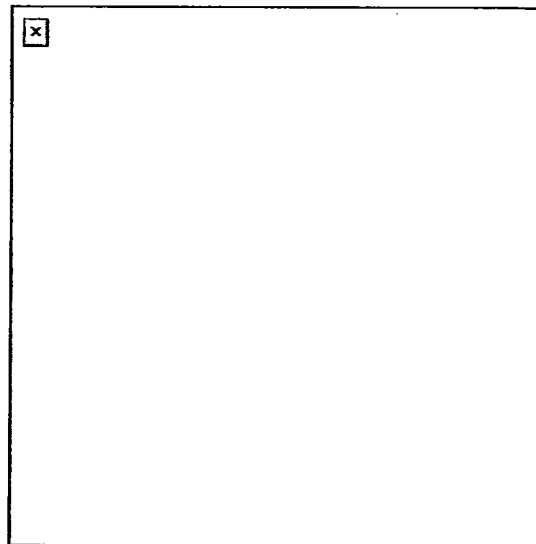


Figure 2. M16A1 zeroing target.

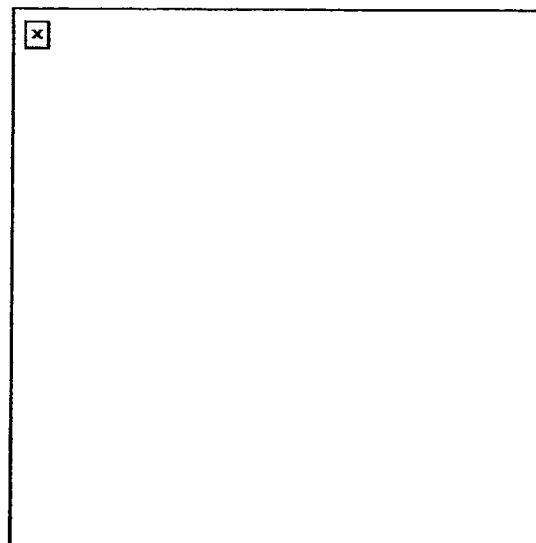


Figure 3. M16A2 zeroing target.

7. Perform the following actions after you adjust the controls:



**Performance Steps**

- a. Move a weapon so that the reticle aiming point is again on the target aiming point.
- b. Repeat Task Step 5 and Task Step 6 until the center of the shot group is 7 centimeters below the target aiming point as shown in Figure 4 and Figure 5.

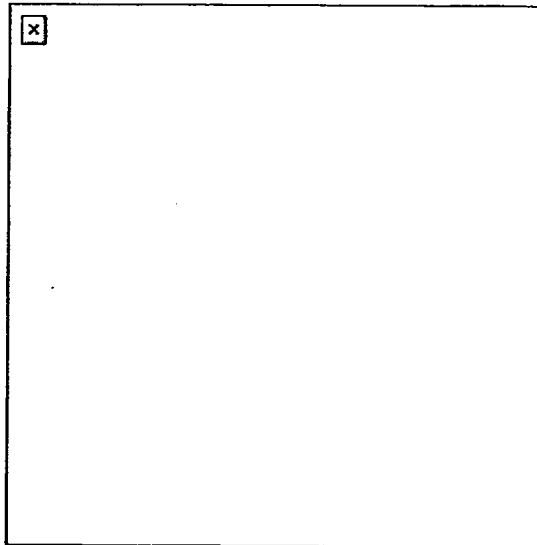


Figure 4. Sample 25-meter zeroing target for M16A1.

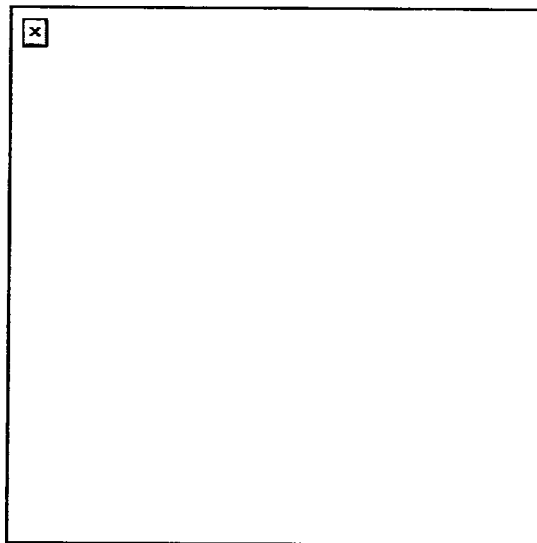


Figure 5. Sample 25-meter zeroing target for M16A2.

8. During zeroing, make sure the soldier places reticle aiming point (Figure 1) on the target aiming point in the silhouette's center of mass. Figure 6 shows what a zeroed shot group should look like.

Performance Steps

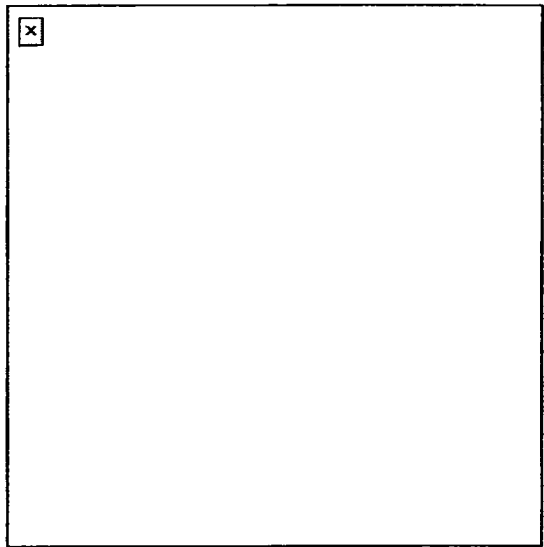


Figure 6. Sight picture and zeroed shot group.

EXAMPLE: From the center of the shot group in Figure 4, move the azimuth adjustment actuator 11 clicks to the left.  
- Move the elevation adjustment actuator down 17 clicks.  
- From the center of the shot group in Figure 5, move the azimuth adjustment actuator 9 clicks to the left.  
Move the elevation adjustment actuator 16 clicks.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide all equipment and materials given in the task conditions statement. Also provide a bipod for the rifle.

Brief Soldier: Tell the soldier to zero the AN/PVS-4 to the rifle within 18 rounds or less.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Place the AN/PVS-4 sight into operation.	—	—
2. Zero the AN/PVS-4 sight to the rifle within 18 rounds or less.	—	—
3. Remove the AN/PVS-4 sight from operation.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him a GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

<b>References</b>	<b>Related</b>
Required	TM 11-5855-213-10

## Engage Targets with an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle Using a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4

071-315-2308

**Conditions:** During darkness, given an M16A1 or M16A2 rifle with a mounted and zeroed AN/PVS-4; one silhouette target between 50 and 100 meters, one at 150 meters, and one between 200 and 250 meters; and one magazine with 18 rounds of ammunition.

**Standards:** Fire all 18 rounds and hit the targets at least nine times (there must be at least five hits on the 150-meter target and at least two hits each on the 50- to 100-meter target and the 200- to 250-meter target).

### Performance Steps

**NOTE:** Ensure the AN/PVS-4 has the proper sighting reticle (Figure 1).

1. Place the sight into operation (see Task 071-315-0003, Operate a Night Vision Sight AN/PVS-4).
2. Use the sight reticle. When used with the rifle, the AN/PVS-4 sight reticle consists of two parts (Figure 1).
  - a. Use the upper part of the reticle (range scale) to determine range to the target.
  - b. Use the lower part of the reticle for aiming the weapon.

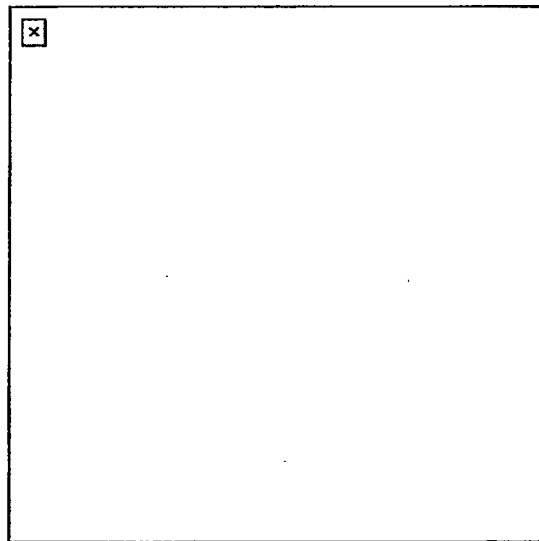


Figure 1. Sighting reticle.

**NOTE:** Ensure the AN/PVS-4 is mounted to the rifle using the rifle mounting adapter and not the M203 mounting bracket.

3. Determine range to target.
  - a. The vertical lines on the range scale tell how far away a 6-foot tall man is.
    - (1) Place the target on the horizontal line and match it with one of the vertical lines (A, Figure 2).
    - (2) Read the number at the bottom or top of the vertical line. That is the distance in hundreds of meters to the target.
    - (3) If the figure is the same height as the vertical line above and below the horizontal line, the distance will be half of the number at the top or bottom of that line (B, Figure 2).
    - (4) The man shown in A, Figure 2 is 400 meters away; the man in B, Figure 2 is 500 meters away.

**Performance Steps**

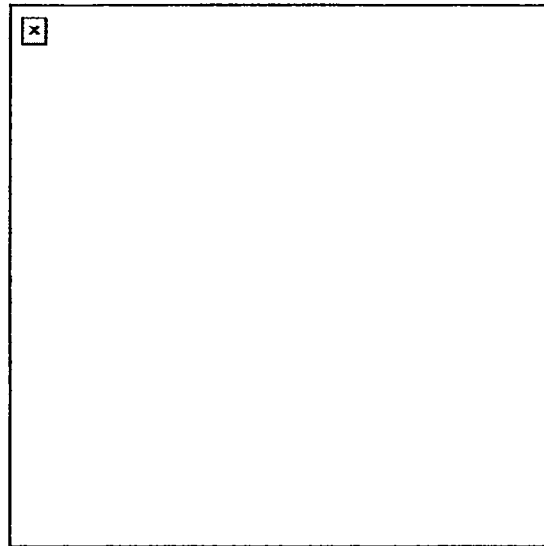


Figure 2. Range determination using vertical lines.

- b. The horizontal line of the range scale indicates the range (in hundreds of meters) of a 20-foot target such as a tank or large truck viewed from the side.
  - (1) Place the left edge of the vehicle at the left side of the horizontal line (Figure 3).
  - (2) Read the range to the tank from the scale at the right edge of the tank. As shown in A, Figure 3, the range to the vehicle is 1,000 meters.
  - (3) When viewed from the front or rear, the vehicle width is about half the length. Read the placement of the vehicle width on the range scale as half the range scale value. As shown in B, Figure 3, the range to the vehicle is 400 meters.

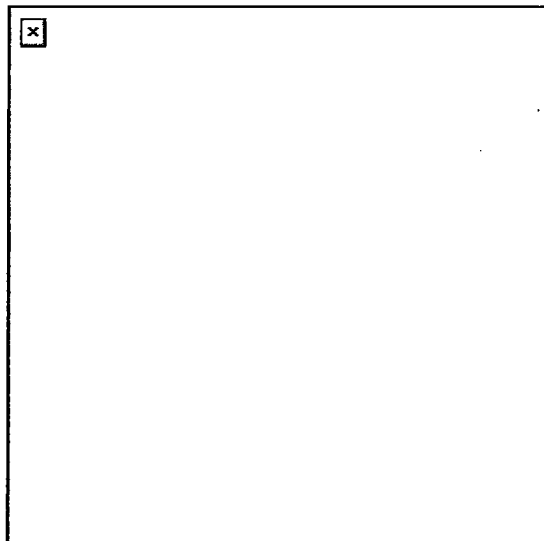


Figure 3. Range determination using horizontal lines.

4. Engage targets using the sight reticle.

Performance Steps

- a. The rifle aiming point for ranges out to 250 meters is the center of the three straight lines (zero aiming point) (Figure 4). The top of the vertical line is the aiming point for 400 meters, and the bottom of the line is the aiming point for 600 meters.

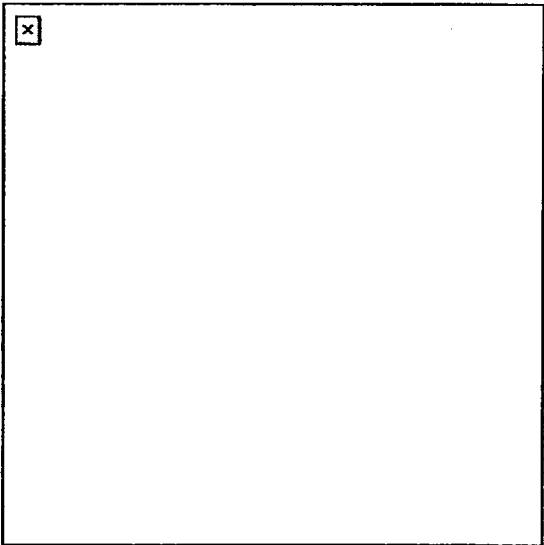


Figure 4. Zero aiming point.

- b. Locate the target, estimate the range, and place the proper aiming point on the target.

**WARNING:** To prevent eye injury from weapon recoil, attach the eye guard to the sight before firing the weapon.

- c. Fire the weapon using correct marksmanship procedures.

**NOTE:** When firing the rifle, disregard the three dots to the right of the aiming point; you would only need these if you were firing the M203 .

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At a live-fire range, provide the equipment and materials given in the task conditions statement. Turn off the sight after evaluation.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to engage all targets with a minimum of 9 hits out of 18 rounds.

Performance Measures

- 1. Place the AN/PVS-4 into operation.
- 2. Engage targets.
- 2. Use the sight reticle to determine range to targets.
  - a. The 150-meter target with at least five hits.
  - b. The 50- to 100-meter target with at least two hits.
  - c. The 200- to 250-meter target with at least two hits.

GO      NO GO

\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

References

Required

Related

TM 11-5855-213-10

**Operate Night Vision Goggles AN/PVS-7**  
**071-710-0008**

**Conditions:** At night, given night vision goggles AN/PVS-7 with components and batteries.

**Standards:** Prepare, operate, shut down, and stow the night vision goggles AN/PVS-7 without revealing your position and without damaging the equipment.

**WARNING:** To avoid physical and equipment damage, avoid bright light sources (e.g., sunlight, vehicle lights) while using the night vision goggles. These extreme light sources can impair the efficiency or damage the intensifier tube. The equipment requires some night light (moonlight or starlight) to operate. The level of performance depends upon the level of light. Night light is reduced by passing cloud cover or while operating under trees or in building shadows and other light shielding conditions. The equipment is less effective viewing into shadows and other darkened areas. The equipment does not operate through rain, fog, sleet, snow, or smoke. Adjust vehicular speed to prevent overdriving field of view when conditions of possible reduction or loss of vision exist.

**WARNING:** Batteries can explode if heated or contents can cause irritation if improperly handled.

**WARNING:** Infrared (IR) illuminator can be detected by enemy night vision devices.

**Performance Steps**

**WARNING:** To avoid personal injury or damage to the AN/PVS-7B goggles, consider the following limitations and safety precautions while using the goggles:

1. The goggles require some moonlight, starlight, or both to operate.
2. The amount of available light determines the goggles' level of performance.
3. Operating in shadow from buildings or trees reduces nightlight.
4. The goggles are less effective for viewing into shadowed and other darkened areas than in lighter areas.
5. The goggles are less effective when viewing through rain, fog, sleet, snow, or smoke.
6. When using goggles from a moving vehicle in the fog, rain, sleet, snow, or smoke, vehicle speed must be reduced to avoid over-driving the range of view.
7. Between the last and first quarters of the moon, during operations requiring the use of a protective mask, or both, the assistance driver should use a night-vision device.

1. Prepare the goggles for operation.

**CAUTION:** Handle all optical components with extreme care and protect against dirt, dust, fingerprints, and excessive moisture.

- a. Inventory carrying case content to ensure the following accessories are present (Figure 1):

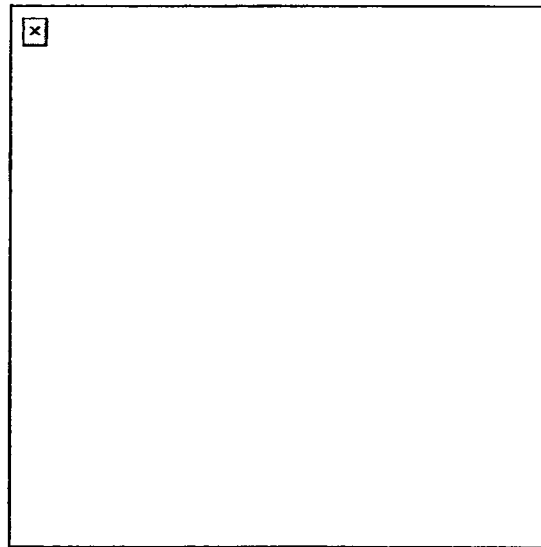
**Performance Steps**

Figure 071-710-0008-1  
AN/PVS-7B Night Vision Goggles and Accessories

- (1) Headmount assembly.
  - (2) Demist shields.
  - (3) Brow pads (medium and thick) (thin pad is attached to headmount assembly).
  - (4) Operator's manual.
  - (5) Lens paper.
  - (6) Carrying case strap.
  - (7) Light interference filter (LIF).
  - (8) Sacrificial window.
  - (9) Batteries: (2 BA-3058/U or 1 BA-5567/U).
  - (10) Goggles assembly.
- b. Inspect the goggles assembly and components for serviceability.
- (1) Ensure that the goggles assembly rotary switch is in the OFF position. Inspect goggles assembly and components for any damage to optical surfaces, body, eyecups, OFF-ON-PULL/IR switch, and battery cap.
  - (2) Ensure all optical surfaces are clean. Clean with clean water and lens tissue if needed (Figure 2).

**Performance Steps**

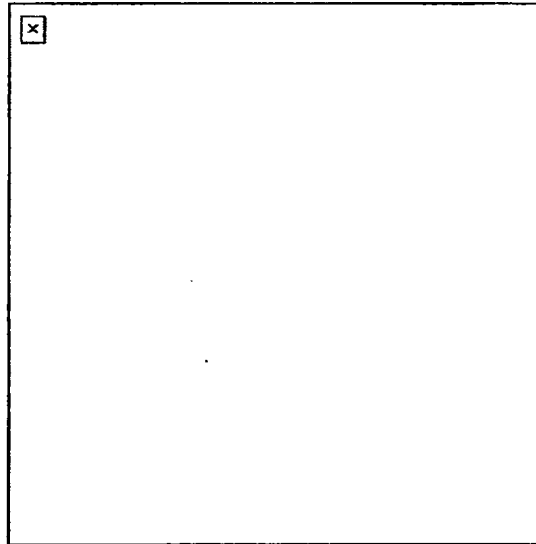


Figure 071-710-0008-2  
Optical Surfaces and Other Components

c. Install batteries.

- (1) Check and ensure that the OFF-ON-PULL/IR switch is in the OFF position before installing batteries.

- (2) Comply with all warnings and danger statements that apply to handling batteries.

**WARNING:** o Batteries (alkaline, lithium, and mercury) present a potential hazard. Do not heat, puncture, disassemble, short-circuit, try to recharge, or otherwise tamper with the batteries.

o If the batteries compartment becomes unusually hot, turn off the equipment. Try to wait until the batteries cool before you remove them.

o Batteries have safety vents to prevent explosion. When they vent, you will notice an irritating odor or hear the sound of gas escaping. After batteries vent, they are fairly safe, but you must still handle them with care.

**DANGER: IF YOU INHALE SULPHUR DIOXIDE, SEEK MEDICAL ATTENTION.**

- (3) Remove the battery cap. Insert two AA batteries (BA-3058/U) or one lithium battery (BA-5567/U) in the battery compartment, positive end (+) first.
- (4) Replace the battery cap. Tighten it firmly to ensure a watertight seal (Figure 3).



## Performance Steps

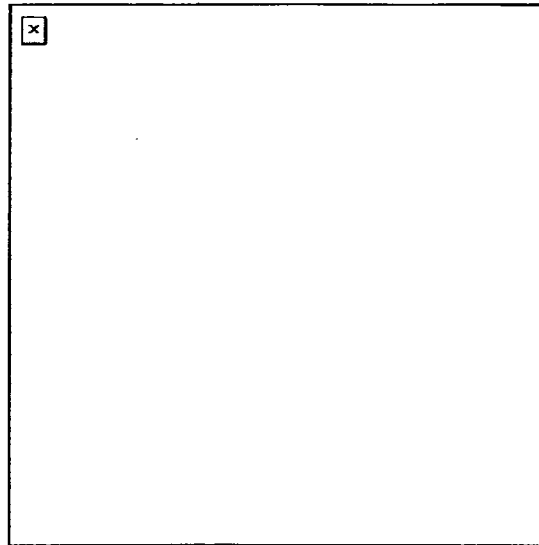


Figure 071-710-0008-3  
Battery Installation

- d. Perform an operational check.
  - (1) Position the OFF-ON-PULL/IR switch to ON. Observe that a green glow gradually appears in each eyepiece.
  - (2) Pull the OFF-ON-PULL/IR switch knob and rotate it clockwise to the IR position. Observe that a red light appears in the left eyepiece. This indicates that the IR source is operating. The IR source is located on the left front of the goggles. Do not block it while operating the goggles.
  - (3) Turn the OFF-ON-PULL/IR switch counterclockwise to the OFF position. Observe that the red light and green glow disappear.

2. Operate goggles.

- a. Focusing the goggles. If you normally wear eyeglasses, remove them to operate these goggles. You can focus the goggles, so you will not need your eyeglasses.
  - (1) Focus on the image intensifier screen using the diopter adjustment rings.
  - (2) Focus on objects at varying distances using the objective focus adjustment.
- b. Handheld operation.
  - (1) Position the goggles so that the eyecups seal around your eyes to prevent green glow from escaping.
  - (2) Position the OFF-ON-PULL/IR switch to ON.
  - (3) Adjust the interpupillary distance by sliding the eyepieces either together or apart so both eyes can observe the entire field of view at the same time.
  - (4) To set the diopter adjustment rings, close your left eye and adjust the right diopter ring for the clearest focus on the image intensifier screen. Then, close your right eye and adjust the left diopter ring for the clearest focus on the image intensifier screen.
  - (5) Adjust objective lens focus while observing a distant object (at least 4 meters distance) until the sharpest view is obtained.
- c. Head mount operation.
  - (1) Adjust the headmount assembly (Figure 4).

## Performance Steps

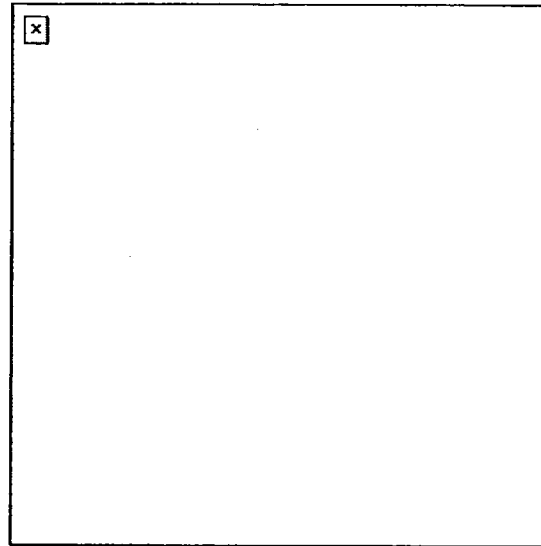


Figure 071-710-0008-4  
Headmount Assembly

- (a) Loosen the four chin straps on the headmount assembly until the end of each strap is about 2 inches from the sliding bar buckles.

**NOTE: When installing a headmount assembly over a protective mask, make sure you do not break the seal of the protective mask around your face.**

- (b) Grasp the neck pad assembly with both hands. Pull it over your head and down to the back of your neck. If the head mount is too loose, replace the thin pad with the medium or thick pad. The pads are held in place by hook-pile tape.
  - (c) Fasten the front and rear snaps in place with your left hand. Hold the chin cup in position on your chin. Adjust both rear chin assembly straps until you feel light pressure against your chin. Stop. Do not tighten the strap any farther.
  - (d) Continue to hold the chin cup in position. At the same time, remove slack from the front and rear chin straps. Once you have done so--stop. Do not tighten them any farther.
  - (e) Make sure cross-strap assembly does not twist. To remove slack from it, adjust the vertical adjustment strap at the neck pad.
  - (f) Adjust the chin straps and the vertical adjustment strap until both chin cup and the headband assembly are in a comfortable but firm position.
  - (g) Depress the socket release button. Position the headmount socket all the way forward.
- (2) Install the goggles on the headmount assembly.
- (a) Align the goggles latch with the headmount socket. Press and hold the goggles latch lever while you place the goggles into the headmount socket. Release the latch when the goggles fully engage the socket.
  - (b) Depress the socket release button. Move the goggles back toward your eyes until the eyecups and eyepieces are comfortably aligned. The eyecups must seal around your eyes and prevent the green glow from escaping.
- (3) Adjust goggles for operation.
- (a) Position the OFF-ON-PULL/IR switch to ON.
  - (b) Adjust the interpupillary distance. Slide the eyepieces either together or apart so you can observe the entire field of view (FOV) with both eyes at the same time.

**Performance Steps**

- (c) Set the diopter adjustment rings. Close your left eye and adjusting the right diopter ring for the clearest focus on the image intensifier screen. Close your right eye and adjust the left diopter ring for the clearest focus on the image intensifier screen.
- (d) Adjust the eye relief distance. Press the socket release button. Move the goggles backward or forward to obtain a full field of view of the image intensifier. If necessary, readjust the diopter rings to obtain the best image.
- (e) Adjust the objective lens focus while observing a distant object (at least 4 meters away) until you obtain the sharpest possible view.
- (f) Readjust the vertical strap assembly until the goggles align with your eyes.
- (g) If necessary, adjust the kevlar or M1 headband inside the helmet for a proper fit over the headmount assembly.

## 3. Operate goggles under unusual conditions.

## a. Extreme darkness.

- (1) Pull the OFF-ON-PULL/infrared (IR) switch out and rotate it clockwise to the IR position.
- (2) Ensure the eyecups are positioned to prevent light escaping from the goggles.

**WARNING: The infrared source is a light that is invisible to the unaided eye for use during conditions of extreme darkness. However, the enemy can detect it with night vision devices. The infrared source is used to see objects within a distance of 3 meters.**

## b. Dust and sand. Attach the sacrificial window to protect the objective lens from scratches and other damage.

- (1) Remove the sacrificial window from the carrying case.
- (2) Carefully push the sacrificial window over the objective lens until it pops.
- (3) Turn the sacrificial window clockwise until it snaps in place.
- (4) Remove the sacrificial window by reversing the installation procedures.

## c. Rainy and humid conditions. Press each eyecup over the diopter retainer ring. Rotate it into correct viewing position.

- (1) Remove the eyecups by carefully pulling them off the diopter ring.
- (2) Carefully press a demist shield onto each eyepiece. Do not smudge eyepiece or demist shields.
- (3) Replace eyecups. Press each eyecup over the diopter retainer ring. Rotate it into correct viewing position.

## d. Laser threat environment. Install the light interference filter (LIF). Using this filter will slightly reduce system gain.

- (1) Remove the container/wrench from the carrying case.
- (2) Remove the lens cap or sacrificial window from the objective lens of the goggles.
- (3) Open the container/wrench and remove the LIF.
- (4) Hold the LIF by the notched end. Thread it clockwise into the end of the objective lens.
- (5) Use the ridged side of the container/wrench as a wrench. Engage the ridges on the container with the ridges on the LIF. Hand tighten the LIF.
- (6) Place the empty container/wrench back into the pouch in the carrying case.

**NOTE: The lens cap and the sacrificial window will fit onto the end of the objective lens with the LIF in place. However, the lens cap and sacrificial window will not snap into place without the LIF attached.**

- (7) Replace the lens cap or the sacrificial window onto the end of the objective lens and over the LIF.
- (8) Remove the LIF by reversing the installation procedures.

## e. Nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) environment

- (1) Place the protective mask on your head per instructions provided with the protective mask.
- (2) Make sure you do not break the seal of the protective mask around your face when you install the headmount assembly over the protective mask.

## 4. Install and operate the snap-on compass.

**Performance Steps**

- a. Remove the objective lens cover from the goggles. Secure the snap-on compass to the lens with the round part of the activation button facing down.
- b. Turn the goggles on. Push up on the activation button to determine azimuth direction.
5. Attach the 3X magnifier telescope assembly.
  - a. Objective focus cover attached. Push the objective focus cover sleeve onto the goggles' objective focus ring.
  - b. Objective focus cover not attached to goggles. Screw the 3X magnifier directly into the goggles' objective focus ring.
6. Stow the night vision goggles (Figure 5).

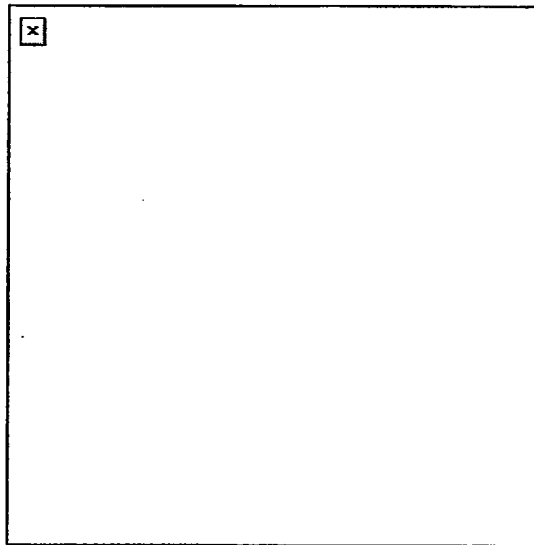


Figure 071-710-0008-5  
Goggles Stowed in the Carrying Case

- a. Shut down the goggles. Move the OFF-ON-PULL/IR switch to OFF.
  - b. Remove the goggles from the head mount (if attached). Depress the latch lever and remove the goggles.
  - c. Unscrew the battery cap, remove the battery, and replace the battery cap.
  - d. Remove the demist shields and sacrificial window, if installed.
  - e. Install the lens cap.
  - f. Ensure the goggles are free of dirt, dust, and moisture.
  - g. Place the demist shields and the battery into their proper carrying case pockets.
- CAUTION: To prevent damage to window, place the sacrificial window at bottom left or right corner of the carrying case accessory pocket.**
- h. Place the lens paper, sacrificial window, and operator's manual in the accessory pocket located under the shallow pocket that contains the goggles.
  - i. Place the goggles (objective lens down) into the shallow pocket of the carrying case.
  - j. Remove the headmount assembly. Unsnap the front and rear straps. Lift the headmount assembly up and off your head. Stow the assembly in the deep pocket of the carrying case. Close the carrying case.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Evaluate this task in a classroom where light can be controlled to simulate nighttime. Provide the soldier with a set of night vision goggles AN/PVS-7B, components, and batteries, as described in the task conditions statement.

1. Have the soldier prepare the goggles for operation, operate the goggles using the headmount

assembly, shut down the goggles, and stow the goggles.

2. Evaluate the soldier's ability to select and attach the appropriate components by telling him to prepare the goggles for operation in the following conditions: dust and sand, rain or high humidity, or laser threat environment. If snap-on compass and 3X magnifier are available, evaluate the soldier's ability to attach them to the goggles.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier that he is to prepare the goggles for operation, operate the goggles using the headmount assembly, shut down and stow the goggles, and attach components to operate the goggles in various conditions as instructed. Tell him that he must notify you before turning the goggles ON and after turning them OFF, so you can darken or lighten the room. Tell the soldier not to energize the goggles when the room lights are on.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Prepare goggles for operation.	_____	_____
a. Inventory carrying case content to ensure all accessories are present.		
b. Inspect the goggles assembly and components for serviceability.		
c. Install batteries correctly.		
d. Perform an operational check.		
2. Operate goggles in hand-held mode.	_____	_____
3. Operate goggles with head mount.	_____	_____
a. Adjust the headmount assembly for proper fit.		
b. Install goggles correctly on the headmount assembly.		
c. Adjust goggles for operation/		
4. Operate goggles during unusual conditions.	_____	_____
a. Extreme darkness. Operate goggles using IR source.		
b. Dust and sand. Attach the sacrificial window.		
c. Rainy and humid conditions. Install demist shields to minimize diopter fog.		
d. Laser threat environment. Install the light interference filter (LIF).		
e. NBC environment.		
(1) Place the protective mask on your head in accordance with (IAW) instructions provided with the protective mask.		
(2) Do not break the seal of the protective mask around your face when you install the headmount assembly over the protective mask.		
5. Install and operate snap-on compass (if available).	_____	_____
6. Attach 3X magnifier telescope assembly (if available).	_____	_____
7. Stow the night vision goggles.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

Subject Area 4: Weapons - M9

**Maintain an M9 Pistol**

**071-004-0001**

**Conditions:** Given an M9 pistol; magazine; bore brush; cleaning brush; M4 cleaning rod; cleaning patches; small-arms swabs; clean, dry cloths; cleaner, lubricant, preservative (CLP), and a requirement to maintain the M9 pistol.

**Standards:** The pistol is disassembled, cleaned, lubricated, assembled, and is operational.

**Performance Steps**

1. Clear the pistol.
  - a. Place the safety lever in the SAFE position.
  - b. Hold the pistol in the raised pistol position.
  - c. Depress the magazine release button; remove the magazine from the pistol.
  - d. Pull the slide to the rear; remove any chambered round.
  - e. Push the slide stop up, locking the slide to the rear.
  - f. Look into the chamber to ensure that it is empty.
2. Disassemble the pistol and magazine.
  - a. Depress the slide stop and let the slide go forward.
  - b. With your right hand, hold the pistol with the muzzle slightly raised.
  - c. With your forefinger, press the disassembly lever button (Figure 1).

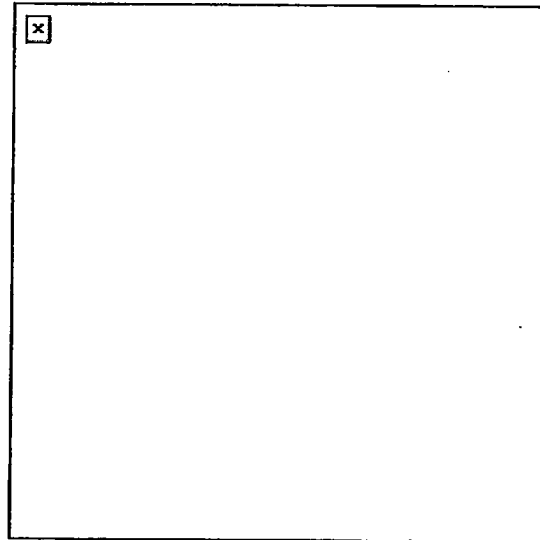


Figure 1. Disassembly lever button.

- d. Rotate the disassembly lever downward until it stops.
- e. Pull the slide and barrel assembly forward (Figure 1), and remove it from the receiver.
- f. Slightly compress the recoil spring and spring guide. At the same time, lift them up and remove them, allowing the recoil spring to stretch slowly (Figure 2).

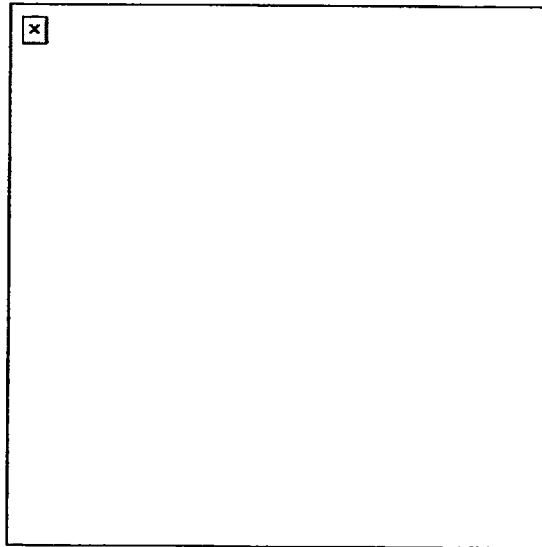
**Performance Steps**

Figure 2. Removal of the recoil spring and spring guide.

- g. Separate the recoil spring from the spring guide.
- h. Push in on the locking block plunger while pushing the barrel forward slightly. Lift and remove the locking block and barrel assembly from the slide (Figure 3).

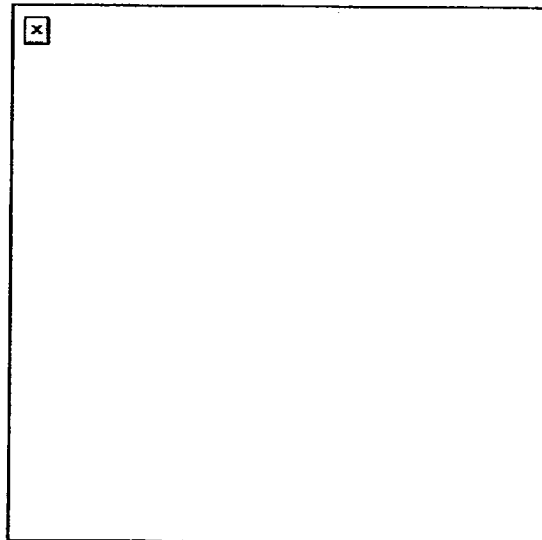


Figure 3. Removal of the locking block and barrel assembly.

- i. Disassemble the magazine (Figure 4).

## Performance Steps

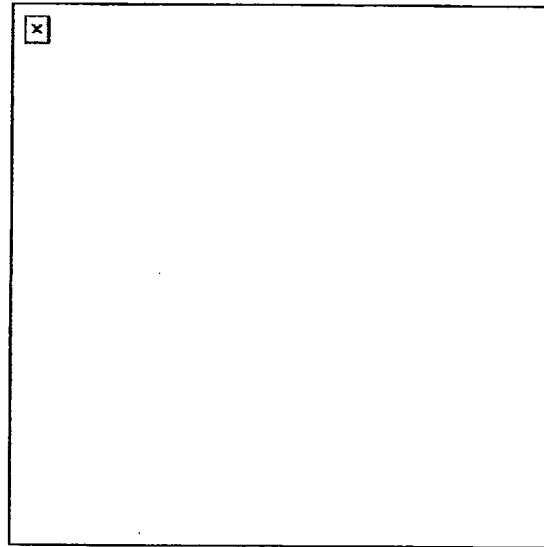


Figure 4. Disassembly of the magazine.

- (1) Grasp the magazine firmly, with the floor plate up and the back of the magazine tube against the palm of your hand.
- (2) Depress the locking block to make the locking block plunger protrude.
- (3) Using the locking block plunger, push down on the floor plate retainer stud.
- (4) Slide the floor plate slightly forward with your thumb.
- (5) While removing the floor plate, use your thumb to keep pressure on the magazine spring.
- (6) Remove the floor plate retainer, the magazine spring, and the follower from the magazine tube.
- (7) Remove the magazine spring from the follower.
- (8) Remove the floor plate retainer from the magazine spring.

### 3. Clean the pistol and magazine.

#### **CAUTION**

Use the bore brush to clean only the bore. Using it on any other part of the pistol will cause damage.

- a. Slide assembly.
  - (1) Clean slide assembly with a cloth. Use CLP on a soft brush to remove excess dirt and carbon.
  - (2) Wipe dry with a clean cloth.
- b. Barrel assembly.
  - (1) Attach a bore brush to a cleaning rod. Moisten the bore brush with CLP and insert it into the chamber end of the barrel. Make sure the brush completely clears the muzzle before you pull it back through the bore. Repeat this procedure several times to loosen carbon deposits.
  - (2) To clean and dry the barrel, push a clean swab through the bore. Repeat as necessary with fresh swabs until a swab comes out clean.
  - (3) Clean locking block with a soft brush.
  - (4) Clean the recoil spring and spring guide with CLP and a soft brush or cloth.
- c. Receiver assembly. Wipe the receiver assembly clean with a cloth and, if needed, a soft brush.
- d. Magazine (Figure 4).
  - (1) Wipe the magazine tube and the follower with CLP, a cloth, and a soft brush.



**Performance Steps**

- (2) Clean the magazine spring, floor plate retainer, and floor plate with a clean cloth.
- e. Holster. Remove dirt from exterior with stiff brush. Wipe interior with clean cloth.
- f. Ammunition. If ammunition gets wet or dirty, clean it and remove corrosion from it at once using a dry cloth.
- 4. Inspect for serviceability.
  - a. Slide assembly.
    - (1) Check to ensure the ambidextrous safety moves freely.
    - (2) Check the firing block for damage.
    - (3) Check the rear sight for looseness.
  - b. Barrel assembly.
    - (1) Inspect the bore and chamber for pitting or obstructions.
    - (2) Check the locking block plunger to ensure the locking block moves freely.
    - (3) Inspect the locking lugs for cracks and burrs.
  - c. Recoil spring and recoil spring guide.
    - (1) Check recoil spring to ensure it is not bent or damaged.
    - (2) Check recoil spring to ensure it is straight and free of cracks and burrs.
  - d. Receiver assembly.
    - (1) Check for bends, chips, and cracks.
    - (2) Check to ensure the slide stop and magazine stop move freely.
    - (3) Check the guide rails for excessive wear, burr, cracks, or chips.
  - e. Magazine assembly (Figure 4).
    - (1) Check for damage to the spring and follower.
    - (2) Inspect magazine lips to ensure they are not bent excessively and to ensure they have no cracks and burrs.
    - (3) Check to ensure the magazine tube is not bent.
  - f. Ammunition.
    - (1) Check for damaged or corroded ammunition. Turn in heavily corroded or damaged ammunition.
    - (2) Check to ensure ammunition is free of oil and grease.
- 5. Lubricate the pistol and magazine.

**NOTES:**

- 1. CLP, lubricant oil (LSA), and lubricating oil (LAW) are the only lubricants authorized for this pistol.
- 2. You can use CLP and LSA interchangeably.
- 3. Before firing, remove excess lubricant from the bore.
  - a. Lubricate all parts with a light coat of LSA or CLP at temperatures above -10 degrees Fahrenheit, or LAW at temperatures below +10 degrees Fahrenheit.
  - b. Do not mix LAW with other lubricants.
- 6. Assemble the pistol (Figure 5).

**Performance Steps**

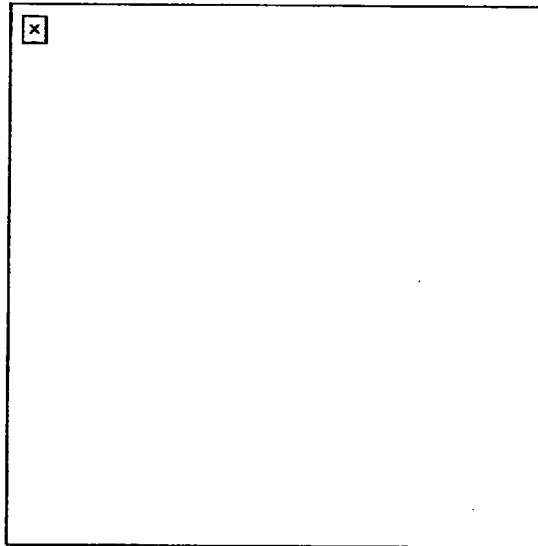


Figure 5. Insertion of the barrel assembly.

- a. Grasp the slide with the bottom facing up.
- b. With the other hand, grasp the barrel assembly with the locking block facing up.
- c. Insert the muzzle into the forward end of the slide. At the same time, lower the rear of the barrel assembly by moving the barrel slightly downward with light thumb pressure. The barrel will fall into place.
- d. Insert the recoil spring guide into the recoil spring (Figure 6).

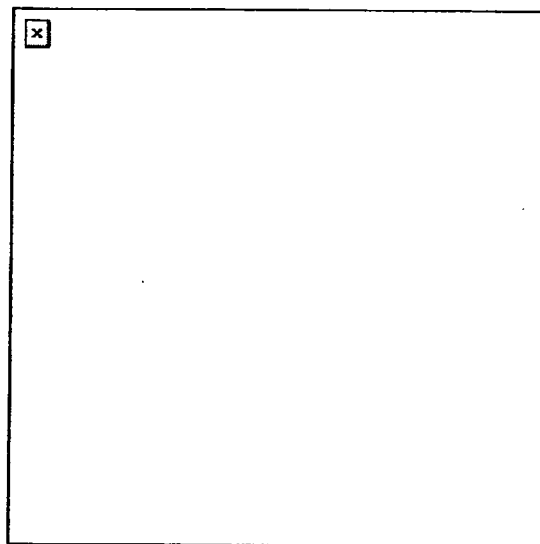


Figure 6. Recoil spring and spring guide.

- e. Insert the end of the recoil spring and the recoil spring guide into the recoil spring housing. At the same time, compress the recoil spring and lower the spring guide until it is fully seated on the locking block cutaway (Figure 7).

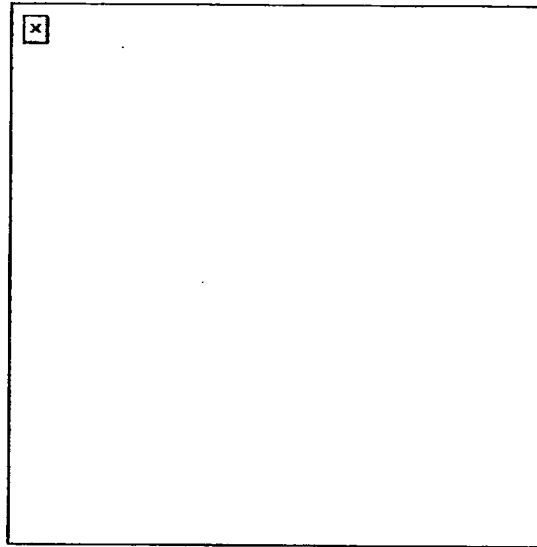
**Performance Steps**

Figure 7. Insertion of the recoil spring and guide.

**CAUTION**

Be sure that the hammer is uncocked and firing pin block lever is in the down position. If the hammer is cocked, carefully and manually lower the hammer. Do not pull the trigger while placing the slide onto the receiver.

- f. Push the firing pin block lever down. Grasp the slide and barrel assembly with the sights up, and align the slide on the receiver assembly guide rails (Figure 8).

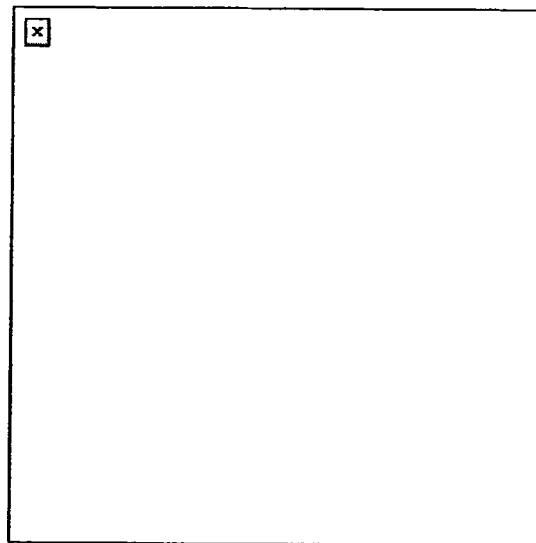


Figure 8. Final assembly.

- g. Push until the rear of the slide is a short distance beyond the rear of the receiver assembly and hold. At the same time, rotate the disassembly latch lever upward. A click indicates a positive lock (Figure 8).
- h. Assemble the magazine (Figure 4).

**Performance Steps**

- (1) Insert the follower into the top coil of the magazine spring. Make sure the notches on the follower and magazine tube are on the same side.
- (2) Insert the magazine spring with follower into magazine tube.
- (3) Turn the magazine bottom up, with its back side against the palm of the hand. Attach and center the floor plate retainer on the bottom spring coil.

**CAUTION**

**After inserting the magazine spring, keep tension on it with your thumb. Be careful not to place the lips of the magazine tube on a hard surface while you reassemble the magazine.**

- (4) Push and hold the magazine spring and floor plate retainer down. At the same time, slide the floor plate over the side walls until it seats fully.
- (5) Carefully insert the magazine into the pistol well. You will hear a click when it locks into position.

**WARNING**

**Make sure the pistol is clear and unloaded.**

7. Perform a function check.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide a field table with all the equipment given in the task condition statement.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier that he must clear, disassemble, clean, inspect, lubricate, assemble, and perform a function check on the weapon.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Clear the pistol.	___	___
2. Disassemble the pistol and magazine without damaging any parts.	___	___
3. Clean the pistol, components, and ammunition.	___	___
4. Inspect the pistol, components, and ammunition for defects.	___	___
5. Lubricate pistol and magazine correctly.	___	___
6. Assemble pistol and magazine in correct sequence correctly.	___	___
7. Perform a function check.	___	___

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

**Related**

TM 9-1005-317-10

Perform a Function Check on an M9 Pistol

071-004-0002

**Conditions:** Given an M9 pistol and a requirement to perform a function check.

**Standards:** Perform a function check to determine whether or not the M9 pistol is operational.

**Performance Steps**

**WARNING:**

**Ensure the pistol is clear before you perform a function check.**

1. Place the safety lever in SAFE position.
2. Insert the empty magazine into the magazine well.
3. Retract the slide fully, then release it. The slide should lock to the rear.
4. Depress the slide stop and allow the slide to return fully forward. At the same time, the hammer should fall to the full forward position.
5. Squeeze and release the trigger. The firing pin block should move up and down. The hammer should not move.
6. Place the safety lever in the FIRE position.
7. To check the double action, squeeze the trigger. The hammer should cock and fall.
8. Squeeze the trigger again, and hold it to the rear. While holding the trigger to the rear, manually retract and release the slide. Release the trigger. You should hear a click, but the hammer should not fall.
9. To check the single action, squeeze the trigger. The hammer should fall.
10. If the pistol functions as indicated during the checks, it is operational.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide the equipment listed in the task conditions statement.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to perform a function check based on the steps in this task and to determine whether or not the M9 pistol functions correctly.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Place the safety lever in the SAFE position.	—	—
2. Insert the empty magazine into the magazine well.	—	—
3. Retract the slide fully, then release it.	—	—
4. Depress the slide stop and allow the slide to return fully forward.	—	—
5. Squeeze and release the trigger.	—	—
6. Place the safety lever in FIRE position.	—	—
7. Check the double action by squeezing the trigger.	—	—
8. Squeeze the trigger again and hold it to the rear, at the same time manually retracting and releasing the slide. Release the trigger. You should hear a click. The hammer should not fall.	—	—

**Performance Measures**

**GO**    **NO GO**

9. Check the single action by squeezing the trigger. The hammer should fall.

—        —

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

**Related**

TM 9-1005-317-10

**Load an M9 Pistol**  
**071-004-0003**

**Conditions:** Given an M9 pistol, a magazine loaded with 9-millimeter (mm) ammunition, and a requirement to load the pistol.

**Standards:** Seat the magazine fully in the magazine well and chamber a round.

**Performance Steps**

**WARNING**

The M9 pistol has single and double action firing modes. When the safety is set to FIRE, squeezing the trigger will automatically cock and fire the pistol (this is the double-action mode).

**Keep your finger away from the trigger until you intend to fire.**

1. Place safety lever in SAFE position.
2. Insert the loaded magazine into the pistol's magazine well until you hear a click when the magazine seats fully.
3. Point the pistol in a safe direction (usually at the target or skyward).
4. Retract the slide fully and release it. This strips a cartridge from the magazine and chambers it.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide the equipment listed in the task conditions statement. You can use dummy rounds to evaluate this task.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to load the M9 pistol so it will fire a round when he squeezes the trigger.

**Performance Measures**

	<u><b>GO</b></u>	<u><b>NO GO</b></u>
1. Place the safety lever in SAFE position.	_____	_____
2. Insert the loaded magazine into the magazine well.	_____	_____
3. Point the pistol in a safe direction (usually at the target or skyward).	_____	_____
4. Retract and release the slide to chamber a cartridge from the magazine.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

**Related**

TM 9-1005-317-10

Unload an M9 Pistol  
071-004-0004

**Conditions:** Given an M9 pistol, a loaded magazine, and a requirement to unload an M9 pistol.

**Standards:** Ammunition is removed from the pistol and magazine, the slide and hammer are at the forward position, and the decocking/safety lever is in the SAFE position.

**Performance Steps**

**WARNING**

The M9 pistol will fire single or double action. With the safety in the FIRE position, squeezing the trigger automatically cocks and fires the pistol. This is the double-action mode of firing the pistol. Keep your finger away from the trigger unless you intend to fire.

1. Remove the magazine and the ammunition from the pistol.
  - a. Place the safety lever in the SAFE position.
  - b. Depress the magazine release button, and remove the magazine from the pistol.
  - c. Point the pistol in a safe direction (usually at the target or skyward).
  - d. Retract the slide fully to remove the chambered cartridge.
  - e. Lock the slide to the rear using the slide stop. Visually inspect the chamber to make sure it is empty.
  - f. Release the slide. Ensure the safety lever is in the SAFE position.
2. Remove the ammunition from the magazine.
  - a. With one hand, hold the magazine upright, front end forward. With your thumb, firmly press down on the cartridge rim, and push forward. As the cartridge moves forward, tip the forward end of it up and out with your index finger.
  - b. Repeat the above steps until the magazine is empty.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide the equipment listed in the task conditions statement. You can use dummy rounds to evaluate this task.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to unload the M9 pistol and remove all ammunition from the magazine.

**Performance Measures**

GO    NO GO

1. Remove magazine and ammunition from the pistol.
2. Remove ammunition from magazine.

\_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
TM 9-1005-317-10



## Correct Malfunctions of an M9 Pistol

071-004-0005

**Conditions:** Given an M9 pistol; a loaded magazine; 9-mm ammunition; cleaning rod; bore brush; cleaning patches; small-arms swabs; cleaner, lubricant, preservative (CLP); cleaning brush; and a requirement to correct malfunctions on an M9 pistol.

**Standards:** Interruption in the cycle of functioning caused by faulty action of the pistol or faulty ammunition is eliminated without injury to personnel or damage to the pistol.

### Performance Steps

#### **WARNING:**

**During the following procedures always keep the pistol pointed in a safe direction.**

1. Perform immediate action.
  - a. When the slide is fully forward and the pistol fails to fire, apply immediate action as follows:
    - (1) Ensure the safety lever is in FIRE position.
    - (2) Squeeze the trigger again.
    - (3) If the pistol does not fire, ensure that the magazine is fully seated, retract the slide to the rear, and release.
    - (4) Squeeze the trigger.
    - (5) If the pistol still does not fire, remove the magazine and retract the slide to eject the chambered cartridge. Insert a new magazine, retract the slide, and release to chamber another cartridge.
    - (6) Squeeze the trigger.
    - (7) If the pistol does not fire, replace the ammunition.
    - (8) If the pistol fails to fire again, clear the pistol and perform remedial in accordance with (IAW) step 2.
  - b. When the slide is not fully seated forward, remove finger from the trigger. With the other hand, try to push the slide fully forward. If the slide will not move forward, proceed as follows:
    - (1) Place safety lever in SAFE position.
    - (2) Remove the magazine.
    - (3) Grasp the slide and retract it to the rear, locking it with the slide stop.
    - (4) Inspect the chamber and remove any obstructions.
    - (5) Insert another loaded magazine into the pistol.
    - (6) Release the slide.
    - (7) Place the safety lever in the FIRE position, aim, and squeeze the trigger.
    - (8) If the pistol does not fire, clear the pistol and perform remedial action IAW step 2.
2. Perform remedial action.
  - a. Ensure the pistol is clear.
  - b. Disassemble the pistol and inspect for dirty, corroded, missing, or damaged parts.
  - c. Clean dirty or corroded parts. Replace missing or damaged parts.
  - d. Lubricate and assemble the pistol.
  - e. Inspect magazine for damaged parts. Replace magazine if necessary.
  - f. Check for dirty or damaged ammunition. Clean or replace ammunition.
  - g. Perform a function check.
  - h. Load the pistol and try to fire.
  - i. If the pistol does not fire, clear the pistol and notify your supervisor.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide equipment and materials listed in conditions. Use performance steps in the training outline to evaluate performance of the task.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier that the pistol has stopped firing. Tell the soldier to perform immediate and remedial action on the pistol.

**Performance Measures**

- 1. Perform immediate action.
- 2. Perform remedial action.

<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
TM 9-1005-317-10

**Engage Targets with an M9 Pistol**  
**071-004-0006**

**Conditions:** Given an M9 pistol, one or more loaded magazines, and targets within range.

**Standards:** Upon acquiring a target - (1) Insert a magazine in the pistol and chamber a round. (2) Grip the pistol properly, assume a firing stance, and fire the round(s) at the target, suppressing, injuring, or killing the target. (3) Perform immediate action on the pistol if it fails to fire. (4) Immediately clear the pistol after firing.

**Performance Steps**

1. Identify the target(s). The most likely target you will engage is an enemy soldier on foot.
2. Load the pistol in accordance with (IAW) Task 071-004-0003, Load an M9 Pistol.
3. Apply the fundamentals of quick fire.

**NOTE: To fire quickly without using the pistol sights, use the pistol as an extension of your arm.**

- a. To use the pistol grip, hold the pistol in your nonfiring hand. Form a "V" with the thumb and forefinger of your firing hand.
- b. Place the pistol in the "V", with the sights in line with your firing arm.
- c. Hold your upper arm close to your body, and your forearm at about a 45-degree angle.
- d. Wrap your lower three fingers around the grip, putting equal pressure to the rear with all three fingers (Figure 1).
- e. Place your thumb alongside the pistol without applying any pressure.
- f. Place your trigger finger on the trigger so that it can be pulled to the rear.
- g. Tightly grip the pistol until your hand begins to tremble. Relax until the trembling stops. At this point, you have applied the necessary pressure for a solid grip.

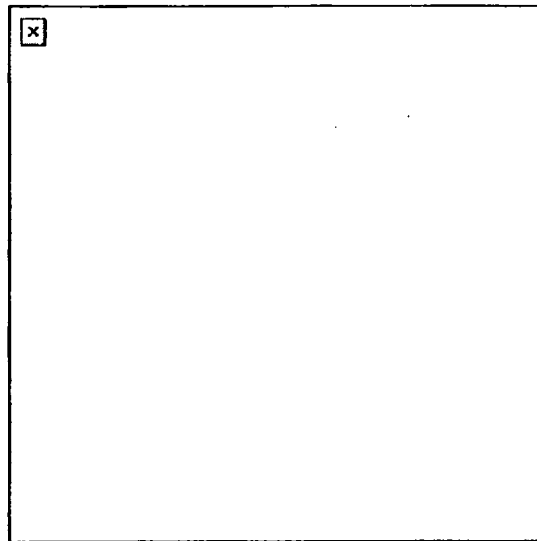


Figure 1. Pistol ready position, one-hand grip.

**NOTE: If you relax any of your three fingers on the grip, you must reapply the entire grip.**

4. Choose one of the following supported or unsupported grips:

**Performance Steps**

- a. Supported grip. The only supported grip is the one-hand grip (Figure 2). Begin by gripping the weapon as previously described (Task Step 3). Allow the thumb of your firing hand to rest without pressure beside your weapon. Place your trigger finger, between the tip and the second joint, on the trigger, so you can squeeze the trigger to the rear. Your trigger finger must work independently of your other fingers.

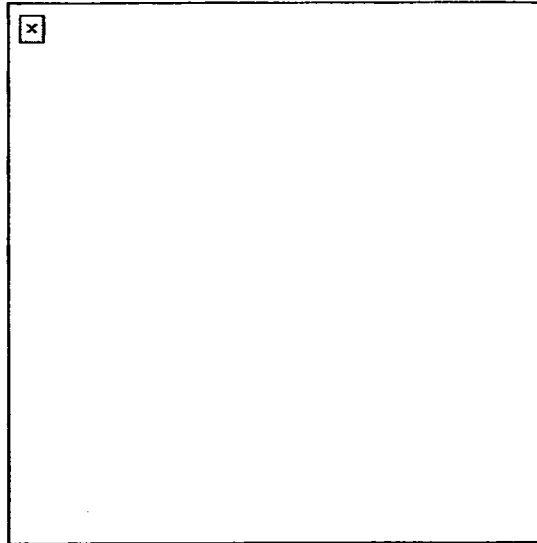


Figure 2. One-hand grip.

- b. Unsupported grips. You may use any of three nonfiring hand grips to support your firing hand (Figures 3, 4, and 5).
  - (1) Fist grip (Figure 3). Begin by gripping the weapon as previously described (Task Step 3). Firmly close the fingers of your nonfiring hand over the fingers of your firing hand. Make sure the index finger of your nonfiring hand is between the middle finger of your firing hand and the guard. Place your nonfiring thumb beside your firing thumb.

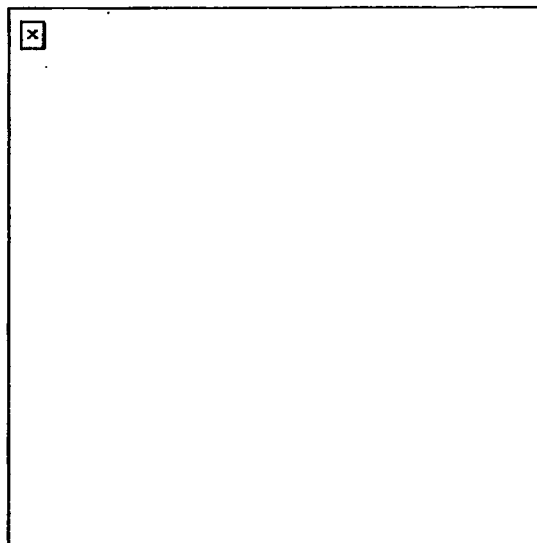


Figure 3. Fist grip.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** The M9 pistol has a recurved trigger guard, which allows you to place the index finger of your nonfiring hand on the front of the trigger guard if you wish.

- (2) Palm-supported grip (Figure 4). Begin by gripping the weapon as previously described (Task Step 3). Place your nonfiring hand under your firing hand. Wrap your nonfiring fingers around the back of your firing hand. Place your nonfiring thumb over the middle finger of your firing hand.

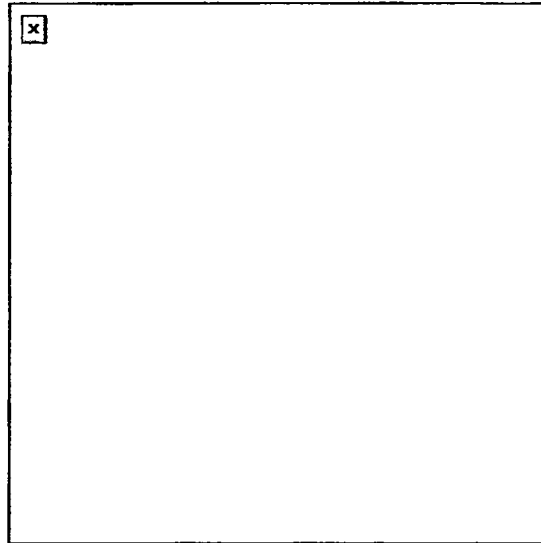


Figure 4. Palm-supported grip.

- (3) Weaver grip (Figure 5). Apply this grip the same as the fist grip, but wrap your nonfiring thumb over your firing thumb.

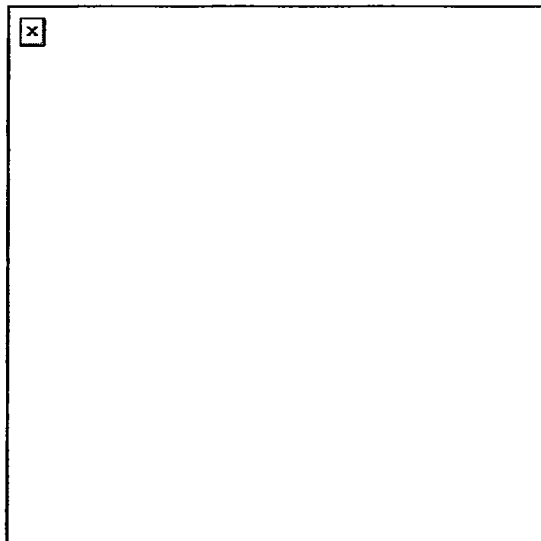


Figure 5. Weaver grip.

5. Select the most stable firing position with the best cover. Consider the following positions:
  - a. Prone (Figure 6). To assume the prone position—
    - (1) Lie flat on the ground, facing the target.

**Performance Steps**

- (2) Extend your arms to the front, with your firing arm locked.
- (3) Wrap your nonfiring hand around either the wrist or the fingers of your firing hand.
- (4) Face forward. Keep your head down between your arms and behind the weapon.

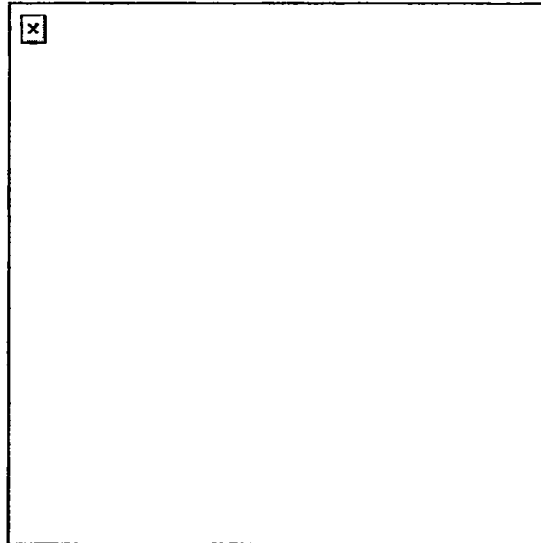


Figure 6. Prone position.

- b. Standing-with-support (Figure 7). To assume this position--
  - (1) Use available cover for support. For example, stand behind a tree or wall.
  - (2) Stand behind a barricade, with your firing side in line with the edge of the barricade.
  - (3) Place the palm of your nonfiring hand at eye level on the edge of the barricade, and extend your thumb past the edge of the barricade.
  - (4) Lock the elbow of your firing arm. Rest your forearm on the extended thumb of your nonfiring hand.
  - (5) Move the foot on your nonfiring side forward until your toe touches the bottom of the barricade.

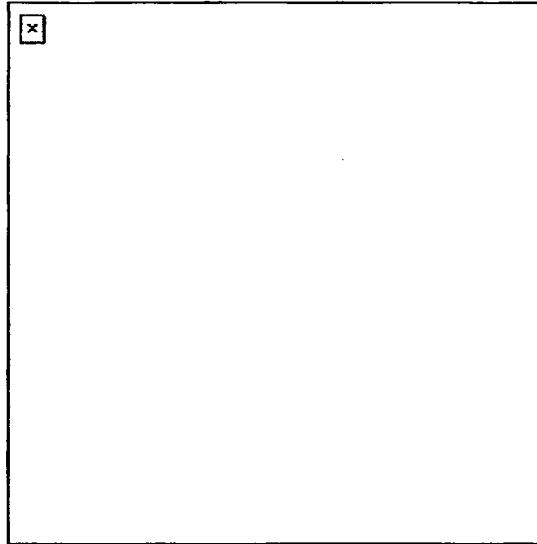
**Performance Steps**

Figure 7. Standing-with-support position.

- c. Kneeling (Figure 8). To assume this position--
- (1) Use available cover, such as a low wall, rocks, or a vehicle that you can fire over, for support.
  - (2) Place your firing knee on the ground. Put your left knee down to fire left-handed, or your right knee down to fire right-handed.
  - (3) Bend your other knee. Place the foot on your nonfiring side flat on the ground, pointing toward the target. Extend your arms over available cover and use it for support.
  - (4) Lock the wrist and elbow of your firing arm.
  - (5) Wrap your nonfiring hand around your firing fist or wrist to support your firing arm.

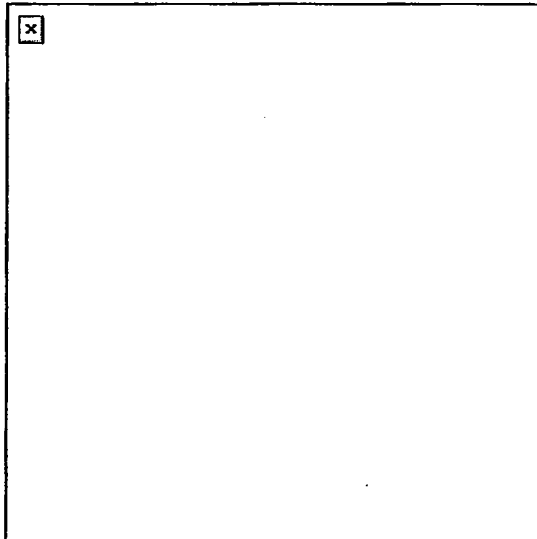


Figure 8. Kneeling position.

**NOTE:** This position could silhouette you, making you a better target. When possible, fire around the sides of walls, rocks, or vehicles instead of over them.

**Performance Steps**

- d. Standing-without-support position (Figure 9). To assume this position--
  - (1) Face the target.
  - (2) Place your feet a comfortable distance apart.
  - (3) Wrap your nonfiring hand around the fist or wrist of your firing hand. Lock the wrist and elbow of your firing arm toward the target.
  - (4) Keep your body straight.

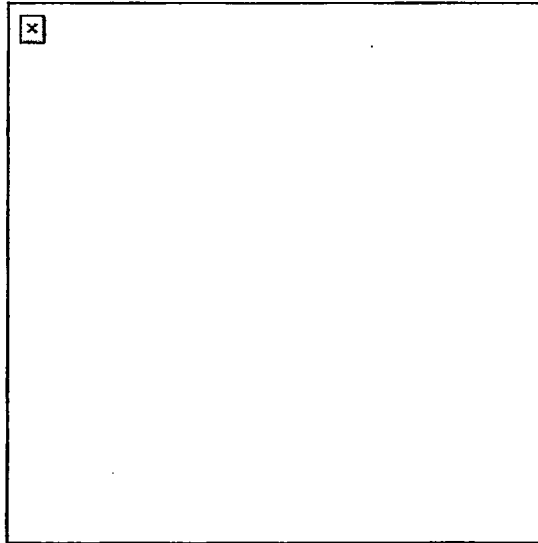


Figure 9. Standing-without-support position.

- e. Crouching (Figure 10). This position is the same as the standing-without-support position, except you must bend your knees slightly. Balance by leaning forward at the waist.

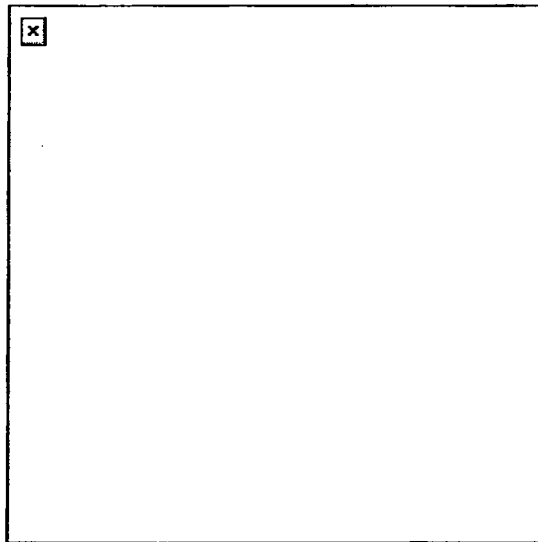


Figure 10. Crouching position.

6. Apply the fundamentals of marksmanship.
  - a. Pistol grip. To obtain a proper pistol grip--



Performance Steps

- (1) Place the pistol in the "V" formed by the thumb and forefinger of your firing hand. Line the sights up with your firing arm. Wrap your lower three fingers around the pistol. Grip with your middle finger under the trigger guard. Exert equal pressure on all three lower fingers to the rear, back through the wrist and forearm (Figure 1).
- (2) Rest your thumb on top of your middle finger when gripping the pistol. Do not exert any downward pressure.
- (3) Grip the pistol firmly, but not so firmly that your hand trembles.
- b. Sight alignment. To sight properly--
  - (1) Align the front sight blade in the rear sight notch so that an equal amount of light shows on either side of the front sight. Ensure the top of the front and rear sight are even.
  - (2) Relax as much as possible.
  - (3) Maintain the correct sight alignment, and focus on the front sight.
  - (4) Squeeze the trigger with a steadily increasing pressure straight to the rear, taking care not to disturb the sight alignment until after the hammer falls.

**NOTE:** When there is more than one target, choose the target that is the greatest danger. This is often the closest target.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Evaluate this task during daylight on a 9-millimeter (mm) Combat Pistol Qualification Course. Provide the soldier with 8 magazines and 52 rounds of live ammunition.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to use his own pistol. Tell the soldier he must hit 25 of the 30 targets using correct engagement techniques.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Assume the firing positions:	—	—
a. Assume the prone position.		
b. Assume the standing-with-support position.		
c. Assume the standing-without-support position.		
d. Assume the kneeling position.		
e. Assume the crouching position.		
2. Apply the fundamentals of marksmanship.	—	—
3. Engage the targets:	—	—
a. From the prone position.		
b. From the standing-with-support position.		
c. From the standing-without-support position.		
d. From the kneeling position.		
e. From the crouching position.		

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

References  
Required

Related  
FM 3-23.35  
TM 9-1005-317-10

Subject Area 5: Weapons - MK19

**Maintain an MK19 Machine Gun**  
**071-030-0001**

**Conditions:** Given an MK19 machine gun, an M3 tripod, a traversing and elevating (T&E) mechanism, an M64 cradle mount; rifle bore cleaner (RBC), lubricant oil (LSA), or lubricating oil (LSAT or LAW); grease (GMD); cleaning solvent (PD680); wiping rags or cloth (abrasive crocus); a cleaning rod assembly and a small arms cleaning brush; linked 40-mm ammunition and one spent 40-millimeter (mm) cartridge case.

**Standards:** Clean and lubricate the MK 19 and its components. Inspect all parts and turn in those in need of maintenance. Reassemble the gun so that it is operational. Clean and inspect ammunition for serviceability, and turn in any unserviceable ammunition.

**Performance Steps**

1. Clear the MK 19.
  - a. Place the safe/fire switch in the safe (S) position. Ensure the bolt is forward.
  - b. Open the top cover and inspect the feed tray and extractors on the bolt face to ensure that no round is in the pickup position.
  - c. Unlock and pull charger handle 2 to 3 inches to the rear; inspect the face of the bolt and the chamber for ammunition.
  - d. Return the bolt to the forward position and rotate the charger handle to the locked position.
2. Disassemble the MK 19.
  - a. Remove the feed throat assembly (Figure 1). Squeeze the two sets of grip pins together and pull them straight out.
  - b. Remove the bolt and back plate assembly.

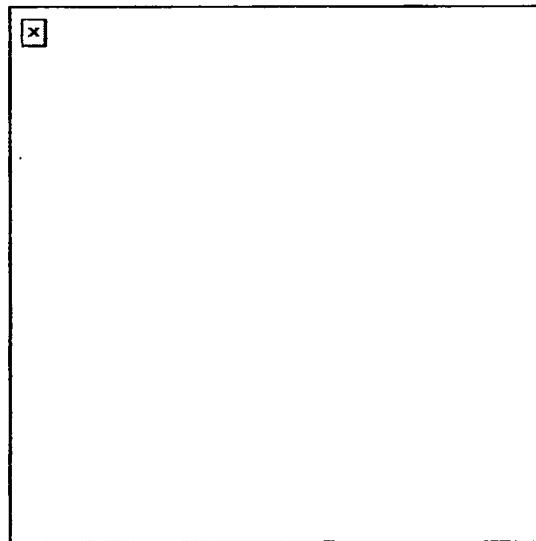


Figure 1. Removal of feed throat assembly

**WARNING**

**Make sure the bolt is in the forward position before you remove the back plate pin assembly. Failure to observe this warning will result in inquiry.**

- (1) Place the safe/fire switch on fire (F).
- (2) Open the top cover.

**Performance Steps**

- (3) Using the rim of a spent cartridge, pull the back plate pin straight out (Figure 2).

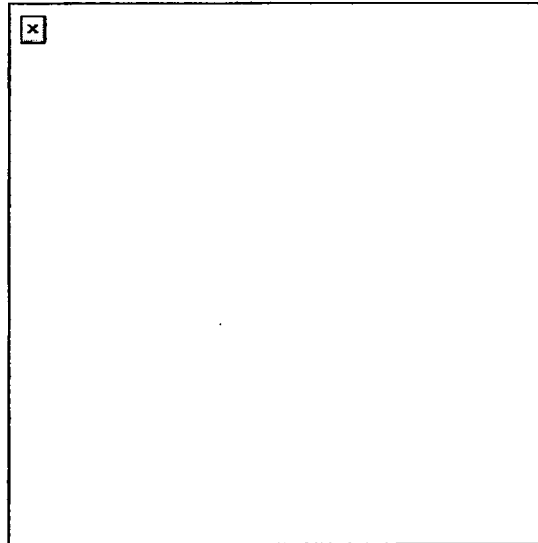


Figure 2. Removal of backplate pin.

- (4) Lift up slightly on the back plate assembly. Slowly pull the bolt and back plate assembly out of the receiver.
- (5) Support the bolt with one hand and maintain a control grip with the other hand. Lift the bolt up slightly and remove it (Figure 3).

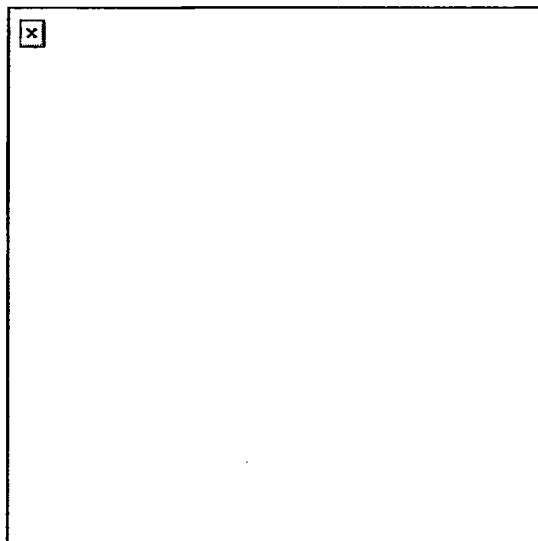


Figure 3. Removal of bolt and backplate assembly.

- c. Remove the primary drive lever and vertical cam assembly.

**CAUTION**

**Do not rest the vertical cam assembly on its chromed surface.**

- (1) Reach under the top of the receiver to locate the drive lever lock on the vertical cam assembly and slide the lock rearward about 1/4 inch (Figure 4).

**Performance Steps**

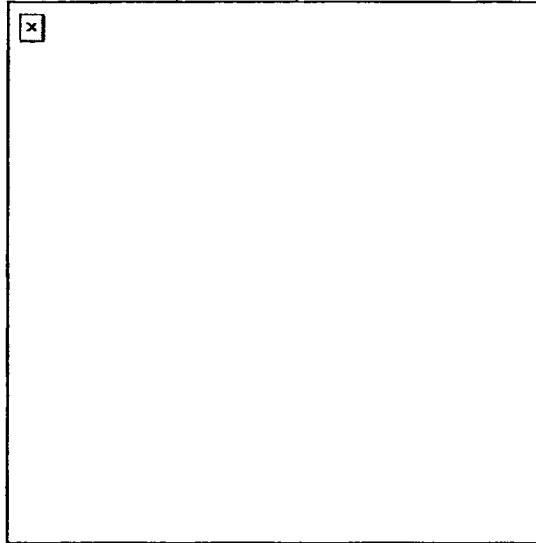


Figure 4. Primary drive lever and vertical cam assembly.

- (2) Press down on the primary drive lever's pivot post. This releases the primary drive lever and vertical cam assembly (Figure 5).

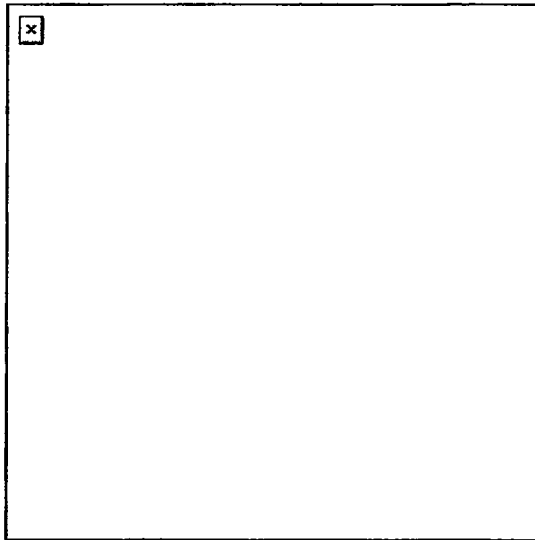


Figure 5. Removal of the primary drive lever and vertical cam assembly.

- (3) Pull out the cam (to the rear) and the lever from the receiver.
- d. Remove secondary drive lever.
- (1) Push down on the pivot post from the outside top cover. This releases the secondary drive lever (Figure 6).

**Performance Steps**

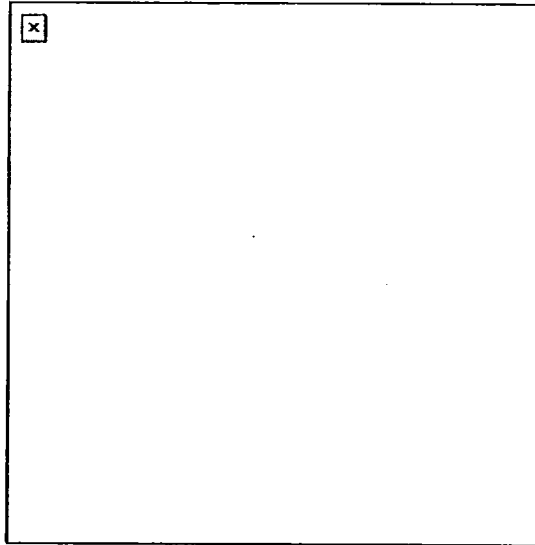


Figure 6. Removal of the secondary drive lever.

- (2) Lift out the secondary drive lever from the top cover (Figure 7).

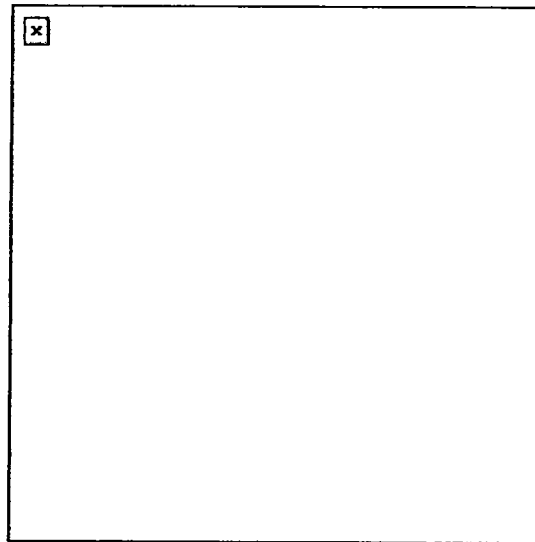


Figure 7. Secondary drive lever.

- e. Remove the feed slide assembly (Figure 8).

### Performance Steps

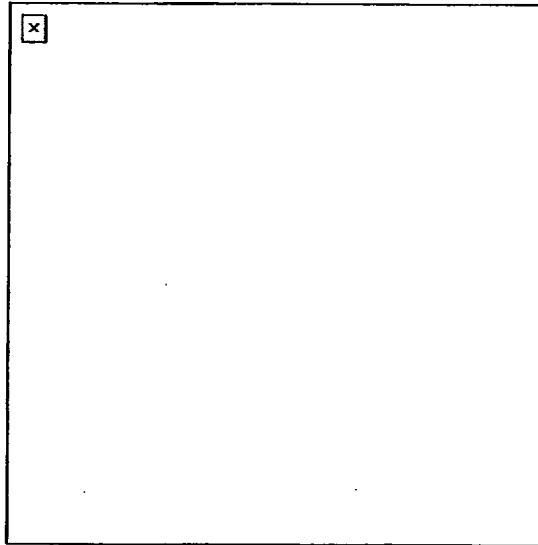


Figure 8. Removal of the feed slide assembly.

- (1) Pivot the tray that holds the feed slide assembly out of the top cover.
  - (2) Move the feed slide assembly to line up the tabs with the slots in the tray.
  - (3) Lift upward on the feed slide assembly.
- f. Remove the top cover assembly and feed tray (Figure 9).

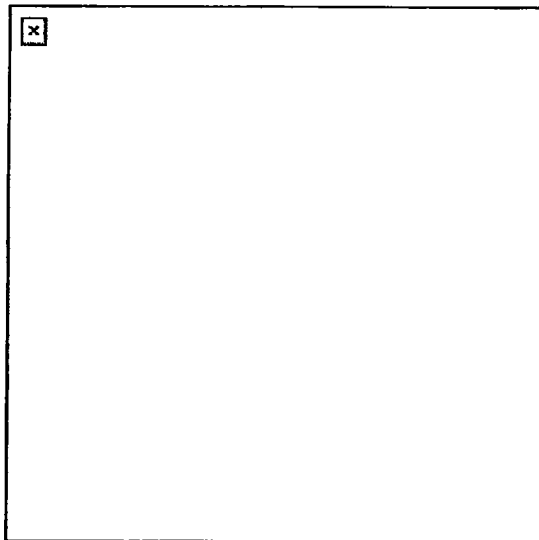


Figure 9. Removal of the top cover assembly and feed tray.

#### **CAUTION**

Using your fingers only, not pliers, revive and insert the top cover pins. Forcing the pin could break the small cross pin on the rod.

**NOTE:** The feed tray must be down for you to remove the top cover pins.

- (1) Hold the top cover straight up to align the end of the cross pin.
- (2) Pull straight out on the pins.

**Performance Steps**

- (3) Lift off the top cover.
  - (4) Lift the tray out of the feeder.
- g. Remove the alignment guide assembly (Figure 10).

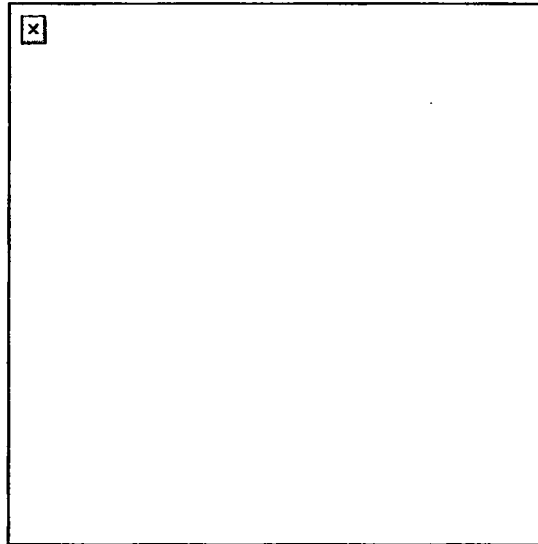


Figure 10. Removal of the alignment guide assembly.

- (1) Depress the flat leaf spring by using a cartridge link toggle (male end) or a small tool.
  - (2) Slide the alignment guide toward the feeder mouth.
  - (3) Pull rearward on the alignment guide and lift it out.
- h. Remove the ogive plunger by pulling it out (Figure 11).

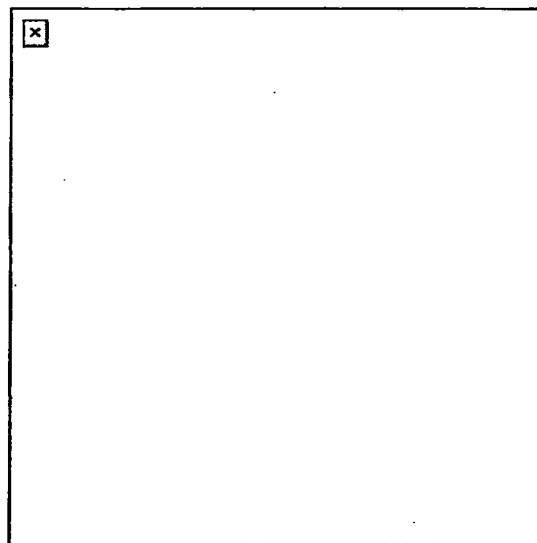


Figure 11. Removal of the ogive plunger.

- i. Remove the round positioning block (Figure 12).

**Performance Steps**

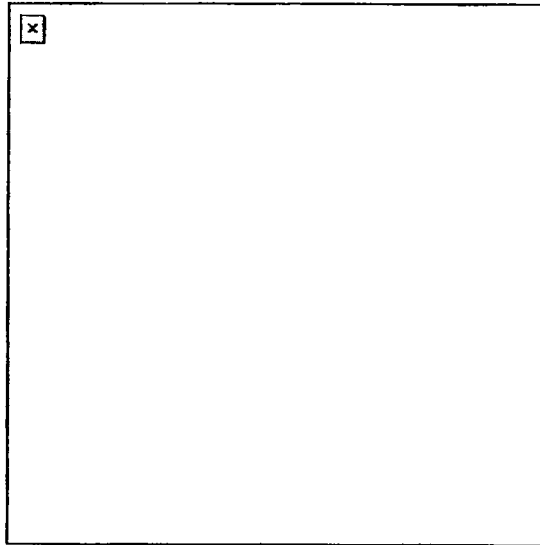


Figure 12. Removal of the round positioning block.

- (1) Grasp the two control grips with both hands and lift up slightly to disengage the back plate from the locking lugs in the receiver.
  - (2) Pull the round positioning block toward the muzzle end of gun.
- j. Remove the charger assemblies (both sides) (Figure 13).

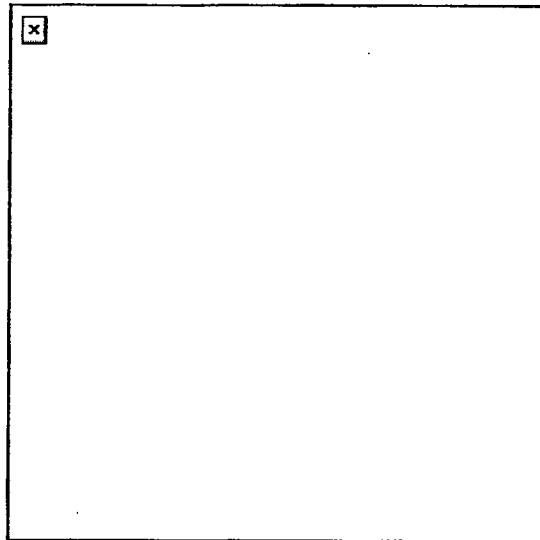


Figure 13. Removal of the charger assembly.

- (1) Rotate the charger handle up.
  - (2) Using either your fingers or a spent case, pry out on the lip of the lock plunger.
  - (3) Lift up on the lock plunger to retract it; slide the charger assembly all the way to the rear.
  - (4) Pull the charger assembly away from the receiver.
- k. Remove the receiver sear assembly (Figure 14).



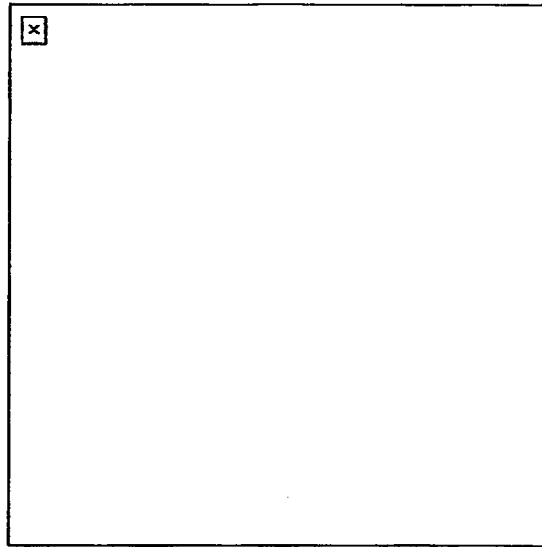
**Performance Steps**

Figure 14. Removal of the receiver sear assembly.

- (1) Turn the receiver on its top. Put the safe/fire switch in fire (F) position.
- (2) Lift up slightly on the lock pin with your fingers, using a cartridge link.
- (3) Squeeze the receiver sear (underneath the safety) and simultaneously rotate the sear housing assembly approximately 15 degrees in either direction.
- (4) Press down on the sear housing assembly and rotate the assembly until it stops (90 degrees from its original position).
- (5) Press the receiver sear and safety together while you put safe/fire switch on safe (S). This locks the sear in the down position and keeps you from accidentally losing the sear spring.
- (6) Lift out the sear housing assembly.

3. Clean the parts of the MK 19.

**NOTE: Do not reverse the direction of the bore brush while it is in the bore.**

- a. Clean the receiver assembly (Figure 15).

## Performance Steps

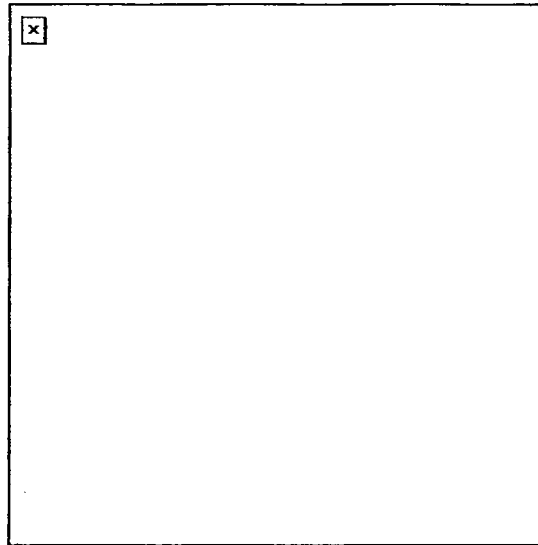


Figure 15. Receiver assembly.

- (1) Apply solvent to a rag or brush. Wipe or brush dirt away from all parts, especially the interior of the receiver housing, receiver rails, and feeder.
- (2) Swab out the bore and chamber, using a bore brush and RBC.
- (3) Wipe all parts dry.
- b. Clean the receiver sear assembly (Figure 14).
  - (1) Use only cleaning solvent on a rag or brush.
  - (2) Wipe or brush away dirt.
  - (3) Wipe dry.

### **WARNING**

**Never immerse the sear housing assembly in solvent. Solvent may dilute the lubricant inside the sear housing.**

- c. Clean the alignment guide assembly, ogive plunger, round positioning block, and secondary drive lever: Wipe or brush off dirt and dry.

### **WARNING**

**Never immerse the ogive plunger assembly in solvent.**

- d. Clean the charger assemblies.
  - (1) Apply cleaning solvent to a rag or brush, and wipe or brush off any dirt.
  - (2) Wipe dry.
- e. Clean the vertical cam assembly, primary drive lever, feed slide assembly, and feed tray.
  - (1) Soak in cleaning solvent.
  - (2) Wipe or brush off dirt.
  - (3) Wipe dry.
- f. Clean the top cover assembly.
  - (1) Apply cleaning solvent to a rag or brush and wipe or brush off dirt from all parts.
  - (2) Wipe all surfaces dry.
- g. Clean the bolt and back plate assembly.
  - (1) Apply cleaning solvent to rag or brush and wipe or brush off dirt from all parts.
  - (2) Wipe all surfaces dry.
4. Clean the components.
  - a. Clean the T&E mechanism.
    - (1) Remove foreign matter with a clean, dry wiping rag.
    - (2) Use small arms cleaning brush to clean the numbers on the scale.

**Performance Steps**

- b. Clean the M3 tripod, MK64 gun cradle mount, and pintle.
    - (1) Use a cleaning swab saturated with carbon removing compound to remove dirt.
    - (2) Wipe all parts dry with clean wiping rags.
- 5. Clean ammunition: Remove foreign matter with a clean, dry wiping rag.
- 6. Inspect all MK 19 parts for serviceability.
  - a. Receiver assembly.
    - (1) Check the receiver housing for cracks and rust.
    - (2) Check the receiver rails for burrs and cracked welds.
    - (3) Check the feeder pawls for burrs and lack of spring action. Check the pins for retention.
    - (4) Check the barrel for carbon buildup and pitting in the bore and chamber.
    - (5) Check the flash suppressor for dents, cracks, and erosion. Make sure minimal movement is maintained.
    - (6) Check the rear sight for rust, binding, and broken or bent parts.
  - b. Receiver sear assembly.
    - (1) Check for burrs on all parts.
    - (2) Closely inspect the rear shoulder for burrs.
  - c. Alignment guide assembly.
    - (1) Check the alignment guide spring for deformity, cracks, and looseness.
    - (2) Check the pin for breaks and cracks.
  - d. Ogive plunger assembly and round positioning block.
    - (1) Check the ogive plunger head for burrs and broken parts.
    - (2) Check the round positioning block for weak spring action and loose or broken parts.
  - e. Charger assembly (left and right).
    - (1) Check the grooved edges for burrs and bends.
    - (2) Check the latches for spring action on detects.
    - (3) Check the entire charger assembly for cracks, burrs, bends, and chips.
  - f. Vertical cam assembly and primary drive lever.
    - (1) Check the vertical cam assembly for bends, burrs, pits, scratches, and aluminum buildup on chromed surface (mirrorlike surface).
    - (2) Check the drive lever lock for looseness or binding.
    - (3) Check the primary drive lever for burrs, especially around the pivot posts.
  - g. Secondary drive lever.
    - (1) Check for missing retaining ring from the pivot post.
    - (2) Check the pivot post and forked end for burrs.
  - h. Feed slide assembly and feed tray.
    - (1) Check the feed pawls and feed tray for burrs and binding.
    - (2) Check the guide rails for burrs.
  - i. Top cover assembly.
    - (1) Check the top cover housing for cracks and rust.
    - (2) Check the latch for binding, looseness, and breaks.
  - j. Bolt and back plate assembly.
    - (1) Check the cocking lever for chips, burrs, and breaks.
    - (2) Check the guide rods for binding and bends.
    - (3) Check the recoil spring for weak action: Position the bolt end against a hard, flat surface and push up and down on back plate assembly.
    - (4) Check the back plate pin for missing retaining spring.
    - (5) Check the safety wire for looseness and breaks, or if missing.
  - k. Report any deficiencies to your supervisor.
- 7. Inspect all components for serviceability.
  - a. T&E mechanism.
    - (1) Inspect the handwheels for smooth operation and rust. Check the threads for burrs and rust.

**Performance Steps**

- (2) Check the traversing slide lock for spring action. Make sure the elevating mechanism sleeve fits on the traversing bar and clamps firmly.
  - (3) Check the traversing and elevating scales for legibility.
  - (4) Inspect the quick release pin and chain for burrs and rust; check for missing spring-loaded balls.
  - b. M3 Tripod.
    - (1) Check for completeness of tripod; make sure all nuts and bolts are tightly secured.
    - (2) Check for cracks on the legs and tripod head.
    - (3) Check for missing, broken, or inoperative lock latch.
    - (4) Check the pintle lock release cam for correct operation.
    - (5) Check the locking action of the front leg clamping assembly.
    - (6) Make sure the rear legs lock in the open position, the sleeve latch notch and the right leg slide notch engage completely, and the latch spring has good tension.
    - (7) Check the telescoping, indexing, and locking actions of rear legs and front leg locking assembly.
  - c. MK 64 gun cradle mount.
    - (1) Check for missing or damaged parts.
    - (2) Check for rust, cracks, and burrs.
    - (3) Inspect pintle lock assembly for nut, bolt, and cotter pin. Check the pintle surface for burrs and rust.
  - d. Report any deficiencies to supervisor.
8. Inspect ammunition for damage and corrosion. Turn in any unserviceable ammunition.
  9. Lubricate the MK 19 and components. Do not use cleaner, lubricant, preservative (CLP), and do not mix lubricants.

**CAUTION**

1. Never immerse the sear housing, ogive plunger, or bolt assemblies in cleaning solvent. Solvent could dilute the lubricant or grease inside.
2. Never lubricate the MK 19 with CLP.
3. Avoid mixing lubricants.
4. Completely wipe off all excess lubricant.
  - a. Lubricate lightly to moderately with LSAT, LSA, or GMD (never CLP). In cold weather (0 to -25 degrees Fahrenheit), use LSAT, LSA, GMD, or LAW. In extra cold weather (-25 degrees Fahrenheit and below), use LAW.
  - b. Apply lubricant to all weapon parts and surfaces except charger handles. Work in the lubricant by moving the parts.
  - c. Lubricate all components and wipe them with an oily rag to remove excess oil.
10. Assemble the MK 19 machine gun.
  - a. Attach the charger assemblies (both sides) (Figure 16).

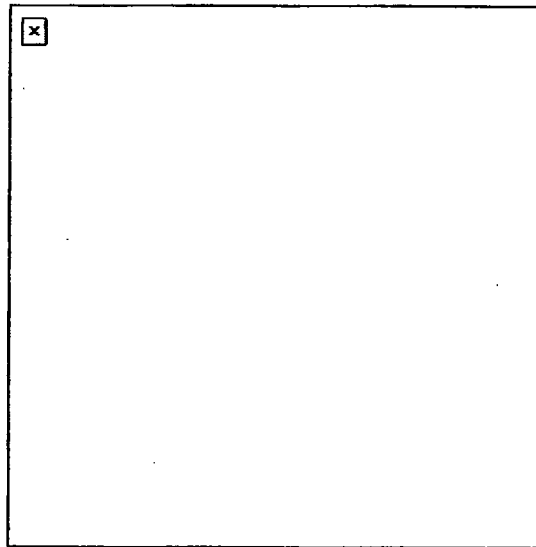
**Performance Steps**

Figure 16. Attachment of the charger assemblies.

- (1) Turn the receiver upright.
  - (2) Rotate the charger handles to the straight-up position.
  - (3) Line up the lugs on the charger with the slots in the receiver rail. Insert the charger lugs into the slots.
  - (4) Hold the charger tightly against the rail. Slide the charger forward until it locks into place.
- b. Attach the round positioning block (Figure 17).

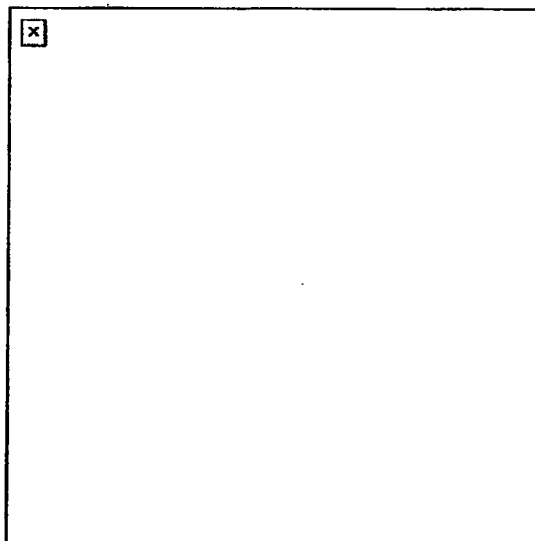


Figure 17. Attachment of the round positioning block.

- (1) Insert the blocks into the slots with the tang end forward.
  - (2) Push against the block and slide it toward the rear until the block locks into place.
- c. Insert the ogive plunger assembly into the opening.
- d. Insert the alignment guide assembly (Figure 18).

**Performance Steps**

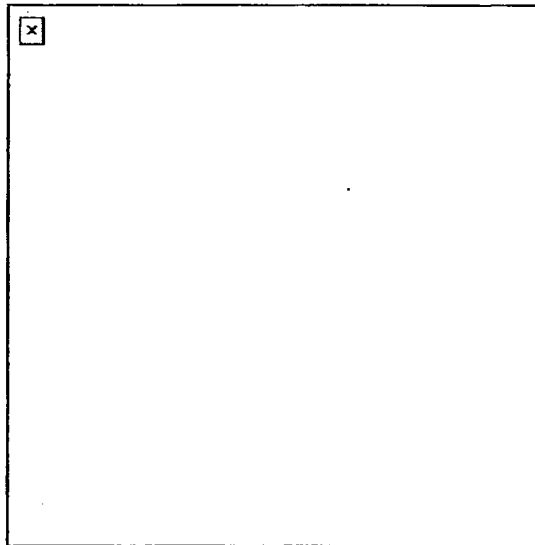


Figure 18. Insertion of the alignment guide assembly.

- (1) Position the alignment guide assembly so that the pin is lined up with the slot in the feeder wall.
  - (2) Hold the alignment guide against the front wall and slide the alignment guide into the receiver until it clicks.
- e. Attach the feed tray and feed slide assembly (Figure 19).

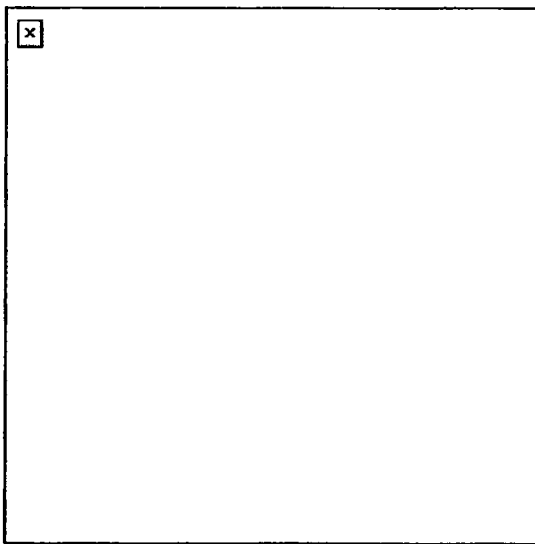


Figure 19. Attachment of the feed slide assembly.

- (1) Place the tray in the top of the feeder, recessed side up.
  - (2) The pinholes on the tray should line up with the lugs on the receiver.
  - (3) Position the feed slide assembly by lining up the tabs with the slots on the tray.
  - (4) Insert the tabs into the slots. Drop the feed slide assembly into the tray and move it slightly to ensure engagement.
- f. Attach the top cover assembly (Figure 20).

## Performance Steps

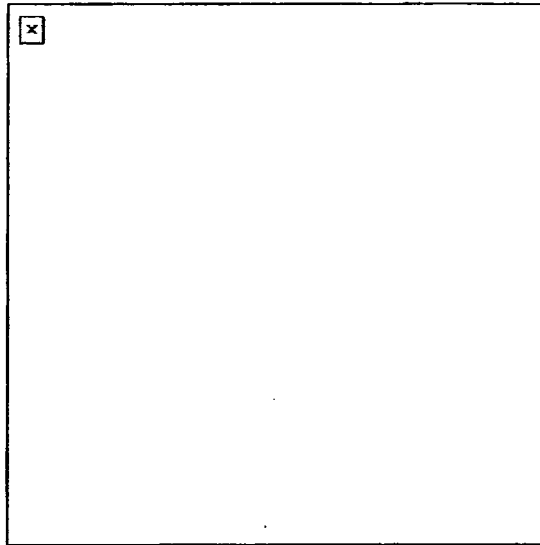


Figure 20. Attachment of the top cover assembly.

- (1) Ensure the feed tray is in the proper place in the receiver.
- (2) Place the top cover on the receiver. Line up the pinholes on the cover with the receiver's lug end and the pinholes on the feed tray.
- (3) Hold the top cover straight up. Insert the top cover pins on both sides. Fully insert the cross pin. Rotate the top cover so that it is fully open.

**WARNING**

To avoid breaking the cross pin, be sure to insert it fully into the receiver before you close the top cover.

- g. Engage the secondary drive lever (Figure 21).

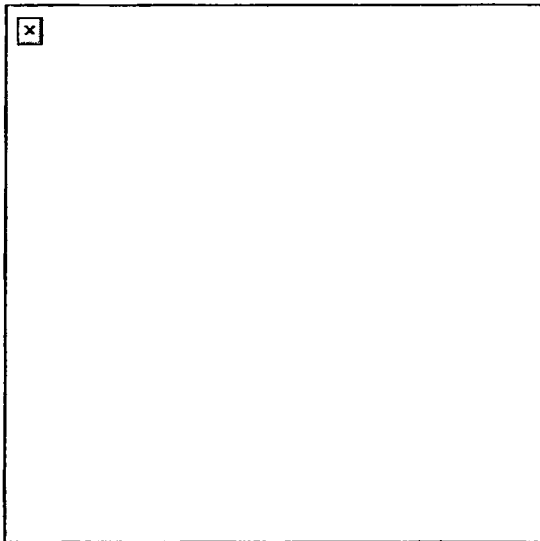


Figure 21. Engaging the secondary drive lever.

- (1) Rotate the feed slide assembly and tray upward.
- (2) Engage the forked end of the secondary drive lever with the feed slide pin.

**Performance Steps**

- (3) Press the raised pivot post through the hole in the stop cover.
- (4) Press the secondary drive lever against the top cover until it locks into place.

**CAUTION**

**Be sure to engage the secondary drive lever with the feed slide pin, or the gun will not fire.**

- h. Engage the vertical cam assembly (Figure 22).

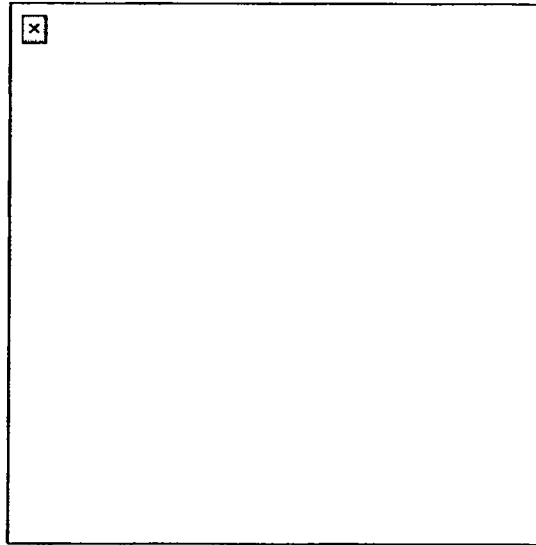


Figure 22. Engaging the vertical cam assembly.

- (1) Slide the vertical cam assembly through the rear of the receiver. The raised portion should slide over the top of the receiver. The drive lever lock should be underneath.
  - (2) Engage the forked end in the notch.
- i. Engage the primary lever (Figure 23).

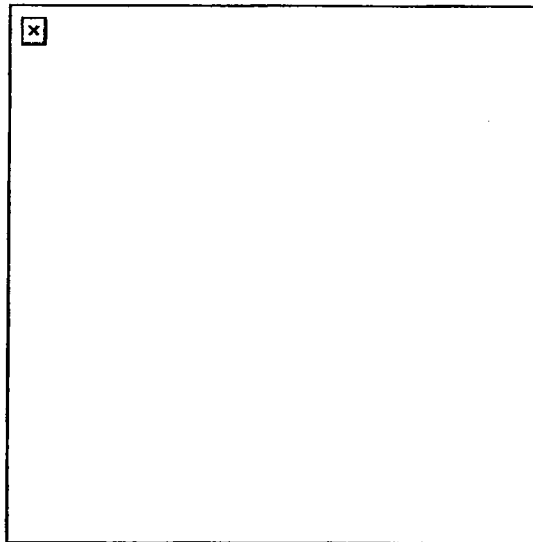


Figure 23. Engaging the primary drive lever.

- (1) Hold the vertical cam assembly in place and slide the primary drive lever into the receiver.



**Performance Steps**

- (2) Slide the primary drive lever lock to the rear and engage the pivot post lever through the holes in the receiver and vertical cam.
  - (3) Slide the primary drive lever lock forward. (The primary drive lever lock is located on the vertical cam just beneath the top of the receiver).
- j. Insert the bolt and backplate assembly (Figure 24).

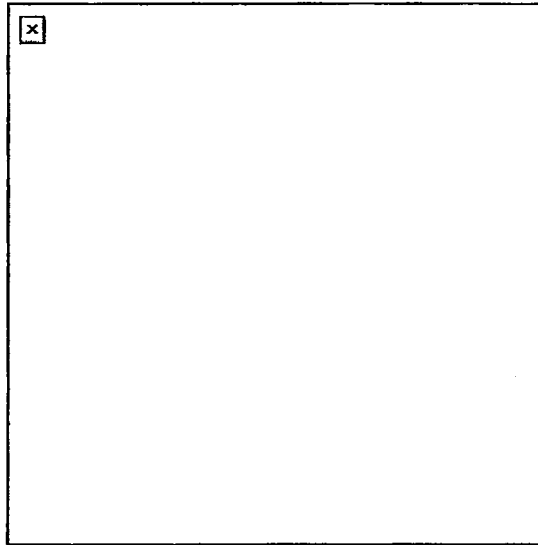


Figure 24. Insertion of the bolt and backplate assembly.

- (1) Place the safe/fire switch in the fire (F) position.
- (2) Press the receiver sear using your thumbs or the rim of a cartridge case.
- (3) Make sure the cocking lever is cocked and forward.
- (4) Slide the bolt and back plate assembly all the way forward.
- (5) Insert the back plate pin to lock the assembly in place.
- (6) Close the cover.

**WARNING**

Before inserting the bolt and back plate assembly, put the cocking lever in the forward position.

**CAUTION**

Before closing the top cover, always make sure the secondary drive lever engages the feed slide pin, the feed slide assembly is to the left, and the bolt is forward. Never try to force the top cover closed. Doing so could damage the weapon.

- k. Attach the receiver sear assembly (Figure 25).

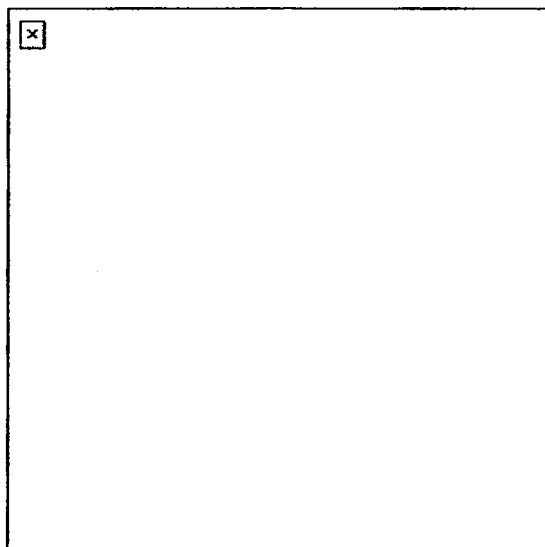
**Performance Steps**

Figure 25. Attachment of the receiver sear assembly.

- (1) Turn the receiver over on its top.
- (2) Place the sear housing on the receiver and line up the sear housing assembly at a right angle to the barrel center line.
- (3) Put the safe/fire switch on fire (F) position.
- (4) Press down and rotate the housing assembly until it stops.
- (5) Press up on the sear and rotate it until it locks in position.
- I. Attach the feed throat assembly.
  - (1) Squeeze the grip pins and align them with the holes in the receiver.
  - (2) Release the grip pins to attach the feed throat.

11. Perform a function check to make sure you have assembled the weapon correctly (see Task 071-030-0007, Perform a Function Check on a MK 19 Machine Gun).

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide the soldier with the equipment listed in the task conditions statement. Use the performance steps in the training outline to evaluate the soldier's performance of the task.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to perform operator level maintenance on the MK 19 and to perform a function check to ensure the weapon functions correctly.

**Performance Measures**

1. Clear the weapon.
2. Disassemble the weapon without damaging any parts.
3. Clean the weapon parts.
4. Clean the components.
5. Clean the ammunition.
6. Inspect all parts, components, and ammunition for serviceability.
7. Report all deficiencies to your supervisor.

**GO    NO GO**

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Performance Measures**

	<u><b>GO</b></u>	<u><b>NO GO</b></u>
8. Lubricate the weapon parts and components using the correct lubricant and lubrication techniques.	—	—
9. Assemble the weapon in the correct sequence without damaging any parts.	—	—
10. Perform a function check.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

**Related**

FM 23-27

TM 9-1010-230-10

**Prepare a Range Card for an MK19 Machine Gun**  
**071-030-0002**

**Conditions:** Given a MK 19 machine gun mounted on an M3 tripod with traversing and elevating (T&E) mechanism, a primary and secondary sector of fire, a principal direction of fire (PDF), lensatic compass, 1:50,000 military map of the area, blank range card, pencil, and a requirement to prepare a range card for the MK 19.

**Standards:** Prepare a range card. Sketch terrain, primary and secondary sectors of fire, and all appropriate military symbols. Include data for all predetermined targets.

**Performance Steps**

1. Position the MK 19 with the muzzle pointing in the direction of the PDF.
2. Record the gun number, squad or unit designation (no higher than company for security reasons), and date in the data section. In a mechanized unit, include the squad designation.
3. Sketch in the basic military symbol for the MK 19 in the lower center of the range card pointing in the direction of the PDF.

**NOTE:** Until a military symbol is adopted for the MK 19, use the basic machine gun symbol with 40-mm in parentheses.

4. Orient the range card so that the MK 19 symbol on the range card and the muzzle of the MK 19 are pointing in the same direction. Use the lensatic compass to determine magnetic north, and in the magnetic north block, sketch the magnetic north symbol with the arrow pointing in the direction indicated by the compass.
5. Identify and record the gun position.
  - a. Orient the gun position with a prominent terrain feature (one that is recognizable on the map).
  - b. Sketch in the terrain feature on the range card in the lower left or right hand corner.
  - c. Determine the magnetic azimuth in mils or degrees to or from the terrain feature and the MK 19 position. Draw a line between the two. Add arrow barbs along the line, pointing in the direction the magnetic azimuth was taken.
  - d. Record the distance in meters above the barbed line. Record the magnetic azimuth in mils or degrees below the line.
  - e. If a prominent terrain feature is not available within 1,000 meters, identify the gun position by writing in its eight-digit grid coordinate in the position-identification block.
6. Sketch in the left and right limits of the primary sector of fire (PDF should be in the center of this sector).
7. Draw a sketch of the terrain to the front of the gun position. Include prominent and manmade features that could be likely targets.
8. Label the targets in the primary sector in order of priority. Label the PDF as 1.
9. Sketch in secondary sector of fire using a broken line.
10. Record the direction and elevation to each target in the primary sector.
  - a. Center the traversing handwheel.
  - b. Lock the left edge of the traversing slide on the zero (0) graduation on the traversing bar.
  - c. Shift the tripod by moving the trailing legs until the muzzle of the gun is laid on the center of the target.
  - d. Dig in or sandbag the tripod legs.
  - e. Adjust the T&E mechanism until the MK 19 lays on the center base of a point target or on either flank of a linear target.

**Performance Steps**

- f. Record the direction and elevation readings to each target in the appropriate column in the data section.

**NOTES:**

**Direction:** A direction reading is determined by the direction of the muzzle. When the left edge of the traversing slide is on the left side of the "0" graduation on the traversing bar, the direction reading is recorded as RIGHT (number of mils) (the muzzle of the MK 19 is to the right). When the left edge of the traversing slide is to the right of the "0" graduation, the direction reading is recorded as LEFT (number of mils) (the muzzle of the MK 19 is to the left). If the left edge of the traversing slide does not fall exactly on a 5-mil graduation, use the nearest graduation as the direction reading.

**Elevation:** The elevation reading is obtained from two scales. The first portion (major reading) is taken from the engraved scale on the upper elevating screw plate. The second portion (minor reading) is taken from the engraved scale on the top of the elevating handwheel, using the indicator as the index. The two portions of the elevation reading are separated by a slash (/) when they are recorded (for example, +50/3).

- 11. Measure and record the width of linear targets and the PDF for predetermined fire.
  - a. Measure the width of the target by traversing from flank to flank across the target and counting the number of clicks.
  - b. Record the number of clicks as the target width; for example, if it took 15 clicks to traverse the width of the target, then record this as TW-15 (target width 15).
  - c. Lay the gun on a point where you will engage the target with the initial burst of fire and traverse to one edge of the target while counting the clicks.
  - d. Record the number of clicks traversed and the direction of the muzzle; for example, if you counted seven clicks and the direction of the muzzle moved to the right, then record this as right 7 (R7). Record the data for the target as TW-20/R7. This indicates that you did not lay the MK 19 on the center of the target initially. Furthermore, after the initial burst, you must traverse the gun right seven clicks (R7) to reach the right edge of the target, then traverse it back left 20 clicks to cover the entire target area. If you lay the gun so that the initial burst will be on the left edge of the target, the remarks in the data section would be TW-20/R20. If you lay the gun so that the initial burst will be on the right edge of the target, the remarks in the data section would be TW-20/L20.
- 12. Always center the traversing mechanism before moving from one target to another.
- 13. Enter the range to and the description of each target under the appropriate column in the data section.
- 14. Sketch in preselected targets in the secondary sector on the range card and record the ranges to these targets below the sketches.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, in an outside field environment, provide all the equipment and materials listed in the task conditions statement.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to prepare a range card for the MK 19 machine gun, recording all necessary data.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Position the MK 19 with the muzzle pointing in the direction of the PDF.	—	—
2. Record the gun number, squad unit designation (no higher than company for security reasons), and date in the data section. In a mechanized unit, include the squad designation.	—	—

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
3. Sketch in the basic military symbol for the MK 19 in the lower center of the range card, pointing in the direction of the PDF.	—	—
4. Orient the range card.	—	—
5. Identify and record the gun position.	—	—
6. Sketch in the left and right limits of the primary sector of fire (PDF should be in the center of this sector).	—	—
7. Draw a sketch of the terrain to the front of the gun position. Include prominent and manmade features that could be likely targets.	—	—
8. Label targets in the primary sector in order of priority. Label the PDF as 1.	—	—
9. Sketch in secondary sector of fire.	—	—
10. Record the direction and elevation to each target in the primary sector.	—	—
11. Measure and record the width of linear targets and the PDF for predetermined fire.	—	—
12. Center the traversing mechanism before moving from one target to another.	—	—
13. Enter the range to and the description of each target under the appropriate column in the data section.	—	—
14. Sketch in preselected targets in the secondary sector on the range card and record the ranges to these targets below the sketches.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any steps are failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
FM 23-27  
FM 3-22.68

**Zero an MK19 Machine Gun****071-030-0003**

**Conditions:** Given a MK 19 machine gun, a MK 64 gun cradle, a zeroed traversing and elevating (T&E) assembly mounted on a vehicle or M3 tripod, a stationary target located at a known range (400 meters) from the firing position, and linked 40-millimeter (mm) grenade ammunition.

**Standards:** Adjust the sights on a MK 19 machine gun so that a correct sight picture will cause a fired round to impact the target at the point of aim.

**Performance Steps**

1. Prepare the sights for zeroing (Figure 1).
  - a. Press the plunger to release the sight frame. Raise the sight frame until it locks into the "up" position.
  - b. Loosen the retainer lock nut. Push in on the lock nut. Move the rear sight slide to the meter mark that corresponds to the distance to the target (400 meters).
  - c. Tighten the retainer lock nut.
  - d. Set the windage knob at the zero index line.

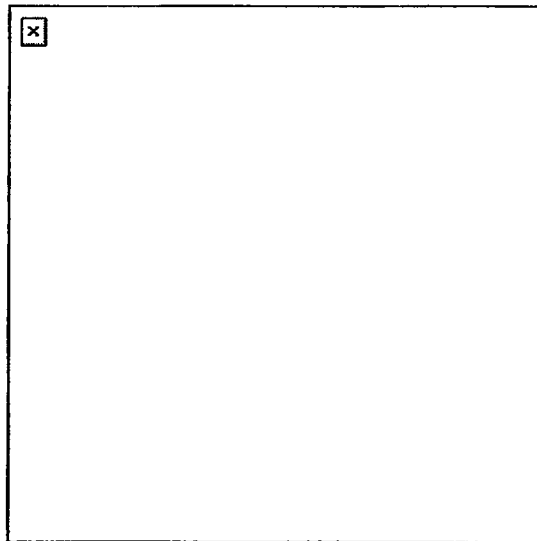


Figure 1. MK 19 machine gun sights.

2. Assume a firing position.
3. Align the sights on the base of the target using the T&E mechanism.
4. Fire a single round. Spot the impact of the round. If the round is on target, fire another short burst to confirm the zero. If the round is not on target, go to Step 5.
5. Adjust for a round that is not on target.
  - a. Elevation.
    - (1) If the round is short, turn the knob of the elevating wheel clockwise to move the impact of the round up onto the target.
    - (2) If the round is long, turn the knob of the elevating wheel counterclockwise to move the impact of the round down onto the target.
  - b. Windage.

**Performance Steps**

- (1) If the round is to the right, adjust the sight to the left by turning the windage knob counterclockwise to move the impact of the round onto the target.
- (2) IF the round is to the left, adjust the sight to the right by turning the windage knob clockwise to move the impact of the round onto the target.

**NOTE:** Loosen the traversing slide lock lever to adjust the gun back onto the target. Before you fire the next round, retighten the traversing slide lock lever.

6. Once you have zeroed the gun, align the range plate scale at the exact range of the zero and tighten it.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Evaluate this task during live firing of Table 1, Task 3, in accordance with (IAW) FM 23-27. Provide the soldier with equipment required to fire Table 1.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier that he will be evaluated on his ability to fire Table 1, Task 3. Brief him on the task conditions, standards, and ammunition.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Prepare sights for zeroing IAW Step 1.	_____	_____
2. Assume a firing position.	_____	_____
3. Align sights on the base of the target.	_____	_____
4. Fire a single round and observe the impact of the round.	_____	_____
5. Adjust elevation and windage to zero weapon.	_____	_____
6. Align and tighten the range plate scale after zeroing.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier fails any steps, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

**Related**

FM 23-27  
FM 3-22.68  
TM 9-1005-201-10



# **Engage Targets with an MK19 Machine Gun** **071-030-0004**

## **Performance Steps**

1. Assume a suitable firing position. Based on your situation, select a firing position that will allow you to observe and engage targets yet minimize your exposure to enemy fire.
  - a. Seated firing positions. Sit directly behind the weapon between the trail legs of the tripod.
    - (1) Legs extended. Extend your legs under the tripod (Figure 1).

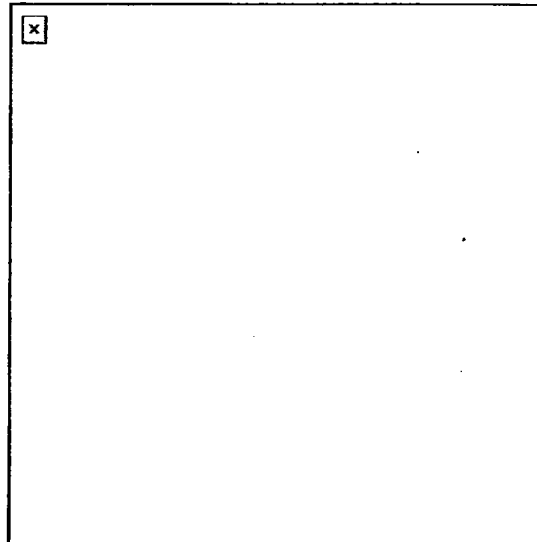


Figure 1. Seated firing position, legs extended.

- (2) Legs crossed. Cross your legs and place your elbows on the inside of your thighs for support when firing the weapon (Figure 2).

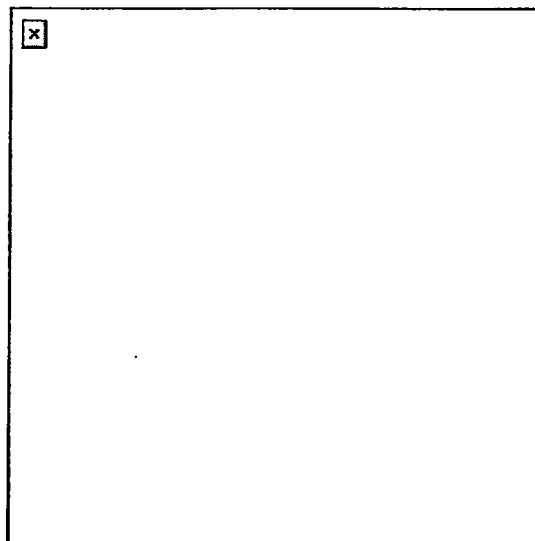


Figure 2. Seated firing position, legs crossed.

**Performance Steps**

- (3) Legs braced. Extend your legs, brace them on the trail legs of the tripod, and place your elbows on the inside of your thighs for support (Figure 1, Figure 2, and Figure 3).

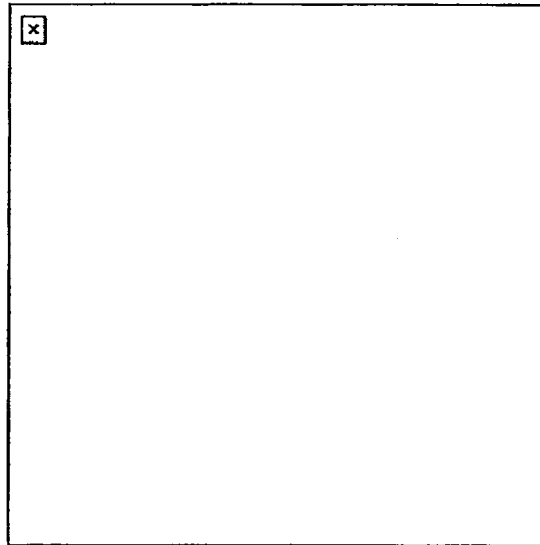


Figure 3. Seated firing position, legs braced.

- b. Kneeling position. Kneel and grasp the control grips with your thumbs on the trigger (Figure 4).

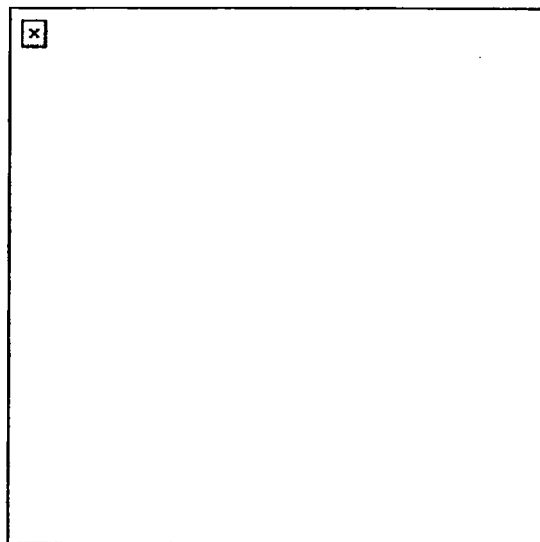


Figure 4. Kneeling position.

- c. Standing position for gun mounted on a vehicle pedestal (Figure 5).

## Performance Steps

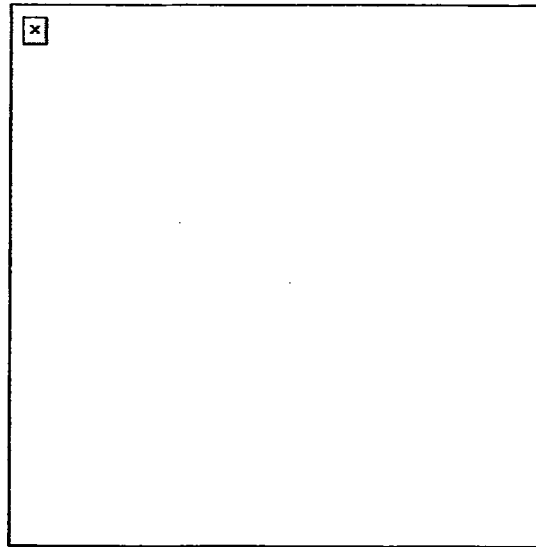


Figure 5. Standing position for mounted gun.

2. Acquire the target using correct sight alignment.
3. Apply correct engagement technique based on target types.
  - a. Use correct gun manipulation technique (Figure 6).
    - (1) Fixed fire. This is fire delivered against a point target. Only one aiming point is necessary with little or no manipulation of the gun.
    - (2) Traversing fire. This is fire distributed against a wide target requiring successive changes in direction of gun. This means using the traversing and elevating (T&E) mechanism to traverse the gun left or right to distribute fire laterally.
    - (3) Searching fire. This is fire delivered against a deep target or a linear target with depth in width by successive changes in elevation. This means using the T&E mechanism to move the muzzle of the weapon up or down to distribute fire in depth.
    - (4) Traversing and searching fire. This is fire delivered in width and depth by successive changes in direction and elevation. It is employed against a target whose long axis is oblique to the direction of fire.
    - (5) Swinging traverse. This is fire delivered against targets that require major changes in direction but little or no change in elevation. Loosen the traversing slide lock enough to swing the gun laterally.
    - (6) Free gun. This is fire delivered against moving targets that must be rapidly engaged with fast changes in direction and elevation. To fire free gun, remove the T&E mechanism.

**Performance Steps**

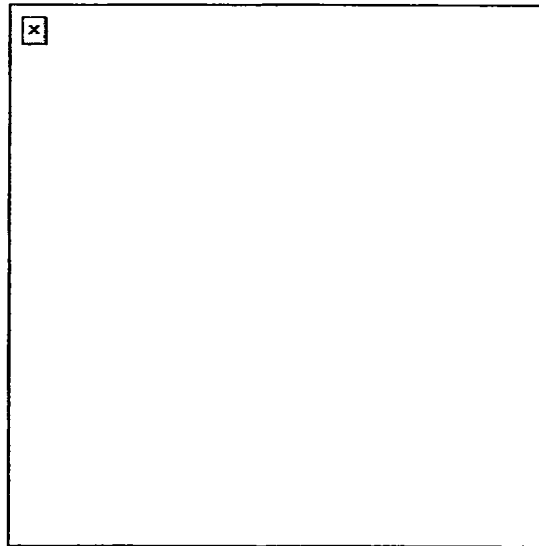


Figure 6. Techniques of fire with respect to the MK 19.

- b. Use correct application of fire to engage specific targets.
  - (1) Point target. Engage point targets with fixed fire using a single aiming point (Figure 7).

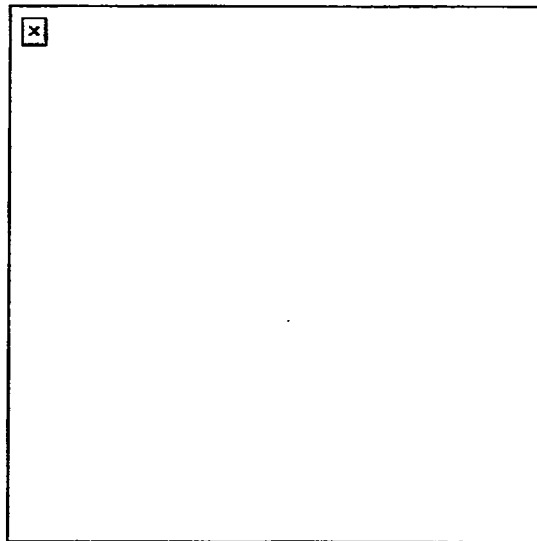


Figure 7. Point target.

- (2) Linear target. Initially aim just outside of either flank and fire. Traverse fire back and forth from flank to flank, covering the entire target area (Figure 8).

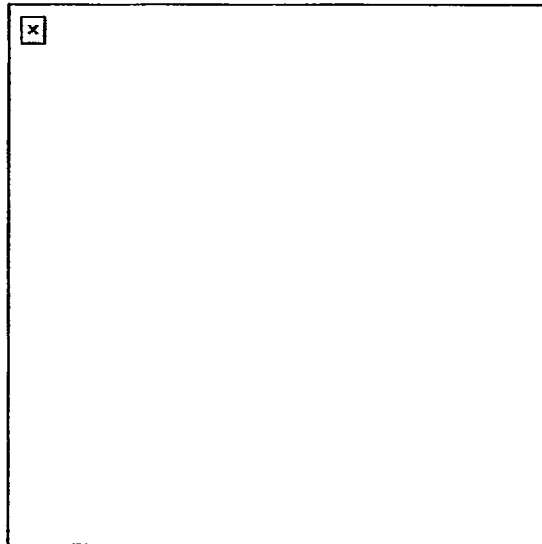
**Performance Steps**

Figure 8. Linear target.

- (3) Linear target with depth. Initially aim at the near flank with range set to the midpoint of the target unless another portion of the target is more critical or presents a greater threat. Fire on the near flank, then traverse and search back and forth, covering the entire target (Figure 9).

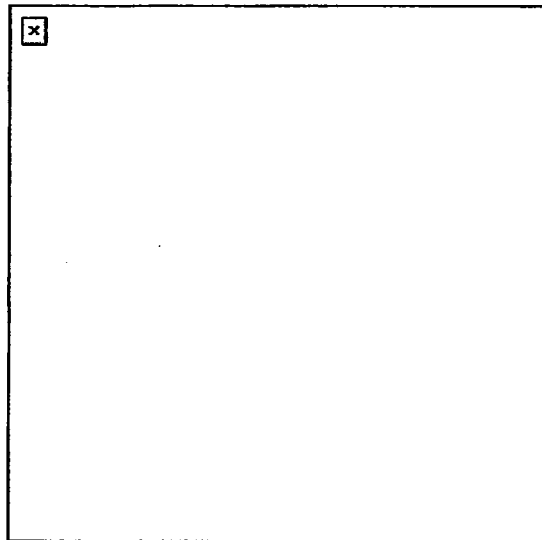


Figure 9. Linear target with depth.

- (4) Deep target. Initially aim at the end of the target closest to the gun, unless another portion of the target is more critical or presents a greater threat (auto rifleman). Fire and search up the far end and back again repeatedly (Figure 10).

### Performance Steps

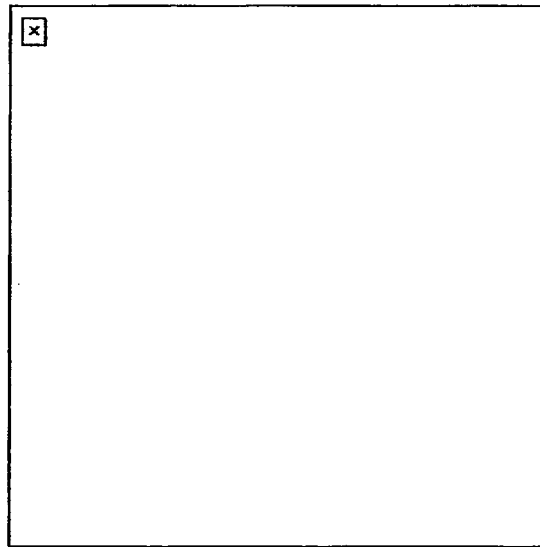


Figure 10. Deep target.

- (5) Area target. Initially aim at the midpoint of the target area. Traverse and search to either flank, then traverse and search to the opposite flank (Figure 11).

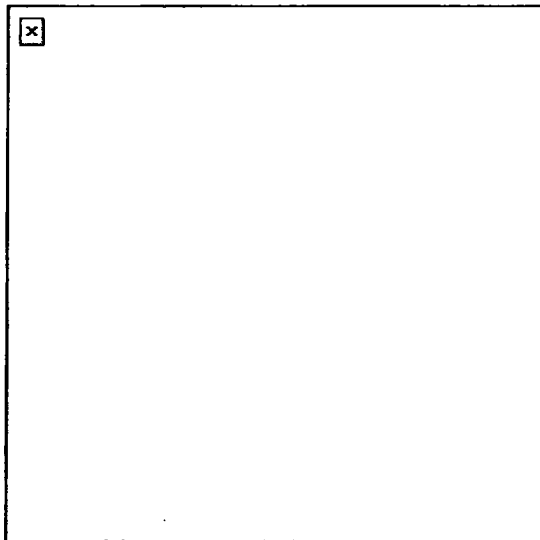


Figure 11. Engagement of area targets, single gun.

4. Use observation of fire and adjusted aiming point to place effective fire on the target.
  - a. Observation of fire. Observe the strike of the rounds in relation to the target; adjust elevation and direction needed to move the center of impact onto the target.

**NOTE:** This does not call for use of the sights.

**EXAMPLE:** Suppose you fire at a target 500 meters away. The rounds impact 20 meters short and 50 meters right. To manipulate the gun onto the target, use the traversing and elevating mechanism hand wheels to move the nuzzle left and up the proper number of clicks.

**Performance Steps**

b. Adjusted aiming point. Use this method to quickly adjust fires without making a sight or T&E adjustment (Figure 12).

(1) If the initial burst misses the target, rapidly select a new aiming point the same distance from the center of impact of the initial burst but in the opposite direction.

(2) Lay the gun on that aiming point and fire.

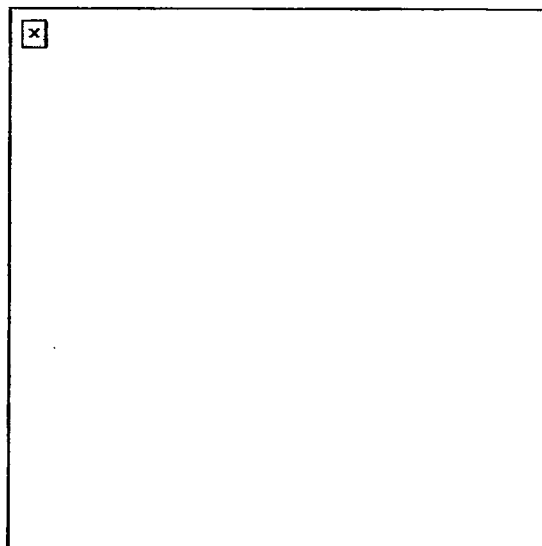


Figure 12. Adjusted aiming point method.

5. Fire on the targets until they are destroyed or until you receive an order to cease fire.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Evaluate this task on a live-fire range designed for 40-mm machine gun firing. For a tripod mounted MK 19, tell the soldier to fire Table 2, Tasks 4 through 8, Field Manual (FM) 23-27, Appendix C. For a vehicle-mounted MK 19, tell the soldier to fire Table 3, Tasks 2 through 5, FM 23-27, Appendix C.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to perform the tasks outlined in Appendix C, FM 23-27. Brief him on the task conditions, standards, and ammunitions. Tell him he will be evaluated on his ability to apply correct target engagement techniques and place effective fire on targets.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Assume a suitable firing position.	—	—
2. Apply correct engagement technique based on target type.	—	—
a. Use correct gun manipulation technique.		
b. Use correct application of fire to engage specific targets.		
3. Place effective fire on targets (score a minimum of 84 points).	—	—
4. Use correct application of fire to engage specific targets.	—	—
5. Use observation of fire and adjust aiming point to place effective fire on the target.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

STP 19-95C1-SM

**References  
Required**

**Related  
FM 23-27**



**Load an MK19 Machine Gun****071-030-0005**

**Conditions:** Given a can of linked 40-millimeter (mm) grenade ammunition and a cleared MK 19 machine gun mounted on an M3 tripod or on a vehicle. (If firing from a vehicle, ammunition can bracket will be attached to the gun mount.)

**Standards:** Load linked ammunition through feed throat into feeder so that when cover is closed, the round is straight and firmly seated against the bolt and the ammunition will feed correctly.

**Performance Steps**

1. Make sure the chamber is empty, the bolt is in the forward position, and the charger handles are in the up (lock) position.

2. Make sure the safety switch is in the safe (S) position.

**WARNING:** Do not let the top cover slam shut from the open position. Injury to personnel or damage to equipment could result.

3. Insert the first round.

- a. Open the top cover and insert the first round through the feed throat into the feeder, link opening first (Figure 1).

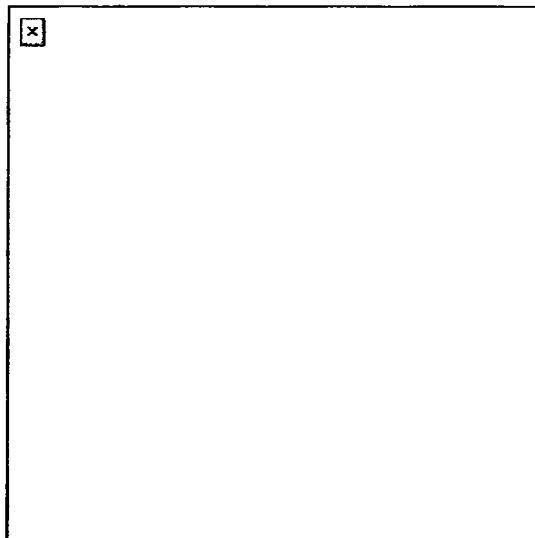


Figure 1. Insertion of first round through feed throat.

- b. Push or slide the round across the first set of feeder pawls, making sure the round is straight and firmly seated against the bolt (Figure 2).

### Performance Steps

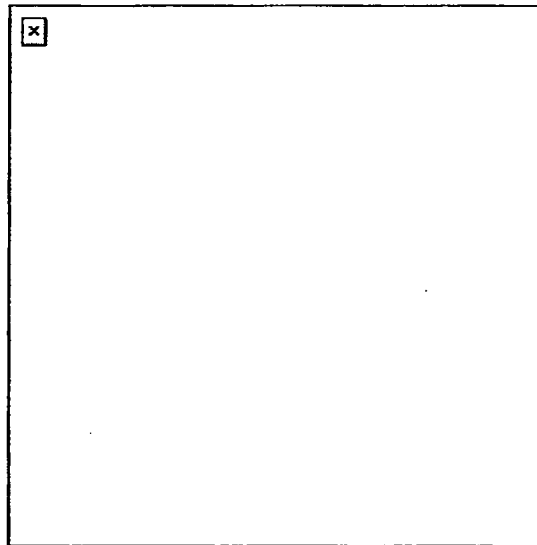


Figure 2. Pushing round across feeder pawls.

- c. Index the feed slide assembly to the left and close the top cover (Figure 3).

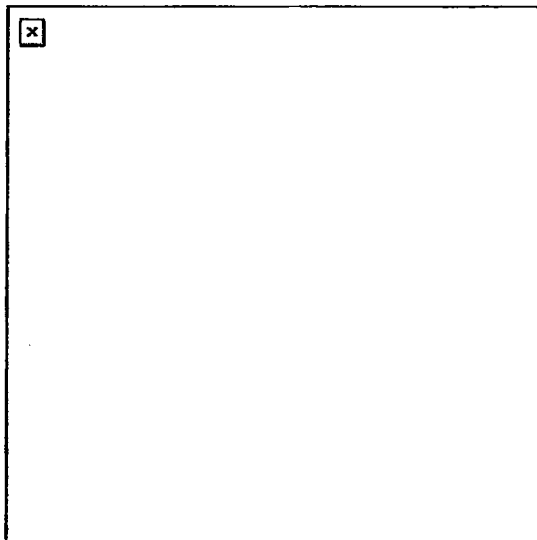


Figure 3. Indexing the feed slide assembly.

4. Charge the weapon (Figure 4).
  - a. Grasp charger handles palms down.
  - b. Press charger handle locks and rotate charger handles down.
  - c. Pull charger handles sharply to the rear until the bolt sears.
  - d. Push charger handles forward and rotate them up into the lock position.

Performance Steps

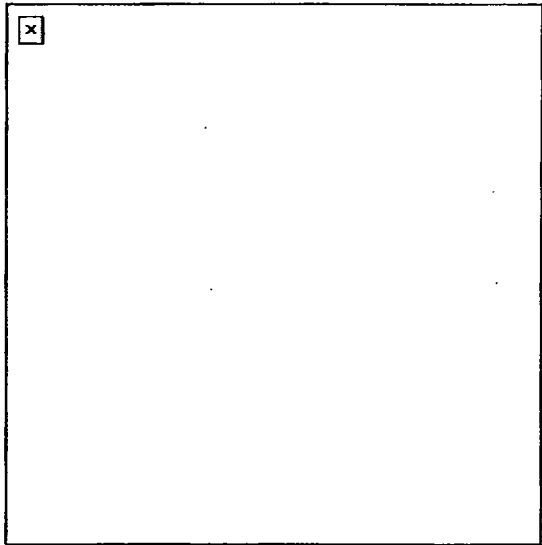


Figure 4. Charging the MK 19 machine gun.

5. Load the first round.

- a. Place safety switch in fire (F) position and press trigger.

**NOTE: Bolt will move forward and load the first round on the bolt-face (half load).**

- b. Rotate charger handles down and pull them sharply to the rear until the bolt sears. This pulls the bolt with the loaded round into position for firing (Full load).
- c. Place safety switch in safe (S) position.
- d. Push the chargers forward and rotate the charger handles up into the lock position. The weapon is fully loaded.
- e. Leave safety switch on safe (S) position until ready to fire.

**WARNING: For firing, charger handles must be FORWARD and UP. Keep your weapon pointed downrange and the line of fire clear of objects.**

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with the equipment listed in conditions.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to load the MK 19 according to proper procedures.

Performance Measures

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Make sure the chamber is empty, the bolt is forward, and the charger handles are in the lock position.	—	—
2. Make sure the safety switch is in the safe (S) position.	—	—
3. Insert the first round. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Open the top cover and insert the first round through the feed throat and into the feeder, link opening first.</li><li>b. Push or slide the round across the first set of feeder pawls, making sure the round is straight and firmly seated against the bolt.</li><li>c. Index the feed slide assembly to the left and close the top cover.</li></ul>	—	—
4. Charge the weapon. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Grasp the charger handles palms down.</li><li>b. Press the charger handle locks and rotate charger handles down.</li><li>c. Pull charger handles sharply to the rear until the bolt sears.</li></ul>	—	—

**Performance Measures**

GO    NO GO

- d. Push charger handles forward and rotate them up into the lock position.
- 5. Load the first round.
  - a. Place safety switch on the fire (F) position and press the trigger.
  - b. Rotate charger handles down and pull them sharply to the rear until the bolt sears.
  - c. Place safety switch on the safe (S) position.
  - d. Push charger forward and rotate the charger handles up into the locked position.
  - e. Leave safety switch in the safe (S) position until ready to fire.

\_\_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

**Related**

FM 23-27

TM 9-1010-230-10

**Unload an MK19 Machine Gun****071-030-0006**

**Conditions:** Given an MK19 machine gun mounted on an M3 tripod or vehicle loaded with linked 40-millimeter (mm) grenade ammunition.

**Standards:** Unload the MK 19 machine gun, removing ammunition and empty casings. Clear the weapon, making sure the chamber is empty and the safety switch is in the safe (S) position.

**Performance Steps**

1. Place the safety switch on the safe (S) position.
2. Charge the weapon.
3. Return the charger handles to the forward position and rotate only one charger handle up.
4. Remove the live round or spent case from bolt.
  - a. Insert the tip of a cleaning rod through the right hand rail as close to the bolt face as possible (Figure 1).
  - b. Lift up on the cleaning rod to force the live round or case off the bolt face and out the bottom of the gun. Catch the live round or the spent case as it falls out.

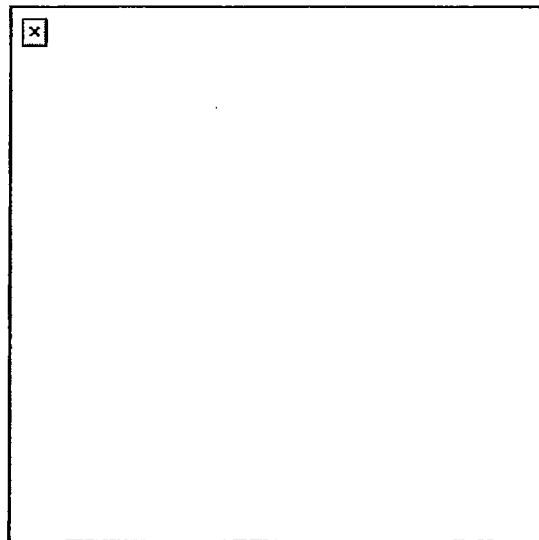


Figure 1. Removal of round or spent case.

5. Remove linked rounds from the feeder.
  - a. Open the top cover. Check for rounds in the feeder. If you find any rounds in the feeder, perform the following actions (Figure 2).
    - (1) with one hand, reach beneath the feeder. Press the primary and secondary positioning pawls at the same time.
    - (2) At the same time, slide the linked rounds out of the feeder and feed throat.
  - b. Place linked rounds in the ammunition can.

Performance Steps

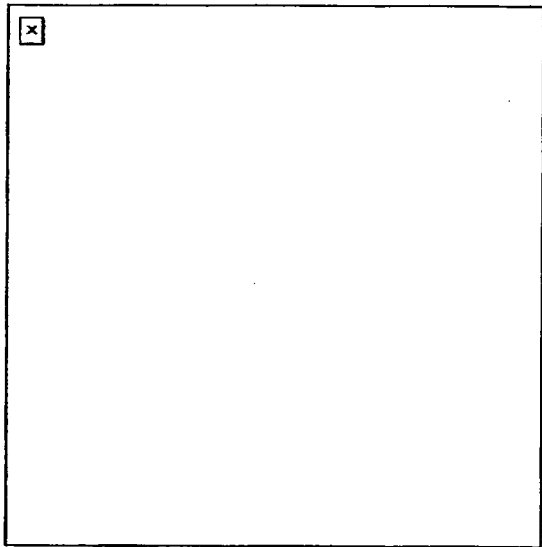


Figure 2. Removal of linked rounds from the feeder.

6. Place the safety switch in the fire (F) position.
7. Ride the bolt forward.
  - a. Hold one charger handle to the rear.
  - b. Press the trigger to release the bolt; ride the bolt forward.
  - c. Make sure both charging handles are forward and in the up position.
8. Place the safety switch in the safe (S) position.
9. Index the feed slide assembly to the left.
10. Close and latch the top cover.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with the equipment listed in the task conditions statement.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to load the MK 19 according to the task steps.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Place the safety switch on safe (S) position.	—	—
2. Charge the weapon.	—	—
3. Return the charger handles to the forward position, and rotate only one charger handle up.	—	—
4. Remove the live round or spent case from bolt. <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Insert the tip of a cleaning rod through the right-hand rail as close to the bolt face as possible.</li><li>b. Raise up on the cleaning rod to force the live round or case off the bolt face and out the bottom of the gun. Catch the live round or the spent case as it falls out.</li></ol>	—	—
5. Remove any linked rounds from the feeder.	—	—

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
a. Open the top cover. Check for rounds in the feeder. If you find rounds in the feeder, then perform the following actions: (1) With one hand, reach beneath the feeder, and press the primary and secondary positioning pawls at the same time. (2) At the same time, slide the linked rounds out of the feeder and feed throat.		
b. Place linked rounds in the ammunition can.		
6. Place the safety switch on fire (F) position.	_____	_____
7. Ride the bolt forward. a. Hold one charger handle to the rear. b. Press the trigger to release the bolt, and ride the bolt forward. c. Make sure both charging handles are forward and in the up position.	_____	_____
8. Place the safety switch on safe (S) position.	_____	_____
9. Index the feed slide assembly to the left.	_____	_____
10. Close and latch the top cover.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

References	Related
Required	FM 23-27
	TM 9-1010-230-10

## Perform a Function Check on an MK19 Machine Gun

071-030-0007

**Conditions:** Given a cleared MK19 machine gun mounted on an M3 tripod or vehicle carrier.

**Standards:** Conduct an operational check of the MK 19 machine gun to make sure it is correctly assembled and functions properly.

### Performance Steps

**WARNING:** Before performing any procedure, make sure the weapon is clear of ammunition.

1. Check the functioning of the safety switch.
  - a. With the cover closed, place safety switch on safe (S).
  - b. Pull the bolt to rear, push charger handles to forward position, and rotate handles up.
  - c. Press the trigger. Bolt should not go forward.
  - d. Place the safety switch on fire (F) position.
  - e. Press the trigger. Bolt should spring forward.
  - f. Place the safety switch on safe (S) and leave the bolt in forward position.
2. Open top cover assembly and inspect the feed tray assembly and the chamber to ensure the gun is clear.
  - a. Open the top cover.
  - b. Touch the firing pin. If it is not protruding, recharge and release the bolt spring under pressure.
  - c. Inspect the bolt face to make sure it is not worn, dirty, pitted, corroded, or in need of lubrication.

**WARNING:** Do not allow the top cover to slam shut from the raised position. Doing so could injure your hand or damage the equipment.

3. Check the feed slide assembly and feeder.
  - a. Move the secondary drive lever back and forth. The feed slide assembly should move freely.
  - b. Press the feed pawls to check for spring pressure.
  - c. Inspect the link guide for roughness and galling.

**NOTE:** Before closing the top cover, always make sure that-

- The secondary drive lever is engaged with the feed slide pin.
  - The feed slide assembly is to the left.
  - The bolt is forward.
  - Never try to force the top cover closed. Doing so could damage the equipment.
- d. Close and latch the top cover.

4. If you find any deficiencies that you cannot correct, the MK 19 is unserviceable. Report the deficiencies to your supervisor.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide the soldier with the equipment listed in task conditions.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to perform a function check to determine if the MK 19 machine gun functions properly.

### Performance Measures

1. Check functioning of safety switch.
2. Inspect interior of receiver assembly for missing or damaged parts.
3. Check feed slide assembly and feeder.
4. Report deficiencies to supervisor.

GO      NO GO

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____



**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
TM 9-1010-230-10

## Correct Malfunctions of an MK19 Machine Gun

071-030-0008

**Conditions:** Given a loaded MK 19 machine gun mounted on an M3 tripod or vehicle, linked 40-mm grenade ammunition, a caliber .50 cleaning rod, a bore obstruction device (BOD), an assistant gunner, rifle bore cleaner (RBC), lubricating oils (LSA and either LSAT or LAW), grease (GMD), cleaning solvent (PD680), wiping rags, cloth (abrasive crocus), cleaning rod assembly, small arms cleaning brushes, and one of the following situations: the weapon has failed to fire; the weapon is firing sluggishly; or the weapon has uncontrolled fire (continuous to fire after the trigger is released).

**Standards:** Take immediate action on a MK 19 machine gun that has failed to fire without identifying the cause of the malfunction. If immediate action is unsuccessful, perform remedial action to identify the cause of the malfunction. Take immediate action to secure a runaway MK 19 machine gun; then take remedial action to eliminate the malfunction. Take corrective action for a MK 19 machine gun that is firing sluggishly.

### Performance Steps

1. Apply immediate action when the weapon fails to fire (during peacetime and during training).

**NOTE:** Clear all nonessential personnel away from the gun position.

### DANGER:

1. If anything unusual occurs during firing (including short recoil, out of battery, excess smoke, flash, loud or muffled report, malfunction, or stoppage) immediately inspect the weapon. Clear the weapon. Check the barrel for obstruction. Check the feeder, bolt face, and receiver for damage or unusual debris. DO NOT try to clear an obstructed bore. To get assistance, follow the instructions in the local or unit SOP. Continued firing may cause death or injury.
2. DO NOT relink or fire ammunition that has been cycled through the weapon.

### WARNING:

1. Clear all nonessential personnel away from the gun position.
2. If, when you fire a round, you--
  - Hear a muffled sound
  - See excess smoke coming out of the chamber area
  - See excess debris, gas, or both coming from below the gun

**DO NOT** perform immediate action.

**DO** notify your supervisor.

- a. Keep the weapon pointed at the target.
- b. Pull the bolt to the rear to charge the weapon and have the assistant gunner catch the live round as it is ejected.
- c. If the weapon will not charge, stop immediate action and apply remedial action to clear a jammed bolt (Step 2b).
- d. Push the charging handles forward and up.
- e. Place the safety switch in the safe (S) position.
- f. Check for bore obstruction.
  - (1) Make sure the safety switch is on safe (S).

### WARNING:

1. DO NOT let the bolt go forward--this could cause a round to fire accidentally.
2. DO NOT insert your hands into the receiver with the bolt locked to the rear on sear. If you do so, you could suffer a severe injury.
3. DO make sure the safe/fire switch is in the safe (S) position.
  - (2) Lower the charging handles, maintain your grip, and apply back pressure to the bolt.
  - (3) Have the assistant gunner open the top cover and check the bolt face for a live round.
  - (4) If a live round, spent case, or debris is present--

**Performance Steps**

- (a) Have the assistant gunner remove the catch bag and be prepared to catch live any live ammunition that falls from the bottom of the weapon.
- (b) Charge the bolt completely until the bolt clicks (locks) to the rear. Return the handles to the forward position, handles down.
- (c) If a round is still present, have the assistant gunner clear it from the bolt face by inserting a cleaning rod through the slot in the charger handle assembly and catching the round.
- (d) Have the assistant gunner place the bore obstruction device (BOD) into the chamber end of the barrel (weighted end first).
- (e) Snake the BOD into the barrel.
- (f) IF the cable stops feeding, pull it back and push it forward again.
- (g) If you cannot push the cable forward any farther the bore is obstructed. STOP. Notify your supervisor at once.

**WARNING:**

If you find that the bore of the weapon is obstructed, notify your supervisor and follow your unit SOP.

Never try to remove an obstructing round from the bore. Only trained and qualified personnel should do so.

**DO NOT transport a weapon with a projectile lodged in the bore.**

- (5) If you are able to insert the BOD cable through the barrel so that you see the weighted end of the cable protruding from the flash suppressor, then the barrel is clear.
- (6) Move the safety switch to the fire (F) position and try to fire.
- (7) If the weapon does not fire, put the safety switch on safe (S) and wait 10 seconds.
- (8) Pull the bolt to the rear. Have the assistant gunner catch the live round as it ejects.
- (9) Notify your supervisor.

2. Apply immediate action during combat.

- a. Press the charger handle locks, and rotate the charger handles down.
- b. Pull the charger handles to the rear until the bolt sears.
- c. Push the charger handles forward and rotate them up.
- d. Relay the gun and fire.
- e. If the gun fails to fire, apply remedial action.

**WARNING:**

Do not use combat misfire procedures during peacetime or training. Serious injury can result if you do not observe precautions.

**NOTE: Both charger handles must be forward and up for firing. If either handle is down, the gun will not fire.**

3. Apply remedial action to correct malfunctions.

- a. Correct sluggish operation of a MK 19 machine gun.
  - (1) Clean weapon and perform operator-level maintenance. Refer to task 071-030-0001, Maintain a MK 19 Machine Gun.
  - (2) Check recoil springs for weakness and bent guide rods.
  - (3) If you find defects that are not correctable, notify your supervisor.

**WARNING:**

Be sure bolt is forward before removing back plate pin assembly. Otherwise, serious injury could result!

- b. Clear a jammed bolt (weapon will not charge).

**DANGER:**

Perform these procedures in sequence. Otherwise, the bolt could spring forward suddenly and fire a round, causing injury or death.

**NOTE: Clear all nonessential personnel away from the gun position.**

- (1) Place the safety switch on the safe (S) position.

### Performance Steps

- (2) Press the charger handle locks, and rotate the charger handles down.
- (3) Pull the charger handles to the rear as far as possible. Maintain rearward pressure on them, and have the assistant gunner lift the top cover.

### DANGER:

**Do not allow the bolt to slam forward while you are opening the top cover.**

**If the bolt were to slam forward while you are opening the top cover, the weapon could fire a live round, causing injury or death.**

- (4) Pull the charger handles to the rear until the bolt clicks (locks); make sure the bolt stays to the rear when you release the charger handles.
- (5) Insert the cleaning rod section through the slot in the side of the receiver. Prepare to catch the ejected round.
- (6) Raise the cleaning rod to force the live round down. Catch the live round as it ejects.
- (7) Remove the ammunition belt from feeder.
- (8) Reposition the ammunition belt in the feeder.
- (9) Place the safety switch on fire (F) position.
- (10) Ride the bolt forward by grasping one charging handle and depressing the trigger.
- (11) Make sure the feed slide assembly is to the left.
- (12) Make sure the secondary drive lever is engaged with the feed slide pin. If not, engage the forked end with the feed slide pin.
- (13) Close the top cover gently.
- (14) Charge the weapon and try to fire.
- (15) If the bolt jams again, repeat (1) through (7). Then place the safety switch on the safe (S) position, and notify your supervisor.

- c. Apply corrective action for uncontrolled fire (runaway gun).

### WARNING:

**Never try to twist the belt with your hands. This could result in serious injury to personnel.**

- (1) Keep the gun pointed on target.
- (2) Lower one charging handle to make the gun stop firing.
- (3) Place the safety switch on safe (S) position.
- (4) Clear the weapon and report its condition to your supervisor.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide soldier with the equipment and personnel listed in conditions.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to take the correct action for each situation listed in standards, one situation at the time. If it is unclear what actions the soldier is performing, have the soldier describe the action.

### Performance Measures

1. Apply immediate action when the weapon fails to fire.
  - a. Peacetime and training.
  - b. Combat only.
2. Apply remedial action to correct malfunction.
  - a. Correct the sluggish operation of a MK 19 machine gun.
  - b. Clear a jammed bolt (weapon will not charge).
  - c. Apply corrective action for uncontrolled fire (runaway gun).

**GO NO GO**

— —

— —

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

### References

#### Required

#### Related

FM 23-27

TM 9-1010-230-10



## Mount an MK19 Machine Gun on a Vehicle

071-030-0009

**Conditions:** Given a cleared MK 19 machine gun; an assistant gunner; an MK64 gun mount; a pintle adapter assembly; a traversing and elevation (T&E) assembly installed in the pivot arm assembly; a feed throat assembly; a mounting assembly for an ammunition can bracket; two 9/16-inch open-ended wrenches; one 3/8-inch open-ended wrench; and a vehicle equipped with either an M4 pedestal mount, an M66 ring mount, or a high mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicle (HMMWV) armament carrier ring pedestal.

**Standards:** Mount the MK 19 on a vehicle carrier correctly and without damage to equipment or injury to personnel.

### Performance Steps

1. Install the pintle adapter.
  - a. HMMWV armament carrier ring pedestal (Figure 1).

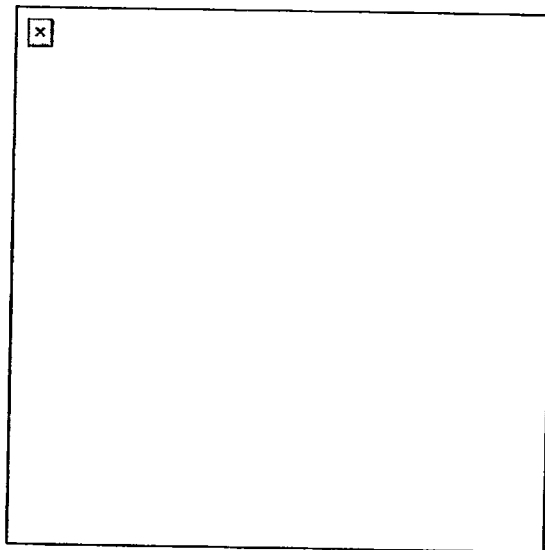


Figure 1. Installation of pintle adapter on HMMWV armament carrier ring.

- (1) Using a 3/8-inch, open-ended wrench, loosen the HMMWV pedestal and the pintle adapter lock screws. Turn all four screws counterclockwise until the threaded ends are flush with the pedestal's inner wall.
  - (2) Insert the pintle adapter assembly into the HMMWV pedestal. Tighten the lock screws. Using a 3/8-inch, open-ended wrench, turn the screws clockwise to tighten them. Pull upward on the pintle adapter to make sure it is secure.
  - (3) Remove the pintle adapter quick release pin. Press in on the pin's quick release button, and pull the pin from the pintle adapter.
- b. M4 pedestal (Figure 2).

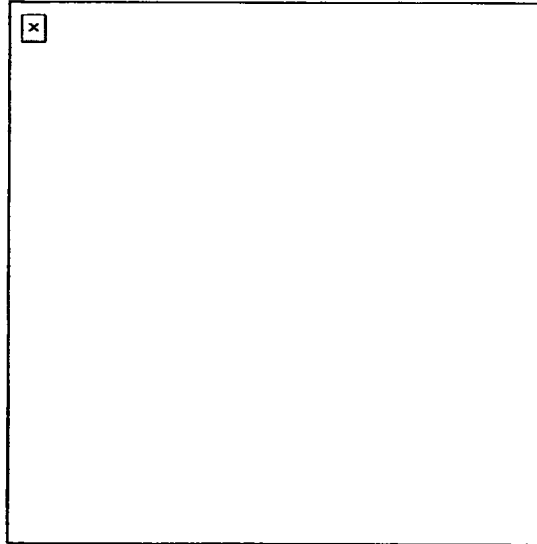
**Performance Steps**

Figure 2. Installation of pintle adapter on M4 pedestal.

- (1) Loosen the lower pedestal-locking lever. Turn the upper pedestal until the upper locking lever is on same side as the lower pedestal-locking lever. Tighten the lower pedestal-locking lever.
  - (2) Loosen the upper pedestal locking lever.
  - (3) Insert the pintle adapter assembly into pedestal mount.
  - (4) Tighten the upper pedestal locking lever. Pull up on the pintle adapter assembly to make sure it is secure.
  - (5) Remove the pintle adapter quick release pin.
- c. M66 ring amount (A, Figure 3).
- (1) Stand inside the M66 ring facing the pintle adapter hole; rotate the pintle lock handle upward.
  - (2) Insert the pintle adapter assembly into the pedestal (B, Figure 3).
  - (3) Rotate the pintle lock handle downward to secure the pintle adapter. Pull up on the pintle adapter to make sure it is locked in place.
  - (4) Remove the pintle adapter quick release pin.

**Performance Steps**

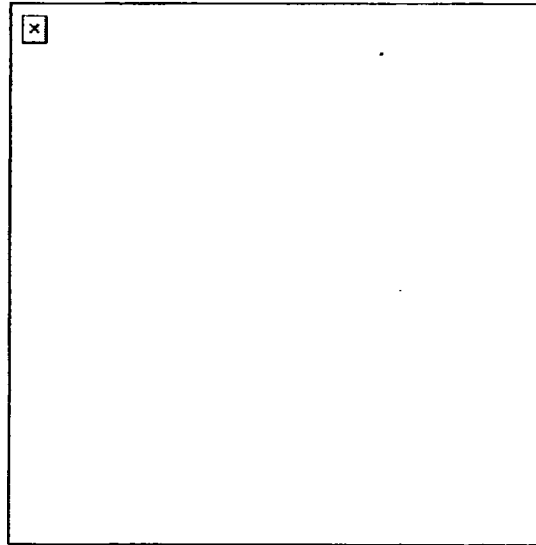


Figure 3. Installation of pintle adapter on M66 ring mount.

- d. HMMWV Interchangeable Mount System (HIMS). Follow same procedures as for HMMWV armament carrier ring pedestal (Task Step 1a).
2. Mount the MK64 gun mount (Figure 4).
  - a. Insert the front stow pin.
  - b. Insert the gun mount pintle into the top of the pintle adapter assembly.
  - c. Press in on the pintle adapter quick release pin button, and insert the pin. Pull upward and twist the gun mount. It should be locked into the pintle adapter, but at the same time it should also traverse freely left and right.

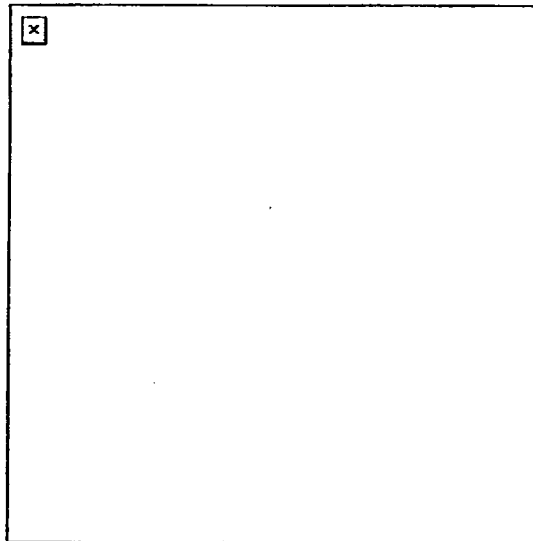


Figure 4. Installation of the MK64 gun mount.

3. Attach the T&E assembly (A, Figure 5).



**Performance Steps**

- a. Separate the middle clamp on the T&E assembly. Remove the train lock handle by turning it counterclockwise. Use a 9/16-inch, open-ended wrench to remove the hex head screw on the other side of the clamp.
- b. Attach the middle clamp to the HMMWV pedestal post.
  - (1) Assemble the middle clamp around the base of the pedestal, about 2 inches below the welded pin (B, Figure 5). Tighten the clamp by turning the train lock clockwise. Using a 9/16-inch wrench, tighten the screw on other side of clamp the same amount that you tightened the first screw.
  - (2) Attach two support clamps. Using two 9/16 wrenches, attach one support clamp above and one below the already installed middle clamp. Tighten each screw two turns until snug.

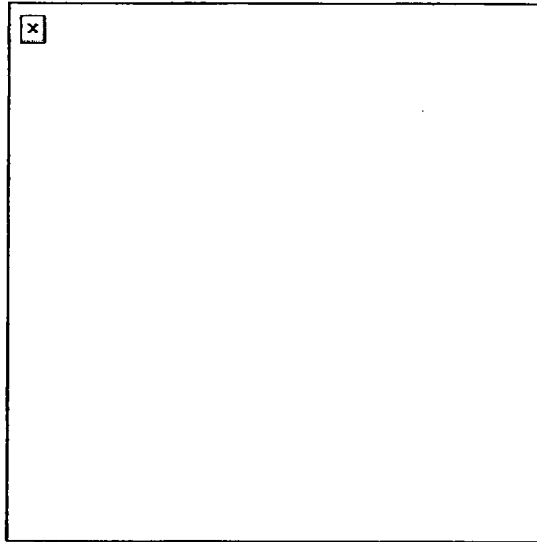


Figure 5. Attachment of clamps to HMMWV armament pedestal carrier.

- c. Attach the middle clamp to the M4 pedestal (A, Figure 6).
  - (1) Assemble the middle clamp around the pedestal, about 2 inches below the welded pin (B, Figure 6). Tighten the clamp by turning the train lock clockwise. Using 9/16 wrench, equally tighten the hex head screw on other side of clamp.
  - (2) Attach two support clamps. Using two 9/16 wrenches, attach one support clamp above and below the already installed middle clamp. Tighten each screw two turns until snug.

**Performance Steps**

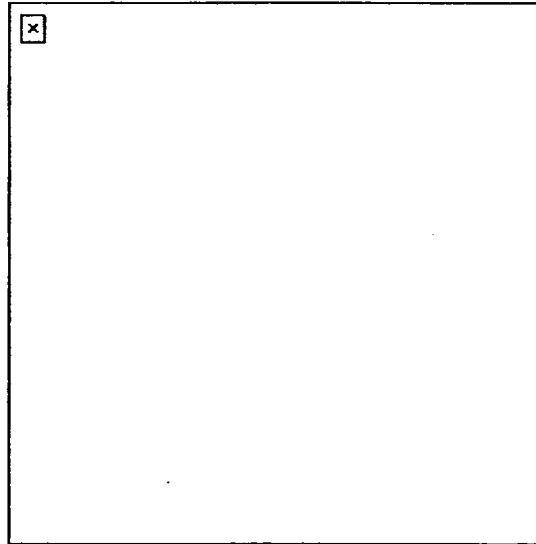


Figure 6. Attachment of clamps to M4 pedestal.

4. Attach the T&E assembly to the gun mount (Figure 7).
  - a. Remove the front stow pin from the gun mount.
  - b. Pull out the T&E assembly retaining pin.
  - c. Make sure the T&E elevating handwheel is set at 250 mils. Position the lock lever to the rear, and make sure the traversing handwheel is to the left.
  - d. To align the T&E elevating assembly holes with the lower rear holes in gun mount cradle, turn the elevating handwheel.
  - e. Insert the T&E retaining pin through the holes from the right side only. Rotate the locking pin to locked position.

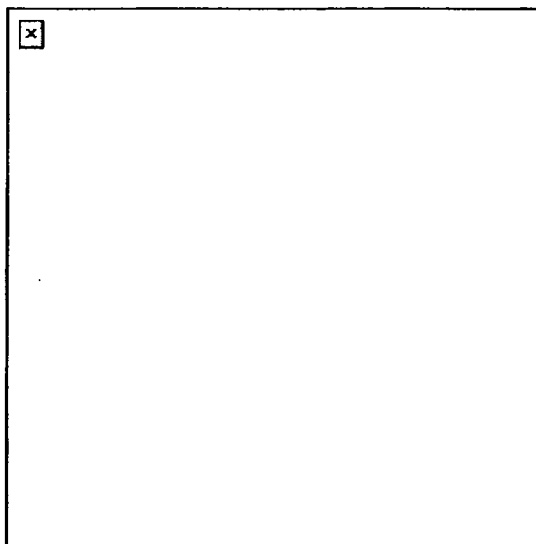


Figure 7. Attachment of T&E assembly to gun mount.

5. Attach the ammunition can mounting bracket assembly (Figure 8).

**Performance Steps**

- a. Partially unscrew the wing nut on the bracket threaded stud. Align the wing nut on the threaded stud with the forward groove in the side plate of the gun mount. Slide the threaded stud upward into the forward groove, until the two welded pins seat in the two forward keyholes.
- b. Slide the bracket downward in the slots. Reach behind the gun mount side plate, and tighten the wing nut. Check to make sure the assembly is securely locked into the side plate of the gun.

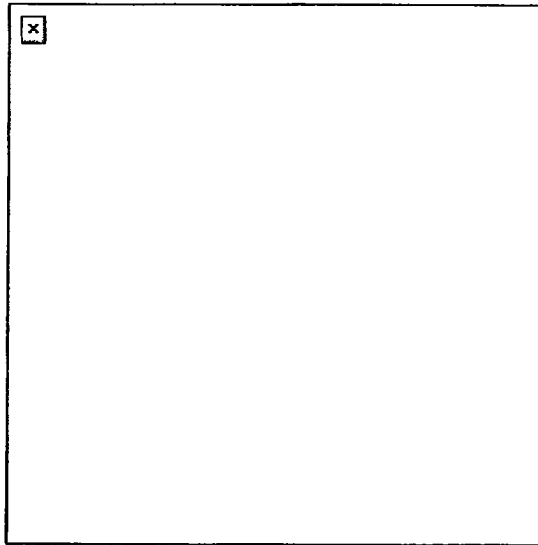


Figure 8. Installation of ammunition can bracket.

6. Install the MK 19 machine gun (Figure 9).
  - a. Remove the rear retaining pin from the gun mount.
  - b. With the help of the assistant gunner, lift the weapon onto the gun mount cradle, with the barrel pointing towards the forward end of the gun mount assembly.
  - c. Lock the front portion of the weapon into the gun mount cradle.
    - (1) Lower the muzzle slightly. Align the receiver locking channels with the two forward mounting pins on the gun mount cradle.
    - (2) To seat the mounting pins into the locking channels, push the weapon forward.
  - d. Lock the rear of the weapon to the gun mount cradle. Align the holes in the weapon sear assembly with the upper rear holes in the gun mount cradle. Insert the gun mount cradle rear retaining pin, and rotate the handle downward to the locked position.

**Performance Steps**

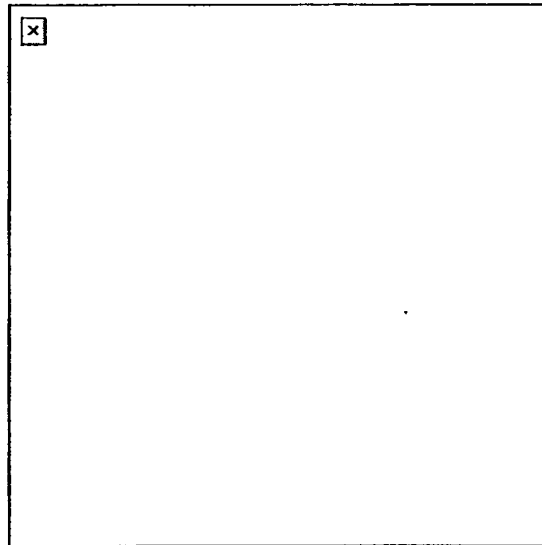


Figure 9. Installation of MK 19 on gun mount.

**WARNING: A two-man lift is required for the MK 19 machine gun and for each fully loaded M548 ammunition container.**

**DO NOT try to lift EITHER alone.**

7. Attach the feed throat assembly (Figure 10).
  - a. Squeeze together the spring-loaded grip pins on the feed throat assembly.
  - b. Insert the feed throat into the forward left-hand slots of the receiver. Release the pins. Check to make sure the assembly is secure.

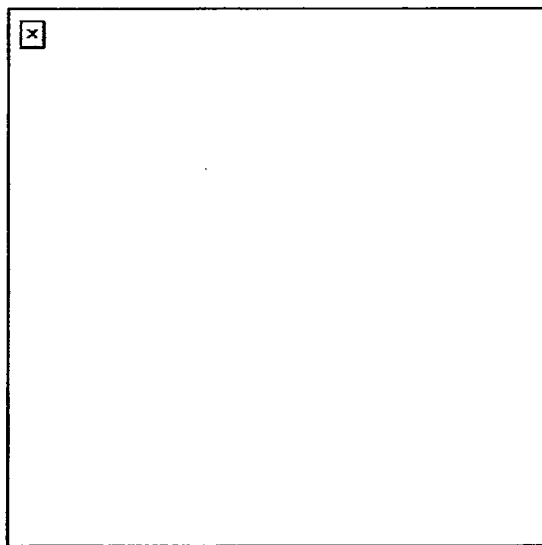


Figure 10. Attachment of the feed throat assembly.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with equipment listed in conditions (if the soldier is to mount the MK 19 on a HMMWV equipped with armament carrier ring, provide only one support clamp).

Brief Soldier: Tell the soldier to mount the MK 19 on the vehicle.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Install the pintle adapter.	—	—
2. Install the MK64 gun mount.	—	—
3. Attach the T&E assembly.	—	—
4. Attach the T&E assembly to the gun mount.	—	—
5. Attach the ammunition can mounting bracket assembly.	—	—
6. Install the MK 19 machine gun.	—	—
7. Attach the feed throat assembly.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

References	Related
Required FM 23-27	TM 9-1010-230-10

**Dismount an MK19 Machine Gun from a Vehicle**  
**071-030-0010**

**Conditions:** Given an MK19 machine gun and MK64 gun cradle mounted on a high mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicle (HMMWV) with weapon platform or a vehicle with the M36A2 ring mount with M66 ring, and the requirement to dismount the MK19 with the help of an assistant gunner.

**Standards:** The MK19 is removed from the vehicle carrier in sequence without damage to equipment or injury to personnel.

**Performance Steps**

**WARNING:**

**A two-man lift is required for the MK 19 machine gun and each fully loaded M548 ammunition container.**

**DO NOT try to carry either the weapon or a fully loaded ammunition container by yourself.**

1. Remove the MK 19 from a vehicle equipped with the M4 pedestal.
  - a. Remove the feed throat assembly.
  - b. Remove the rear retaining pin from the gun mount cradle.
  - c. Remove the front stow pin from the gun mount cradle.
  - d. Lift the MK 19 from the M4 pedestal.
  - e. Remove the ammunition container bracket.
  - f. Remove the support clamps from the M4 pedestal.
  - g. Remove the quick release pin from the pintle adapter.
  - h. Remove the gun mount from the M4 pedestal.
  - i. Loosen the upper locking lever on the M4 pedestal.
  - j. Lift the pintle adapter from the M4 pedestal.
  - k. Tighten the upper locking lever on the M4 pedestal.
2. Remove the MK 19 from the HMMWV armament carrier ring and pedestal.
  - a. Perform Steps 1a through 1h for the M4 pedestal.
  - b. Loosen the pedestal bolts, and remove the pintle adapter.
  - c. Tighten the pedestal bolts.
3. Remove the MK19 from a vehicle equipped with an M66 ring mount.
  - a. Perform Steps 1a through 1h for the M4 pedestal.
  - b. Rotate the pintle lock handle to the unlocked position.
  - c. Pull the gun rearward until free of the forward mounting lugs on the cradle, and remove the gun from the cradle mount.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with equipment and personnel listed in conditions.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to correctly dismount the MK 19 from the vehicle without damage to equipment or injury to personnel.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Remove MK 19 from vehicle equipped with M4 pedestal.	—	—
2. Remove MK 19 from the HMMWV armament carrier ring and pedestal.	—	—
3. Remove the MK 19 from vehicle equipped with M66 ring mount.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References  
Required**

**Related  
FM 23-27**

**Mount an MK19 Machine Gun on an M3 Tripod**  
**071-030-0011**

**Conditions:** Given a sector of fire, an assistant gunner, and a MK 19 machine gun with feed throat assembly, MK64 gun mount, M3 tripod, and transversing and elevating (T&E) mechanism.

**Standards:** Ground mount the MK 19 machine gun on the M3 tripod without damage to equipment or injury to personnel.

**Performance Steps**

**WARNING:** A two-man lift is required for the MK 19 machine gun and each fully loaded M548 ammunition container.

**DO NOT try to lift either by yourself.**

1. Set up the M3 tripod.
  - a. Select a level and stable location and position the tripod so that the gun will be oriented toward the assigned sector of fire.
  - b. Open and lock the rear legs of the tripod in the open position (Figure 1).

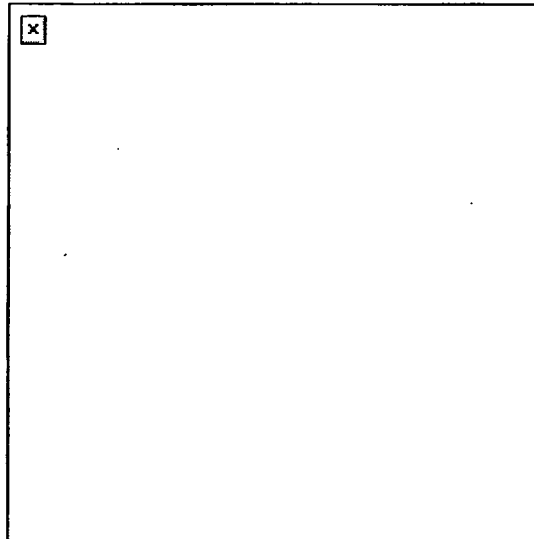


Figure 1. Positioning the tripod.

- c. Open and adjust the front leg of the tripod so that it forms an angle of about 60 degrees to the ground. Stabilize the legs of the tripod by pushing the metal shoe of each leg into the ground, or sandbag each leg.
2. Attach the T&E mechanism.
  - a. Lock the T&E mechanism in the center of traversing bar (Figure 2).



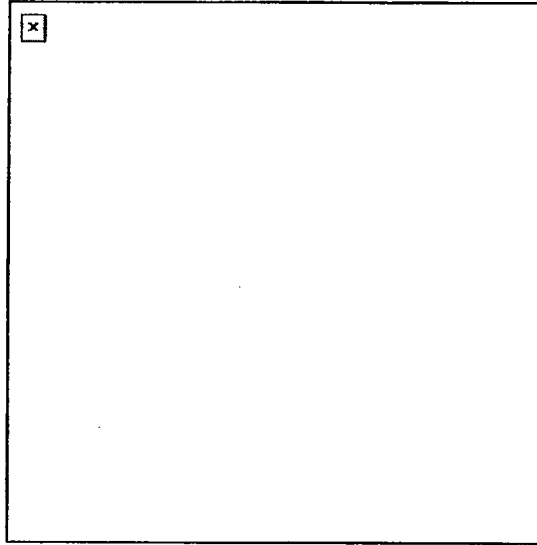
**Performance Steps**

Figure 2. M3 tripod.

- b. Rotate the elevation handwheel to the middle of the threaded shaft and position the traversing handwheel on the left side.
  3. Attach MK64 gun mount.
    - a. Lift the pintle lock release cam until it locks open.
    - b. Place the MK64 gun mount pintle into the tripod (Figure 3) until it sits flush on the tripod head. Flip down the pintle lock on the tripod.

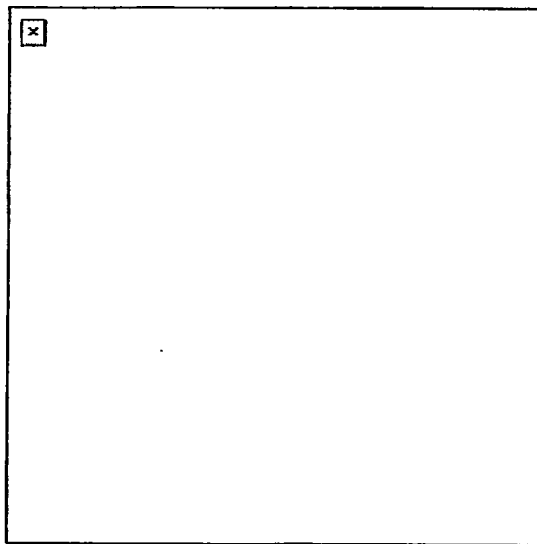


Figure 3. Insertion of pintle into pintle bushing.

- c. Make sure the gun mount is locked into the tripod by lifting slightly on the gun mount.
      - d. Disengage the stow pin (Figure 4) from the gun mount.

**Performance Steps**

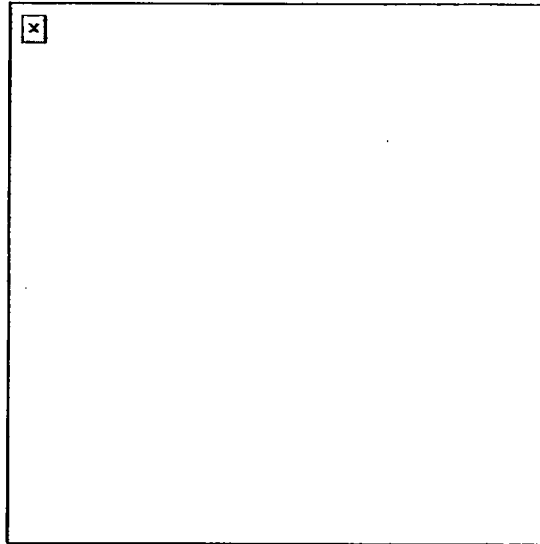


Figure 4. Disengagement of stow pin.

- e. Remove the quick release pin from the T&E mechanism. Align the holes in the T&E mechanism with the rear holes of the gun mount. Insert the quick release pin from the right side, and rotate the pin downward to the locked position (Figure 5 and Figure 6).

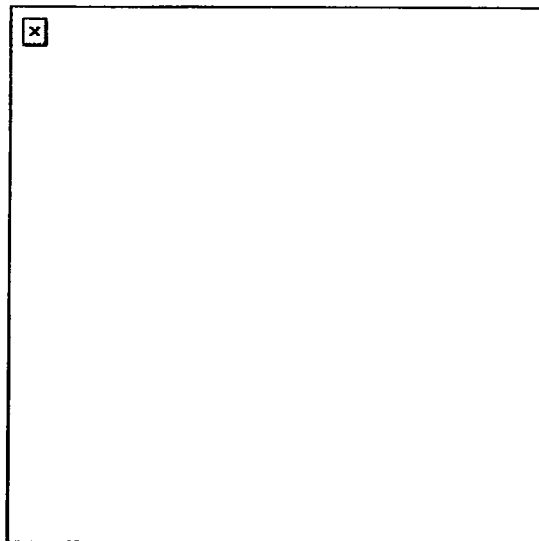


Figure 5. Alignment of gun cradle to T&E.

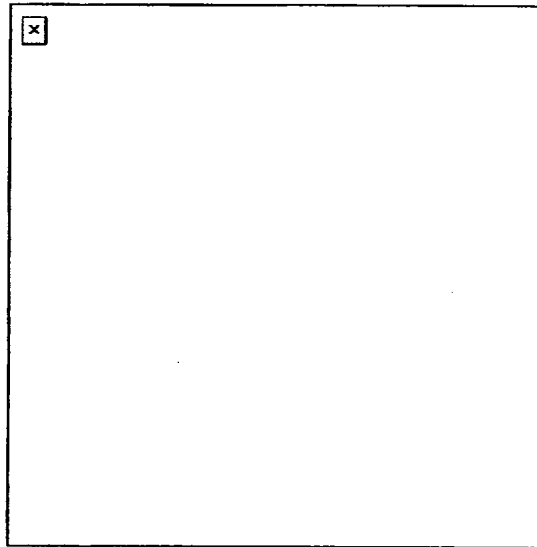
**Performance Steps**

Figure 6. Insertion of quick release pin.

4. Install the MK 19 on the gun mount.
  - a. Lower the gun into the mount. Slide the gun's front grooves onto the mounting lugs (Figure 7).

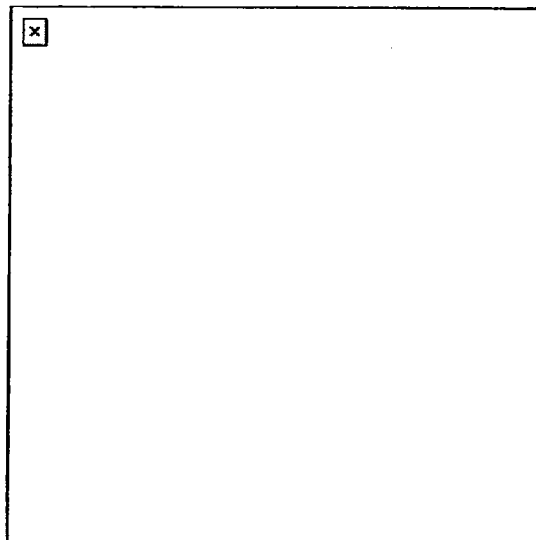


Figure 7. Sliding of gun onto mounting lugs.

- b. Align the rear mounting holes of the gun with the rear holes of the gun mount (Figure 8 and Figure 9). Insert the gun mount pin from the right side and rotate it downward to locked position.

**Performance Steps**

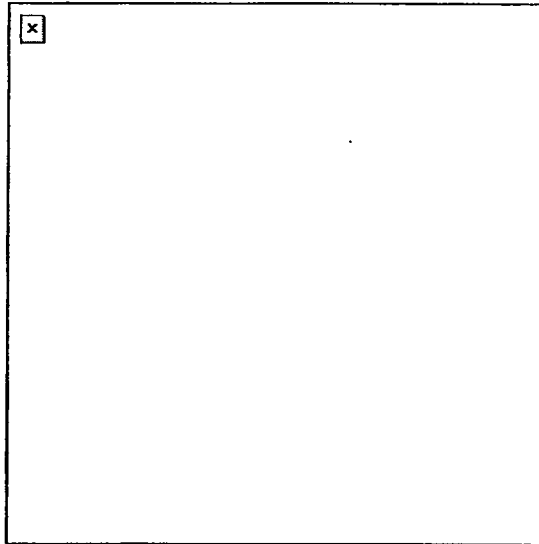


Figure 8. Alignment of sear assembly, pin holes.

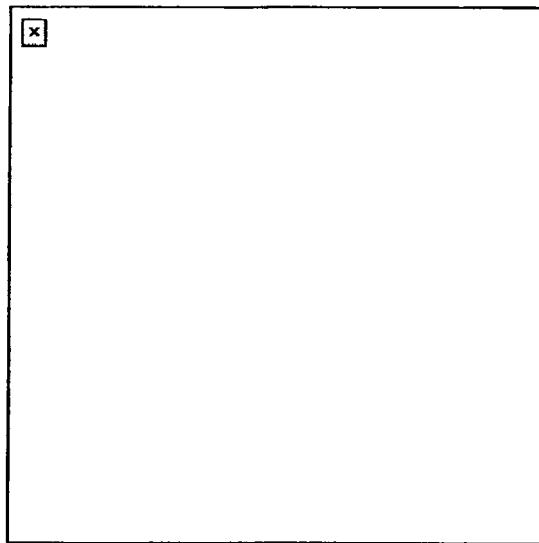


Figure 9. Insertion of cradle retaining pin.

5. Attach the feed throat assembly (Figure 10 and Figure 11).

Performance Steps

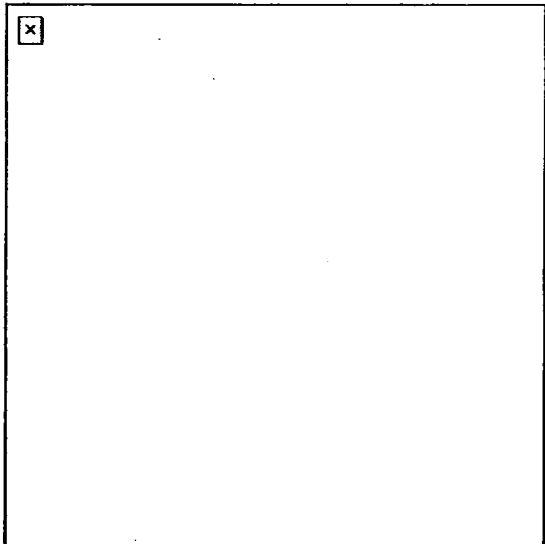


Figure 10. Gripping of pins on feed throat assembly.

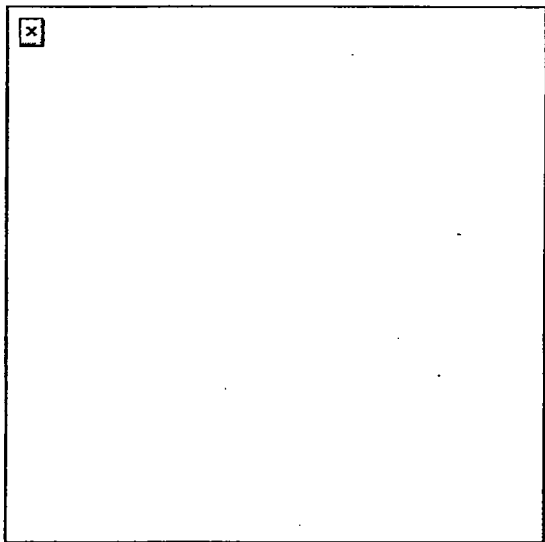


Figure 11. Insertion of feed throat assembly.

- a. Squeeze the spring-loaded pins on the geed throat assembly.
- b. Insert the feed throat into the forward left-hand slots of the receiver, and release the feed throat assembly pins.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide the soldier with equipment listed in task conditions.

Brief Soldier: Tell the soldier to mount the MK 19 onto the M3 tripod.

Performance Measures

- 1. Set up the M3 tripod.

<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
_____	_____

**Performance Measures**

2. Attach the T&E mechanism on the left side.
3. Attach MK64 gun mount.
4. Install MK 19 on gun mount.
5. Attach feed throat assembly.

**GO**      **NO GO**

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

**Related**

FM 23-27

TM 9-1010-230-10

**Dismount an MK 19 Machine from an M3 Tripod**  
**071-030-0012**

**Conditions:** Given a cleared MK 19 machine gun mounted on an M3 tripod, and an assistant gunner.

**Standards:** Remove the MK 19 from the M3 tripod without damage to equipment or injury to personnel.

**Performance Steps**

**WARNING:**

**1. A two-man lift is required for the MK 19 machine gun and each fully loaded M548 ammunition container. DO NOT try to lift either by yourself.**

**2. Before performing any procedure, make sure the weapon is clear of all ammunition.**

1. Check to make sure the weapon is clear.
2. Squeeze the spring-loaded pins on the feed throat assembly, and remove the feed throat assembly.
3. Remove the gun mount retaining pin.
4. Lift up and pull the gun rearward until it is free of the mounting lugs. Then, with the help of the assistant gunner, lift the gun from the gun mount.
5. Remove the transversing and elevating (T&E) mechanism.
6. Reach under the tripod head (right side) and lift the pintle lock. Remove the gun mount from the tripod.

**WARNING:**

**When extending or collapsing the M3 tripod, grasp the feet on the rear legs. The sliding sleeve on the right rear leg can cause injury to personnel.**

7. Adjust the tripod legs to their shortest length. Collapse the tripod for carrying or stowing.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide the soldier with the equipment listed in the task conditions statement.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier that he must dismount the MK 19 from the M3 tripod.

**Performance Measures**

1. Check to make sure weapon is clear.
2. Remove feed throat assembly.
3. Remove gun from gun mount.
4. Remove T&E mechanism.
5. Remove the gun mount from the tripod.
6. Prepare the tripod for carrying or stowing.

**GO      NO GO**

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

**Related**

FM 23-27  
TM 9-1010-230-10

## Mount a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 on an MK19 Machine Gun

071-030-0016

**Conditions:** Given an MK19 machine gun, MK64 gun cradle, traverse and elevation (T&E) mechanism, mounted on a vehicle or the M3 tripod, M2 mounting bracket, and night vision sight AN/TVS-5.

**Standards:** The night vision sight AN/TVS-5 is securely mounted on the MK19 without damage to equipment.

### Performance Steps

1. Mount the M2 mounting bracket on the MK19.
  - a. Slide the M2 mounting bracket over the rear sight housing from the muzzle end of the gun.

**Note:** You must lock the locking cams in sequence.

- b. Lock the M2 mounting bracket locking cams by swinging them to the rear.
  - (1) Lock the side cam.
  - (2) Lock the left top cam.
  - (3) Lock the right top cam.

2. Mount the AN/TVS-5 on the M2 mounting bracket.
  - a. Position the AN/TVS-5 on the mounting bracket in the groove at the top rear of the mounting bracket so that the scribe line on the bracket is aligned with the scribe line on the sight mounting adapter.
  - b. Insert the lever screw from the bottom of the bracket into the sight mounting bracket.
  - c. Tighten the lever screw.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: A mounted MK19, an AN/TVS-5, and an M2 mounting bracket is required at each test site. Brief Soldier: Tell the soldier that he must mount the AN/TVS-5 on the MK19.

### Performance Measures

1. Mount the M2 mounting bracket on the MK19.
2. Mount the AN/TVS-5 on the M2 mounting bracket.

GO      NO GO

\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show him what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

### References

Required

Related  
FM 23-27



**Dismount a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 From an MK19 Machine Gun**  
**071-030-0017**

**Conditions:** Given an MK19 machine gun with a mounted night vision sight AN/TVS-5.

**Standards:** The night vision sight AN/TVS-5 and mounting bracket are removed from the MK19 without damage to equipment.

**Performance Steps**

1. Remove the lever screw.
2. Remove the AN/TVS-5 from mounting bracket assembly.
3. Unlock the locking cams in sequence.
  - a. Unlock the right top cam.
  - b. Unlock the left top cam.
  - c. Unlock the side cam.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: An MK19 with a mounted night vision sight AN/TVS-5 is required at each test site. Brief Soldier: Tell the soldier that he must dismount the AN/TVS-5 from the MK19.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Remove the lever screw.	_____	_____
2. Remove the AN/TVS-5 from the mounting bracket.	_____	_____
3. Unlock the mounting bracket locking cams in sequence. <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Unlock the right top cam.</li><li>b. Unlock the left top cam.</li><li>c. Unlock the side cam.</li></ol>	_____	_____
4. Remove the mounting bracket from the MK19.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show him what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
FM 23-27

**Zero a Night Vision Sight AN/TVS-5 to an MK19 Machine Gun**  
**071-030-0018**

**Conditions:** Given an MK19 machine gun mounted on an M3 tripod with traverse and elevation (T&E) mechanism, night vision sight AN/TVS-5, optical boresight, stationary targets at known distances (1,000 inches and 500 to 700 meters) from the firing position, linked 40-mm grenade ammunition, and a requirement to zero the AN/TVS-5 to the MK19 machine gun.

**Standards:** The AN/TVS-5 is adjusted so that correct sight alignment, using the range mark on the AN/TVS-5 sight reticle to aim at a selected target, will cause a round to impact on or within 3 to 5 meters of the target.

**Performance Steps**

1. Use the optical boresight to zero an AN/TVS-5 to an MK19.
  - a. Place a target in front of the weapon at 1,000 inches.
  - b. Remove the flash suppressor and install the optical boresight in the muzzle of the barrel.
  - c. Mount the AN/TVS-5 and place it into operation.
  - d. Align the weapon so that the optical boresight is oriented on the aim point of the target.
  - e. Sight through the AN/TVS-5 and adjust the azimuth and elevation adjustment actuators on the AN/TVS-5 so that the 100-meter range mark and the optical boresight are aligned on the same point of aim.
  - f. Remove the optical boresight and install the flash suppressor.
  - g. To verify the zero, select a target of known range past 400 meters. Fire several rounds and tighten the mounting bracket and lever screw, then fire on the target and make adjustments to the sight until the target can be hit.
2. Use the weapon daylight sights to zero an AN/TVS-5 to an MK19.
  - a. Select a target of known range (500 to 700 meters).
  - b. Set the known range on the weapon sight range scale, and set the windage scale at zero.
  - c. Align the weapon on the target.
  - d. Without disturbing weapon alignment, lower the daylight sights.
  - e. Mount the AN/TVS-5 and place it into operation.
  - f. To verify the zero, fire several rounds and tighten the mounting bracket and lever screw, then fire on the target and make adjustments to the sight until the target can be hit.
  - f. Sight through the AN/TVS-5 and adjust the azimuth and elevation adjustment actuators so that the correct range mark (known range to target) on the sight is aligned on the target.

**Evaluation Preparation:**

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Use the optical boresight to zero an AN/TVS-5 to an MK19.	—	—
2. Use the weapon daylight sights to zero an AN/TVS-5 to an MK19.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show him what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
**FM 23-27**

## Subject Area 6: Weapons - M249

## Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun

071-010-0006

**Conditions:** Given a zeroed M249 machine gun, linked 5.56-mm ammunition, and engageable targets.

**Standards:** All targets engaged are hit.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** This task is designed to familiarize the soldier with firing the M249 machine gun, commonly referred to as the squad automatic weapon (SAW). This task does not describe the standards by which an assigned gunner should be measured.

1. Assume a suitable firing position. Based on your situation, assume the position that will allow you to observe and engage targets, yet minimize your exposure to enemy fire.
  - a. Bipod-supported prone. The bipod-supported prone position (Figure 1) and the bipod-supported fighting position (Figure 2) are the best positions for delivering effective fire on targets. Assume these positions when possible.
  - b. Shoulder. The shoulder firing position (Figure 3) is used to engage targets at ranges less than 100 meters when no other position can be assumed or when the situation dictates its use, for example, in the final stages of the assault.
  - c. Underarm. The underarm firing position is used when moving in and around the objective during the assault (Figure 4).
  - d. Hip. The hip firing position is used when closing with the enemy, when a heavy volume of fire in the target area is required, and when rapid movement is not necessary (Figure 5).
2. Fire the weapon using the correct sight picture (Figure 6).
  - a. Sight alignment. Center the front sight post in the peep sight (A, Figure 6).
  - b. Focus of the eye. Place the eye directly on line with the center of the rear sight. Focus on the tip of the front sight post. The natural ability of the eye to center objects in a circle and to seek the point of greatest light (center of the peep sight) aids in providing correct sight alignment.
  - c. Sight picture. Center the target over the front sight post (B, Figure 6). If firing on a 10-meter range target, use the sight picture in C, Figure 6.
3. Fire the weapon in three-round bursts at the rate of fire appropriate for target size. Use correct trigger manipulation: Pull straight to the rear and release.
4. Apply correct engagement technique based on target types (Figure 7).
  - a. Fixed fire. This type of fire is delivered against a point target when the depth and width of the beaten zone will cover the target. Only one aiming point is necessary to cover the target with fire.
  - a. Traversing means moving the muzzle of the weapon to the left or right to distribute fire laterally. With the bipod-mounted gun, select successive aiming points in the target area (Figure 4). Shift the shoulders slightly to the right or left for minor direction changes. For major changes, move the elbows and align the body to remain directly behind the gun.
  - b. Searching means moving the muzzle of the weapon up or down to distribute fire in depth. Select successive aiming points in the target area (Figure 4). To make changes in elevation, move elbows closer together or farther apart.
  - b. Traversing fire. This type of fire is distributed in width by successive changes in direction. This means moving the muzzle of the weapon to the left or right to distribute fire laterally. To make minor changes in direction, shift the shoulders to the right or left to select successive aiming points throughout the width of the target area. For major changes, move the elbows and align the body to remain directly behind the gun.

### Performance Steps

- c. Searching fire. This type of fire is distributed in depth by successive changes in elevation. This means moving the muzzle of the weapon up or down to distribute fire in depth. Select successive aiming points in depth throughout the target area. To make changes in elevation, move elbows closer together to lower the muzzle or farther apart to raise the muzzle.
  - d. Traversing and searching fire. This type of fire is distributed in width and depth by successive changes in direction and elevation. Combining traversing and searching fire provides good coverage of the target. Adjustments are made in the same manner as described for traversing and searching fire. This means moving the muzzle of the weapon to the left or right to distribute fire laterally. To make minor changes in direction, shift the shoulders to the right or left to select successive aiming points throughout the width of the target area. For major changes, move the elbows and align the body to remain directly behind the gun.
5. Use observation of fire and adjustment of fire to place effective fire on the target.
    - a. Observation of fire. Observe the burst of fire by noting the strike of the rounds in the target area, the tracers in flight, or, in the case of the 10-meter range, the holes made in the target.
    - b. Adjustment of fire. Use the adjusted aiming point method to quickly adjust fires without making a sight adjustment. If the initial burst misses the target, rapidly select a new aiming point the same distance from the center of impact of the initial burst but in the opposite direction. Fire a second burst (Figure 8).
  6. Use correct application of fire to engage specific targets.
    - a. The adjusted aiming point method is a means of rapidly and accurately adjusting fires without making a sight adjustment.
    - a. Point target. Engage point targets with fixed fire (Figure 9).
    - b. Area target. Initially, aim at the midpoint of the target area. Traverse and search to either flank, then back to the opposite flank (Figure 10).
    - b. If the initial burst misses the target, select a new aiming point on the ground. The new aiming point should be the same distance from the target as the initial burst's center of impact, but in the opposite direction. Fire a second burst (Figure 5).
    - c. Linear target. Initially, aim at the midpoint of the target. Traverse fire to one flank and then to the other to cover the entire target (Figure 11).
    - d. Deep target. Initially, aim at the midpoint of the target unless another portion of the target is more critical or presents a greater threat. Search down to one aiming point in front of the near end and back up to one aiming point beyond the far end (Figure 12).
    - e. Linear target with depth. Initially, aim at the midpoint of the target unless another portion of the target is more critical or presents a greater threat. Traverse and search to the flank closest to your position then back to the other flank to cover the entire target (Figure 13).
    - f. Moving target. To hit a moving target, estimate the speed of the target and the lead required to fire and hit it, fire and track the target as it moves, and adjust the lead by observing tracers and the strike of the bullets (Figure 14 and Figure 15).
  7. Engage three types of battlefield targets--area, point, and moving.
    - a. To engage an area target (Figure 6):
    - b. To engage a point target (Figure 7)--
      - (1) Select a distinct aiming point.
      - (2) Estimate range.
      - (3) Fire five- to seven-round bursts to obtain accurate range and deflection.
      - (4) Place the beaten zone on target. The beaten zone is the pattern formed by the rounds of each burst striking the ground or target.
      - (5) If the target moves, follow it.
        - (1) Estimate the speed of the target and the required lead.
        - (2) Fire and track as the target moves.
        - (3) Adjust the lead by observing the tracers and the strike of the bullets.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Evaluate this task on a live-fire range by having the soldier fire Table IV in FM 23-14. Evaluate the soldier's ability to use correct engagement techniques to engage specific types

of targets. Provide the soldier with equipment and materials required to fire the course.

**Brief Soldier:** Brief soldier on range safety per installation regulations. Tell the soldier to assume the bipod-supported prone position or bipod-supported fighting position. Tell the soldier you are evaluating both his ability to adjust fire and his ability to hit the target.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
1. Assume correct bipod-supported prone position or bipod-supported fighting position.	—	—
2. Field zero on a 300-meter target with no more than 12 rounds.	—	—
2. Applies traversing technique while firing.	—	—
NOTE: Tell the soldier, "Traverse for minor change in point."		
a. Shifts shoulders slightly to the right or left.		
NOTE: Tell the soldier, "Traverse for major changes in direction."		
b. Moves elbows and realigns body to remain directly behind the gun.		
3. Applies search technique while firing.	—	—
3. Engage single E-type silhouettes (point targets) at various ranges.	—	—
NOTE: Tell the soldier, "Search down."		
a. Moves elbows closer together.		
NOTE: Tell the soldier, "Search up."		
b. Moves elbows farther apart.		
4. Applies observation and adjustment of fire.	—	—
4. Engage double E-type silhouettes (automatic weapon positions) at various ranges.	—	—
NOTE: With the soldier aiming straight ahead, tell the soldier, "Aim and fire higher to the right."		
5. Applies adjusted aiming point instead of sight adjustment.	—	—
5. Engage linear E-type silhouettes (troops on line) at various ranges.	—	—
6. Moves to select a higher aiming point to the right.	—	—
7. Fires five- to seven-round bursts until the center of mass of the target area is hit, then uses traversing and searching fire to cover the target area.	—	—
8. Fires five- to seven-round bursts to obtain accurate range and deflection and places the beaten zone on target.	—	—
NOTE: Tell the soldier, "Engage a moving target."		
9. Fires and tracks as the target moves. Adjusts lead by observing tracers and bullet strikes.	—	—
NOTE: If a moving target is not available, the soldier simulates firing at a moving target and states what is done to keep hitting the target.		

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References  
Required**

**Related  
FM 23-14**

## Lay an M249 Machine Gun Using Field Expedients

071-312-4004

**Conditions:** As an M249 machine gun gunner in a defensive situation, given a completed fighting position; an M249 machine gun; bipod; primary and secondary sectors of fire that include either an area of graze or recognizable targets; an axe; and tree limbs, rocks or boards.

**Standards:** In the designated sector of fire with bipod extended, use one of the following: --1. The aiming and elevation stake method to engage preselected targets within the sector. --2. The notched-stake or tree-crotch method to engage preselected target areas within the sector. --3. The log or board method to fire grazing fire.

### Performance Steps

1. Fabricate notched stakes or tree crotches if needed (Figure 1).

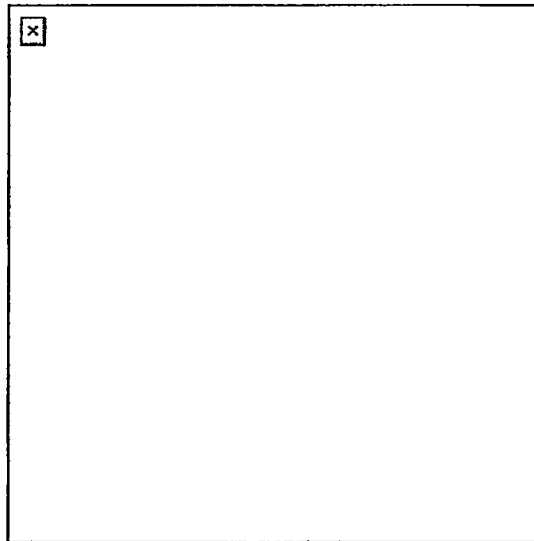


Figure 1. Notched-stake or tree-crotch method of engaging predetermined targets.

2. Aim the weapon at the preselected target(s).
  3. Mark a spot on the ground under the buttstock assembly.
  4. Move the weapon aside. Solidly drive a notched stake or tree crotch into the spot marked on the ground.
  5. Place the stock of the weapon in the rests notched into the stakes or into the tree crotches. Make final adjustments to hit the desired target area and to define sector limits.
- NOTE:** If you do not have any notched stakes or tree crotches, you can use tent poles or strong sticks. You will need four poles or sticks for the left and right limits, and more for the target areas. Drive two poles or sticks in the ground in the shape of an "X." Place the buttstock in the "X."
6. Drive tent pegs in the ground slightly in front and behind the feet of the bipod legs. This will help you keep the weapon aligned in the sector of fire. Dig shallow trenches or grooves to allow the bipod feet to rotate when you move the stock from one stake or tree crotch to another.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide equipment and materials listed in the task conditions statement.

**NOTE:** During training, comply with unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and any local regulations regarding the cutting of live vegetation, the digging of holes, and the prevention of erosion.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier which target(s) to lay the gun on. Point out the sector that the soldier must cover by fire.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Aim the weapon at preselected targets.	—	—
2. Place the notched stakes or tree crotches to align weapon on preselected targets.	—	—
3. Drive tent pegs in the ground slightly in front and behind the feet of the bipod legs to help keep the weapon aligned on the sector of fire.	—	—
4. Dig shallow trenches or grooves to permit the bipod feet to rotate as the soldier moves the stock of the weapon from one stake or tree crotch to another.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

References	Related
Required	FM 3-22.68

**Maintain an M249 Machine Gun**  
**071-312-4025**

**Conditions:** Given an M249 machine gun during daylight; a 200-round box (filled) of ammunition; cleaning kit; scraper tool; cleaner, lubricant, preservative (CLP); rags; swabs; and TM 9-1005-201-10.

**Standards:** Clear and disassemble the machine gun. Clean, inspect, and lubricate the machine gun. Assemble the machine gun and perform a function check. Inspect the machine gun ammunition and box.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** The M249 is available with old and new style barrels. Diagrams used here show the new-style barrel.

1. Clear the M249 machine gun.

**WARNING:** Before the SAW is disassembled, make sure it is clear. **WARNING:** Be sure the bolt is in the forward position before disassembly. The guide rod can cause death or injury if the guide spring is retracted with the bolt pulled to the rear.

- a. Move the safety to the fire position.
- b. With your right hand, palm up, pull the cocking handle to the rear and lock the bolt to the rear.
- c. Hold the cocking handle to the rear and move the safety to the safe position. Push the cocking handle forward to the locked position. Place weapon on safe.
- d. Push the cocking handle forward to its lock position (you should hear a click).
- e. Raise the cover and feed mechanism assembly. To check for brass, links, or ammunition--
  - (1) Check the feed pawl assembly under the feed cover.
  - (2) Check the feed tray assembly.
  - (3) Lift the feed tray assembly and inspect the chamber.
  - (4) Check the space between the bolt assembly and chamber.
  - (5) Insert two fingers in the magazine well and feel for brass or ammunition.
- f. Close the cover and feed mechanism assembly. Move the safety to the fire position.
- g. Pull the cocking handle to the rear, press the trigger, and ease the bolt forward.

2. Disassemble the M249 machine gun.

**WARNING**

Ensure bolt is in forward position before removing drive spring, return rod, and transfer mechanism assembly.

- a. Remove the drive spring, return rod, and transfer mechanism assembly.
  - (1) Raise the cover assembly. Pull the upper retaining pin at the rear of the receiver to the left. Let the butt pivot downward so the rear opening of the receiver is clear (Figure 1).

**NOTE:** The upper and lower retaining pins in the rear of the receiver are captured pins. Do not try to remove them completely during disassembly.

- (2) Hold the weapon with one hand on the buttstock. At the same time, push in and upward on the rear end of return rod and transfer mechanism assembly with thumb of other hand to release it from positioning groove. Withdraw return rod and transfer mechanism assembly and spring (Figure 2).
- (3) Separate the spring from the return rod and transfer mechanism assembly (Figure 3).
- (4) While steadying the weapon with the left hand, with the right hand pull the cocking handle to the rear to lock the bolt. Return the cocking handle to the forward position.
- (5) Place a finger on the face of the bolt and push until your finger makes contact with the bridge at the end of the receiver. This leaves the piston, slide, and bolt assemblies exposed.
- (6) Hold the slide assembly and pull the moving parts out the rear of the receiver (figure 3).
- (7) Rotate the bolt to disengage the bolt from the drive assembly. Remove the bolt from the slide assembly (figure 4).

**CAUTION:** When the bolt is removed, the firing pin spring is free. Be sure it is not lost or misplaced.



**Performance Steps**

- (8) Remove the firing pin spring from the firing pin, being careful not to break the spring. If the spring sticks, rotate it clockwise to free it. The weapon will function without the spring; however, this weakens the firing pin action.
- (9) To separate the slide assembly from the piston, press the rearmost retaining pin to the left. Lift the slide assembly (figure 5).
- b. Remove the operating rod, slide assembly, and bolt assembly.
  - (1) Pull the cocking handle to the rear to move operating rod, slide assembly, and bolt assembly out the rear of the receiver (Figure 4).
  - (2) Rotate the bolt clockwise to disengage the lug. Remove the bolt from the slide assembly. Separate the piston from the slide assembly by pressing the rearmost retaining pin to the left and lifting the piston off the slide assembly (Figure 5).
  - (2) To remove the heat shield (figure 7), place the barrel with the muzzle end on a hard, flat surface with the heat shield facing away from your body. Place the index fingers of each hand inside the chamber. Use your thumbs to push up on the top clip.
  - (3) Raise the feed cover.
  - (4) To remove the gas regulator and collar, rotate the gas collar pin out of the notch. Place the tip of the scraper with the concave side facing the collar pin inside the notch (figure 8). Be careful not to use too much pressure so as not to break the tip of the scraper. Rotate the collar counterclockwise over the concave portion of the tip of the scraper and past the notch until the collar slides off (figure 9). Separate the gas regulator from the gas block (figure 10).

Note: Position hand to prevent gas regulator from falling out.

- c. Remove the heat shield. Hold the weapon with one hand. With the other hand, grasp the heat shield just forward of the barrel handle, and lift it off the barrel (Figure 6).
- d. Remove the barrel (Figure 7).
- d. Remove the buttstock and buffer group assembly. Use a cartridge or the spring guide rod to push the lowermost retaining pin to the left. It is a captured pin; it is not removed. Remove the buttstock and shoulder assembly by pulling it rearward while supporting the trigger mechanism (figure 12).

**CAUTION:** The upper and lower retaining pins in the rear of the receiver are captured pins. Do not attempt to remove them completely during disassembly.

- (1) Ensure the folding handle on the new style barrel is in carrying (up) position.
- (2) Depress the barrel locking lever with your left hand. Grasp and lift the carrying handle with your right hand. Push the barrel forward.

- e. Remove the handguard (Figure 8)

**WARNING:** Never remove the trigger mechanism before the weapon is cleared. Removal of the trigger mechanism from a loaded weapon will cause a runaway gun.

- (1) Push the handguard retaining pin to the left using a section of the cleaning rod.
- (2) Pull downward and remove the handguard.

- f. Remove the gas regulator.

- (1) Position the gas collar so you can insert the scraper assembly into the notch in the front left of the gas block.
- (2) Insert the tip of the scraper assembly in the notch; hold the scraper firmly in position (Figure 9).
- (3) Turn the collar counterclockwise and remove it (Figure 10).
- (4) Remove the gas regulator from the gas block (Figure 10).

- g. Remove the buttstock and buffer assembly.

**NOTE:** The upper and lower retaining pins in the rear of the receiver are captured pins. Do not try to remove them completely during disassembly.

- (1) Using a section of the cleaning rod, push the lowermost retaining pin to the left.
- (2) While supporting the trigger mechanism with one hand, use the other to pull the buttstock and buffer assembly rearward and remove it (Figure 11).

- h. Remove the trigger mechanism by pulling rearward and down (Figure 12).

- h. The part remaining when the bipod group is removed is the receiver group. Disassembly is complete.

### Performance Steps

- i. Remove the gas cylinder.
  - (1) Turn the gas cylinder to the left or right to release the locking spring.
  - (2) Pull the gas cylinder forward to remove it (Figure 13).
- j. Remove the bipod. The bipod should slip off the receiver easily. If it does not, turn the bipod left or right to loosen any dirt or corrosion (Figure 14).

### 3. Clean the M249.

#### WARNING

Do not use gasoline, kerosene, hydraulic oil, benzene, benzol, high-pressure water, steam, or compressed air for cleaning.

NOTE: Do not use abrasives to clean the bore, piston, gas cylinder, or gas regulator.

- a. Clean the bore and chamber using a bore brush, a chamber brush, CLP, and fresh swabs..
  - (1) Clear and disassemble the weapon.
  - (2) Clean the bore and chamber using CLP and fresh swabs.
  - (3) Clean the gas regulator.

Note: The gas regulator must be cleaned with the special tool (scraper). Remove all carbon dust. CLP will not be used on the collar, gas block, or body.

- (a) Clean the gas vent hole (figure 16).
- (b) Clean the central hole with the appropriate part of the scraper by turning it clockwise and pushing it in toward the bottom of the housing (figure 17).
- (c) Use the protruding tip of the scraper to clean the two grooves of the body (figure 18).
- (4) Clean the gas cylinder and piston.

Note: The gas cylinder and piston must be cleaned with the special tool (scraper). CLP will not be used on the gas cylinder or piston.

- (a) Clean the front interior of the gas cylinder (repositioned in receiver with bipod in place) by inserting and turning the flat side of the scraper in a full 360-degree circular motion (figure 19).
- (b) Clean the internal grooves of the front side of the gas cylinder the same as in paragraph 3a(4)(a) above, only insert the scraper farther into the gas cylinder (figure 19).
- (c) Clean the three grooves of the piston using a 360-degree circular motion (figure 20). Remove all carbon dust from the piston, inside and out.
- (d) Clean the hole in the front of the piston by inserting and turning the flat side of the scraper in a full 360-degree circular motion (figure 21).
- (5) Remove carbon and dirt from all other parts of the weapon.

Note: A cloth saturated with CLP is used on exterior surfaces to prevent corrosion.

- b. Clean the gas regulator using the scraper. Do not use CLP on the collar, gas block, or body.
  - (1) Clean the gas vent hole (Figure 15).
    - (a) Check the operating rod for bends, cracks, or breaks.
    - (b) Check the buffer spring for breaks.
    - (c) Check that the lug pins protrude equally on both sides of the buffer spacer.
    - (d) Check the operating rod spring for kinks, separated strands, or broken strands. It can have a maximum of one break on any one strand.
    - (e) Check the bolt assembly for visible damage and the cartridge extractor for cracks or chips.
    - (f) Check the slide assembly for visible damage.
    - (g) Check the feed roller for spring tension when compressed.
    - (h) Check that the pivot slide is locked into the slide assembly.
    - (i) Check the firing pin for straightness and cracks and that the tip is completely rounded.
    - (j) Check that the firing pin spring is not crushed or bent and that the beveled end is not stretched.
    - (k) Check the sear notch on the piston assembly for signs of excessive wear or burring. Slight rotation of the piston on its housing is normal.

**Performance Steps**

- (2) Clean the central hole of the gas regulator with the appropriate part of the scraper by turning the scraper clockwise and pushing it inward toward the bottom of the housing (Figure 16).
  - (a) Check the flash suppressor for cracks, and that it is fastened securely.
  - (b) Check the front sight post and front sight base for bends, cracks, or breaks.
  - (c) Check the heat shield assembly for damage, cracks, or broken retaining clamps.
  - (d) Check the gas regulator and collar for cracks or burrs.
  - (e) Check the barrel for bulges, cracks, bends, obstructions, or pits in the chamber or bore.
  - (f) Check the gas plug for obstructions, cracks, and bulges.
  - (g) Check that the carrying handle is not cracked, broken, or missing, that it can be folded under spring pressure to the right and left, and that it remains locked in an upright position.
- (3) Clean the two grooves of the regulator body using the protruding tips of the scraper (Figure 17).
  - (a) Check the handguard for cracks or breaks.
  - (b) Check that the retaining clip is attached to the handguard retaining pin.
- (4) Check the buttstock and buffer assembly group.
  - (a) Check the buttstock for cracks, bends, or breaks, and for missing components.
  - (b) Check the linkage and tension on the buffer rod.
  - (c) Check the shoulder rest for bends or breaks and that it locks in both positions.
- (5) Check the trigger mechanism group.
  - (a) Check the sear for excessive wear.
  - (b) Check that the sear pin does not protrude from the trigger mechanism.
  - (c) Check that the safety functions properly.
- (6) Check the gas cylinder group for cracks, bends, or breaks.
- (7) Check the bipod group for cracks, bends, or breaks; and check that the bipod legs extend and collapse easily.
- (8) Check the receiver group.
  - (a) Check the cover latch for proper operation.
  - (b) Check that all parts inside the cover assembly move under spring tension and that the cover assembly remains open without support.
  - (c) Check all spotwelds for cracks.
  - (d) Check belt-holding pawl for spring tension.
  - (e) Check the receiver for bends or cracks.
  - (f) Check that the cocking handle slides fully within its guide and locks in its forward position.
  - (g) Check that the windage and elevation knobs on the rear sight are moveable and legible and that the windage scale screws are not worn or burred.

Note: Deficiencies the operator cannot correct must be reported to the squad leader or NCOIC.

- c. Clean the gas cylinder and piston using the scraper. Do not use CLP on the gas cylinder or on the piston.
  - (1) Clean the front interior of the gas cylinder (repositioned in receiver with bipod in place) by inserting and turning the flat side of the scraper in a full 360-degree circular motion (Figure 18).
  - (2) Clean the internal grooves on the front side of the gas cylinder as previously described (using the protruding tips of the scraper), but insert the scraper farther into the gas cylinder (Figure 19).
  - (3) Clean the three grooves of the piston using a full, 360-degree circular motion (Figure 20).
  - (4) Clean the hole in the front of the piston by inserting and turning the flat side of the scraper in a full 360-degree circular motion (Figure 21).
- d. Remove carbon and dirt from all other parts of the weapon using CLP and a wiping rag.
- e. Clean ammunition boxes with a brush and clean dry wiping rag.
- f. Clean ammunition with a clean dry wiping rag.

## Performance Steps

4. Inspect the M249 machine gun.
  - a. Inspect the bore and chamber for chips and pitting.
  - b. Check the front sight for looseness.
    - (1) Push the gas cylinder through the bipod yoke into the receiver.
    - (2) Push the cylinder to the rear while countering the pressure of the locking spring and guiding the end of the cylinder into the receiver with the other hand by applying downward pressure.
    - (3) Position the recess in the cylinder near the spring.
    - (4) Turn the cylinder until the spring clicks into the recess at the rear of the gas cylinder.
  - c. Inspect the flash suppressor (old style barrel) or compensator (new style barrel), the barrel extension, and the barrel release for cracks, dents, burrs, or other damage.
    - (1) Align the trigger mechanism with the slot on the bottom of the receiver.
    - (2) Hold the trigger mechanism in position while replacing the buttstock and buffer assembly group.
  - d. Check the cover assembly for smooth operation, spring tension, bent parts, and excessive wear.
    - (1) Align the lower hole in the rear hole in the trigger mechanism.
    - (2) Push the retaining pin to the right.

Note: Before beginning this step, be sure the cleaning equipment is properly placed in the handguard.

- e. Check the cocking assembly for free movement and for bent or cracked parts.
  - (1) Place the handguard onto the receiver from the bottom and slide it backward until it stops.
  - (2) Using a cartridge or the spring guide rod, push the handguard retaining pin to the right. This locks the handguard into position (figure 23).
  - (3) Pull downward on the handguard to ensure it is locked into position.
- f. Check the rails for excessive wear, burrs, and chips.

CAUTION: Old style collar cannot be used in a new style barrel because it may cause an underpowered weapon. New style collar cannot be used in old style barrel because it may cause an overpowered weapon.

- (1) Insert the gas regulator into the gas block and align the notch on the gas regulator with the notch in the gas block (A, figure 24).
- (2) Insert the gas regulator collar. Push downward and rotate the gas regulator collar onto the protruding end of the body and align the spring with the stud.
- (3) Push the gas regulator collar downward firmly and rotate it until it slips into place, then press it in and rotate it to lock it in place (B, figure 24).

WARNING: Do not interchange the barrel assembly or bolt assembly from one machine gun to another without having the headspace checked. Doing so may result in injury to personnel or damage to the gun.

- (4) Depress the barrel locking lever to the rear with your left hand and hold the carrying handle in your right hand. Insert the barrel into the receiver (C, figure 24).
- (5) Pull the barrel rearward and push downward; align the gas cylinder with the gas regulator and lock it by releasing the barrel locking lever (C, figure 24).
- (6) Make sure the barrel is locked into the receiver by pulling or lifting the carrying handle.
- (7) Replace the heat shield by placing the hook end of the heat shield under the front sight post and press down until the clamps lock on the barrel.

- g. Check the barrel locking latch and cover detect springs for spring tension.
- g. Replace the operating rod group (figure 25). Hold the piston in one hand with the face of the piston facing outward and the sear notches downward. With the other hand, place the slide assembly onto the rear of the piston with the firing pin toward the front of the piston. Check the slide assembly retaining pin to make sure it is out.
  - (1) Push the slide assembly retaining pin to the right. This locks the piston assembly and the slide assembly together (A, figure 25).
  - (2) Put the firing pin spring on the firing pin of the slide assembly. Place the bolt on the slide assembly, aligning the driving lug of the bolt with the slot of the slide assembly. Apply pressure to the face of the bolt to compress the firing pin spring. Then, rotate the bolt to hook the driving lug into the slide assembly (B, figure 25).

**Performance Steps**

- (3) Open the cover assembly on the receiver. Insert the face of the piston into the receiver, aligning the bolt lugs onto the receiver rails. Pull the trigger, and push the moving parts forward until the bolt is seated into the chamber (C, figure 25).
- (4) Place the operating rod tip into the operating rod spring. Then, insert the free end of the operating rod and spring into the rear of the piston (D, figure 25).
- (5) Depress the rear of the operating rod assembly until the two lugs on the buffer are positioned in the receiver grooves (E, figure 25).
- (6) Pivot the buttstock upward into position and push the upper retaining pin to the right, locking the buttstock to the receiver (F, figure 25).
- (7) Close the cover assembly.

Note: The function check must be performed to ensure that the SAW has been correctly assembled.

- h. Check for broken pistol grip and chipped or cracked trigger housing holding lug.
- i. Check the tripping lever and the seat for burrs, cracks, chips, or wear.
- j. Check the cocking action by pushing back on the tripping lever; the sear should rise. Pull the trigger; the sear should lower.
- k. Check the safety function. Push the safety to the right (RED BAND NOT VISIBLE). Pull the trigger; the sear will not lower. Push the safety to the left (RED BAND VISIBLE). Pull the trigger again; the sear will lower.
- l. Check the slide assembly, bolt assembly, piston assembly, and return rod and transfer mechanism assembly for burrs, cracks, and broken pins. Push down on roller of slide assembly to ensure it retracts. Check the driving spring for broken strands.
- m. Check bipod legs for correct operation.
- n. Check the rear sight assembly for serviceability.
- o. Check the ammunition box for damage. Make sure the box latch will engage the receiver dovetail.
- p. Inspect ammunition.
  - (1) Check for damaged, corroded, or loose bullets.
  - (2) Check for damaged links.
  - (3) Report to your squad leader or NCOIC any deficiencies you cannot correct.

5. Lubricate the M249.

NOTE: Use only CLP on the M249.

- a. Lubricate exposed metal parts and all moving parts with a light coat of CLP.
- b. Do not lubricate the gas regulator hole in the barrel or the gas regulator itself.

6. Assemble the M249.

- a. Replace the bipod and gas cylinder.
  - (1) Place the bipod on the receiver.
  - (2) Push the gas cylinder through the bipod yoke into the receiver.
  - (3) Push the cylinder to the rear while countering the pressure of the locking spring and guiding the end of the cylinder into the receiver with the other hand applying downward pressure. When you have fully inserted the gas cylinder, rotate it until the spring clicks into place in the recess at the rear of cylinder (Figure 22).
  - (4) Seriously corroded cartridges or links.
  - (5) Cartridges with pushed in (short) bullets.
- b. Replace the handguard.
  - (1) Stow the cleaning equipment in the handguard.
  - (2) Place the handguard onto the receiver and slide it backward until it stops.
  - (3) Using a cleaning rod section, push the handguard retaining pin to the right. This locks the handguard into position (Figure 23).
  - (4) Pull downward on the handguard to ensure it locks into position.
- c. Replace the gas regulator.
  - (1) Insert the gas regulator into the lower end of the hole in the gas block. Align the notch on the gas regulator body with the notch in the gas block (Figure 24).

Performance Steps

- (2) With the gas regulator installed and supported on a firm surface, place the gas collar on the protruding end of the gas regulator. Rotate the gas collar until it slips in place. To lock the gas regulator in place, press it in and rotate it (Figure 25).
  - d. Replace the barrel.
    - (1) Depress the barrel locking lever with your left hand (Figure 26).
    - (2) Hold the carrying handle with your right hand; pull the barrel rearward into the receiver. Push the carrying handle downward and release the barrel locking lever. Check to ensure the barrel locks into position.
  - e. Replace the trigger mechanism (Figure 27).
    - (1) Pull the retaining pin to the left side of the receiver.
    - (2) Align the trigger mechanism with the slot on the bottom of the receiver. To hold the trigger mechanism in place, push the lower retaining pin into the right side hole on the rear of the trigger mechanism assembly.
  - f. Replace the buttstock and shoulder assembly (Figure 28). Support the trigger mechanism with your left hand. Align the lower hole in buttstock and buffer assembly with the rear hole in the trigger mechanism. Push the lower retaining pin to the right.
  - g. Replace the operating rod, slide assembly, and bolt assembly.
    - (1) Secure the slide assembly to the piston by pushing the retaining pin from the left to the right. Place the firing pin spring on the firing pin (Figure 29).
    - (2) Put the bolt assembly into the slide assembly. Press in to compress the firing pin spring. Rotate the bolt and hook its driving lug into the slide assembly (Figure 30).
    - (3) Put the assembled parts into the receiver with the feed cover open. Align and place the bolt lugs; slide the cutouts carefully onto the receiver rails. Press the trigger and at the same time, push the parts all the way forward (Figure 31).
  - h. Replace the spring, return rod, and transfer mechanism assembly.
    - (1) Put the slide spring on the return rod and transfer mechanism assembly (Figure 32).
    - (2) Ensure that the headed end of the vertical pin in the transfer mechanism assembly points upward (on top of the transfer mechanism assembly) (Figure 33).
    - (3) Hold the pistol grip with one hand. With the other hand, push the return rod and transfer mechanism assembly into its housing in the piston. Press inward and downward on the rear of the assembly until its two lugs move into the receiver grooves.
  - i. Pivot the buttstock and buffer assembly upward into position. Push the retaining pin to the right, and close the cover assembly (Figure 34).
  - j. Replace the heat shield assembly (Figure 35).
    - (1) Hook the metal extensions of the heat shield assembly under the front sight pins (new style barrel) with the spring clips down on top of the barrel
- NOTE: Although old style barrels do not have protruding front sight pins, you can still install heat shield assemblies on them.
- (2) Apply downward pressure and snap the heat shield onto the barrel. Be careful not to pinch yourself.

7. Perform a function check to ensure you have assembled the weapon correctly.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide all the equipment and materials listed in task conditions statement. Use only dummy ammunition for training purposes.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to perform maintenance on the M249, ammunition box, and linked 5.56-mm ammunition.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
Note: Performance measure 1 must be done first; otherwise, sequence is not scoreable.		
1. Clear the weapon.	_____	_____
2. Disassemble the machine gun.	_____	_____

Performance Measures

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
2. Disassemble the weapon without damaging any parts.	—	—
a. Remove the operating rod group.		
b. Remove the barrel group.		
c. Remove the handguard group.		
d. Remove the buttstock and buffer group assembly.		
e. Remove the trigger mechanism group.		
f. Remove the gas cylinder group.		
g. Remove the bipod group.		
3. Clean the weapon, ammunition box, and ammunition.	—	—
4. Identify any damaged, worn, or malfunctioning part.	—	—
5. Assemble the machine gun.	—	—
5. Identify any damaged ammunition.	—	—
a. Replace the bipod group.		
b. Replace the gas cylinder group.		
c. Replace the trigger mechanism group.		
d. Replace the buttstock and buffer group assembly.		
e. Replace the handguard group.		
f. Replace the barrel group.		
g. Replace the operating rod group.		
6. Lubricate the weapon using the correct lubrication technique.	—	—
7. Assemble the weapon in correct sequence without damaging any parts.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

References

**Required**  
TM 9-1005-201-10

**Related**  
FM 23-14

**Perform a Function Check on an M249 Machine Gun**  
**071-312-4026**

**Conditions:** Given an M249 machine gun and a requirement to perform a function check.

**Standards:** Perform a function check to determine whether or not the M249 machine gun is operational.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide the equipment listed in the task conditions statement.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to perform a function check to determine if the M249 machine gun functions properly.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
1. Grasp cocking handle with the right hand, palm up, and pull the bolt back, locking it to the rear.	—	—
2. Push the cocking handle forward to the lock position.	—	—
3. Place weapon on SAFE.	—	—
4. Pull the trigger. The weapon should not fire.	—	—
5. With the right hand, palm up, pull cocking handle to rear and hold it.	—	—
6. Move the safety to fire position.	—	—
7. While continuing to hold the cocking handle to the rear, use your left hand to pull the trigger and ease the bolt forward to prevent damage to the bolt.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
 FM 3-22.68  
 TM 9-1005-201-10



**Load an M249 Machine Gun****071-312-4027**

**Conditions:** Given an M249 machine gun, small arms ammunition box, and linked 5.56-mm ammunition.

**Standards:** Attached the ammunition box to the receiver correctly. Placed linked 5.56-mm ammunition in the feed tray groove so that, when the cover was closed, a round remained in the tray groove and the ammunition was fed correctly.

**Performance Steps**

1. With the palm facing up, pull the cocking handle to the rear. This locks the bolt in the rear position.
2. Push the cocking handle forward until you hear it click into the locked position (Figure 1).

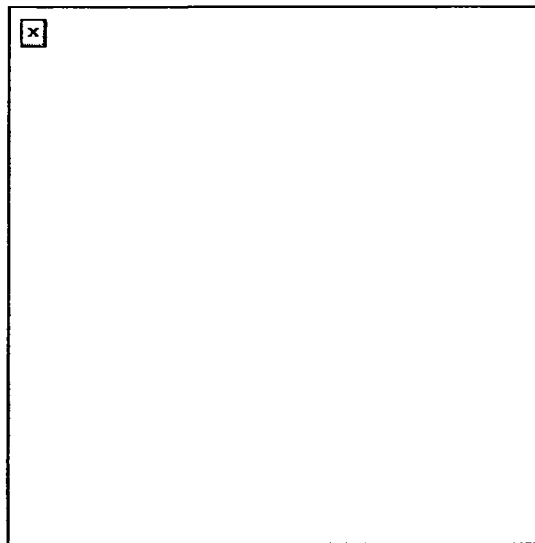


Figure 1. M249 locking handle and safety

3. Push the safety from left to right for safe mode (the red band will not show) (Figure 1).
4. Open the cover, raise the feed tray assembly, and make sure the feed tray, receiver, and chamber area are clear (Figure 2).

**Performance Steps**

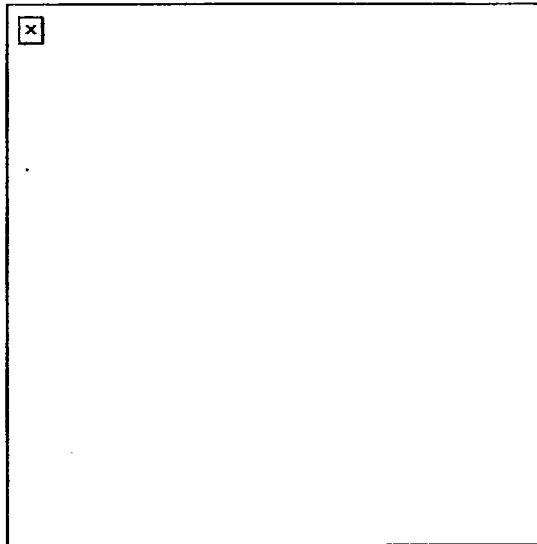


Figure 2. Checking the feed tray, receiver, and chamber area.

5. Attach the ammunition box with linked 5.56-mm ammunition to the underside of the receiver. To do so, align the box latch with the dovetail on the receiver (Figure 3). Pull outward on the ammunition box to make sure the aligning box latch engages.

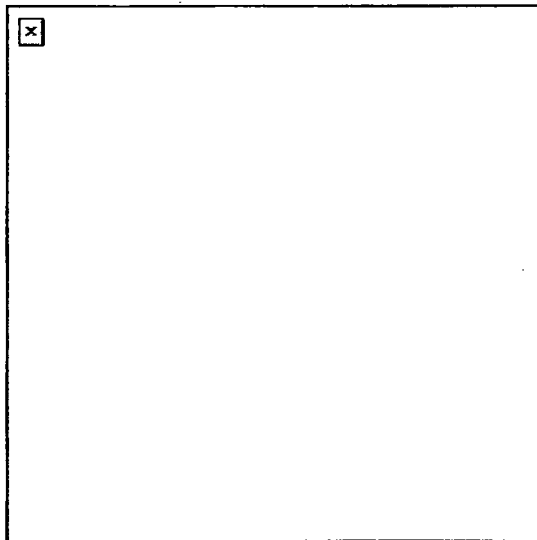


Figure 3. Attachment of the ammunition box.

6. Place the link belt in the feed tray with the first round against the cartridge stop and hold the belt in place. Close the cover assembly (Figure 4).

Performance Steps

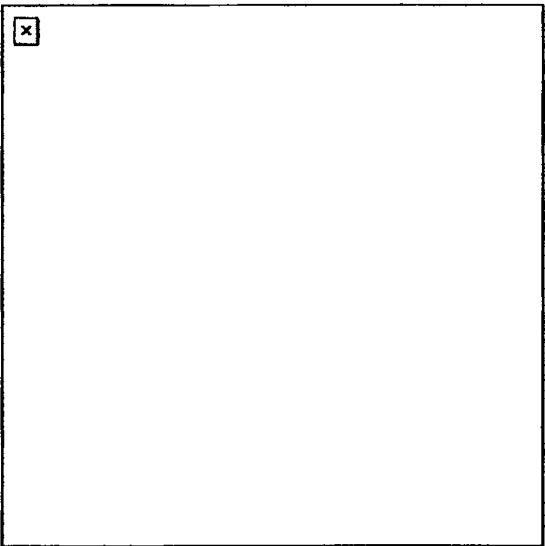


Figure 4. Link belt in feed tray.

WARNING: The weapon is now loaded.

**Evaluation Preparation:** **SETUP:** Use dummy ammunition to test this task. At the test position, provide an M249 and a belt of linked, dummy 5.56-mm ammunition. For standardization, always make sure to place the bolt and cocking handle forward and the safety on safe. Make sure the ammunition is clean and linked properly. Have an assistant relink and wipe the ammunition clean before the next test.

**BRIEF SOLDIER:** Tell the soldier to load the M249 machine gun.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Locked the bolt in the rear position.	—	—
2. Pushed the cocking handle forward to the locked position.	—	—
3. Pushed the safety to safe position.	—	—
4. Checked to make sure the feed tray, receiver, and chamber were clear.	—	—
5. Attached ammunition box with linked ammunition to the receiver.	—	—
6. Placed link belt in feed tray with first round against cartridge.	—	—
7. Closed the cover.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all performance measures are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any performance measure is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show the soldier what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

References  
Required

Related  
FM 3-22.68  
TM 9-1005-201-10

**Unload an M249 Machine Gun**  
**071-312-4028**

**Conditions:** Given an M249 machine gun loaded with 5.56-mm ammunition (linked or in an M16 magazine) and a requirement to unload the M249.

**Standards:** Removed all ammunition, expanded brass, links, and magazine from the weapon.

**Performance Steps**

1. Pull the cocking handle to the rear, locking the bolt in the rear position.
2. Place the safety on the safe mode (the red band will not show) and return the cocking handle to its forward position.
3. Remove ammunition and links.
  - a. Belt-fed. Raise the cover and remove any ammunition or links from the feed tray.
  - b. Magazine-fed. Push down on the magazine release tab and pull the magazine out. Then raise the cover.
4. Raise the feed tray and inspect the chamber to ensure that it contains no ammunition. If it contains ammunition, remove it.
5. Close the cover.
6. Place the safety in the fire mode (the red band will show).
7. Pull the cocking handle to the rear, and pull the trigger while manually easing the bolt forward to the closed position.

**Evaluation Preparation:** **SETUP:** At the test site, provide the soldier with all the equipment given in the task condition statement. Evaluate this task using dummy 5.56-mm linked rounds or dummy 5.56-mm ammunition loaded in 30-round M16 magazines.

**BRIEF SOLDIER:** Tell the soldier to unload the M249 in the correct manner.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Pulled the cocking handle to the rear, locking the bolt in the rear position.	—	—
2. Placed the safety on safe mode (the red band will not show) and returned the cocking handle to its forward position.	—	—
3. Removed ammunition and links. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Belt-fed. Raised the cover and removed any ammunition or links from the feed tray.</li> <li>b. Magazine-fed. Pushed down on the magazine release tab and pulled the magazine out. Then raised the cover.</li> </ol>	—	—
4. Raised the feed tray and inspected the chamber to ensure that it contained no ammunition. If it contained ammunition, removed it.	—	—
5. Closed the cover.	—	—
6. Placed the safety in the fire mode (the red band will show).	—	—
7. Pulled the cocking handle to the rear, and pulled the trigger while manually easing the bolt forward to the closed position.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all performance measures are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any performance measure is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show the soldier what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
FM 3-22.68

## Correct Malfunctions of an M249 Machine Gun

### 071-312-4029

**Conditions:** Given a loaded M249 machine gun and 5.56-mm ammunition linked or loaded in an M16 magazine. The M249 machine gun has been firing and one of the following situations has developed. The weapon fails to fire; the weapon continues to fire after the trigger is released (in which case, the weapon is referred to as "runaway weapon" and the fire is called "uncontrolled fire"); or the weapon fires sluggishly.

**Standards:** If an M249 failed to fire, took immediate action within 10 seconds, returned the weapon to service without identifying the cause. If immediate action did not work, performed remedial action on either a hot or cold M249 and identified the cause of the malfunction. If an M249 continued to fire after the trigger was released--a "runaway" M249 firing "uncontrolled fire"--took immediate action, secured the weapon, and identified the cause of the malfunction. If an M249 fired sluggishly, took corrective action.

### Performance Steps

1. Take immediate action to correct a failure to fire.
  - a. Grasp the cocking handle (palm up) and pull it to the rear.
  - b. Look at the ejection port to see if a cartridge case, belt link, or round ejects.
    - (1) If nothing ejects--
      - (a) Lock the bolt to the rear.
      - (b) Return the cocking handle forward.
      - (c) Proceed to Step 2 or 3 to take remedial action.
    - (2) If a cartridge, belt link, or round ejects--
      - (a) Return the cocking handle to the forward position.
      - (b) Aim and fire the weapon at the target.
      - (c) If the weapon does not fire, place it in safe mode, and proceed to Step 2 or 3 to take remedial action.
2. Take remedial action on a cold weapon (one that has fired less than 200 rounds in two minutes).
  - a. Ensure the cocking handle is forward and the weapon is in the safe mode.
  - b. Keep the weapon oriented on the target area. Ensure your face is not directly over the feed cover.
  - c. Raise the feed cover.
  - d. If the weapon still does not fire, remove the ammunition belt or magazine.
    - (1) If no rounds are in the chamber--
      - (a) Reload and try to fire at the target. If the weapon fires, the stoppage has been corrected.
      - (b) If the weapon fails to fire, take immediate action (Step 1). If the weapon still fails to fire, continue to the next step.
      - (c) Clear the weapon.
      - (d) Disassemble and inspect the weapon.
      - (e) Clean, lubricate, and replace damaged or missing parts, as needed.
    - (2) If a cartridge is in the chamber--
      - (a) Remove all ammunition from the feed tray and close the cover.
      - (b) Try to fire. If the weapon fires, the stoppage has been corrected. Reload and continue the mission.
      - (c) If the weapon does not fire, continue to the next step.
      - (d) Lock the bolt to the rear.
      - (e) With the cover closed, remove the round from the chamber using a cleaning rod.
      - (f) Clear the weapon.
      - (g) Disassemble and inspect the weapon.
      - (h) Clean, lubricate, and replace damaged or missing parts, as needed.
3. Take remedial action on a hot weapon (one that has fired more than 200 rounds in two minutes).

**Performance Steps**

- a. Ensure the cocking handle is forward and the weapon is in the safe mode.
  - b. Keep the weapon oriented on the target area. Place the safety in the safe mode.
- WARNING:** During training, wait fifteen minutes before applying remedial action. During combat, wait five seconds before applying remedial action due to the possibility that a "hangfire" or "cookoff" may occur.
- c. Raise the cover.
  - d. Remove the ammunition belt or magazine.
  - e. Raise the feed tray.
  - f. Inspect the chamber.
    - (1) If no round is in the chamber--
      - (a) Reload and try to fire.
      - (b) If the gun fires, the stoppage has been corrected.
      - (c) If the weapon fails to fire, apply immediate action for a second time.
      - (d) If immediate action does not work, continue to the next step.
      - (e) Disassemble and inspect the weapon.
      - (f) Clean, lubricate, and replace damaged or missing parts, as needed.
    - (2) If a round is in the chamber--
      - (a) Close the cover and try to fire.
      - (b) If the weapon fires, the stoppage has been corrected.
      - (c) If the weapon does not fire, ensure the cocking handle is forward and the weapon is in the safe mode.
      - (d) Disassemble and inspect the weapon.
      - (e) Clean, lubricate, and replace damaged or missing parts, as needed.
4. Take immediate action to secure a runaway weapon.
    - a. If after the trigger is released, the weapon continues to fire, take one of the following actions:
      - (1) Hold the weapon on the target until the weapon stops firing.
      - (2) Break the ammunition belt by twisting it in either direction.
      - (3) Allow the weapon to fire the remaining ammunition at the target.
    - b. Clear the weapon.
    - c. Disassemble the weapon and check for the following deficiencies:
      - (1) Broken, worn, or burred sear.
      - (2) Worn sear notch on the piston assembly.
      - (3) Sear stuck in the trigger housing.
      - (4) Carbon buildup in the gas system.
    - d. Clean, lubricate, and replace damaged or missing parts, as required.
    - e. Turn weapon in to maintenance before firing again.
  5. Correct sluggish operation of the M249 machine gun.
    - a. Clear the weapon.
    - b. Disassemble and inspect the weapon.
    - c. Clean, lubricate, and replace damaged or missing parts, as required.

**Evaluation Preparation: SETUP:** At the test site or live-fire range, provide all the equipment given in the task condition statement. Set up the weapon so that it is loaded and in the safe mode. Insert an expended round in the belt to cause a stoppage. You can evaluate this task using dummy 5.56-mm ammunition either in links or in M16 magazines.

**BRIEF SOLDIER:** Tell the soldier to assume a firing position behind the M249 and apply any required immediate action. Ask the soldier to describe the actions performed for remedial action on a cold and hot weapon, a sluggishly operating weapon, and a runaway weapon.

**Performance Measures**

1. Took immediate action to correct a failure to fire.
2. Took remedial action on a cold weapon.

**GO    NO GO**

_____	_____
_____	_____

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
3. Took remedial action on a hot weapon.	_____	_____
4. Took immediate action to secure a runaway weapon.	_____	_____
5. Corrected a sluggishly operating M249.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all performance measures are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any performance measure is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show the soldier what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.



**Zero an M249 Machine Gun****071-312-4030**

**Conditions:** On a live-fire range, given an M249 machine gun, an E-type silhouette target at a known range between 300 and 700 meters, and a 30-round belt of ammunition. You have been ordered to field zero your M249 machine gun.

**Standards:** The soldier will zero the machine gun using three-round bursts. Zeroing will be accomplished without exceeding 30 rounds. The weapon will be considered zeroed when the rounds impact in the target area. Zero will be determined and recorded.

**Performance Steps**

1. Set sights for initial firing.
  - a. Elevation: Using the elevation knob, index the known range (300 meters) to the target. Center the peep sight by rotating it clockwise (right) as far as it will go, then rotate it counterclockwise (left) 5 clicks (Figures 1 and 2).

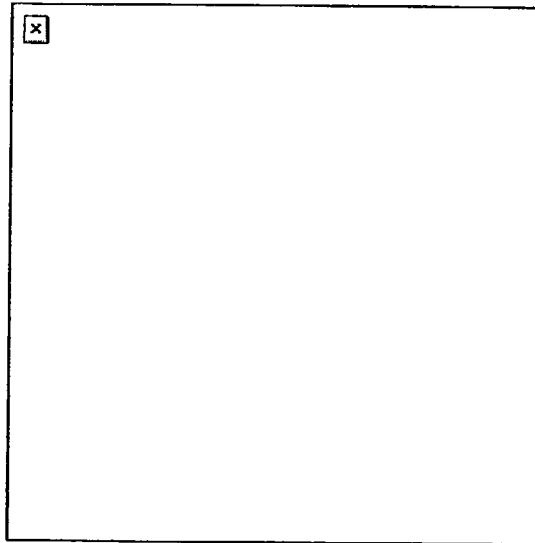


Figure 1. Sliding scale on sight.

**Performance Steps**

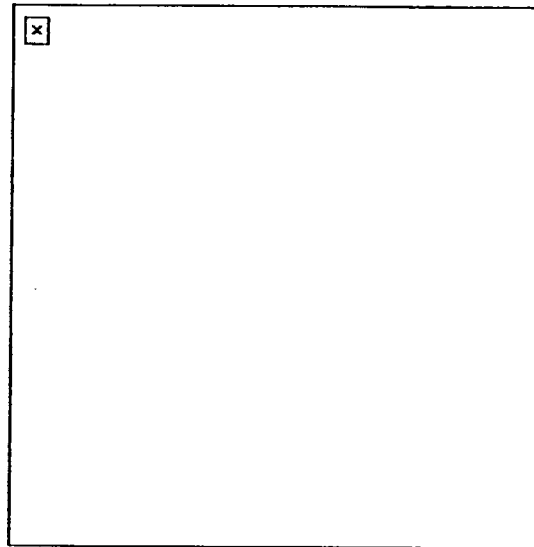


Figure 2. Lowering the bipod.

**NOTE:** The elevation range scale wheel has range settings from 300 to 1,000 meters. The even numbered range settings are on the left side of the scale wheel and the odd numbered range settings are on the right (Figure 1 and Figure 2).

- b. Windage. Rotate the windage knob toward the muzzle until the peep sight is completely to the right, then rotate the windage knob toward the buttstock 12 clicks to the left. This will place the peep sight in the approximate center of the sight (Figures 1 and 2).
2. Assume a good stable firing position (Figure 3 and Figure 4).

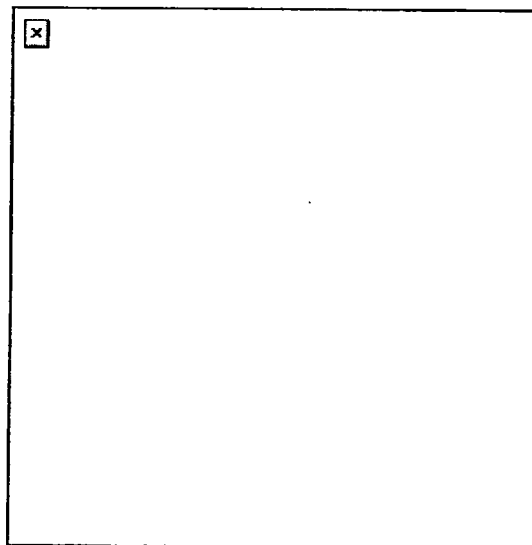


Figure 3. Prone position, bipod-supported.

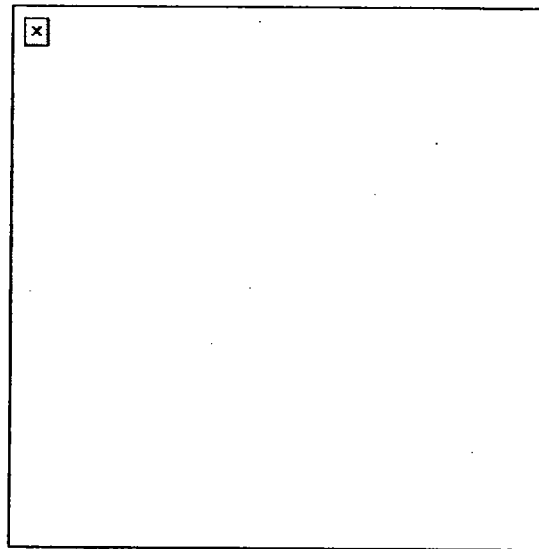
**Performance Steps**

Figure 4. Fighting position, bipod-supported.

3. Fire a three-round burst at the center base of the target. Note where the burst strikes.
4. Adjust sights so that rounds impact target area.
  - a. Adjust the sights for deflection. Determine if the center of the beaten zone is left or right of the target. Adjust the windage knob forward to move it to the right, or adjust it rearward to move it to the left (Figure 5).
  - b. Adjust the sights for elevation. Determine if the center of the beaten zone is above (high) or below (low) the point of aim. Rotate the peep sight clockwise to lower it, or counterclockwise to raise it (Figure 5).

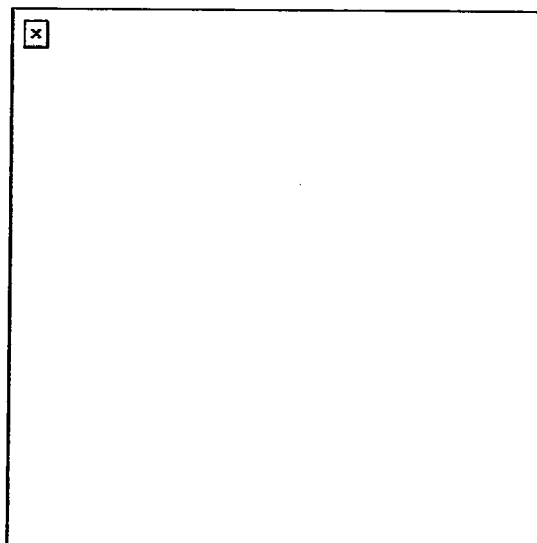


Figure 5. Windage and elevation (peep sight) correction chart.

5. Fire a confirming burst. (If you do not hit the target, repeat Steps 3 and 4 until you do so).

**Performance Steps**

- 6. Adjust the elevation scale to reflect the range to the target.
- 7. Record the zero. Once you have zeroed the weapon, record the elevation setting.
  - a. Deflection. Do not record the adjustments for windage scale. Instead, loosen the windage sliding scale screws, and align the scale so that the large index line is under the windage mark on the sight. Tighten the screws.
  - b. Elevation. Count the number of clicks (half turns) you have moved the peep sight away from the initial setting. For example, with a 300-meter zero, if you moved the peep sight two clicks (half turns) up, record ZERO 300 UP 2. If you moved the peep sight two clicks (half turns) down, record ZERO 300 DOWN 2.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide all equipment and materials in the task conditions statement.

**Brief Soldier:** Indicate the target and the range to the target. Tell the soldier he has 30 rounds to zero the M249.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Set the sights for initial firing.	_____	_____
2. Assume a good stable firing position.	_____	_____
3. Fire a three-round burst at the center base of the target, and note where the burst strikes.	_____	_____
4. Adjust the sights so that rounds impact target area..	_____	_____
5. Fire a confirming burst.	_____	_____
6. Adjust the elevation scale to reflect the range to the target.	_____	_____
7. Record the zero. Once you complete the zero, record the elevation setting.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

<b>References</b>	<b>Related</b>
<b>Required</b>	FM 3-22.68
	TM 9-1005-201-10

## Subject Area 7: Weapons - 12 Gauge

**Perform Operator's Maintenance on a 12-Gauge Shotgun****191-381-1252**

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to perform maintenance on a 12-gauge shotgun. You are given a 12-gauge shotgun, carbon-removing compound, rifle bore cleaning compound, linseed oil, lubricating oil, general-purpose lubricating oil, weapon lubricating oil, cotton rags and patches, a toothbrush, and a cleaning rod.

**Standards:** Clean and lubricate the shotgun while observing all safety precautions. Inspect the shotgun to ensure that it had not been altered or damaged, and turn in the weapon, if required.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** The operator is not authorized to field-strip the weapon into major groups and assemblies (see Technical Manual [TM] 9-1005-303-14).

1. Clean the 12-gauge shotgun.
  - a. Clean the bore and locking lug area of the barrel assembly and other powder-fouled surfaces with rifle bore cleaning compound and a toothbrush. Remove all foreign matter.
  - b. Thoroughly dry the bore and chamber, including the locking lug area, with a clean cotton rag.
  - c. Lightly oil the bore, barrel extension, and external surfaces of the weapon using general-purpose lubricating oil.
  - d. Clean the powder-fouled parts with carbon-removing compound, wipe with a clean cotton rag, and oil. From then on, clean and oil the parts as required.

**WARNING: AVOID SKIN CONTACT WITH THE CARBON-REMOVING COMPOUND. THE COMPOUND SHOULD BE WASHED OFF THOROUGHLY WITH RUNNING WATER IF IT COMES IN CONTACT WITH THE SKIN. A GOOD LANOLIN BASE CREAM AFTER EXPOSURE TO THE COMPOUND IS HELPFUL. IT IS BEST TO USE GLOVES AND PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT.**

- e. Wipe wooden components with a slightly oiled rag. Remove any surplus oil with a dry cloth. Apply a light coat of linseed oil, and rub it into the wood with the heel of your hand.
  - f. Insert a patch into the barrel by pushing it with a cleaning rod to remove excess oil before firing.

2. Lubricate the 12-gauge shotgun under unusual conditions, such as the following:

**NOTE:** Lubricate more often than once a day if an inspection shows rust or corrosion.

- a. During extremely cold temperatures (below 0°F.).
  - (1) Make sure all parts are dry and free of condensation before lubricating.
  - (2) Lubricate with weapon lubricating oil. Keep the weapon protected as much as possible.
- b. When temperatures are hot and humidity is high.
  - (1) Inspect the shotgun frequently for rust.
  - (2) Lightly oil the weapon with general-purpose lubricating oil.
  - (3) Clean and oil the weapon more often if the weapon is exposed to salty air, high humidity, or moisture.

**NOTE:** Apply a film of general-purpose lubricating oil to the internal and external groups immediately after inspection and cleaning for weapons that are intended for infrequent firing or placed in arms rooms for safekeeping for prolonged periods. Give special attention to the bore, chamber, and locking lug areas.

- c. When temperatures are hot and the air is dry.
  - (1) Clean the shotgun daily or as required.
  - (2) Wipe the weapon free of oil to prevent sand and dust from collecting on the outside and working parts in sandy or dusty areas.
- d. When the weapon has been immersed in water.
  - (1) Eject the round from the chamber to allow water to run from the bore if the weapon was submerged during deep fording. (See Task 191-381-1253.)

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** Normally, if the round is left in the chamber, it will form a vacuum and will not allow the water to drain freely.

- (2) Wipe the weapon dry as soon as possible.
  - (3) Turn the weapon in to organizational maintenance for complete cleaning and lubrication of all parts if the inspection reveals rust or if corrosion is evident.
3. Inspect the weapon before firing.
- a. Ensure that the sling is secured to the gun shoulder stock group and bayonet band assembly.
  - b. Ensure that the stock is not cracked or loose.
  - c. Check the magazine cap for burrs and stripped threads to ensure that the cap is properly secured to the magazine tube.
  - d. Check the bayonet band assembly to ensure that it is secured to the barrel assembly. Check for unusual pits or damage to the bore or the barrel assembly. Ensure that the bore is dry and free of obstruction before firing.
  - e. Check the hammer, safety, and trigger to see if they operate. Activate the disconnect assembly to see if it functions (Figure 191-381-1252-1).
  - f. Check the carrier assembly for freedom of movement.
  - g. Check the ejector for burrs and to see if it is bent. Test the weapon with a dummy round or a once-fired, empty round to be sure the cartridge will eject. (See Task 191-381-1253.)
  - h. Check the magazine to be sure it is secured to the receiver. Check the tube for dents, burrs, or damage that will restrict the cartridge.
4. Turn the weapon in to the armorer if it has been altered or damaged or if the maintenance requires disassembly.

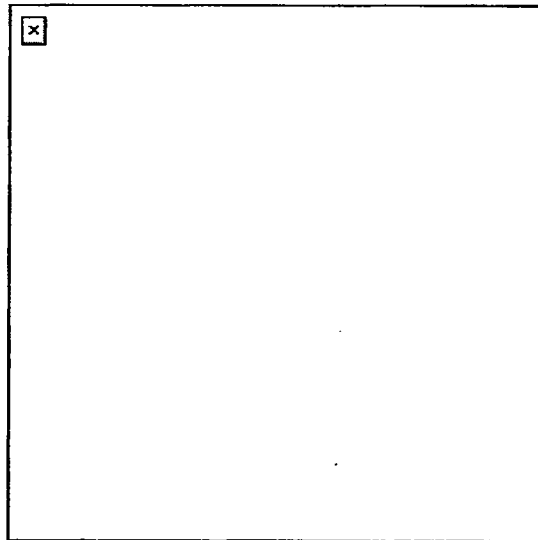


Figure 191-381-1252-1  
Firing Control on a 12-Gauge Shotgun

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a 12-gauge shotgun, carbon-removing compound, rifle bore cleaning compound, linseed oil, lubricating oil, general-purpose lubricating oil, weapon lubricating oil, cotton rags and patches, a toothbrush, and a cleaning rod.

**Brief soldier:** Brief the soldier to clean and lubricate the shotgun while observing all safety precautions. Tell the soldier to inspect the shotgun to ensure that it has not been altered or damaged, and turn in the weapon, if required.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Cleaned the 12-gauge shotgun.	_____	_____
2. Lubricated the 12-gauge shotgun under unusual conditions.	_____	_____
3. Inspected weapon before firing.	_____	_____
4. Turned the weapon in to the armorer if it has been altered or damaged or if maintenance requires disassembly.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

<b>References</b>	<b>Related</b>
Required	TM 9-1005-303-14

## Operate a 12-Gauge Shotgun

191-381-1253

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to fire a 12-gauge shotgun. You are given a 12-gauge shotgun and ammunition.

**Standards:** Load, demonstrate how to reduce a stoppage, unload, and clear the shotgun, in sequence, while observing all safety precautions.

### Performance Steps

1. Load blank cartridges and chamber one round (Figure 191-381-1253-1).
  - a. Place the safety in the "on" position (A). Push the safety switch to the right (located under the trigger guard). Button will show black when it is in the "on" position.
  - b. Turn the weapon over, the bead sight down (the small bead on top of the barrel).
  - c. Push the slide arm extension (the wood part under the barrel) forward to open the breach.
  - d. Depress the carrier assembly.
  - e. Insert four rounds of ammunition by inserting the red end of the cartridge into the assembly and pushing the brass end of the cartridge with your thumb (B).

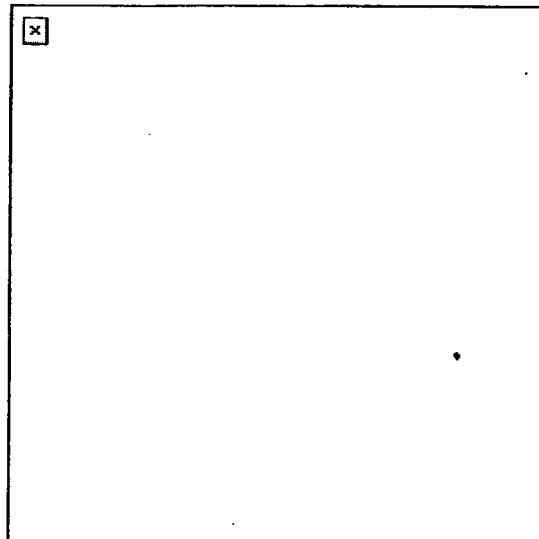


Figure 191-381-1253-1  
Loading the Shotgun

**NOTE:** Make sure that each cartridge clicks into the well. Each cartridge inserted pushes the previous cartridge forward.

- f. Turn the weapon over so that the trigger is toward the ground.
  - g. Chamber one round (C).
    - (1) Release the disconnecter assembly located at the left rear of the trigger guard by pushing the button with your strong hand.
    - (2) Pull the fore-end assembly to the rear (while holding the disconnecter assembly in and vigorously pushing forward with your weak hand) to chamber one round.
2. Reduce a stoppage on a 12-gauge shotgun.
  - a. Check for the following probable causes (and perform corrective actions) if the shotgun fails to fire:
    - (1) Failure to chamber a round. (See step 1g.)
    - (2) Failure to load an empty magazine. (Go to step 1.)



**Performance Steps**

- (3) Faulty ammunition. Pump out the defective shell by pulling the fore-end assembly to the rear and pushing forward again to eject the shell and chamber another round or pump out all four rounds and use other ammunition.
- b. Check for the following probable causes (and perform corrective actions) if the shotgun fails to load or feed:
  - (1) Obstructions in the chamber. Clean the receiver. (See Task 191-381-1252.)
  - (2) Defective carrier assembly. (Notify direct support maintenance.)
  - (3) Failure to function correctly. (This may be due to foreign matter in the bolt slide or the safety well of the trigger guard. Go to Task 191-381-1252.)
- 3. Unload a 12-gauge shotgun (Figure 191-381-1253-2).

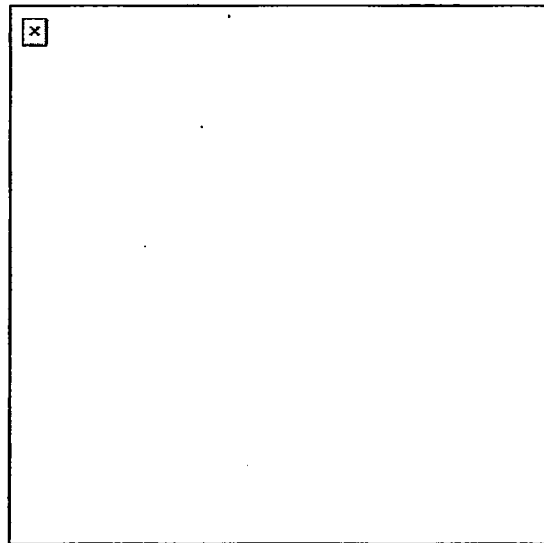


Figure 191-381-1253-2  
Unloading the Shotgun

- a. Place the shotgun under the left arm and rotate the weapon so that the front sight bead is pointing left.
- b. Place the safety in the "on" position (A). (See Step 1a.)
- c. Push down on the carrier assembly with a forefinger.
- d. Depress the cartridge cutoff (inside the carrier assembly) with the forefinger of the right hand.
- e. Use the right hand to lift slightly on the base of the cartridge. The round will automatically pull back slightly.
- f. Remove the cartridge from the magazine by pulling it to the rear and lifting it out (B).
- g. Eject a live round from chamber by releasing the disconnecter assembly and retracting (pulling back) on the fore-end assembly (C).

**CAUTION: MAKE CERTAIN THAT THE MAGAZINE FOLLOWER, LOCATED INSIDE THE CARTRIDGE ASSEMBLY, IS VISIBLE TO BE SURE THAT NO SHELLS REMAIN IN THE MAGAZINE. WITH THE BREACH OPEN, CHECK THE CHAMBER TO MAKE SURE THAT IT IS EMPTY.**

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a 12-gauge shotgun and four blank cartridges for each soldier.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to demonstrate how to load, unload, reduce a stoppage, and clear the shotgun, in sequence, while observing all safety precautions.

**Performance Measures**

- 1. Loaded blank cartridges and chambered one round.

GO    NO GO

—    —

**Performance Measures**

2. Reduced a stoppage on a 12-gauge shotgun.
3. Unloaded a 12-gauge shotgun.

**GO**    **NO GO**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
SF0746  
TM 9-1005-303-14

**Engage Targets With a 12-Gauge Shotgun.****191-381-1254**

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to engage targets using a 12-gauge shotgun. You are given a shotgun, 10 rounds of #00 buckshot, Type E silhouette targets, and a firing barricade.

**Standards:** Engaged targets with the 12-gauge shotgun, scoring a minimum of two pellets per round in the targets.

**Performance Steps**

1. Load four rounds of ammunition. (See Task 191-381-1253.)

2. Fire two rounds at the target from a standing position.

**NOTE: Use the fundamentals of marksmanship when firing the shotgun.**

- a. Stand facing the target. Place your feet a comfortable distance apart, and turn your nonfiring shoulder slightly toward the target.
- b. Step back with your firing foot, keeping your feet spread approximately the same distance as in the previous step, with the toes of the firing foot pointing at a 45-degree angle.
- c. Keep your nonfiring foot in place with your toes pointing at the target.
- d. Place the butt of the stock into your firing shoulder, keeping the firing arm parallel to the ground.
- e. Grip the fore-end assembly with the nonfiring hand, keeping the elbow of the nonfiring arm below the slide.
- f. Fire two rounds of ammunition.
  - (1) Aim for the center mass of the target.
  - (2) Push the safety to "off" and pull the trigger to fire.
  - (3) Eject the spent round.

**When the round is fired, the slide is automatically released and moves to the rear.**

- (a) Continue the movement by pulling the slide to the rear with a sharp precise movement.
  - (b) Push the slide forward with sharp movement until it locks with a snapping sound, chambering the next round, after the spent round is ejected.
- (4) Engage the safety.

## Performance Steps

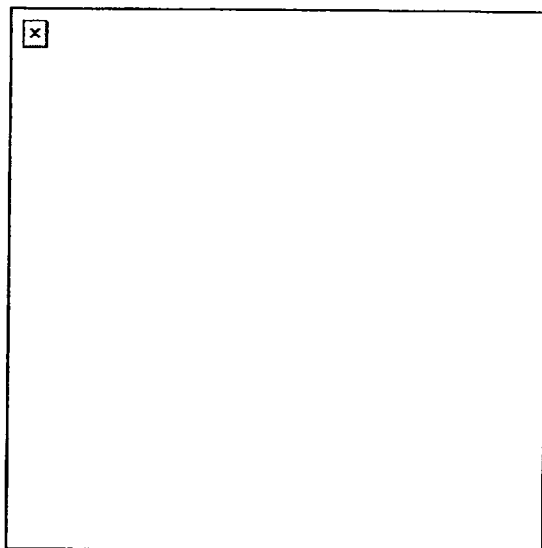


Figure 191-381-1254-1  
Military Police 12-Gauge Shotgun Qualifications Course

3. Fire two rounds at the target from a kneeling position.
  - a. Face the target. Place your nonfiring foot forward, kneel on your firing knee, and rest your buttock on the heel of your firing foot.
  - b. Turn your nonfiring shoulder slightly toward the target.
  - c. Place the butt of the stock into your firing shoulder keeping your firing arm parallel with the ground.
  - d. Lean slightly forward. Place the elbow of firing arm slightly beyond the knee of your nonfiring leg.
  - e. Repeat step 2f.
4. Load four rounds of ammunition. (See Task 191-381-1253.)
5. Fire two rounds at the target from a crouched position.
  - a. Stand facing the target with feet spread a comfortable distance apart.
  - b. Step back with your firing foot, keeping your feet spread a comfortable distance apart and the toes of your firing foot pointing at a 45-degree angle.
  - c. Keep your nonfiring foot in place and your toes pointing at the target.
  - d. Place the weapon stock under your armpit, and pull your firing elbow in close to your body to secure the stock in place.
  - e. Place your nonfiring hand on the fore-end assembly with your nonfiring forearm parallel to the weapon.
  - f. Lean forward bending the nonfiring leg while keeping the firing leg and back straight and the weapon barrel parallel to the ground at chest height.
  - g. Adjust the position of your feet for comfort and stability.
  - h. Repeat step 2f.
6. Fire two rounds at the target from a strong-side position around a barricade.
  - a. Stand behind the barricade and face the target. Spread your feet a comfortable distance apart.
  - b. Place your nonfiring foot against the base of the barricade with your toes pointing toward the target.

Performance Steps

- c. Place your firing foot a comfortable distance to the rear and slightly to the left or right until your heel is in line with your nonfiring foot.

**NOTE: Your feet should form a 45-degree angle but may be adjusted for comfort and stability.**

- d. Place your nonfiring hand on the fore-end assembly and place the butt of the stock against your firing shoulder.
- e. Place your nonfiring forearm against the barricade and your firing arm close to your body for concealment.
- f. Lean forward and slightly bend your nonfiring leg while keeping your firing leg and your back straight. Use the barricade for additional support, but do not allow the weapon to touch the barricade.
- g. Repeat step 2f.

7. Load two rounds of ammunition. (See Task 191-381-1253.)

- 8. Fire two rounds over a barricade at the target from a standing position.
  - a. Stand behind the barricade and place your nonfiring foot behind and touching the barricade.
  - b. Place your firing foot a comfortable distance to the rear, parallel to the barricade.
  - c. Bend your nonfiring leg to adjust to the height of the barricade, keeping your firing leg and our back straight.
  - d. Adjust your feet for height, stability, and comfort.
  - e. Place your nonfiring hand on the fore-end assembly with the back of your nonfiring hand resting on the barricade. Do not allow the weapon to make contact with the barricade.
  - f. Place the butt of the stock against your firing shoulder, ensuring that your firing elbow is no higher than the top of the barricade.
  - g. Repeat step 2f.

9. Clear the weapon. (See Task 191-381-1253.)

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide a barricade that is approximately the same height as the target. The barricade should measure about 72 inches x 22 inches with an opening (window) cut 36 inches to 42 inches from the bottom of the barricade. The opening should be 18 inches wide and approximately 36 inches high. You must also provide a Type-E silhouette target and ten rounds of #00 buckshot for each person being evaluated.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to fire the correct number of rounds from each firing position. Tell the soldier that he must correctly clear the weapon according to Task 191-381-1253.

Performance Measures

	GO	NO GO
1. Loaded four rounds of ammunition.	___	___
2. Fired two rounds at the target while in the standing position.	___	___
3. Fired two rounds at the target while in the kneeling position.	___	___
4. Loaded four rounds of ammunition.	___	___
5. Fired two rounds at the target while in a crouching position.	___	___
6. Fired two rounds at the target from the strong side position around a barricade.	___	___
7. Loaded two rounds of ammunition.	___	___
8. Fired two rounds over a barricade at the target from a standing position.	___	___
9. Cleared the weapon.	___	___

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

STP 19-95C1-SM

**References  
Required**

**Related**  
TM 9-1005-303-14

## Subject Area 8: Urban Operations

**Perform Movement Techniques During MOUT****071-326-0541**

**Conditions:** You are a member of an assault element in urban terrain. The enemy location and strength are uncertain. You are given an individual weapon with ammunition and loadbearing equipment.

**Standards:** You will perform a visual reconnaissance to determine the next position. Using proper movement techniques, you will then move rapidly to the next covered or concealed position with minimum exposure to enemy fire.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** 1. Individual, fire team, and squad movement techniques within urban terrain differ slightly from the basic movements used in normal field operations. Several movement techniques take on added importance during combat in urban terrain because of the special nature of the battle area. 2. In an urban terrain, the individual soldier and leaders are confronted with different types of obstacles that must be negotiated to eliminate or capture an enemy position. Street-to-street and house-to-house fighting give rise to many surprising situations, so alertness and all-round security are mandatory. The enemy may appear not only from the front, flanks, and rear, but also from above and below as well.

1. Follow general rules of movement:
  - a. Take care not to be silhouetted in doors or windows, or on rooftops.
  - b. Avoid open areas (streets, alleys, parks).
  - c. Make a visual reconnaissance of the next position before moving.
  - d. Conceal movement with smoke or covering fires, and by using buildings, rubble; and vegetation.
  - e. Always move rapidly from one position to another.
  - f. Be alert and expect the unexpected.

2. Observe around corners.

**NOTE:** Corner are hazardous to untrained soldiers who are not alert. The most common mistakes untrained soldiers make are: first, not recognizing the danger area; second, extending their weapons beyond the corner, which exposes their presence; and third, showing their heads at a height that enemy soldiers would expect to see them.

- a. Lie flat on the ground, weapon at the side, then move forward slowly, ensuring that the weapon is not forward of the corner.
- b. Expose the head slowly at ground level so that it appears to be a shadow. Expose the head only enough to observe around the corner (Figure 1).

### Performance Steps

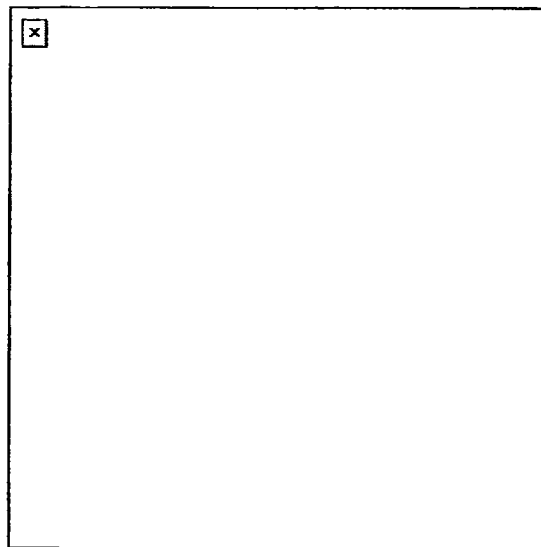


Figure 1. Observing around a corner.

3. Move across open areas.

**NOTE:** Open areas, such as streets, alleys, and parks, are to be avoided when possible. They are natural kill zones for enemy crew-served weapons. They can be crossed with less risk if basic cautions are applied.

- a. Make a visual reconnaissance of the area and position.
- b. Select a route that has some cover or concealment. If no cover or concealment is available, use smoke or covering fire provided by the rest of the element.
- c. Move in the most direct route to the selected position. Using the most direct route will reduce the time of exposure to enemy fire. Also, moving rapidly will deny the enemy the opportunity to place well-aimed shots.
- d. Move from position to position without masking covering fires. When the next position is reached, be prepared to cover the movement of other members of the fire team or squad (Figure 2).



## Performance Steps

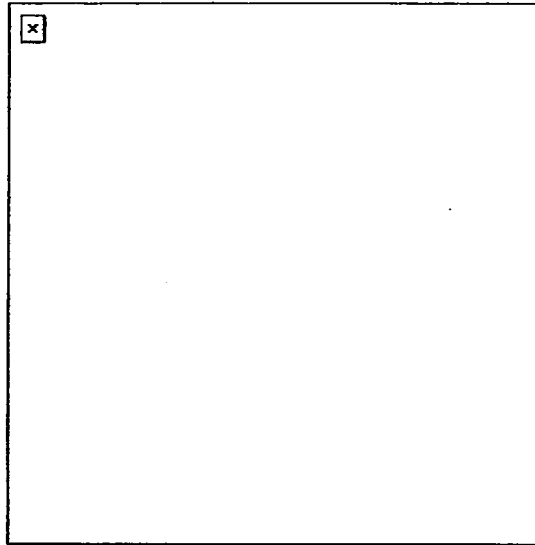


Figure 2. Moving from cover to cover.

- e. When two or more soldiers must move at the same time to another position--
  - (1) The group must first position themselves so they are prepared to move to their next position.
  - (2) The group, on a planned signal, moves across the open area at the same time to the next position. When moving, they should stay about 5 meters apart (Figure 3).

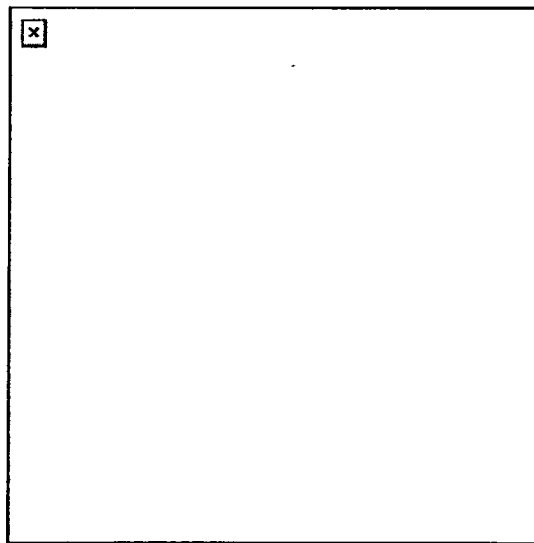


Figure 3. Group moving to the next position.

- 4. Move parallel to buildings.
  - a. Move along the walls. When moving parallel to a building, move along the wall as closely as possible. That will deny an enemy soldier inside the building the chance to fire without exposing himself to fire from the covering force.
    - (1) Use all available cover and concealment, move with a low silhouette and advance rapidly from position to position. If smoke is available, use it.

**Performance Steps**

(2) When possible, move in the shadows, which helps to conceal movement.

b. Move past the first floor windows.

**NOTE: Windows are danger points. Most first-floor windows are head high, and an unsuspecting soldier will expose his head, giving the enemy an excellent shot from cover.**

(1) The right way to pass first-floor windows is to stay as close to the building as possible.

When the window is reached, duck the head well below the window.

(2) Always take care not to be silhouetted in a window (Figure 4).

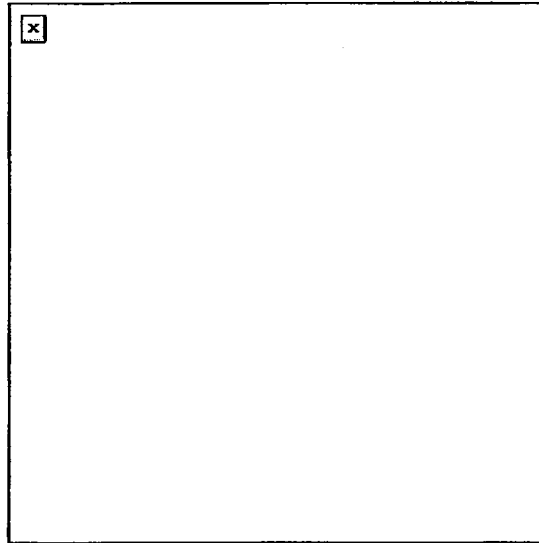


Figure 4. Movement past window.

c. Move past the basement windows.

(1) Do not merely walk or run past a basement window; your legs will present a good target to an enemy gunner inside the building.

(2) The right way to pass a basement window is to keep as close to the building as possible and, when you reach the window, step or jump above and pass the window without exposing your legs (Figures 5 and 6).

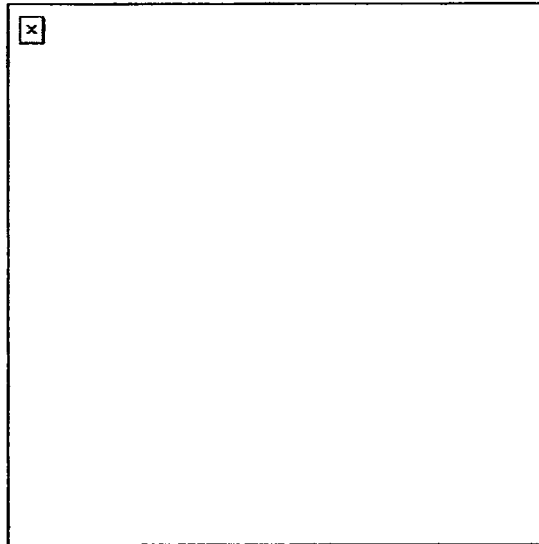
**Performance Steps**

Figure 5. Start of movement past basement window.

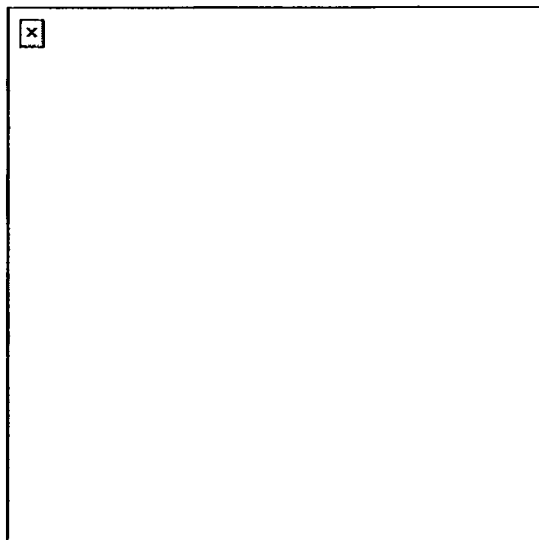


Figure 6. Completion of movement past basement.

5. Cross obstacles (walls, fences, rooftops).
  - a. Move over walls and fences.
    - (1) Before crossing a wall or fence, look at and beyond it for booby traps, enemy positions, and covered or concealed positions.
    - (2) Move rapidly to the obstacle and roll quickly over it, keeping the lowest silhouette possible. Speed and a low silhouette deny the enemy a well-aimed shot.
    - (3) Move rapidly to the nearest position while maintaining a low silhouette with the weapon at the ready position (Figure 7).

Performance Steps

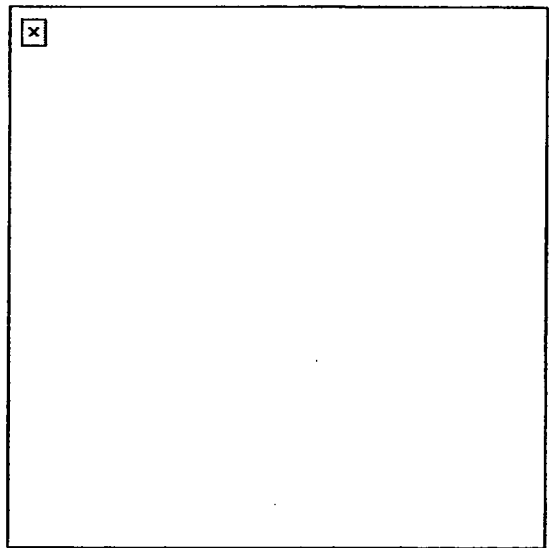


Figure 7. Crossing of an obstacle.

- b. Move over rooftops.
  - (1) Make a visual reconnaissance of the area and of the route to the next position.
  - (2) Move rapidly across the area, maintaining a low silhouette and using all available cover and concealment.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide all materials and equipment given in the task conditions statement.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier that he will be moving as a designated member of an assault element in urban terrain. The enemy strength and location are unknown.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Follows the general rules of movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Does not silhouette self.</li><li>b. Avoids open areas.</li><li>c. Makes visual reconnaissance of the next position before moving.</li><li>d. Conceals movement.</li><li>e. Moves rapidly.</li><li>f. Is alert.</li></ul>	—	—
2. Observes around corners. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Lies flat, weapon at side; moves forward slowly.</li><li>b. Exposes head slowly, at ground level, only long enough to observe around the corner.</li></ul>	—	—
3. Moves across open areas. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Makes visual reconnaissance of area and position.</li><li>b. Selects route with cover and concealment.</li><li>c. Moves in the most direct route.</li><li>d. Moves from position to position without masking covering fires.</li><li>e. When two (or more) soldiers must move to the same position at the same time:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>(1) Position themselves to prepare to move together.</li></ul></li></ul>	—	—

**Performance Measures****GO**    **NO GO**

- (2) Move together at a planned signal.
  - (3) Stay about 5 meters apart.
4. Moves parallel to the buildings. \_\_\_\_\_
- a. Moves along the walls.
    - (1) Moves parallel to the wall as closely as possible.
    - (2) Moves rapidly with a low silhouette.
    - (3) Moves in shadows when possible.
  - b. Moves past the first floor windows.
    - (1) Stays close to the building; keeps head below window.
    - (2) Does not silhouette self in window.
  - c. Moves past the basement windows.
  - d. Steps or jumps over windows.
5. Crosses obstacles. \_\_\_\_\_
- a. Moves over walls or fences.
    - (1) Checks the obstacle for booby traps, enemy positions, and covered and concealed positions.
    - (2) Moves rapidly to the obstacle and quickly rolls over it; maintains a low silhouette.
    - (3) Moves rapidly to the nearest position; maintains a low silhouette.
  - b. Moves over rooftops.
    - (1) Makes a visual reconnaissance of the area and route.
    - (2) Moves rapidly across the area, maintains a low silhouette, and uses all available cover.

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References****Required****Related**

FM 3-06.11

**Enter a Building**  
**071-326-0542**

**Conditions:** As a member of an assault force in an urban area, given a two-story building, a grappling hook attached to 50 feet of scaling rope knotted every 1 foot, a steel helmet, an M16A1 rifle, hand grenades, and a requirement to enter a building.

**Standards:** Enter the building with minimal exposure to enemy fire.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** When entering to clear a building, enter the top or at the highest possible level whenever possible. Clearing a building is easier from the top down; gravity and building construction make it easier to move from floor to floor. Also, an enemy who is forced to retreat to the top may be cornered and fight more desperately, while an enemy who is forced down to the ground level may withdraw from the building and expose itself to fires of the support force. By entering at the top of the building, the assault force is also less likely to encounter booby traps.

1. Select a point to enter a building prior to moving. There are several ways to enter a building above the first floor. Ladders, drainpipes, vines, helicopters, or roofs and windows of an adjoining building may help you reach the top floor or roof of a building. In some cases, one member of the assault force can climb onto the shoulders of another and reach high enough to pull up. A scaling rope and grappling hook enable soldiers to scale the wall or to swing from one building to another to gain entrance through an upper-story window or opening in the building.

**NOTE:** Depending upon the tactical situation, the use of direct fire weapons (M16, M203, M60) or hand grenades may be required to clear the entry point.

2. Prepare a grappling hook with a rope and enter a building.
  - a. The grappling hook is easily thrown, and it is made with hooks strong enough to hold a rifleman with equipment. The scaling rope attached to the grappling hook should be long enough to reach the entrance point and knotted above every foot. The knots will aid the rifleman in climbing.
  - b. When throwing the grappling hook, stand as close to the building as possible. (This prevents exposure to enemy fire and shortens the throwing distance to the target.) Grasp a few coils of rope and the grappling hook in the throwing hand and the remainder of the rope in the nonthrowing hand. The throw should be a gentle, even, upward lob of the hook and coiled rope from the throwing hand (Figure 2-1). The nonthrowing hand should release the rope, allowing it to play out.
  - c. Once the grappling hook is inside the target area (or on the roof), pull on the rope until the grappling hook is solidly hooked before beginning the climb (Figure 2-2).
  - d. When climbing, avoid crossing windows of uncleared rooms.
  - e. Once the point of entry has been reached, enter with the lowest silhouette possible. There are two methods of entry that may be used. The preferred method of entry is to hook a leg over a window sill and enter sideways, straddling the ledge (Figure 2-3A). A second method of entry is to enter head first (Figure 2-3B).
3. Use the buddy system to enter a building.
  - a. One-soldier lift support. The first soldier branches his or her back or side against the building. The soldier then cups his or her hands together to assist the second soldier.
    - (1) The second soldier moves forward and places his or her foot inside the first soldier's cupped hands.
    - (2) The first soldier then lifts the second soldier up to the opening.
    - (3) Once the point of entry has been reached, the first soldier enters with the lowest silhouette possible (Figure 2-3B).
  - b. Two-soldier lift support.
    - (1) Two soldiers face one another, holding a support of some sort (board, tree limb) (Figure 2-4).

**Performance Steps**

- (2) A third soldier climbs onto the support (Figure 2-5).
  - (3) Once both feet of the climber are on the support, the two base soldiers raise the support, pushing the third soldier upward and into the entrance (Figure 2-5).
  - c. Two-soldier hand lift.
    - (1) The climber stands facing the wall, with palms flat against the building, feet out from the building approximately 2 feet with heels raised.
    - (2) Two soldiers, one on each side of the climber, face each other and bend forward, cupping their hands.
    - (3) The two soldiers with cupped hands each grasp a heel of the climber. With a quick move, they lift the climber up and into the entrance (Figure 2-6).
  - 4. Select use of hand grenades.
    - a. Before entering a building, whether through a doorway, ground-level window, or breach, throw a hand grenade inside to disable enemy occupants and to detonate booby traps.
      - (1) When there is a breach in the exterior walls and this breach is to be used to enter the building, first throw a hand grenade through the breach, using all available cover. Allow the grenade to cook off approximately two seconds (Figure 2-7) before it is thrown.
- WARNING COOKING OFF HAND GRENADES CAN BE DANGEROUS UNLESS PROPERLY DONE. TO COOK OFF A HAND GRENADE, PULL THE PIN, COCK THE ARM INTO THE THROWING POSITION, REMOVE THE THUMB FROM THE SAFETY LEVER AND ALLOW IT TO RELEASE FROM THE GRENADE. AS SOON AS THE SAFETY LEVER IS RELEASED FROM THE GRENADE, COUNT: "ONE THOUSAND ONE, ONE THOUSAND TWO" AND THROW THE GRENADE.**
- (2) When entering through a ground-level window, use caution in throwing hand grenade in; be sure that it goes through the opening and does not bounce back toward you. In throwing the hand grenade, stand as close to the building as possible and pull the safety. Allow the grenade to cook off no more than two seconds, then move out far enough to throw the grenade inside (Figure 2-8).
  - (3) The most undesirable method of entering a building is through a doorway. The enemy will expect it to be an entry point. Before entering a door, check for booby traps. Then, allow a hand grenade to cook off no more than two seconds, and throw it inside.
5. Clear the entry point. Upon entering the building, the first member of the assault team must secure the room or area of entry while the remainder of the team enters. The team will then proceed to clear and secure the building.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a test site with the material and equipment indicated in the Conditions statement. Brief Soldier. Tell the soldier that he or she will be moving as a designated member of an assault force that will be entering and clearing a building.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Selected point(s) to enter building.	_____	_____
2. Prepared grappling hook.	_____	_____
3. Entered building. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. One-soldier lift support.</li><li>b. Two-soldier lift support.</li><li>c. Two-soldier hand lift.</li></ul>	_____	_____
4. Cleared the entry point.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

STP 19-95C1-SM

**References**  
**Required**  
FM 7-8

**Related**



**Prepare Positions for Individual and Crew-Served Weapons During MOUT****071-326-0550**

**Conditions:** As a firer or crew member of a crew-served weapon, given a firing position with a building, sector of fire, and material to reinforce the position.

**Standards:** Prepare the position to allow accurate fire to be placed on the enemy within the given sector of fire, with the least possible exposure and maximum protection from return fire.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** When a unit is defending in urban terrain, its success depends on the ability of soldiers within the unit to place accurate fire upon the enemy with the least possible exposure to return fire. Therefore, soldiers must constantly seek and improve firing positions and use them properly.

1. Prepare individual rifle positions.
  - a. Barricade windows. Window-firing positions can be improved by barricading around the window (Figure 1). The window may be completely covered, leaving only a small hole for the firer's use. When barricading windows:

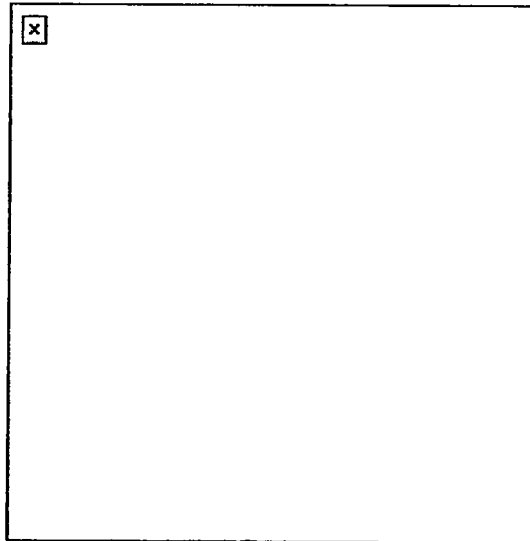


Figure 1. Barricaded window.

- (1) DO NOT barricade only the windows that will be used as firing positions (the enemy will soon determine what they are).
- (2) DO NOT form neat, square, or rectangular holes; the enemy will easily spot them.
- (3) Prepare barricades with sandbags, materials in the room or torn from the interior walls of the building, or other available material (Figure 2).

**Performance Steps**

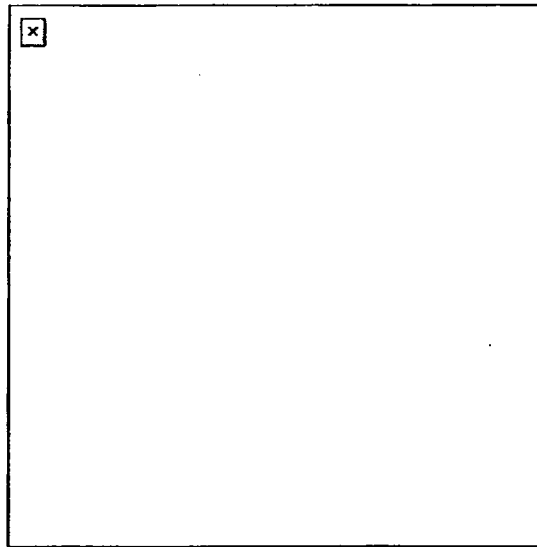


Figure 2. Barricaded firing position.

**NOTE: Do not remove so much material from the interior wall that the building is weakened.**

- (4) Remove all glass from the window to prevent injury from flying glass.
- (5) Leave curtains in place--they will permit the firer to see out and prevent the enemy from seeing in.
- (6) Prevent revealing the position caused by dust from the muzzle blast of the weapon. Place a wet blanket over dusty surfaces in front of the weapon's muzzle or wet down those surfaces (Figure 3).

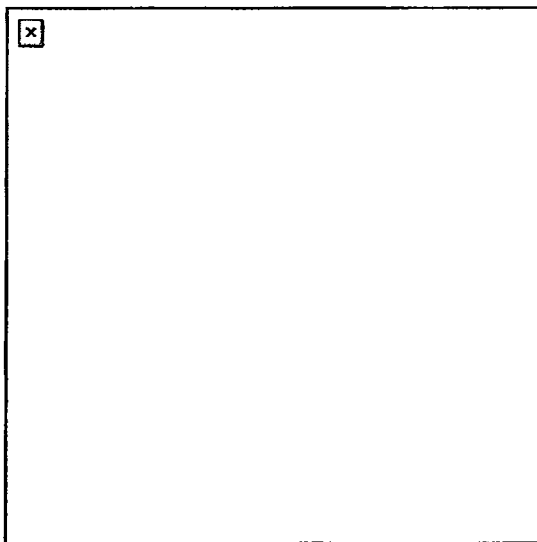


Figure 3. Prepared automatic weapon position.

- b. Prepare loopholes. Windows usually are good firing positions, but they may not allow the firer to cover his full sector. Prepared loopholes allow alternate firing positions.

**Performance Steps**

- (1) Break or blow several small holes in the wall (Figure 4) to allow the firer to observe and engage targets in his sector. Making several holes allows the firer to move from one to another to deceive the enemy about his location.

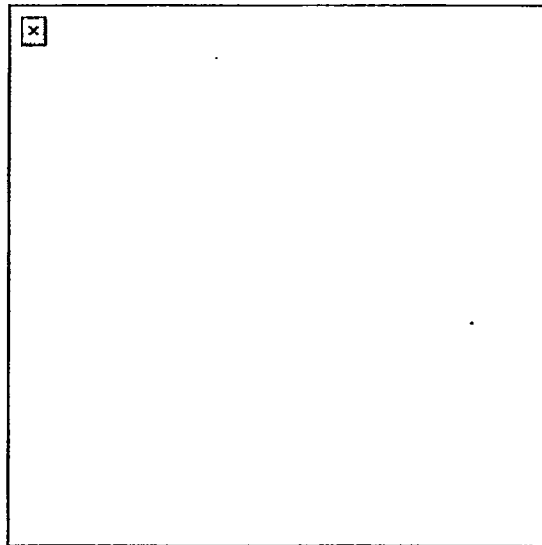


Figure 4. Loophole position.

- (2) Camouflage the loopholes by knocking other holes in the wall to make it difficult for the enemy to know which hole the fire is coming from (Figure 5).

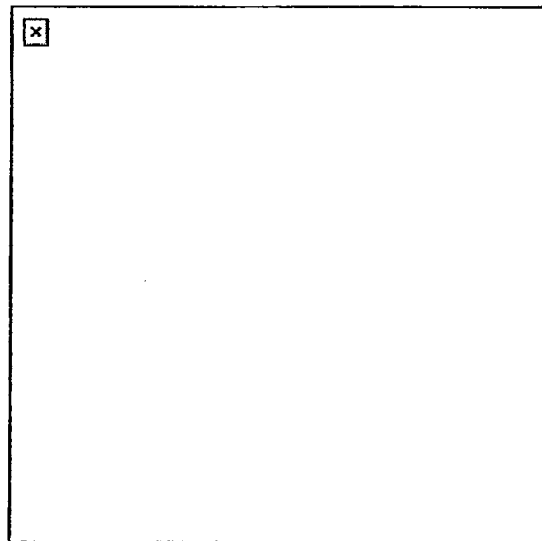


Figure 5. Camouflage of loopholes.

- (3) Use sandbags or other material to reinforce the walls around loopholes (Figure 6).

**Performance Steps**

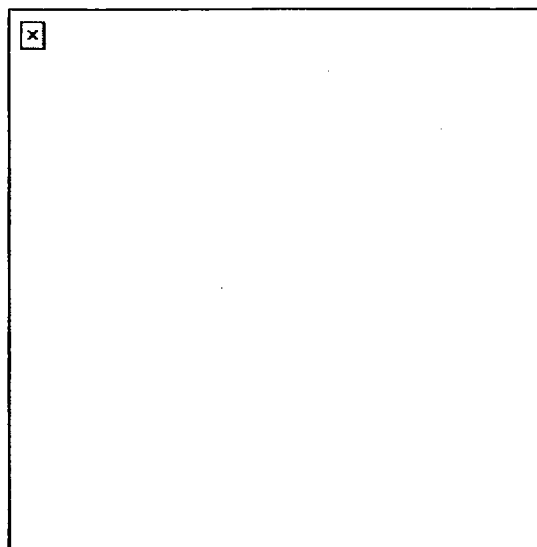


Figure 6. Reinforced loopholes.

- (4) When reinforcing windows or loopholes, the firer places two layers of sandbags on the floor under him. This protects him from an explosion on a lower floor when the position is on the second floor or higher. He can use tables, bedsteads, or other available material to provide overhead cover from falling debris or from explosions above the position. A blast wall can be built to the rear of the position to protect the firer from explosions in the room (Figure 7).

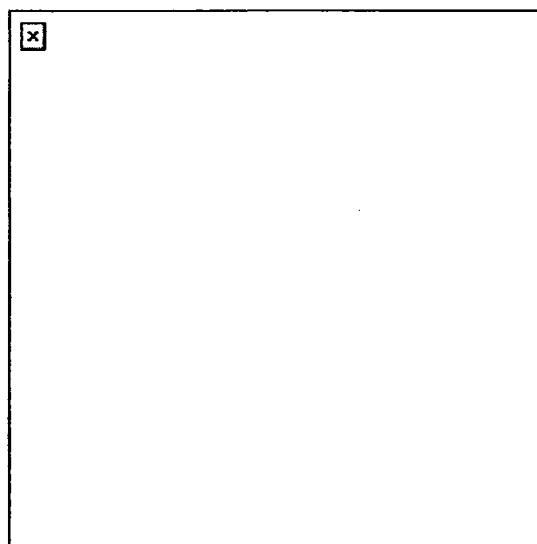


Figure 7. Reinforced position.

c. Prepare sniper positions.

- (1) Sniper positions should be on or near the top of the building being defended to allow greater fields of fire (Figure 8).

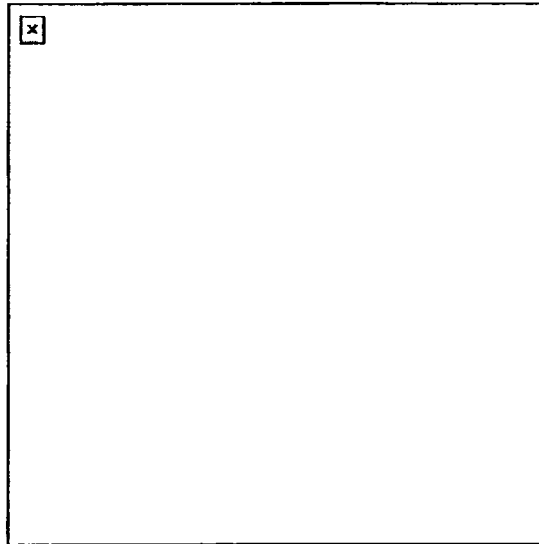
**Performance Steps**

Figure 8. Sniper positions.

- (2) A chimney or other structure protruding through the roof of a building provides a base from which a sniper position can be prepared. Part of the roofing material is removed to allow the sniper to fire around the chimney while standing below roof level on a constructed platform with only his head and shoulders above the roof.
  - (3) Sandbags may be used on the sides of the position to protect the sniper's flanks.
2. Prepare machine gun positions.
- a. The machine gun can be emplaced in the same type of position as the individual firer, except that windows or doors should be avoided. Those openings are where the enemy will expect them to be emplaced, thus drawing the most fire. Since machine guns are not as mobile as rifles, they will be less able to move to avoid heavy fires.
  - b. Machine guns should be emplaced as low as possible, using loopholes behind shrubbery or under doorjambs. Basement windows can also be used. By placing the machine gun at a lower level, grazing fire is obtained (Figure 9).

**Performance Steps**

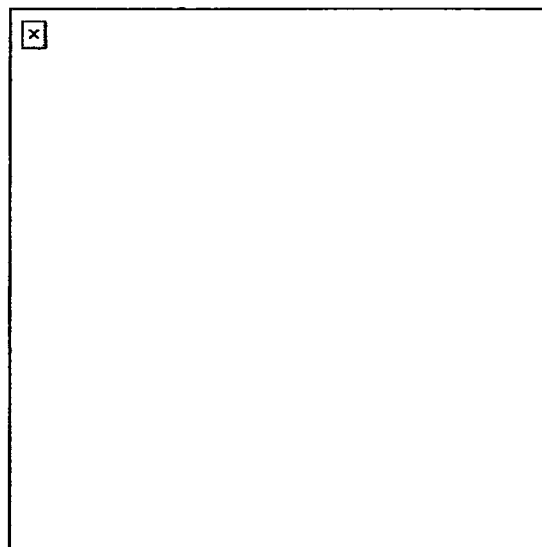


Figure 9. Low machine gun position.

- c. Although grazing fire is desirable when employing the machine gun, it will be impractical or impossible where destroyed vehicles, rubble, and other obstructions restrict the field of grazing fire. In such cases, emplacing the machine gun at a higher location, firing from loopholes on the second or third floor, or firing through a loophole in the roof is advised (Figure 10).

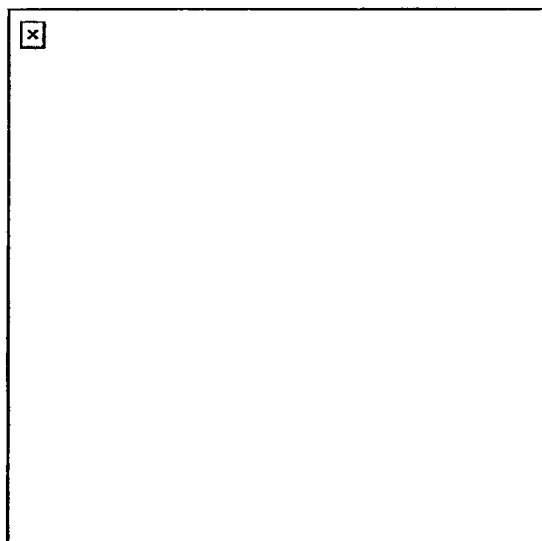


Figure 10. High machine gun position.

- 3. Prepare antitank weapons position.
  - a. The antitank weapons (tube-launched, optically tracked, wire-guided, heavy antitank missile system [TOW], Dragon, 90-millimeter [mm], light antitank weapon [LAW]) should be positioned on upper stories for long-range coverage (Figure 11).

## Performance Steps

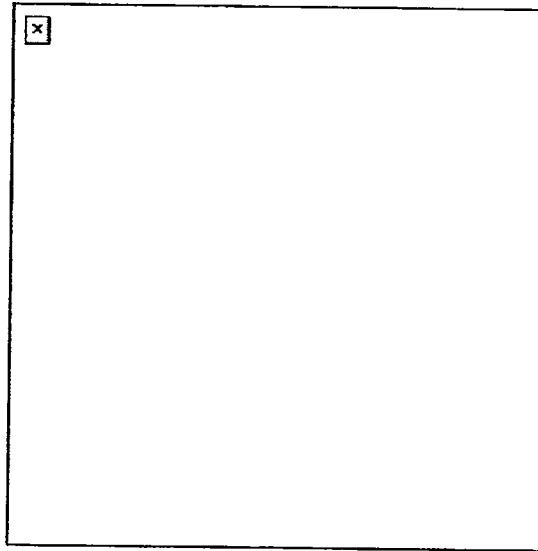


Figure 11. Antitank weapons placement.

**NOTE:** The maximum depression and elevation limits of the TOW mount plus the minimum firing distance (65 meters) may result in dead space and preclude the engagement of close-in targets.

- b. Backblast must be considered in choosing and preparing an antitank weapon location. None of the antitank weapons can be fired from an unvented or enclosed room.
- c. Fire from inside a building should be avoided. When it is impossible to avoid firing from inside a building, the following conditions must be met before firing.
  - (1) The building must be sturdy.
  - (2) The ceiling must be at least 7 feet high.
  - (3) The floor size of the room must be at least 17 by 24 feet for a TOW, 15 by 12 feet for a Dragon, and 4 feet to the back wall for a LAW backblast area.
  - (4) There must be an opening at least 20 feet square at the rear of the weapon for backblast. An open 7- by 3-foot door would be adequate.
  - (5) All glass must be removed from windows and all loose objects removed from the room.
  - (6) All soldiers within the room must be forward of the rear of the weapon.
  - (7) All soldiers in the room must protect their ears when the weapon is fired.
  - (8) The clearance between the muzzle of the weapon and the opening it is fired from should be 9 inches for a TOW and 6 inches for a Dragon (Figures 12, 13, and 14).

**Performance Steps**

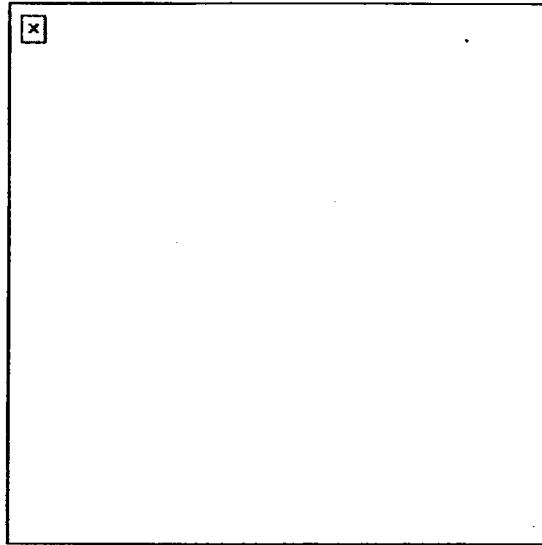


Figure 12. TOW position.

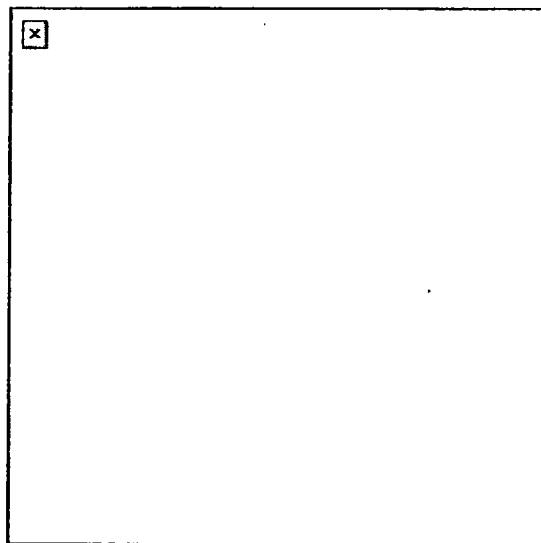


Figure 13. Dragon position.



Performance Steps

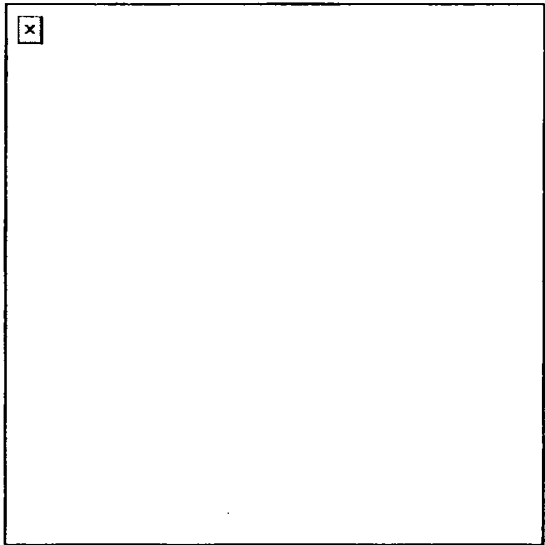


Figure 14. LAW position.

- d. When emplacing the TOW and Dragon, the 65-meter minimum firing distance (arming distance) must be considered.
- e. Antitank weapon positions should be reinforced the same as described in this task for the individual rifle position, except that no blast wall will be erected.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup. At the test site, provide all the materials and equipment given in the task conditions statement.

Brief Soldier. Tell the soldier to prepare an individual or crew-served weapon position.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Prepares individual rifle positions.	—	—
a. Barricades the windows.		
b. Prepares and camouflages the loopholes.		
c. Prepares sniper positions.		
2. Prepares the machine gun positions.	—	—
a. Avoids doors and windows.		
b. Emplaces as low as possible for grazing fire.		
c. If field of grazing fire is obstructed, emplaces higher.		
3. Prepares the antitank weapon positions.	—	—
a. Positions the weapons on the upper stories.		
b. Identifies the backblast area.		
c. Ensures that the building is structurally sound and can withstand firing.		
d. Identifies minimum firing distance for the TOW and Dragon.		
e. Reinforces the position.		

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

STP 19-95C1-SM

**References**  
**Required**  
FM 3-06.11

**Related**

## Clear a Building

071-326-0556

**Conditions:** As a member of an assault force, given load-bearing equipment, individual weapons with ammunition, extra hand grenades, and a requirement to clear a building.

**Standards:** Search and clear a building so that: 1. The building is clear. 2. The building is secured. 3. The assault force is reorganized and prepared for a counterattack. NOTE: Organization of the assault force and priorities are established before entering the building.

### Performance Steps

1. Clear a room.
  - a. Once inside the building, the assault force is divided into support teams and assault teams. Each assault team normally will consist of two soldiers. The assault teams' mission is to clear one or more rooms. The support teams' mission is to provide security and firepower for the protection of the assault team.
  - b. Establish priorities. First, cover the staircases. Next, clear all rooms with windows overlooking the friendly approach route. Those actions are necessary to isolate the enemy force within the building and to prevent reinforcement from the outside. The ground floor windows and doors will be covered by the support force.
  - c. The enemy will often booby trap doors, so before entering a room through a doorway, shoot off the lock and handle and then kick the door open. Always remember to stand at a 45-degree angle to the door before you begin to shoot. This prevents you from being silhouetted in the doorway when the door is opened (Figure 2-1).
  - d. Once the door has been opened, throw in a grenade that has been allowed to cook off approximately 2 seconds (Figure 2-2a).
  - e. After the grenade detonates, one soldier quickly enters through the doorway, to one side or the other, spraying the entire room with automatic fire. He or she positions self so that he or she can observe the entire room and act as overwatch for the second soldier as he or she enters (Figure 2-2b). At this time, the assault team must be prepared to react instinctively to any situation in the room, from the flight of an enemy soldier to the resistance of a sandbag-reinforced weapon position.
  - f. The second soldier shouts, "Coming in! He or she enters the room in the same way as the first soldier, except he or she will not spray the room with automatic fire. The soldier will systematically search the room, avoiding silhouetting self in windows.
    - (1) In the same manner as entering, the team should exit with one soldier covering the departure of others. The last soldier out should shout Coming out!
    - (2) All soldiers must be aware of each other's whereabouts at all times.

NOTE: The use of voice alerts is very important. Each member of the assault team must always let others in the assault force know where he or she is and what he or she is doing. The assault team must also let the support team know what they are doing.

2. Vary clearing techniques.
  - a. The team should vary its techniques in clearing a floor so the enemy cannot prepare for its assault.
  - b. As an example, in Figure 2-3, rooms 1, 4, 5, and 7 were cleared by the method previously described.
  - c. Rooms 2 and 3 were cleared by blasting a hole through an interior wall with a grenade, and then entering and conducting a search as previously described.
  - d. In room 7, an enemy mousehole between rooms 6 and 7 was discovered. A grenade was thrown in the mousehole, and then room 6 was entered through the door and searched.
  - e. As rooms are cleared, leave doors open and make a predetermined mark (chalk, tape, spray paint) on the door frame to indicate the room has been cleared and searched.

**Performance Steps**

3. Move along hallways. Hallways are very dangerous and should be avoided when possible. However, when you cannot avoid the use of a hall, avoid presenting a target to the enemy. Hugging the wall, get out of the hallway as soon as possible (Figure 2-4).
4. Move between floors.
  - a. After searching and clearing one floor, move to another floor. Frequently, stairways will be blocked with barbed wire and boobytraps and covered by enemy fire to prevent their use. You must then use the following method of reaching other floors.
  - b. Select a room and place explosive charges (shaped charge or C-4) in place on the floor or ceiling. Detonation of the explosives should provide an access to the next floor. After securing an initial foothold, search and clear the remainder of the floor as described in performance measures 1 through 3.
5. Clear a basement. Search and clear a basement. Do so as soon as possible, preferably while you clear the ground floor. The procedures for clearing a basement are much the same as for clearing any other room or floor of a building. Basements may be connecting points for sewers and tunnels that the enemy will use for escaping and infiltrating troops back into a cleared building. For that reason, a basement must be thoroughly cleared and secured.
6. Reorganize.
  - a. Reorganization of the assault force in a cleared building must be rapid to repel counterattacks. After securing the building, selected members of the assault teams and the support teams will be assigned to cover potential counterattack routes to the building.
  - b. If the building is to be occupied for more than a few minutes, defensive positions must be developed.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a test site with the materials and equipment indicated in the Conditions statement. Brief Soldier: Tell the soldier that he or she will be moving as a designated member of an assault force that will be searching and clearing a building.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Cleared a room.	—	—
a. Established and implemented teams.		
b. Established priorities.		
c. Entered through doorway as a team.		
d. Used grenades and voice alerts.		
2. Varied clearing techniques.	—	—
a. Used different techniques in clearing floor.		
b. Left doors open and marked.		
3. Moved along hallways.	—	—
4. Moved between floors.	—	—
a. Avoided stairway, if possible.		
b. Established initial foothold.		
5. Cleared basement.	—	—
6. Reorganized. Developed defensive positions, if needed.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any steps are failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**Select Hasty Firing Positions During MOUT**  
**071-326-0557**

**Conditions:** As a member of an attacking or defending unit in urban terrain.

**Standards:** Select positions from which to place fire on the enemy while using available cover.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** The success of the mission depends on the ability to place accurate fire on the enemy with the least possible exposure to return fire. Therefore, constantly seek covered firing positions and use them properly.

1. Fire around a building or wall.
  - a. Fire around the left corner of the building or wall using the left-handed firing technique (Figure 1).

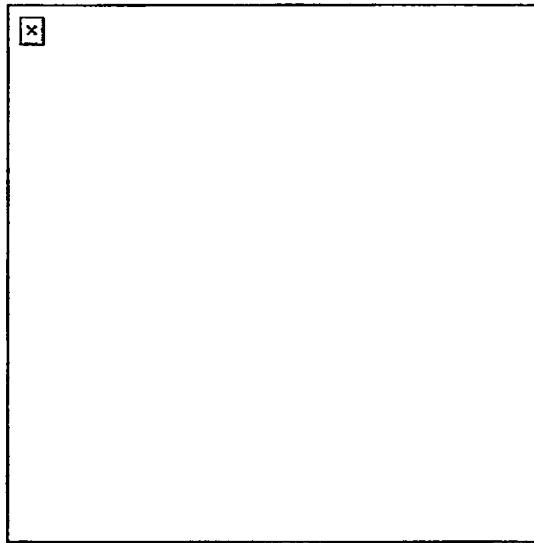


Figure 1. Firing around the left corner of a building.

- b. Fire around the right corner of the building or wall using the right-handed firing technique (Figure 2).

**Performance Steps**

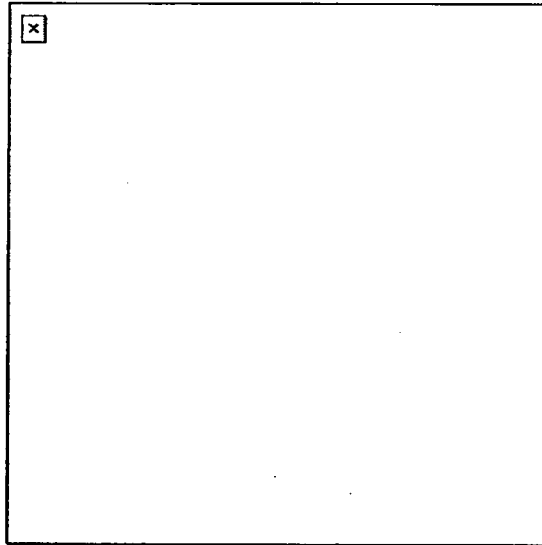


Figure 2. Firing around the right corner of a building.

- c. Use the prone firing technique, where possible.
- d. Fire around the wall, not over it, where possible (Figure 3).

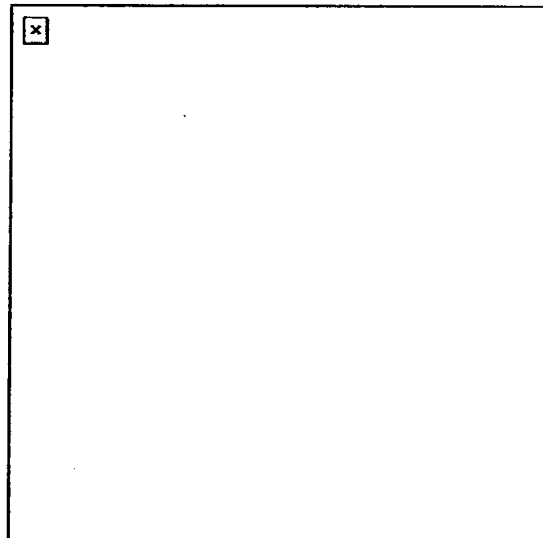


Figure 3. Firing around a wall.

- 2. Fire from a window.
  - a. Select firing positions that are well back from the window. They will help conceal the body and the rifle's muzzle (Figure 4).

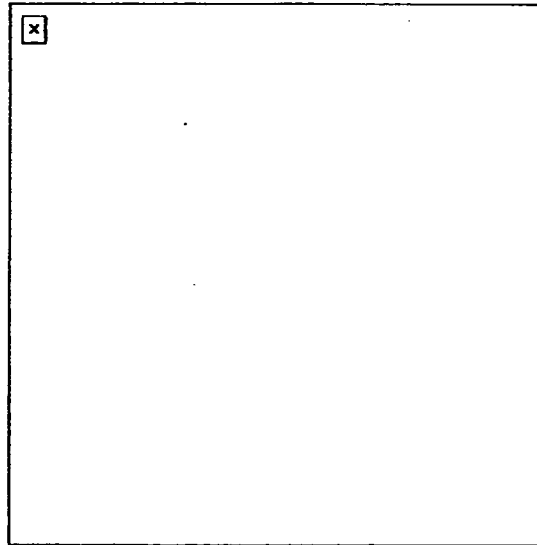
**Performance Steps**

Figure 4. Firing from a window.

- b. Select a kneeling firing position. It will minimize exposure and prevent silhouetting (Figure 4).
3. Fire from unprepared loopholes. Select firing positions that are well back from the loophole to conceal the muzzle flash (Figure 5).

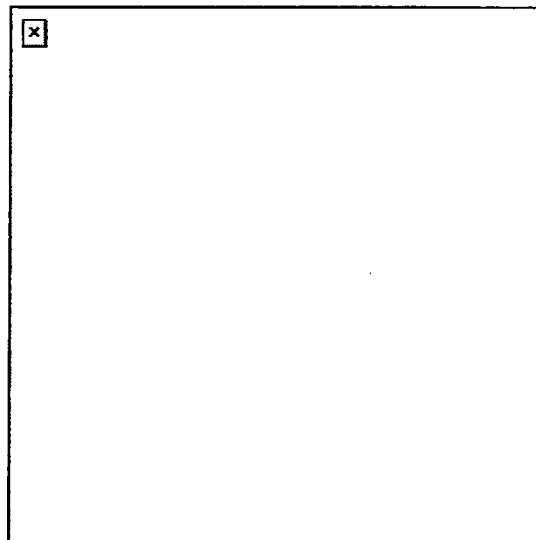


Figure 5. Firing from loophole.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide all the materials and equipment given in the task conditions statement.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to select positions from which he can place fire on the enemy while using available cover.

**Performance Measures**

1. Fires around a building or wall.
  - a. Uses the left corner.
  - b. Use the right corner.
  - c. Uses the prone firing technique, when possible.
  - d. Fires around (not over) a wall, when possible.
2. Fires from a window.
  - a. Selects a position well back from the window.
  - b. Uses a kneeling firing position.
3. Fires from unprepared loopholes. Selects a position well back from the window.

**GO**    **NO GO**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** If the soldier passes all steps, score him GO. If he fails any steps, score him NO-GO, then show him what he did wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
FM 3-06.11

**Related**



**Search a Building**  
**191-376-5121**

**Conditions:** You are directed to search a building.

**Standards:** Ensure that no one (other than search team) enters or leaves the building. Search the building and all occupants and collect everything that could be used as evidence, including prohibited items and weapons.

**Performance Steps**

1. Perform as a member of a perimeter security team.
  - a. Provide protection for the entry team.
  - b. Guard doors and observe windows where posted.
  - c. Seal off all avenues of escape and ensure that no one enters or leaves the building.
  - d. Detain anyone, other than the search team, who attempts to enter or leave the building and call for assistance.
  - e. Prevent the removal of evidence.
2. Perform as a member of the search team.
  - a. Search all occupants and guard them in one room, if possible, but keep them separated from each other until directed to release them.
  - b. Search each floor, starting at the top of the building and working down to the basement. While one military police (MP) conducts the search, another MP observes and points out areas that may have been overlooked. Observe the following during the search:
    - (1) Search each room systematically.
    - (2) Start the search of each room in one corner and work systematically around the room. Ensure that the search is thorough because there may not be an opportunity to search again.
    - (3) Collect everything that could be used as evidence, including prohibited items or weapons.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a building and personnel to act as occupants. Have additional personnel attempt to gain entrance to the building.

**Brief soldier:** Explain that the soldier may be evaluated as a member of a perimeter security team or a search team or both.

**Performance Measures**

1. Performed as a member of a perimeter security team.
2. Performed as a member of the search team.

**GO**    **NO GO**

\_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
**FM 19-10**

Subject Area 9: Vehicle Operations

**Use Visual Signaling Techniques**  
**071-326-0608**

**Conditions:** Given a requirement to use visual signals while mounted.

**Standards:** Given a requirement to use visual signals while mounted.

**Performance Steps**

1. Visual signals are any means of communication that require sight and can be used to quickly transmit planned messages over short distances. This includes the devices and means used for the recognition and identification of friendly forces.
2. The most common types of visual signals are arm-and-hand, flag, pyrotechnic, and ground-to-air signals. However, soldiers are not limited to the types of signals discussed and may use what is available. Chemical light sticks, flashlights, and other items can be used provided their use is standardized within a unit and understood by soldiers and units working in the area. The only limit is the soldier's initiative and imagination.
3. Visual signals have certain limitations:
  - a. The range and reliability of visual communications are significantly reduced during poor visibility and when terrain restricts observation.
  - b. They may be misunderstood.
  - c. They are vulnerable to enemy interception and may be used for deception purposes.
4. Signals illustrated with a single arrowhead indicate that the signal is not continually repeated. However, it may be repeated at intervals until acknowledged or the desired action is executed. Signals illustrated with double arrowheads are repeated continually until acknowledged or until the desired action is taken. Signals are illustrated as normally seen by the viewer. Some signals are illustrated in oblique, right-angle, or overhead views for clarity.
  - a. Leaders of mounted units use arm-and-hand signals to control individual vehicle and platoon movements. When distances between vehicles increase, flags can be used as extensions of the arms to give the signals. From some vehicles, such as the M2 Bradley, the arm-and-hand signals are partly hidden. Signals in task 071-326-0600, Use Visual Signaling Techniques While Dismounted, are also used by mounted troops when dismounted.
  - b. The following illustration depict signals for combat formations, battle drills, and movement techniques:
    - (1) Formation signals (Figures 1 and 2).

**Performance Steps**

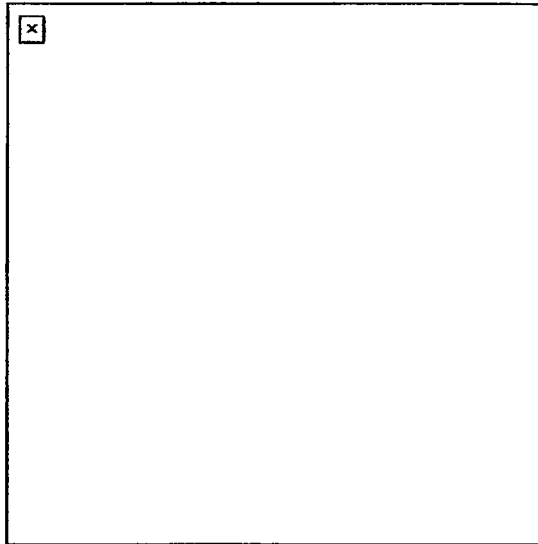


Figure 1. Coil.

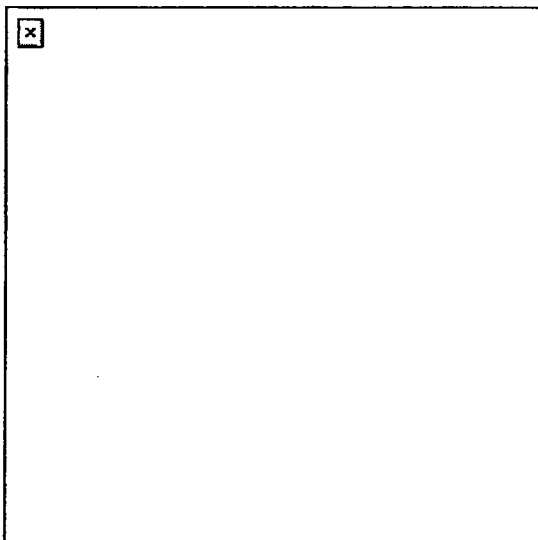


Figure 2. Herringbone.

- (2) Drill signals (Figures 3 through 9). Drills are a rapid, reflexive response executed by a small unit. These signals are used to initiate drills. They are used mounted or dismounted.

**Performance Steps**

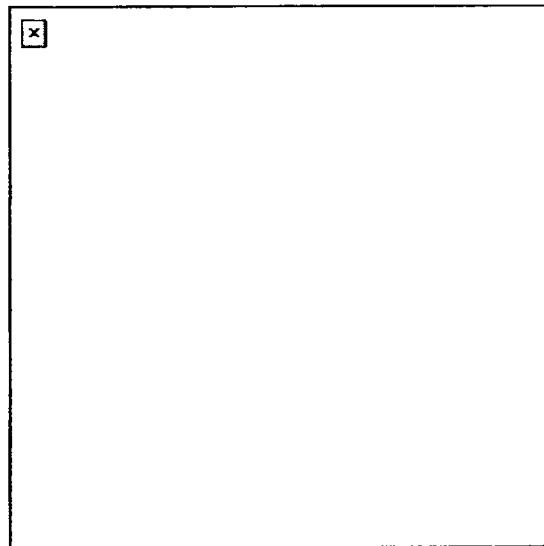


Figure 3. Contact left.

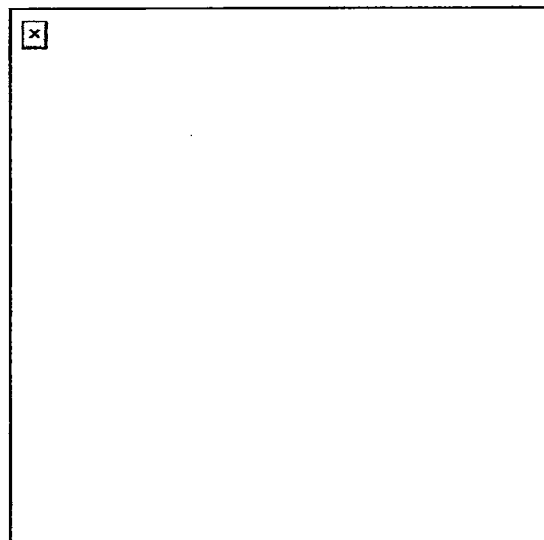


Figure 4. Contact right.

**Performance Steps**

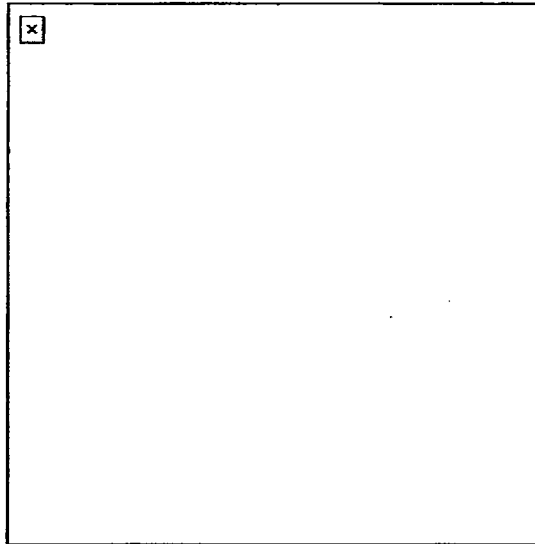


Figure 5. Action left.

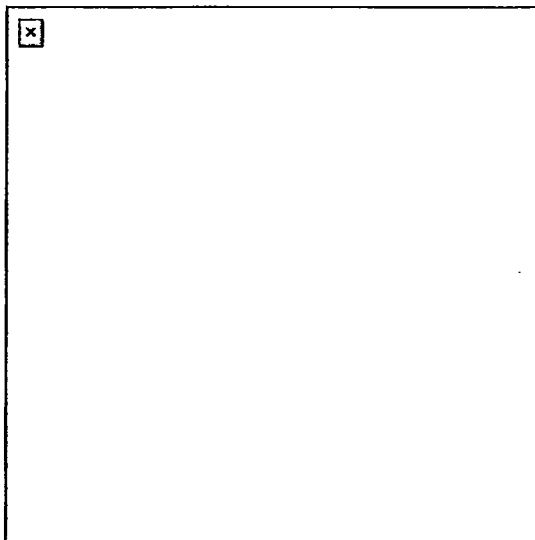


Figure 6. Action right.

**Performance Steps**

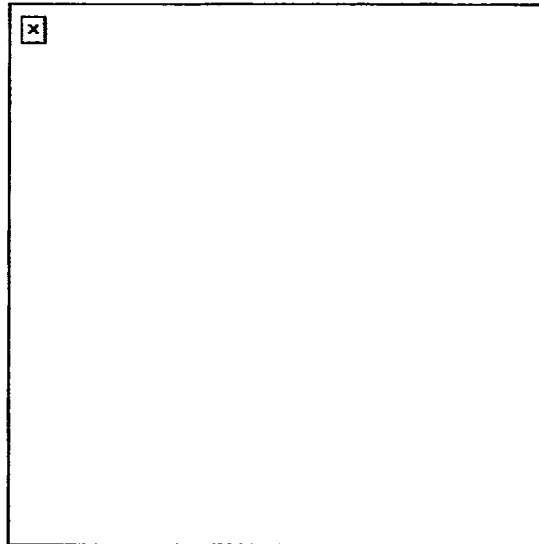


Figure 7. Action front (right, left, or rear), fight on foot, or assault fire (dismounted troops).

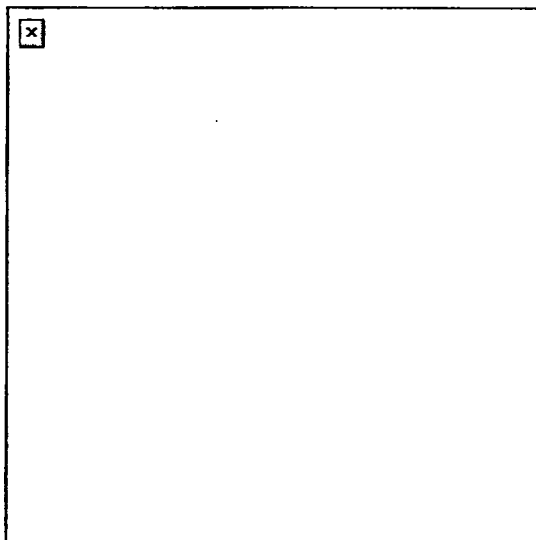


Figure 8. Air attack.

**Performance Steps**

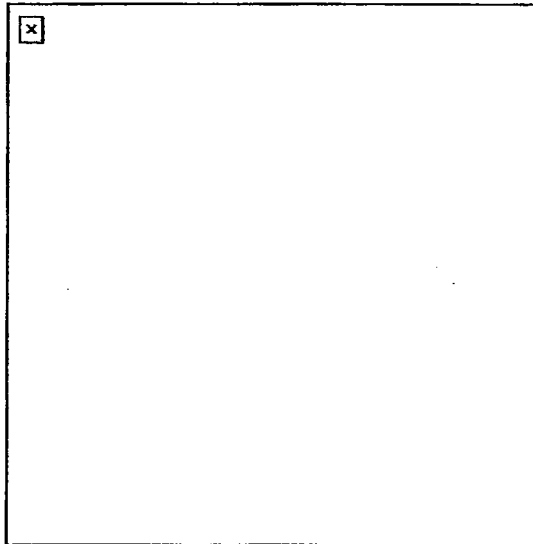


Figure 9. Nuclear, biological, chemical attack.

(3) Movement technique signals (Figures 10 through 14).

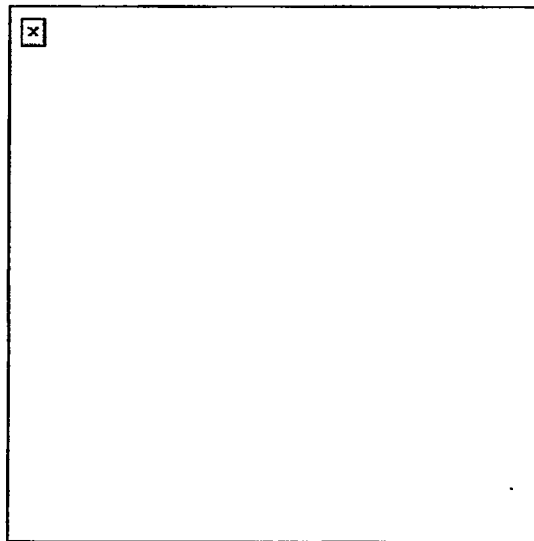


Figure 10. Traveling.

**Performance Steps**

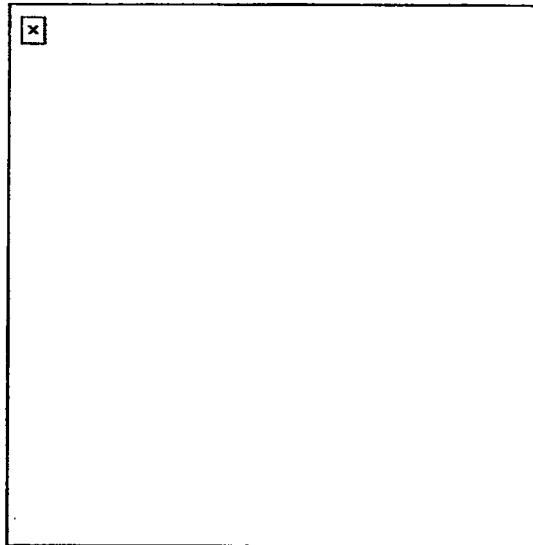


Figure 11. Traveling overwatch.

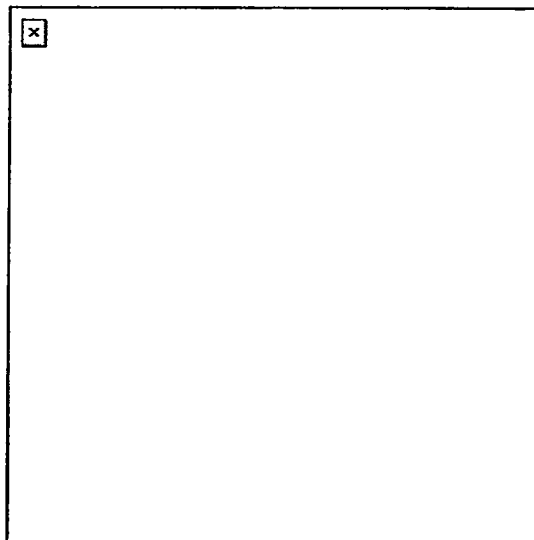


Figure 12. Bounding overwatch, cover my move.



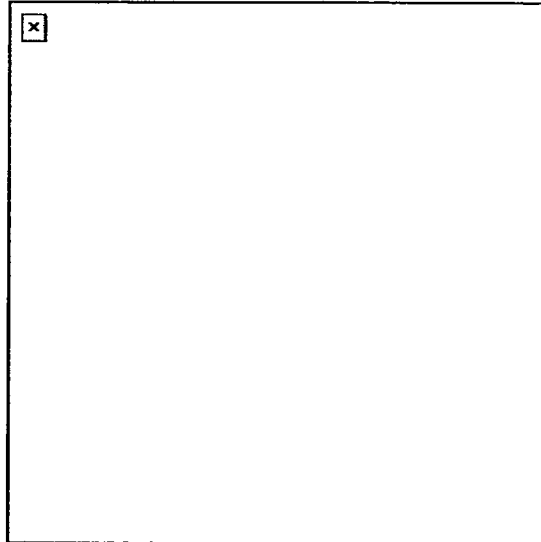
**Performance Steps**

Figure 13. Move to left.

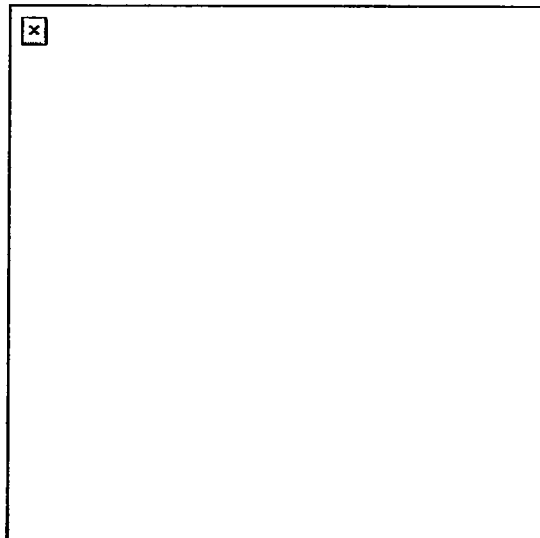


Figure 14. Move to right.

- (4) Signals to control vehicle drivers and crews. (Figures 15 through 36). These are the arm-and-hand and light signals used to guide and direct vehicles. Flashlights are used at night. Blue filters are used with flashlights to help prevent detection by light- and heat-detecting devices. Red filters are used when preserving the driver's night vision is important. Chemical lights can also be used and have less effect on the driver's night vision.

**Performance Steps**

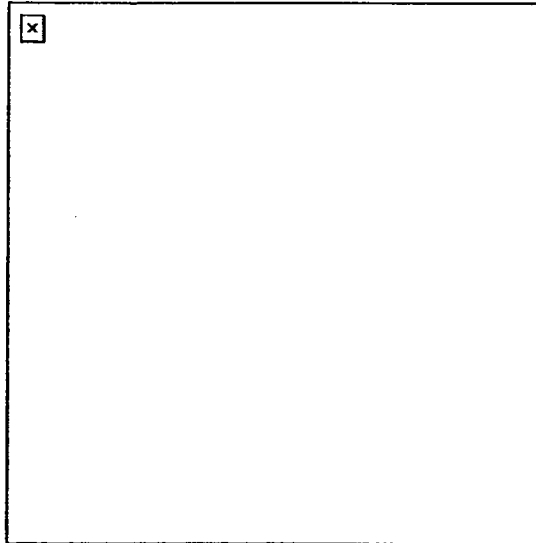


Figure 15. Attention.

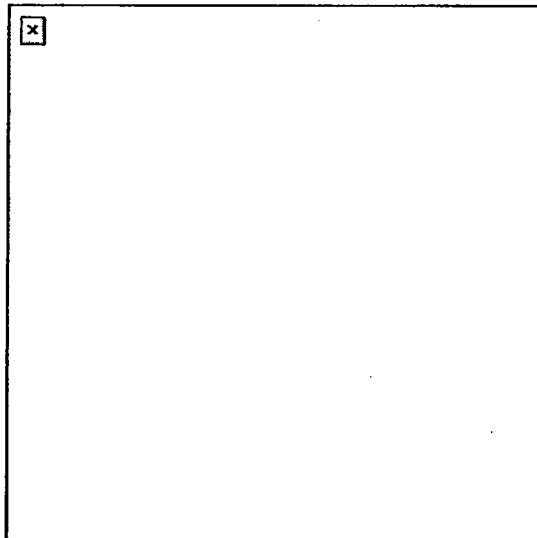


Figure 16. I am ready, or ready to move, are you ready?

**Performance Steps**

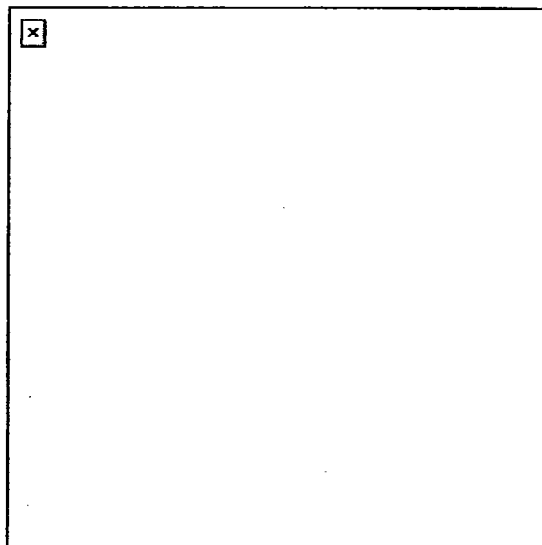


Figure 17. Mount.

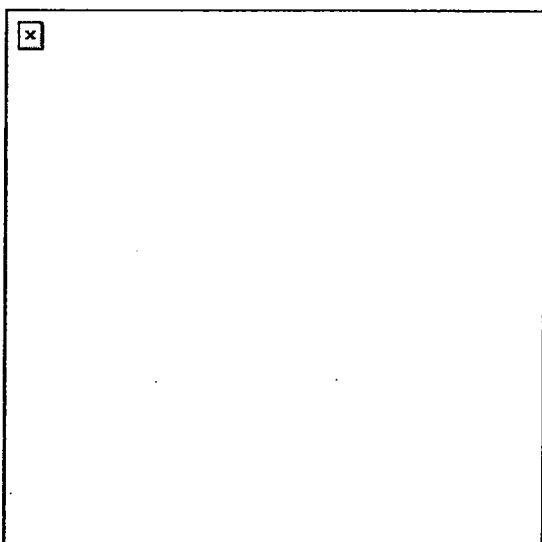


Figure 18. Disregard previous command, or as you were.

**Performance Steps**

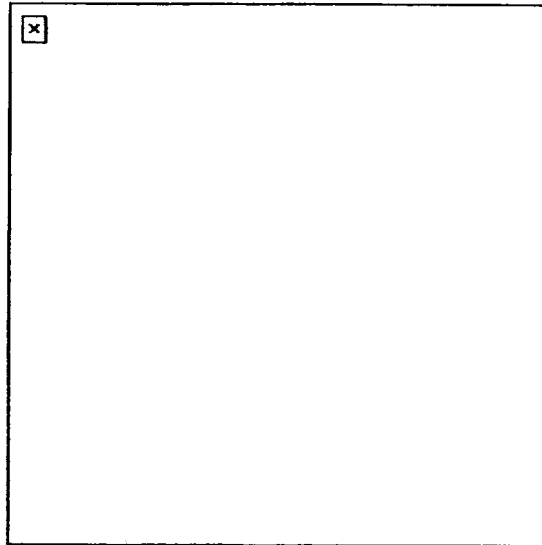


Figure 19. I do not understand.

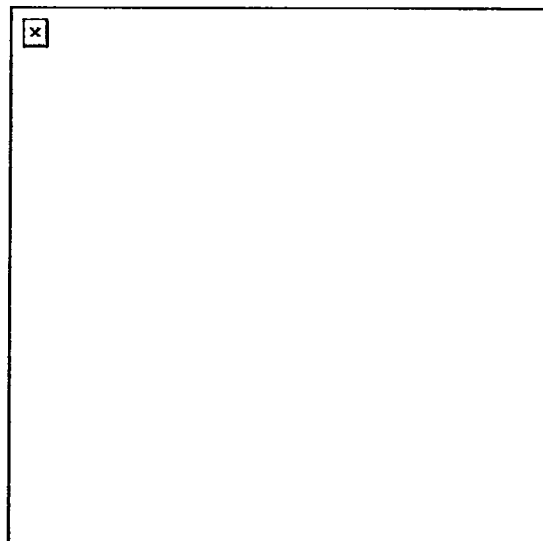


Figure 20. Start engine, or prepare to move.

**Performance Steps**

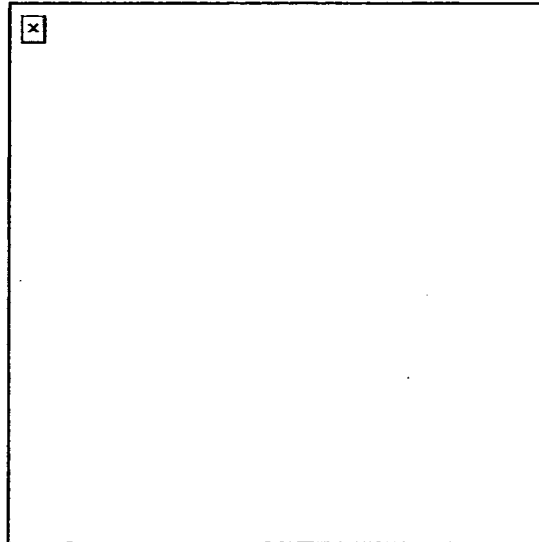


Figure 21. Halt, or stop.

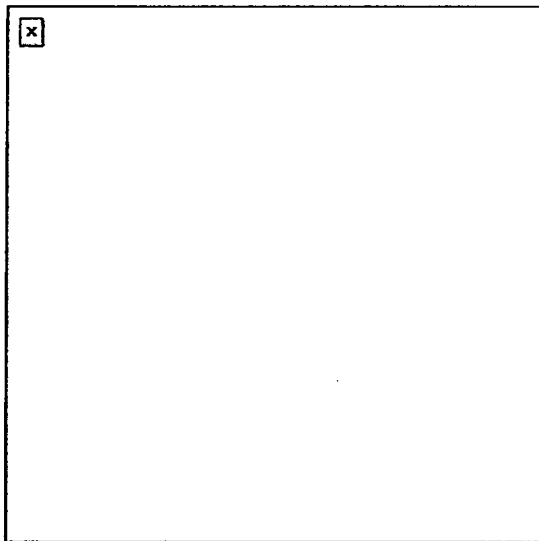


Figure 22. Increase speed.

**Performance Steps**

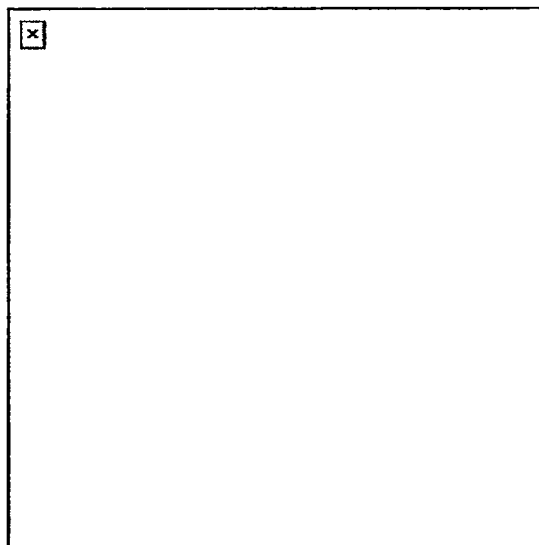


Figure 23. Advance or move out.

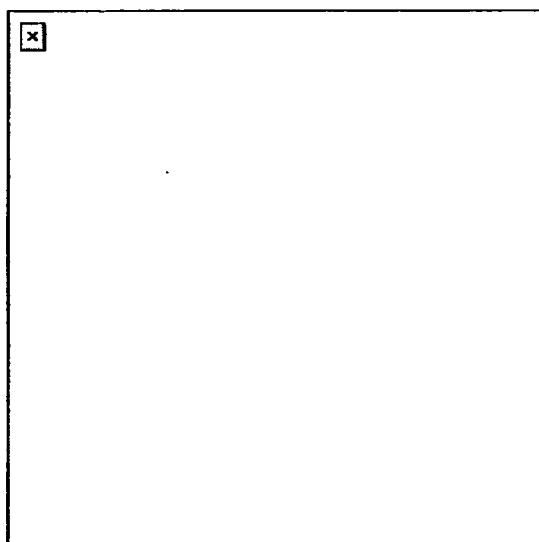


Figure 24. Open up.

**Performance Steps**

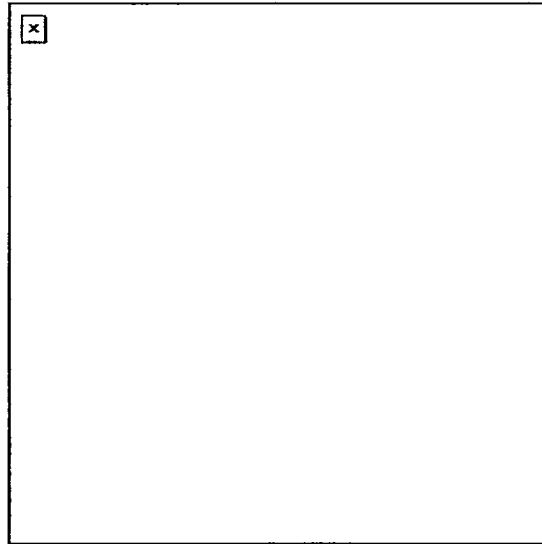


Figure 25. Close up.

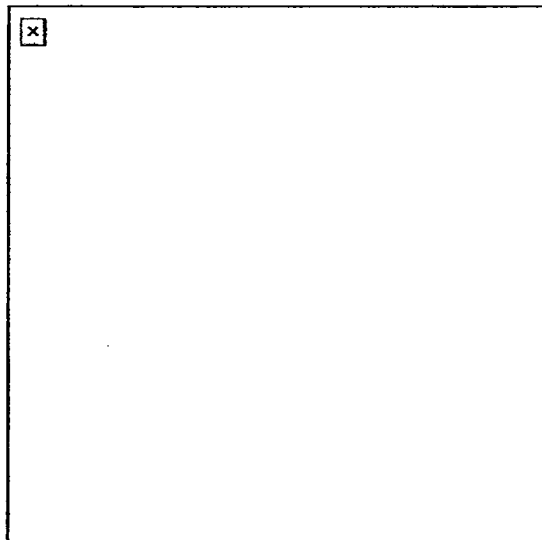


Figure 26. Right or left turn.

**Performance Steps**

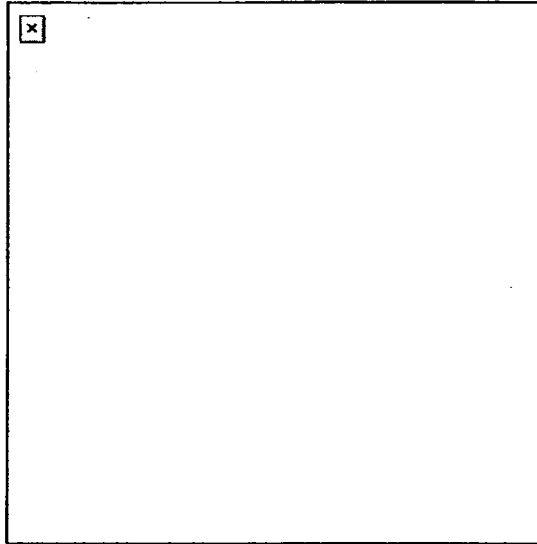


Figure 27. Slow down.

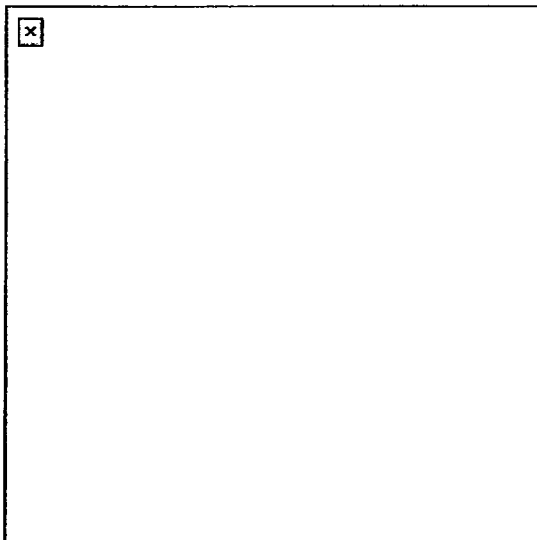


Figure 28. Move forward.



**Performance Steps**

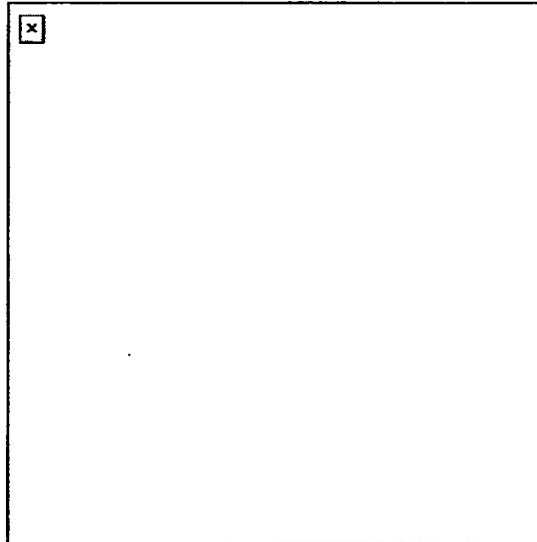


Figure 29. Move in reverse (for stationary vehicles).

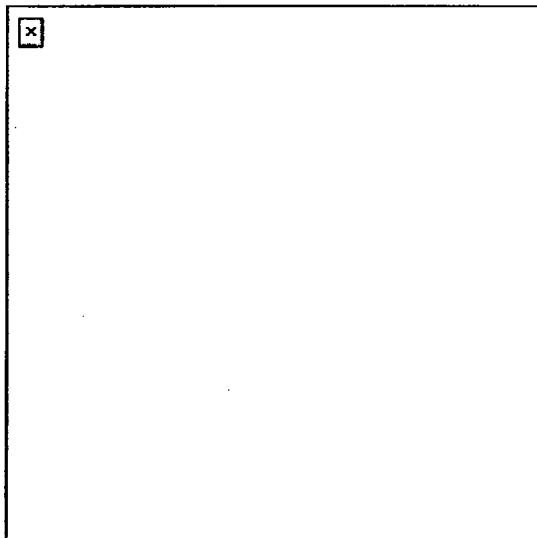


Figure 30. Close distance between vehicles and stop.

**Performance Steps**

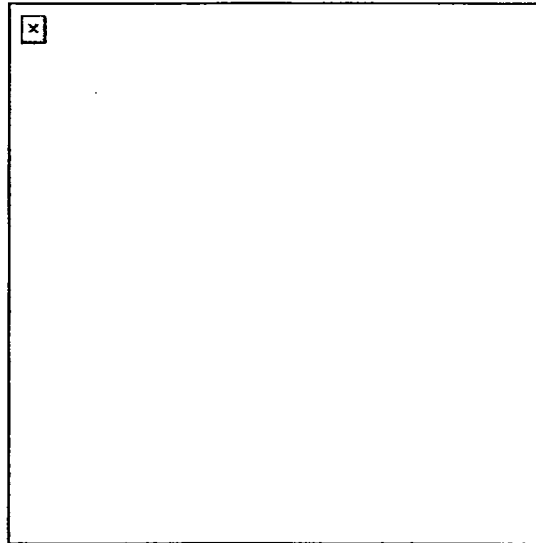


Figure 31. Stop engines.

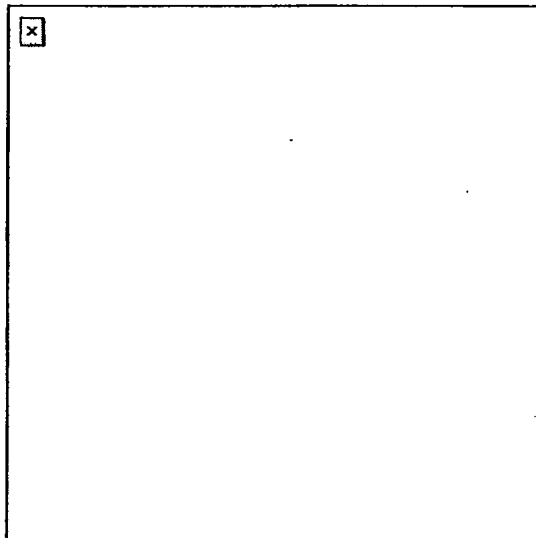


Figure 32. Dismount.

Performance Steps

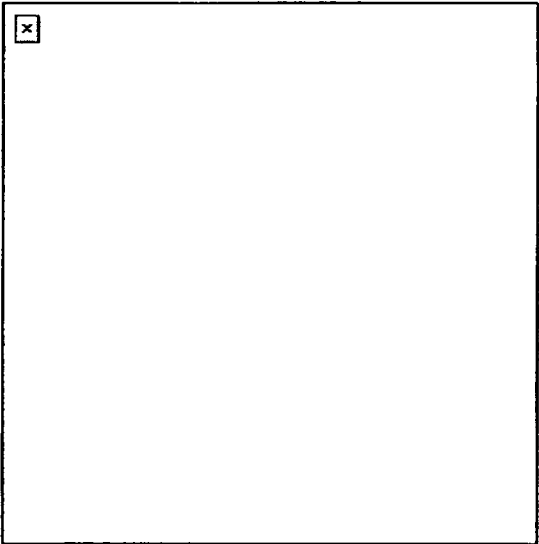


Figure 33. Neutral steer (track vehicles).

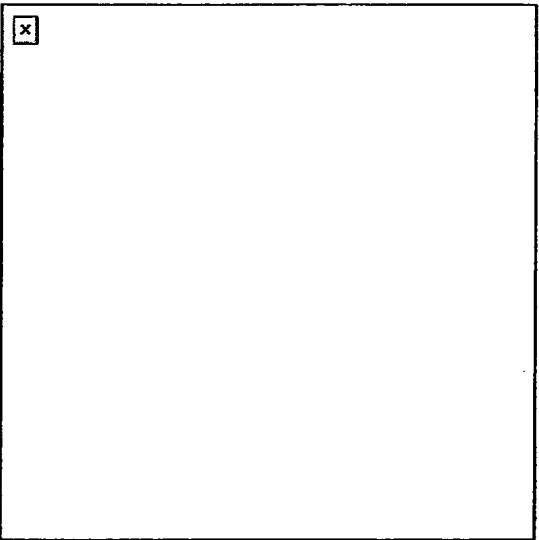


Figure 34. Stop (alternate signal to stop track vehicle).

**Performance Steps**

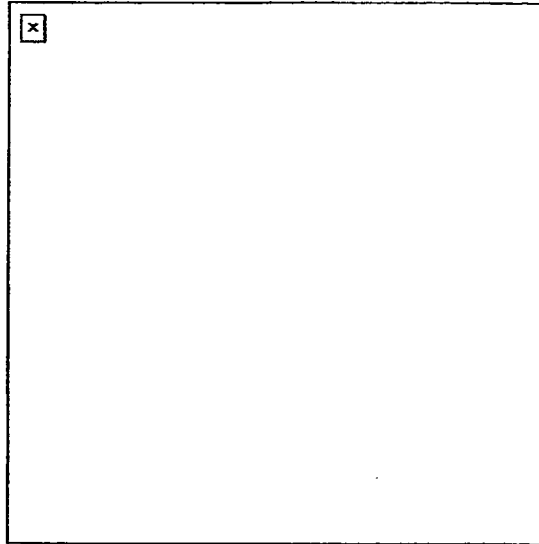


Figure 35. Button up or unbutton.

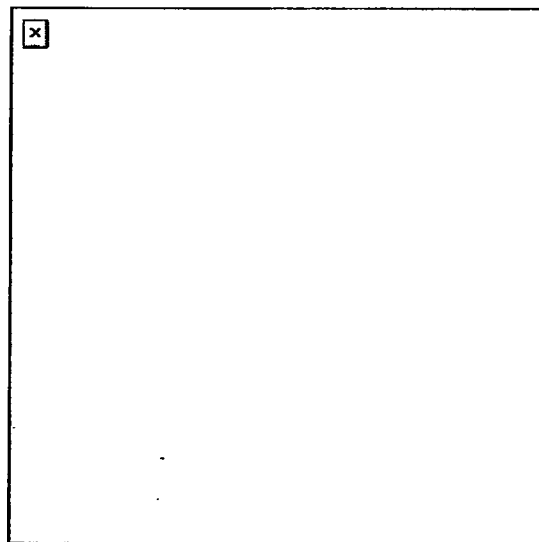


Figure 36. Message acknowledged.

- c. Flags (Figures 37 through 43) are used to mark vehicle positions (for example, a quartermaster uses colored flags in an assembly area to mark positions), identify disabled vehicles, warn friendly elements of an advancing enemy (for example, an observation post uses a flag to signal a platoon to move to its fighting position), and control movement (flags serve as an extension of arm-and-hand signals when distances between vehicles become too great).

**Performance Steps**

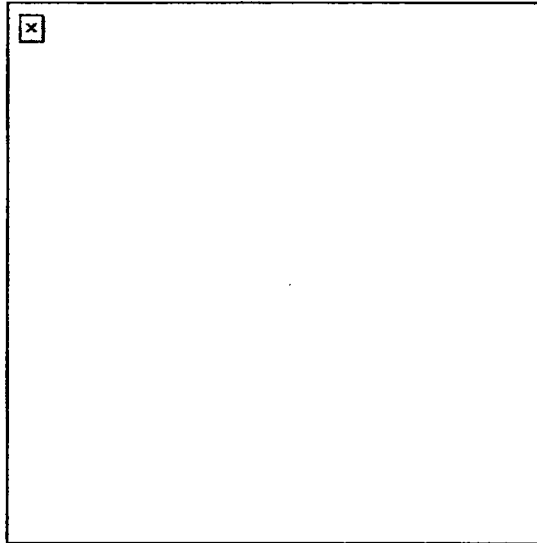


Figure 37. Use a single signal flag.

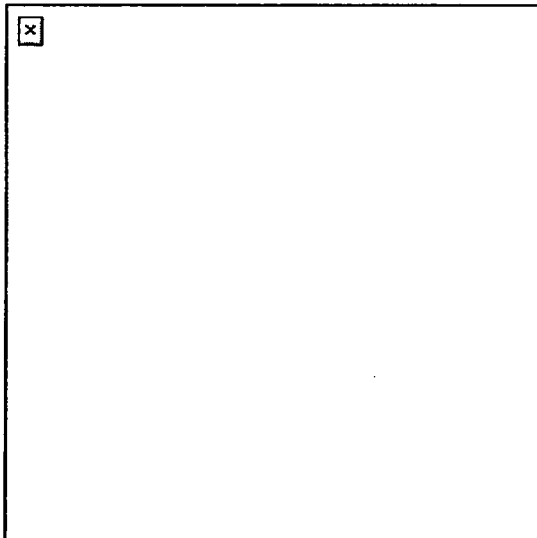


Figure 38. Mount.

**Performance Steps**

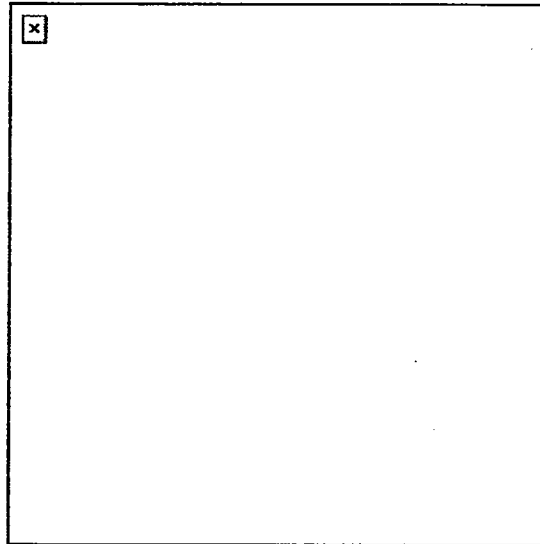


Figure 39. Dismount.

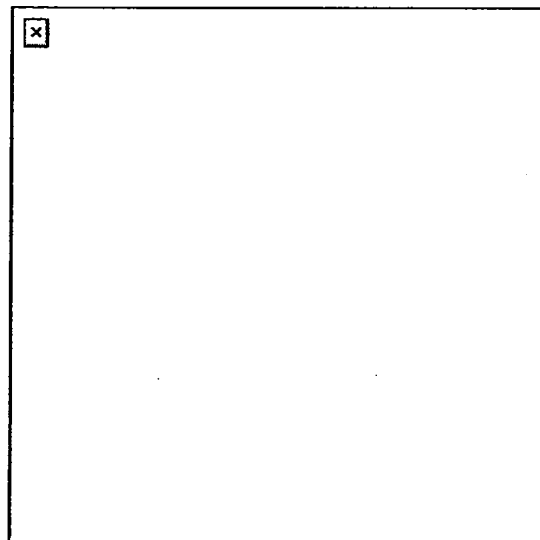


Figure 40. Dismount and assault.

**Performance Steps**

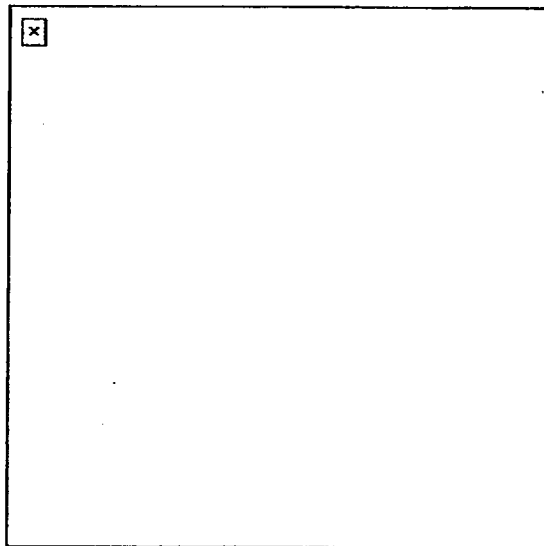


Figure 41. Assemble or close.

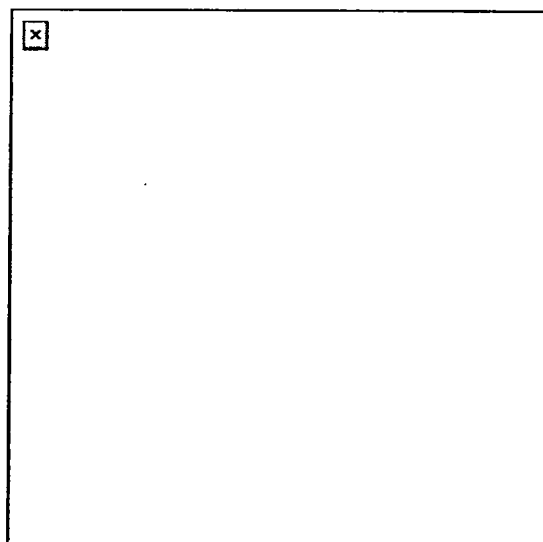


Figure 42. Move out.

### Performance Steps

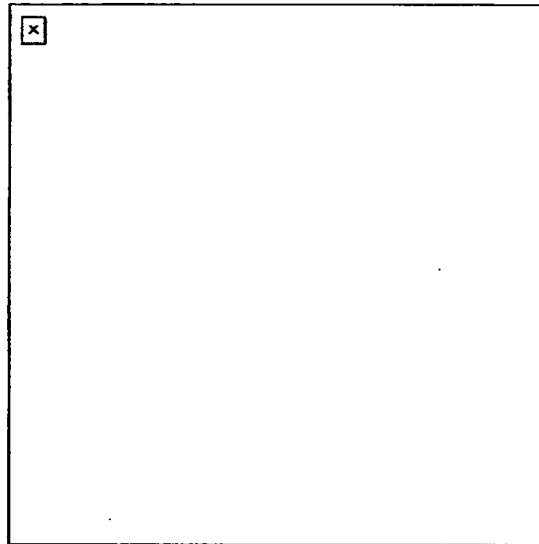


Figure 43. Nuclear, biological, chemical hazard present.

- (1) When used alone, flag colors have the following meanings:
  - (a) Red--danger, or enemy in sight.
  - (b) Green--all clear, ready, or understood.
  - (c) Yellow--desregard, or vehicle out of action.
- (2) During poor visibility, colored chemical lights or flashlights with colored filters may be substituted for flags.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide a set of vehicle signaling flags and flashlight. From the signals shown in the task, pick 10 that will be tested.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier that you will give the 10 signals and that he must correctly identify each one.

### Performance Measures

GO    NO GO

1. Performance Measures: Task performance measures are the same as the performance steps for this task.

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any steps are failed. If the soldier fails any steps, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

### References

Required

### Related

FM 17-95  
FM 21-60  
FM 7-7



**Perform Vehicle Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)**  
**551-721-1352**

**Conditions:** Given a vehicle, appropriate vehicle operator's manual (-10 series technical manual [TM]), basic issue items (BII), Department of the Army (DA) Form 2404 (Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet), a pen or pencil, and replacement parts as required.

**Standards:** Inspect the vehicle according to the PMCS table in the appropriate vehicle operator's manual (-10 series TM). Perform before-, during-, and after-operation PMCS. Correct all deficiencies within your level of maintenance and record all others on DA Form 2404 completely, accurately, and legibly. Turn in the form to the maintenance supervisor.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Inspect the vehicle to identify the deficiencies that the operator must record on DA Form 2404. Ensure that some faults are within the operators level of maintenance which he or she must correct. Designate a route for the operator to use to perform during operator maintenance checks. Brief Soldier: Tell the soldier to perform before-, during-, and after-operation maintenance checks and fill out DA Form 2404 completely, correctly, and legibly. Correct all deficiencies within his or her level of maintenance and record all other deficiencies.

**Performance Measures**

- |   | <u>GO</u> | <u>NO GO</u> |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. Prepare for inspection.  | _____     | _____        |
| a. Enter the name of the unit to which the vehicle belongs in block 1 of DA Form 2404.  |           |              |
| b. Enter the noun abbreviation and the model of the equipment in block 2 of DA Form 2404. (Example truck (Trk), Cargo, 5-Ton, 6 X 6, M923).   |           |              |
| c. Enter the registration number or serial number in block 3 of DA Form 2404.   |           |              |
| d. Enter the type of inspection service to be done in block 6 of DA Form 2404.  |           |              |
| e. Enter the number and date of the appropriate TM used in block 7 of DA Form 2404.   |           |              |
| 2. Perform before-operation inspection as listed in the appropriate vehicle operator's manual (-10 series TM). If deficiencies are noted:   | _____     | _____        |
| a. Isolate the malfunction by applying the step-by-step troubleshooting procedures as listed in the operator's manual.  |           |              |
| b. Correct all deficiencies (faults) within the operator's level of maintenance.  |           |              |
| c. Record, in column c of DA Form 2404, all vehicle deficiencies corrected by replacing parts.  |           |              |
| d. Record all uncorrectable deficiencies in column c of DA Form 2404.   |           |              |
| e. Complete blocks 4, 5, 8a, and columns a and b of DA Form 2404 as follows:  |           |              |
| (1) Enter the meter reading as of the date in block 5 in miles, kilometers, and hours as applicable in block 4.   |           |              |
| (2) Enter the current calendar date in block 5.   |           |              |
| (3) Enter your signature and rank in block 8a.  |           |              |
| (4) Write in the PMCS item number (from the operator/crew PMCS checklist in the appropriate TM) in column a that applies to the fault listed in column d.   |           |              |
| <b>Note: If the PMCS has no item number, list the page, paragraph, or sequence number. Circle the fault, if the fault is listed in the "Equipment is not ready/available" column of the PMCS. If the PMCS has no ready/available column, circle the TM item number, page, or paragraph number of any fault that makes the equipment nonmission capable (NMC).</b> |           |              |
| (5) Enter the condition status symbol for all uncorrected faults in column b.   |           |              |
| f. Enter the date in column c of DA Form 2404 if no deficiencies are noted.   |           |              |

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
3. Perform during-operation inspection as listed in the appropriate vehicle operator's manual (-10 series TM). If deficiencies are noted, follow steps 2e (1) through 2e (5).	—	—
4. Perform after-operation inspection as listed in the appropriate vehicle operator's manual (-10 series TM).	—	—
a. Put your initials in column e of DA Form 2404 if no deficiencies are noted.		
b. Follow steps 2e (1) through 2e (5) if deficiencies are noted.		
5. Turn in DA Form 2404 to the maintenance supervisor.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all performance measures are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any performance measure is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show the soldier what was done wrong and how to do it correctly. Train by providing the soldier with an example of a completed DA Form 2404, for a vehicle with and without deficiencies, note the entry that will be made for before-, during-, and after- operation maintenance. Make a copy of the maintenance table chart from the vehicle -10 manual to list the item to be inspected on the vehicle.

**References**

**Required**  
DA PAM 738-750

**Related**  
DA FORM 2404  
FM 21-305  
OD1009

## Drive Vehicle in a Convoy

551-721-1359

**Conditions:** Given a briefing by the convoy commander, a vehicle with before-operation preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) performed, the applicable vehicle -10 series technical manual (TM), and a flashlight (night convoy only). The task must be performed under the supervision of the march unit commander.

**Standards:** Operate the vehicle in a convoy safely while maintaining the proper speed and interval between vehicles. Correctly react to and relay all hand signals and follow all highway warning device and regulatory signs.

### Performance Steps

1. Start the engine upon receiving the signal or the order from the march unit commander (figure 181).
    - a. Start the engine.
    - b. Apply the parking brake, if appropriate.
    - c. Adjust the seats so you can comfortably manipulate the vehicle controls.
    - d. Adjust driving mirrors to obtain a clear view on both sides and to the rear of the vehicle.
    - e. Fasten your seat belts, if appropriate.
    - f. Place the transmission shift lever in neutral (N) or park (P), as appropriate.
    - g. Place the differential lock/unlock control to the unlock position, if appropriate.
    - h. Turn off all accessories.
    - i. Disengage the engine retarder system, if appropriate.
    - j. Push in the clutch pedal, if appropriate.
    - k. Turn on the engine run switch, if appropriate.
    - l. Engage the start button or ignition switch, as appropriate, while depressing the accelerator pedal.
    - m. Release the start button or ignition switch, as appropriate.
- Note:** If the engine fails to start, wait 2 minutes before trying again (diesel engines only).
- n. Press on the accelerator as necessary to maintain idle speed and observe the oil pressure gauge.
  - o. Observe all instruments and warning lights for proper indication.

2. Set the vehicle in motion upon receiving the signal or the order to move out.
  - a. Check all gauges to make sure the vehicle is ready for operation.
  - b. Turn on the light switch at night, as required.
  - c. Apply the brake.
  - d. Release the parking brake if appropriate.
  - e. Place the transmission shift selector lever in drive (D), as appropriate.
  - f. Place the transmission shift lever in low/first gear, as appropriate.
  - g. Release the clutch pedal until it takes hold, if appropriate.
  - h. Check for approaching traffic.
  - i. Signal to indicate the direction of movement.
  - j. Remove your foot from the brake pedal.
  - k. Depress the accelerator while releasing the clutch pedal, as appropriate.
  - l. Continue shifting until reaching the desired road speed, as appropriate.
3. Operate the vehicle at the prescribed speed and maintain proper interval between vehicles.
  - a. Maintain a minimum of 5 minutes time gap between march units on the open road.
  - b. Maintain a minimum of 10 minutes between serials on the road.
  - c. Maintain the maximum speed for the segments of the road.
  - d. Adjust speed interval and position accordingly to the signals in figures 182, 183, 184, and 185.
  - e. Relay either of the above signals received from the march unit commander to the driver behind you.

**Performance Steps**

4. Stop the vehicle at the rest site.
  - a. Place the transmission ratio selector lever in neutral (N) or park (P), as appropriate.
  - b. Set the parking brake, if applicable.
  - c. Shut down the engine.
5. Perform during-operation PMCS.
  - a. Before inspection, study the applicable TM. Pay particular attention to the section on PMCS.
  - b. Begin inspection at the first during-operation maintenance check listed on the PMCS chart.
  - c. Inspect in an orderly sequence, as described in the applicable TM, to save motion and eliminate the possibility of missing an important item.
  - d. Note deficiencies as you find them without trying to remember all of them.
  - e. Complete the inspection when you return to the starting point.
6. Resume vehicle operations (steps 1 through 5).
7. Park vehicles in a line at the convoy destination assembly area.
  - a. Place the transmission in neutral (N) or park (P), as appropriate.
  - b. Set parking brake, if appropriate.
  - c. Shut down the engine.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Set up the convoy with six vehicles at the starting point. Select a route for the convoy which will not interfere with the regular traffic. Use a Noncommissioned Officer (NCO) trained in convoy procedures to act as the convoy commander. Have the convoy commander brief the soldier on convoy operations. Brief Soldier: Tell the soldier to follow the instructions given in the convoy commander's briefing.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Start the engine.	___	___
2. Set the vehicle in motion.	___	___
3. Operate the vehicle at the prescribed speed and maintain the proper interval between vehicles.	___	___
4. Respond to hand signals given.	___	___
5. Relay the hand signals.	___	___
6. Stop the vehicle at the rest area.	___	___
7. Perform during-operation PMCS.	___	___
8. Resume vehicle operations.	___	___
9. Park in the destination assembly area.	___	___

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all performance measures are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any performance measure is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show the soldier what was done wrong and how to do it correctly. Train by providing the soldier with a mock-up of six vehicles in a convoy. With the mock-up, the soldiers will be able to identify the intervals between vehicles. Use flash cards as a training aid during unscheduled training time. Use a 3 x 5 inch index card and put the hand signal to be identified on the front side and the answer on the back. The cards are illustrations of the hand signals used by the convoy commander in the convoy.

**References**

**Required**  
AR 55-162

**Related**  
FM 5-170

**References**

**Required**  
FM 21-10  
FM 21-305  
FM 4-01.30  
FM 55-15  
FM 55-30

**Related**

**Drive Cargo Vehicle on Side Roads and Unimproved Roads**  
**551-721-1360**

**Conditions:** You are required to operate a vehicle off road under field conditions through varying terrain. Given a vehicle with before-operation maintenance checks and services performed, basic issue items (BII), and appropriate vehicle operator's manual (-10 series technical manual [TM]).

**Standards:** You must safely operate a vehicle through varying terrain without injury to personnel or damage to equipment and without getting stuck.

**Performance Steps**

1. Start engine.
2. Drive vehicle through shallow ditches.
  - a. Stop the vehicle.
  - b. Check the terrain for obstructions.
  - c. Place transmission shift lever into 1st gear.
  - d. Steer vehicle toward the ditch so that one wheel on an axle will leave the ditch as the other wheel on the same axle enters it.
3. Drive vehicle through deep ditches.
  - a. Stop the vehicle.
  - b. Check terrain for obstructions.
  - c. Cut away both sides of ditch, if necessary.
  - d. Place transfer shift lever into all-wheel drive (if applicable).
  - e. Place vehicle into lowest forward gear and four-wheel drive (if applicable).
  - f. Approach the ditch at an angle.
  - g. Accelerate the vehicle enough to keep it rolling as it goes up the other side.
4. Drive the vehicle through gullies and ravines.
  - a. Stop the vehicle.
  - b. Check the terrain for obstructions.
  - c. Place transmission shift lever into 1st gear.
  - d. Ease the front wheel over at a right angle to the edge of the ravine.
  - e. Steer a straight course so that both front wheels strike the bottom at the same time.
  - f. Accelerate enough so the vehicle can climb up the opposite bank.
5. Drive the vehicle through wooded area.
  - a. Stop the vehicle.
  - b. Check the terrain for obstructions.
  - c. Remove the tarp and bows, as required.
  - d. Place transmission shift lever into first gear.
  - e. Maneuver around obstructions.
6. Drive the vehicle through rocky terrain.
  - a. Stop the vehicle.
  - b. Check the terrain for obstructions.
  - c. Drive slowly, choosing route while advancing.
  - d. Remove stones between dual tires as often as required.
7. Drive the vehicle through streams (fording).
  - a. Stop the vehicle.
  - b. Check the terrain for obstructions.
  - c. Check the stream for depth and firm support.
  - d. Place transfer shift lever into low range/all-wheel drive.
  - e. Place the transmission shift lever into 1st gear.

**Performance Steps**

- f. Drive through water, without shifting unless absolutely necessary.
- g. Dry the brakes.
  - (1) Select a dry, level stretch of terrain.
  - (2) Apply the brakes a few times with a light steady pressure to obtain normal braking.
- 8. Drive the vehicle through swamps and mud.
  - a. Stop the vehicle.
  - b. Check the terrain for obstructions.
  - c. Engage low-range/all-wheel drive.
  - d. Place transmission shift lever into 1st gear.
  - e. Drive through the area maintaining a steady speed.
- 9. Shut down the engine and perform after-operation preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier a vehicle with cross-country capability. Brief Soldier: Tell the soldier to operate the vehicle through varying terrain without injury to personnel or damage to equipment and without getting stuck.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Start the engine.	_____	_____
2. Drive the vehicle through shallow ditches. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(2) Check terrain for obstructions.</li> <li>(3) Cut away both sides of ditch, if necessary.</li> <li>(4) Place transfer shift lever into all-wheel drive (if applicable).</li> <li>(5) Place transfer shift lever into low range (if applicable).</li> <li>(6) Approach the ditch at an angle.</li> <li>(7) Accelerate the vehicle enough to keep it rolling as it goes up the other side.</li> </ul>	_____	_____
3. Drive the vehicle through deep ditches.	_____	_____
3. Drive the vehicle through gullies and ravines. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stop the vehicle.</li> <li>b. Check the terrain for obstructions.</li> <li>c. Place transmission shift lever into 1st/low gear.</li> <li>d. Ease the front wheel over the edge and into the ravine.</li> <li>e. Steer a straight course so that both front wheels strike the bottom at the same time.</li> <li>f. Accelerate enough so that the vehicle can climb up the opposite bank.</li> </ul>	_____	_____
4. Drive the vehicle through wooded area.	_____	_____
4. Drive the vehicle through gullies and ravines. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stop the vehicle.</li> <li>b. Check the terrain for obstructions.</li> <li>c. Remove the tarp and bows, as required.</li> <li>d. Place transmission shift lever into 1st/low gear.</li> <li>e. Maneuver around obstructions.</li> <li>f. Center larger saplings on the vehicle bumper.</li> </ul>	_____	_____
5. Drive the vehicle through rocky terrain.	_____	_____
5. Drive the vehicle through wooded area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stop the vehicle.</li> <li>b. Check the terrain for obstructions.</li> </ul>	_____	_____

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
c. Drive slowly, choosing route while advancing.		
d. Remove stones between dual tires as often as possible.		
6. Drive the vehicle through rocky terrain.	_____	_____
6. Drive vehicle through streams (fording).	_____	_____
a. Stop vehicle.		
b. Check the terrain for obstructions.		
c. Check the stream for depth and firm support.		
d. Place transfer shift lever into low range/all-wheel drive.		
e. Place the transmission shift lever into 1st/low gear.		
f. Drive through water, not shifting unless absolutely necessary.		
g. Dry the brake.		
(1) Select a clear, level stretch of terrain.		
(2) Apply the brakes a few times to obtain normal braking.		
7. Drive the vehicle through streams (fording).	_____	_____
7. Drive the vehicle through swamps and mud.	_____	_____
a. Stop the vehicle.		
b. Check the terrain for obstructions.		
c. Engage low-range/all-wheel drive.		
d. Place transmission shift lever into 1st/low gear.		
e. Drive through the area maintaining a steady speed.		
8. Shut down the engine and perform after-operations PMCS.	_____	_____
8. Drive the vehicle through swamps and mud.	_____	_____
9. Shut down the engine and performs after-operations PMCS.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References****Required**

**Related**  
FM 21-305



**Drive Vehicle With or Without Trailer/Semitrailer in Blackout Conditions**  
**551-721-1363**

**Conditions:** Given a vehicle, with or without trailer/semitrailer with before-operation maintenance performed, and a lead vehicle.

**Standards:** Drive the vehicle safely while maintaining the proper speed and interval between vehicles without causing injury to personnel or damage to the vehicle or property.

**Performance Steps**

1. Check all blackout lights for operation.
  - a. Check blackout marker lights.
    - (1) Check both rear blackout marker lights.
    - (2) Check both front blackout marker lights.
  - b. Check blackout drive lights. Check the blackout driving light mounted to the left of the left headlight. It furnishes a diffused light beam to permit limited illumination when you are driving under blackout conditions.
  - c. Check blackout drive stop lights. Normally, the blackout stop light is a separate unit mounted on the right and the left taillights and flashes a white light when the brakes are applied.
  - d. Ensure lenses are clean of dust, dirt, mud, and paint.
2. Remove, lower, or leave the windshield in place (as directed) to improve visibility.
3. Drive the vehicle at a low speed (5 to 10 miles per hour [MPH]/8 to 16 kilometers per hour [KMPH]) during blackout operations.
4. Maintain a proper interval (60 to 180 feet) from the vehicle ahead. If you are following the correct distance, each pair of blackout lights appears as one red light.

**Note:** When practical, post a person in the rear of your vehicle to warn you if another driver follows too closely. If a person is not available, put a white handkerchief or some other white object on your bumper. This white object will warn the driver behind you not to follow too closely.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Select a route that the driver will be using. Designate the start point and the release point along the route. Assemble the vehicles in an area near the route selected. Brief Soldier: Brief the soldier of the route of travel, point out the starting point and release point and any major obstacles along the route. Tell the soldier the speed will be 5 MPH/8 KMPH and to maintain the correct interval between vehicles throughout the blackout move.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Check all blackout lights for operation.	_____	_____
2. Remove or lower the windshield.	_____	_____
3. Drive the vehicle at a speed 5 to 10 MPH/8 to 16 KMPH.	_____	_____
4. Maintain an interval between 60 to 180 feet.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all performance measures are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any performance measure is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show the soldier what was done wrong and how to do it correctly. Train by providing the soldier with an illustration of vehicles driving under blackout conditions which indicates the correct following distance between vehicles. Use flash cards as a training device and during unscheduled training time to depict how blackout marker lights will appear from the rear, at more than 180 feet, between 180 and 60 feet, and less than 60 feet. Do the same for the front blackout drive lights and blackout marker lights, for more than 60 feet and less than 60 feet.

STP 19-95C1-SM

**References**  
**Required**  
FM 21-305

**Related**

Subject Area 10: Land Navigation

Determine the Elevation of a Point on the Ground Using a Map  
071-329-1004

Performance Steps

1. Contour lines and contour intervals.
  - a. The brown lines on the map are called contour lines. Each line shows the height above sea level. Contour lines never cross one another. Printed at the bottom of the map is the contour interval, which is the difference in height (elevation) between one brown line and the one on either side of it. On a map with a scale of 1:50,000, the contour interval is usually 20 meters.
  - b. You can easily tell from the brown lines the direction of uphill or downhill because every fifth line is heavier and has a number that gives its elevation. Let's say the contour interval is 20 meters again. Now you can tell that Point B is 100 meters higher than Point A. Also, if you know the distance between A and B, you can get an idea of the steepness of the slope.
  - c. Widely spaced contour lines show a gentle slope. When they are close together, the slope is steep.
  - d. When the contour lines are close together at the top of the hill, the hilltop is pointed. When the contour lines are widely spaced the hilltop is flat.
2. Determining elevation.
  - a. Locate the point on the map. (It may already be plotted on the map, or given as eight digit coordinates).
  - b. Determine the contour interval of the map from the marginal information.
  - c. Locate the index contour line nearest the point for which the elevation is being sought.
  - d. Count the number of contour lines, up or down, that must be crossed to go from the numbered lines to the point, and note the direction to the point. If the point is on a contour line, its elevation is that of the contour line. For points between contour lines:
    - (1) Points less than one fourth the distance between lines are considered to be the same as the elevation of the nearest line.
    - (2) Points one fourth to three fourths the distance from the lower line are considered to be at an elevation half the contour interval above the lower line.
  - e. To estimate the elevation of the top of an unmarked hill, add half the contour interval to the elevation of the highest contour line around the hill.
  - f. To estimate the elevation of the bottom of depression, subtract half the contour interval from the elevation of the lowest contour around the depression.
  - g. On maps that do not show elevation and relief in as much detail as needed, supplementary contour lines may be used. Marginal information indicates the interval, and the supplementary lines are used exactly like solid contour lines.
  - h. Benchmarks and spot elevation also indicate points of known elevation.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with a 1:50,000-scale military map, a designated point on the map labeled "A", and a pencil. Brief soldier: Tell the soldier to determine the elevation of the point that is labeled "A" on the map.

Performance Measures

GO    NO GO

- |  |                   |                   |
|--|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Determines the correct elevation within half the value of the contour interval. | <u>          </u> | <u>          </u> |
|--|-------------------|-------------------|
- Note: If the contour interval of the map is in feet, the answer must be in feet. If the contour interval is in meters, the answer must be in meters.

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if the step is passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if the step is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

STP 19-95C1-SM

**References**  
**Required**  
FM 3-25.26

**Related**

## Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted

071-329-1006

**Conditions:** Given a standard topographic map of the area, scale 1:50,000, a coordinate scale and protractor, a compass, and writing materials.

**Standards:** Moved on foot to designated points at a rate of 3,000 meters in an hour.

### Performance Steps

1. Determine your pace count.
  - a. When you have to go a certain distance on foot, you can measure distance by counting your paces. The average soldier uses 116 paces to travel 100 meters. You should check your pace length by practicing on a known 100-meter distance, like a football field plus one end zone, which is 110 yards (about 100 meters).
  - b. When you travel cross-country as you do in the field, you use more paces to travel 100 meters, usually about 148 instead of 116. This is because you are not traveling over level ground, and must use more paces to make up for your movement up and down hills. You should pace yourself over at least 600 meters of crisscrossing terrain to learn how many paces it takes you to travel an average 100 meters over such terrain.
  - c. Be sure you know how many paces it takes you to walk 100 meters on both level and crisscrossing terrain.
    - (1) The problem in pacing is maintaining a straight line. At night, you will tend to walk in a clockwise circle if you do not use a compass. In daylight, you should use aiming points and a compass. Also, remember to figure only the straight-line distance when you have to walk around an obstacle.
    - (2) Another problem is keeping count of paces taken. One way is to use pebbles. For instance, suppose you want to pace off 1 kilometer. (A kilometer is 1,000 meters or the distance between two of the black grid lines on your map.) Put ten pebbles in your right pocket. When you go 100 meters, move one pebble to your left pocket and start your count over. When all ten pebbles had been moved to your left pocket, you have traveled 1 kilometer. Or, you can tie knots in a string, one knot per 100 meters.
  - d. Sample problem: You are to move 715 meters, and your pace count for 100 meters is 116 paces.
    - (1) Using the pebble methods, you will need seven pebbles. This will take you 700 meters. But what about the other 15 meters?
    - (2) To determine how many paces it will take to go the remaining 15 meters, multiply 15 meters by your pace count (116). ( $15 \times 116 = 1,740$ ). Mark out the last two numbers (40). The remainder is how many paces it will take to go 15 meters (17).
    - (3) So you would go 715 meters using the pebble method by pacing off 116 paces per 100 meters until all seven pebbles are used, then go an additional 17 paces to arrive at 715 meters.
2. Navigate from one point to another using terrain association.
  - a. This technique uses terrain or manmade features to serve as landmarks or checkpoints for maintaining direction of movement. It can be used anywhere, day or night, as long as there are distinguishable terrain features. You use terrain association when moving from the unit area to the motor pool. You walk down the road or sidewalk using intersections or buildings to steer or turn on (landmarks or checkpoints). In the field, with few roads and buildings, you use terrain features for your axis and checkpoints.
  - b. In using association, you first locate your position on the map, then locate your destination or objective. It will seldom be the best way to travel. For example, look at Figure 1. Assume that you are to move from point A to point B. You see that a straight line could cause you to climb several small ridges and valleys (the "X's" on Figure 1).
  - c. When adjusting your route, consider the following:

**Performance Steps**

- (1) Tactical aspect. Avoid skylining open areas and danger areas like streams or crossings on roads and hilltops. Your tactical concern is survival. The mission is causing you to move to your objective. You need to be sure you get to that objective. Looking at Figure 2, you decide for tactical reasons to cross the stream where you would not be seen from the road (C) and to cross the road in a small valley (D). You know that valleys offer better cover and concealment, so you will use them (E) (F).
- (2) Ease of movement. Always pick the easiest route that the tactical situation will allow. However, you achieve surprise by doing the unexpected. A difficult route increases your chance of getting lost. A difficult route may be noisy and may tire you out before you get to your objective.
- (3) Boundaries. It is almost impossible to travel in a straight line, with or without a compass. Pick an axis or corridor to travel along. Pick boundaries you will be able to spot or feel. Hardtop roads, streams, high grounds, and railroads all make good boundaries. If you start to wander too far off course, you will know it.
- d. You decide the route shown in Figure 3 offers you easy movement. You check your axis up the valley (1); across the ridge at the saddle (2); cross the stream, turning left and keep the stream on the left, high ground on the right (4); to the third valley (5); to the saddle, then on the objective (6).
- e. With boundaries to keep you straight, you need to know where along your corridor you are. You do this with checkpoints. The best checkpoint is a line or linear feature that you cannot miss. A linear feature across your corridor, or axis, is crossed no matter where you are in the axis. Use hardtop roads, railroads, power lines, perennial streams (solid blue lines and the dash blue lines are frequently dry), rivers, ridges, and valleys.

**NOTE: Do NOT use light-duty roads and trails, because there is always more on the ground than the map shows. DO NOT use wood lines, which are rarely permanent.**

- f. Referring to Figure 3, pick your checkpoints.
    - (1) The saddle, you can use Hill 241 to line on up the right valley, which you will follow to:
    - (2) The stream, which you will move alongside it until:
    - (3) The bend in the stream, when you turn right to:
    - (4) The road in the valley (the ridge crossing on the road on the 12 grid line will serve as a limiting feature), then up to:
    - (5) The far saddle, and right to your objective (B).
  - g. If you cannot find linear features, use an elevation change--hill or depressions, small ridge, or a valley. Look for one contour line of change during the day, two at night. Regardless of contour interval, you will spot a contour interval of change on foot.
  - h. Determine the distance between checkpoints. **DISTANCE IS THE CAUSE FOR MOST NAVIGATIONAL MISTAKES.** Estimate or measure the distance from one checkpoint to another. Then trust that distance.
  - i. Referring to Figure 4, check your distances:
    - (1) 500 meters to the saddle (1).
    - (2) 800 meters to the stream (2).
    - (3) 500 meters to the bend in the stream (3).
    - (4) 300 meters to the road (4).
    - (5) 1,000 meters to the far saddle (5).
3. Navigate from one point to another using dead reckoning.
- a. Dead reckoning is a technique of following a set route or line for a determined distance. This technique is used on flat terrain, like deserts and swamps. It can be used day or night. To use dead reckoning:
    - (1) Locate the start point and finish point on the map (Figure 5).
    - (2) Determine the grid azimuth from the start point to the finish point or to the first intermediate point on the map.
    - (3) Convert the grid azimuth taken from the map to a magnetic azimuth.
    - (4) Determine the distance between the start point and the finish point or any intermediate points on the map.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE: If you do not know how many paces you take for each 100 meters, you should move to a 100-meter course and determine your pace count.**

- (5) Convert the map distance to pace count.
- (6) Make a thorough map reconnaissance of the area between the start point and the finish point.
- b. Before moving from the start point, shoot an azimuth on a well-defined object on the ground in the direction of travel. These objects, known as steering points, may be lone trees, buildings, rocks, or any easily identifiable point. At night, the most likely steering point will be a star. Because of the rotation of the earth, the positions of the stars continually change. You must check your azimuth frequently. Do this only when halted. Using your compass while moving will cause you to go off-course. Your steering mark may be beyond your objective. Remember to travel the distance you determined.
- c. Once you have selected a steering point, you should move toward it, remembering to begin your count. For every 100 meters you travel, you should have some methods devised to keep track of the number of 100 meters you travel.
- d. Upon reaching your first steering point, shoot an azimuth to another steering mark, and repeat c, above, until you reach the finish point.
- e. If you should encounter an obstacle, you may have to detour around it (Figure 6). To do this, complete a series of 90-degree turns until the obstacle is bypassed and you are back on the original azimuth.
  - (1) At the edge of the obstacle, make a note of the number of paces taken to this point.
  - (2) If your detour is to the right, add 90 degrees to your original azimuth.
  - (3) Using the new azimuth, pick a steering mark and move toward it, making sure you begin a new pace count. Move on this azimuth until reaching the end of the obstacle.
  - (4) Stop and make a note of the number of paces taken, again as in (2) above, add or subtract 90 degrees from the azimuth just read, and move to the far side of the obstacle.
  - (5) Upon reaching the far side, stop the count and make note of the number of paces taken; add this pace count to the pace count noted in (1) above.
  - (6) At this time, again add or subtract 90 degrees from the azimuth used. Using this new azimuth, move the same number of paces taken on the first leg of the offset or detour.
  - (7) Place the compass on your original azimuth, pick up the pace count you ended with when you cleared the obstacle, and proceed to your finish point.
- f. Bypassing the same obstacle at night calls for special considerations:
  - (1) To make a 90-degree turn, hold the compass as you would to determine a Magnetic Azimuth.
  - (2) Turn until the center of the luminous letter "E" is under the luminous line (do not change the setting of the luminous line).

**NOTE: If you turn to the right, "E" is under the luminous line. If you turn to the left, "W" is under the line.**

  - (3) Proceed in the direction until you have outflanked the obstacle.
  - (4) Turn until the north arrow is under the luminous line and proceed parallel to your original course until you have bypassed the obstacle.
  - (5) Turn until the "W" is under the luminous line and move back the same distance you originally moved.
  - (6) Finally, turn until the north arrow is under the luminous line and proceed on your original course.
  - (7) You must do the pace count the same as you do for bypassing the obstacle during daylight.
- g. After reaching the finish point, conduct a detailed terrain analysis to confirm your location.
4. Navigate from one point to another by combining terrain association with dead reckoning.
  - a. Frequently, you must consider the advantage and disadvantage of both navigation techniques.
    - (1) Terrain association is fast and easy, and it allows for mistakes. It also is subject to map accuracy and can only be used with recognizable terrain features.

**Performance Steps**

- (2) Dead reckoning is accurate and works on flat terrain that lacks terrain features; however, all work must be precise, and the technique takes time.
- b. There may be times when you combine both techniques. For instance, in the desert, you may need to use dead reckoning to arrive at or near a road, or a ridge, then use terrain association to follow that feature to an objective.

**Evaluation Preparation:** **SETUP:** Select an area with varying terrain and vegetation that is large enough to have two points, 1,000 to 2,000 meters apart. Each point is on or near an identifiable terrain feature and is marked on the ground with a sign containing a letter or number. Dummy signs are placed not less than 100 meters nor more than 200 meters to the right and left of the correct point. Clearly mark correct points on the map. Prepare a sheet of paper giving the azimuth and distance for each leg of the course to be covered. Have pencils available for the tested soldier.

**BRIEF SOLDIER:**

**1. Terrain Association.**

- a. Give the soldier the map and tell him to identify the best route to take between the two points that have been plotted on the map (1,000 to 2,000 meters apart). **NOTE:** The best route must have been determined by an SME before the test.
- b. Give the soldier the map and tell him he must move from point A on the map to point B (1,000 to 2,000 meters apart) using terrain association (no compass is used). Tell the soldier he has \_\_\_\_\_ time to complete the course.

**2. Dead Reckoning.** Give the soldier the sheet of paper with the azimuth and the distance for each leg of the course (three to five points, 200 to 500 meters apart), and the compass; no map will be used. Tell the soldier to move over the course shown by the azimuth and the distance on the paper. Tell the soldier to record the letter or number at the end of each leg of the course. Tell the soldier he has \_\_\_\_\_ time to complete the course.

**NOTE:** Time standards are based on the average time it takes two SMEs to complete the course plus 50 percent. For example, SME time, 1 hour. 1 hour added to 50 percent = Course Test Time of 1 hour, 30 minutes.

Soldiers being tested are given 10 minutes to study the map and to determine their course of action. At the end of this time, the soldier moves to the start point and begins the test. Time starts when soldiers leave the start point and ends when the finished point is crossed.

**Performance Measures**

**1. Terrain association.**

- a. Identified the best route within 10 minutes and explained reason for picking that route.
- b. Wrote down the correct letter or number at the end of each leg of the course.

**2. Dead reckoning.**

- a. Wrote down the correct letter or number of each leg of the course.
- b. Arrived at correct destination within the specified time.

**GO**      **NO GO**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all performance measures are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any performance measure is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show the soldier what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.



**Orient a Map Using a Lensatic Compass**

**071-329-1011**

**Conditions:** Given a field table, a standard 1:50, 000 scale military map, a protector, a pencil, paper, and a compass in daylight.

**Standards:** Orient the map to the ground using a compass so that the north-seeking arrow of the compass is within 3 degrees (20 mils) of the angle shown in the grid-magnetic (G-M) angle of the declination diagram shown on the map.

**Performance Steps**

1. With the map level, place the compass parallel to a north-south grid line with the cover side of the compass pointing towards the top of the map. This will place the black index line on the dial of the compass parallel to grid north. Since the needle on the compass points to magnetic north, we have a declination diagram on the face of the compass formed by the index line and the compass needle.
2. Rotate map and compass until the directions of the declination diagram formed by the black index line and the compass needle match the direction shown the declination diagram printed on the margin of the map. The map is then oriented.
3. If the magnetic north arrow on the map is to the left of the grid north, the compass reading will equal the G-M angle (given the declination diagram). If the magnetic north is the right of the grid north, the compass reading will equal 360 degrees (6400 mils) minus the G-M angle.
4. Remember to point the compass north arrow in the same direction as the magnetic north arrow (2 above), and the compass reading (equal to the G-M angle or the 360 degrees (6400 mils) minus G-M angle) will be quite apparent.

**NOTE:** If the G-M angle is less than 3 degrees (50 mils), do not line up the north arrow.

5. Some maps have a built-in protractor considering of a pivot point "P" on the south neat line of the map and several degrees of arc along the north neat line of the map. The G-M line is obtained by connecting pivot "P" with the appropriate value of the G-M angle (taken from the declination diagram) on the arc. The map may then be oriented by placing the compass parallel on this line and rotating the map and compass until the needle point is aligned with the continuous line formed by the index line and the sighting wire. The map is then oriented.
6. An alternate method is to draw a magnetic north line on the map from any N-S and E-W grid line intersection using the protractor. Align the straight-edge of the compass along this magnetic north line and rotate the map and compass together until the north arrow falls beneath the fixed black index line on the compass.

**Evaluation Preparation:** **SETUP:** Select an area that is free of magnetic interference (parlance, vehicles). Provide a field table, 1:50,000 scale military map, a protractor, a pencil, paper and compass. **BRIEF SOLDIER.** Tell the soldier that he is to orient the map to the ground using the compass. Tell him he must use the G-M angle shown by the declination diagram if it exceeds 3 degrees (50 mils).

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Determine whether G-M angle exceeds 3 degrees (50 mils)	_____	_____
2. Aligns the side of the compass with one of the north-south grid lines.	_____	_____
3. Has the cover of the compass toward the top of the map.	_____	_____
4. Orients the map.	_____	_____
5. Corrects the orientations of the map when the G-M angle exceeds 3 degrees (50 mils) using one of the following.	_____	_____

**Performance Measures**

**GO**    **NO GO**

- a. G-M angle is formed by the compass's black index line and the compass needle.
- b. Use the pivot point "P" on the south neat line and the degrees of arc along the north neat line and places the compass along this line.
- c. Draws a magnetic north line from any N-S and E-W grid the intersection using a protractor and places the compass along this line.

NOTE: Steps 5 will only be required when G-M angle exceeds 3 degrees or 50 mils.  
Step 5b will only be tested if the map has the built-in protractor.

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any steps are failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Intersection**  
**071-329-1014**

**Performance Steps**

1. Use the map and compass method.

**Note:** The example map is not to scale, an easterly grid-magnetic (G-M) angle to 10 degrees is used in the examples.

- a. Determine the G-M angle of the map you are using.
  - b. Locate and mark your position on the map.
  - c. Convert the magnetic azimuth to the unknown point (22 degrees); change it to a grid azimuth. In the example, the G-M angle used was 10 degrees easterly, giving a grid azimuth of 32 degrees.
  - d. Place the protractor on the map, ensuring that the zero-degree indication on the protractor is pointing to the top of the map (north) and the index point is placed center of mass on your location. Place a tick mark at the number of degrees you want to plot. Draw a line on the map from your position on this grid azimuth (32 degrees).
  - e. Move to or call a second known position from which the unknown point can be seen. Locate this position on the map.
  - f. Repeat paragraphs c and d.
  - g. Where the lines cross is the location of the unknown point.
2. Use the straightedge method.
- a. See the task Orient a Map to the Ground by Map Terrain Association, task number 071-329-1012, Soldier's Training Publication (STP) 21-1-Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT).
  - b. Locate and mark your position on the map.
  - c. Lay a straightedge on the map with one end at user's position (A) as a pivot point, and rotate the straightedge until the unknown point is sighted along the edge.
  - d. Draw a line along the straightedge.
  - e. Repeat paragraphs b, c, and d at position (B) and, for check for accuracy, at a third position.
  - f. The intersection of the lines is the location of the unknown point (C).

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: In a field location, give the soldier a standard 1:50,000-scale military map of the area, a compass, a straightedge, a coordinate scale and a protractor, a pencil, an unknown point, and two points (at least 400 meters apart) from which to determine azimuths to the unknown point. Brief soldier: Tell the soldier he is to determine the six-digit grid coordinates of the unknown point.

**Performance Measures**

1. Determines the six-digit grid coordinates, to include the 100,000-meter square identifier of the unknown point within 100 meters.

GO    NO GO

—       —

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if the step is passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if the step is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
FM 3-25.26  
GTA 05-02-013  
STP 21-1-SMCT

**Related**

## Locate an Unknown Point on a Map and on the Ground by Resection

071-329-1015

**Conditions:** Given an unknown location, a standard 1:50,000 scale military map of the area, a compass, a straightedge, a coordinate scale and a protractor (GTA 5-2-12), a pencil, and two terrain features visible from your location and identifiable on the map.

**Standards:** Determined the 100,000 meter square identification letters and six-digit coordinates of your location to within 100 meters of the actual grid coordinates.

### Performance Steps

1. Use the map and compass method (Figure 1).

**NOTE: The example map is not scale, and easterly G-M angle of 10 degrees is used in the examples.**

- a. Determine the G-M angle of the map you are using.
- b. Locate two known positions on the ground and mark them on your map (A, Figure 1).
- c. Using your compass, measure the magnetic azimuth to one of the known locations; change it to a grid azimuth (B, Figure 1.)
  - (1) If it is a westerly G-M angle, subtract the number of degrees in the G-M angle from your magnetic azimuth.
  - (2) If it is an easterly G-M angle, add the number of degrees in the G-M angle to your magnetic azimuth.
- d. Change this grid azimuth to a back azimuth.
- e. Place the protractor on the map, ensuring that the zero degree indicator on the protractor is pointing to the top of the map (north), and the index point is placed center mass on this location. Place a tick mark at the number of degrees you want to plot. Remove the protractor from the map and draw a line on the map from this position on the grid back azimuth you found, in the direction of your unknown position.
- f. Repeat paragraphs c through e for a second (C, Figure 1, and third (D), Figure 1) known position.
- g. Where these lines cross is your location.

2. Perform resection without a compass (Figure 2).

- a. Orient your map as closely as you can using one of the ways you've learned about finding direction, compass sun, watch or stars. Then look for some feature, such a water tower (Figure 2, Point A), that you can also find on the map. Put a ruler or straightedge on the map, and place it next to the water tower symbol (Figure 2), Point B) on the map. Then align the straightedge so that it points directly at the real water tower. Draw a line along the straightedge or ruler (the line will cross the symbol for the water tower on your map).

**NOTE: Do not move your map once it is properly oriented.**

- b. Find another feature, such a road junction (Figure 3, point C), and do the same things. Lay the straightedge on your map and point it at the real road junction, ensuring at the same time that its edge crosses over the road junction. (Figure 3, Point D) on the map. Draw another line along the ruler until it crosses (interest) the first line. The point where the lines cross in your location. (Figure 3, Point X) if you do the same things with a third line, it may help location your position more accurately.

3. To perform modified resection you must be located on a linear, feature such as a road, stream bank, railroad or ridge. First orient your map, then find some feature that you can also find on the map, such as the water tower in the previous example. Just as before, put a straightedge through the water tower on the map and align the straightedge through so that it points directly at the real water tower. Draw a line along the ruler or straightedge. The point where the line crosses the linear feature, which you know you are on, is your location.

**NOTE: Always orient your map as closely as you can. The compass is the best way to do so. If you don't have a ruler, use your rifle cleaning rod or section of reaction of radio antenna as a**

**Performance Steps**  
**straightedge.**

**Evaluation Preparation:** **SETUP:** Give the soldier a standard 1:50,000 scale military map of the local area, a compass, a coordinate scale and a protractor (GTA 5-2-12), a pencil a straightedge, and the location of two known points.

**BRIEF SOLDIER:** Tell the soldier to determine the six-digit coordinates for his location.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<u><b>GO</b></u>	<u><b>NO GO</b></u>
1. Determined the six-digit grid coordinate and the 100,000 meter square identifier of his position (unknown point) within 100 meters.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all performance measures are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any performance measure is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show the soldier what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**  
FM 3-25.26

**Related**

## Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Mounted

071-329-1030

**Conditions:** Given a standard 1:50,000-scale topographic map of the area, a coordinate scale, a protractor, and a compass, while mounted in a vehicle with cross-country capability and tasked to move from a known start point to one or more distant points.

**Standards:** Direct the driver to the designated point(s) at a rate of 9 kilometers per hour using--

1. Terrain association.
2. Dead reckoning.

### Performance Steps

1. Determine the effects of terrain on the vehicle when navigating mounted.
  - a. Vehicle speed and mobility.
    - (1) Great distances may be covered quickly. Develop the ability to estimate the distance traveled. Meanwhile, use the odometer, which shows the distance traveled. Remember that .1 mile is roughly 160 meters, and 1 mile is about 1,600 meters or 1.6 kilometers.
    - (2) Mobility is an advantage while navigating. When disoriented, mobility makes it easier to move and reorient.
  - b. Vehicle capabilities.
    - (1) Most military vehicles can knock down a tree. Larger vehicles can clear more trees but cannot knock down several trees at once. Find paths between trees that are wide enough for the vehicle (Figure 1).

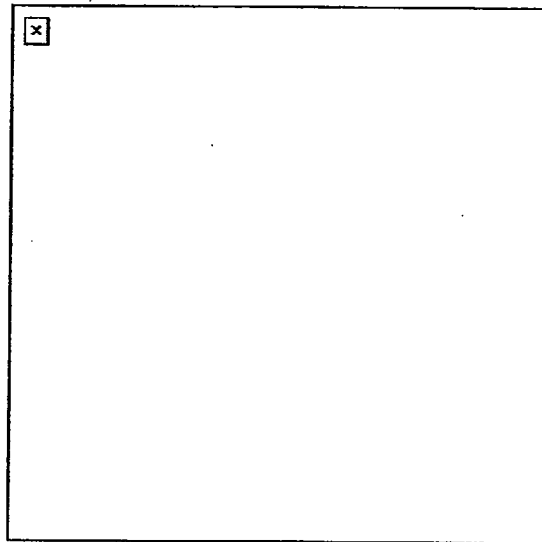


Figure 1. Vehicle capabilities.

### CAUTION

During training, follow installation standing operating procedure (SOP) or local guidelines concerning cross-country vehicle travel.

- (2) Military vehicles are designed to climb 60-percent (30-degree) slopes if the surface is dry and firm. If gravel, vegetation, or mud is on the slope, the practical slope-climbing capability is about 40 percent (20 degrees) (Figure 2).

## Performance Steps

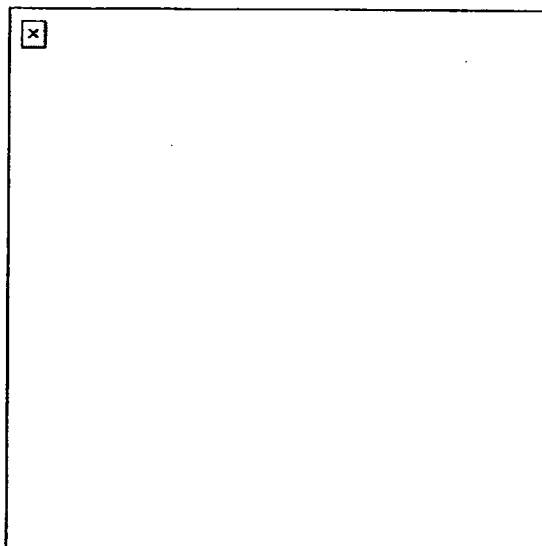


Figure 2. Climbing slope and side slope capabilities.

- (a) Determine the approximate slope by looking at the route selected on a map. One contour line in any 100 meters of map distance on that route indicates a 10-percent slope. Two contour lines indicate a 20-percent slope, and so forth. If there are four contour lines in 100 meters, look for another route.

**NOTE: The above figures are true for a 10-meter or 20-foot contour interval. If the map has a different contour interval, adjust the arithmetic. For instance, if there is one contour line in 100 meters, a 10-meter interval would give a 10-percent slope.**

- (b) The side slope is more important than the climbing slope. A 40-percent side slope is the maximum in good weather (Figure 2). Traverse a side slope slowly and without turning. Rocks, stumps, or sharp turns can cause a downhill track to be thrown under the vehicle, which is a major recovery task.
  - (3) For tactical reasons, movement is often in draws or valleys due to the cover they provide. Side slopes make slow movement necessary.
2. Know the effects of weather on vehicle movement.
    - a. Weather can halt mounted movement. Snow and ice are dangerous. Rain and snow affect soil load-bearing ability. Heavy rain may restrict cross-country vehicles to road movement.
    - b. Adjust the route to avoid flooded or muddy areas. A stuck vehicle hinders combat capability.
  3. Know both methods of navigation.
    - a. Terrain association. This is the most used method of navigation. The navigator plans the route for movement from one terrain feature to another. An automobile driver uses the same technique while driving along the streets in a city. He guides himself using intersections or other landmarks. Like a driver, the navigator selects routes, or "streets," between key points, or "intersections." These routes must sustain vehicle travel, and they should be as direct and easy to follow as possible. In a typical move, the navigator determines his location and the location of his objective. He notes the position of each on his map and selects a route between the two.
      - (1) Determine the start point and destination.
      - (2) Draw or visualize a straight line between the two points on the map.
      - (3) Inspect the terrain along that line for ease of movement, for features recognizable under predicted weather conditions, and for tactical considerations.
      - (4) After analyzing the terrain, adjust the route by doing the following:

### Performance Steps

- (a) Consider tactical aspects. Avoid skylining, select key terrain for overwatch positions, and select concealed routes.
- (b) Consider ease of movement. Use the easiest possible route. Bypass difficult terrain. A difficult route is hard to follow, noisier, causes more wear to the vehicle (and possibly recovery problems), and takes more time. Tactical surprise is achieved by doing the unexpected. Try to select an axis or corridor and not a specific route. Allow room for vehicles to maneuver.
- (c) Use terrain features as checkpoints. They must be easily recognizable under the current light and weather conditions and from a moving vehicle. The best checkpoints are linear features that cross the route. Use perennial streams, rivers, hard-top roads, ridges, valleys, and railroads. The next best are elevation changes; hills, depressions, spurs, and draws. Look for two contour lines of change. Less than two lines of change cannot be spotted while mounted.
- (d) Follow terrain features. Movement and navigation along a valley floor or near or on the crest of a ridgeline are easiest.
- (e) Determine directions. Break the route down into smaller segments and determine the rough direction that will be followed. The compass is not needed; use the main points of direction (north, northeast, east, for example). Before moving, note the location of the sun and the direction of north. Locate changes of direction, if any, at the checkpoints chosen.
- (f) Determine distance. Obtain the total distance to be traveled and the approximate distance between checkpoints. Plan to use the vehicle odometer to keep track of distance traveled.

**NOTE: Convert map distance to ground distance by adding 20 percent for cross-country movement.**

- (g) Make notes. Usually, mental notes are adequate. Imagine what the route will be like and remember it.
  - (h) Plan. Restudy the route selected. Determine where problems may occur and how they may be avoided.
- b. Dead reckoning. Dead reckoning means moving a set distance along a set line. It involves moving so many meters along a set line, usually an azimuth in degrees.

**NOTE: There is no accurate method of determining direction in vehicles. A magnetic vehicle-heading reference unit may be available in the future. For now, use a compass.**

- (1) Dead reckoning with steering marks. This procedure is the same for vehicle travel as it is on foot.
  - (a) Dismount from the vehicle.
  - (b) Move away from the vehicle (about 50 meters).
  - (c) Set the azimuth on the compass and choose a steering mark (rock, tree, hilltop) in the distance on that azimuth.
  - (d) Remount and have the driver identify the steering mark. Proceed to it in as straight a line as possible.
  - (e) On arrival at the steering mark or when direction is changed, repeat paragraphs (a) through (c) for the next leg of travel.
- (2) Dead reckoning without steering marks. This procedure is used only in flat, featureless terrain.
  - (a) Dismount from the vehicle, which has been positioned in the direction of travel. Move about 50 meters to the front of the vehicle.
  - (b) Face the vehicle and read the azimuth to the vehicle.
  - (c) By adding or subtracting 180 degrees, determine the forward azimuth (direction of travel).
  - (d) Have the driver drive on a straight line toward you.
  - (e) Remount the vehicle, hold the compass as it will be held while the vehicle is moving, and read the azimuth to the front.



**Performance Steps**

- (f) The compass swings off the azimuth determined, but it should pick up a constant deviation. For instance, the azimuth to the steering mark was 75 degrees while you were away from the vehicle. When you remounted, and the driver drove straight forward, the compass showed 67 degrees. There is a deviation of minus 8 degrees. All that is needed is to hold the 67-degree heading.
- (g) At night, do the same thing without a steering mark. From the map, determine the azimuth of travel. Line the vehicle up on that azimuth, then move well in front of the vehicle. Be sure it is aligned correctly. Mount, have the driver move slowly forward, and note the deviation.

**NOTE: If the vehicle has a turret, traversing the turret changes the deviation.**

- (3) Turret alignment. Another method, if the vehicle has a stabilized turret, is alignment of the turret on the azimuth to be traveled. Switch the turret stabilization system ON. The gun tube remains pointed at the destination no matter which way the vehicle is turned.

**CAUTION: If you have to take the turret off-line to engage a target, repeat the entire process.**

**NOTE: This technique works, and it is not harmful to the stabilization system. The vehicle is subject to stabilization drift, therefore, use this technique for no more than 5,000 meters before resetting.**

- (4) Distance factor. Computing the distance factor in dead reckoning is usually a simple process. Determine the map distance to travel and add 20 percent to convert to ground distance. Use the vehicle odometer to control the distance of travel.
4. Learn to combine and use both methods.
- a. Terrain association is fast and error-tolerant. It is the best method under most circumstances, and it can be used day or night.
  - b. Dead reckoning is accurate if done correctly -- precision is a requirement. Dead reckoning is slow, but works in flat terrain.
  - c. Often, dead reckoning and terrain association are combined. Use dead reckoning to travel across a large, flat area to a ridge. Use terrain association for the rest of the move.
  - d. The ability to use both methods is required. Probable errors, in order of frequency, are--
    - (1) Failure to determine distance(s) to be traveled.
    - (2) Failure to travel the proper distance.
    - (3) Failure to properly plot or locate the objective.
    - (4) Failure to select easily recognized checkpoints or landmarks.
    - (5) Failure to consider the ease of movement factor.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide the materials and equipment given in the task conditions statement. Select an area that has varying terrain and vegetation. The area must be large enough to have three to five points that are 1,000 to 5,000 meters apart. Each point is on or near an identifiable terrain feature and is marked on the ground with a sign containing a letter or number. Dummy signs are placed not less than 100 meters or more than 200 meters to the right and left of the correct point. Clearly mark all correct points on the map. Prepare a sheet of paper giving the azimuth and distance for each leg of the course. Have pencils available for the soldier.

**Brief Soldier:**

1. Terrain association. Give the soldier the map and tell him to direct the driver and vehicle over the course recorded on the map. Tell the soldier to record the letter or number at the end of each leg of the course. Tell the soldier the course will be covered using terrain association.
2. Dead reckoning with steering marks. Give the soldier a protractor, a compass, and a sheet of paper with the azimuth and distance for each leg of the course. Maps are not used. Tell the soldier to direct the driver and vehicle over the course recorded on the paper. Tell the soldier to record the letter or number at the end of each leg to the course. Tell him the course will be covered using steering marks.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Terrain association. Write the correct letter or number found at the end of each leg of the course.	_____	_____
2. Dead reckoning.	_____	_____
a. Move away from the vehicle.		
b. Set azimuth on compass and selects steering mark.		
c. Have the driver identify the steering mark.		
d. Write the correct letter or number found at the end of each leg of the course.		
e. Repeat steps in performance measure 2a, b, and c for each leg of the course.		

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any steps are failed. If the soldier fails any steps, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

References	Related
Required	FM 90-3

**Compute Back Azimuth**  
**071-510-0002**

**Conditions:** Given azimuths and a requirement to compute back azimuths.

**Standards:** Determine the back azimuth of a given azimuth to the exact degree or mils.

**Performance Steps**

1. Determine a back azimuth by using degrees. Suppose you follow a 65-degree azimuth from point A to point B and then want to go back to your original location. To do this, you use a back azimuth. You simply add 180 to the first azimuth. Your back azimuth is  $65 + 180 = 245$  degrees.
2. Determine a back azimuth by using mils. You move from point A to point B on an azimuth of 1,150 mils. Should you wish to return to point A, you would follow a back azimuth. To determine the back azimuth you simply add 3,200 mils to 1,150. Your back azimuth is  $3,200 + 1,150 = 4,350$ .

**Note:** The rule to remember to determine a back azimuth is:

1. In degrees: less than 180 degrees, add 180 degrees; more than 180 degrees, subtract 180 degrees.
2. In mils: less than 3,200 mils, add 3,200 mils; more than 3,200 mils, subtract 3,200 mils.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with azimuths, one in degrees and one in mils.  
Brief soldier: Tell the soldier to compute the exact back azimuths.

**Performance Measures**

1. Computes the exact back azimuth.

<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if the step is passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if the step is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
FM 3-25.26

**Related**

## Subject Area 11: Communications

**Use the KTC 1400(\*) Numerical Cipher/Authentication System**  
**113-573-4006**

**Performance Steps**

**SECURITY PRECAUTIONS:** Use of code sets. Each set of the KTC 1400(\*) is effective for 12 hours unless otherwise directed by the signal office. Encrypt no more than 15 characters with a single SET INDICATOR. If an entire message must be encrypted, use the operation code KTC 600(\*). Use only random letter combinations as SET INDICATORS. Variant letters are provided for each numeral. These should be used impartially and at random. **SECURITY PRECAUTIONS:** Each table has plain text numbers and letters after the 6th, 12th, and 18th lines. These are to ease operation. Do not use these as cipher values. In challenge and reply authentication, only the station responding is verified. Do not accept a challenge as an authentication. To verify both stations, both stations should be challenged and should reply. Another challenge should be made if an incorrect reply is received, if a "standby" is requested, or if an unusual delay occurs between challenge and reply. Never give the challenge and reply in the same transmission (self authentication).

1. Find the line for encryption.
    - a. Randomly select any two letters for SET INDICATOR (SI), (except Z).
    - b. Find the first letter of the SI in the LINE INDICATOR column.
    - c. Find the second SI letter.
    - d. Find the SET LETTER in the LINE INDICATOR column. This line will be used to encrypt up to 15 characters.
  2. Encrypt grid zone letters provided by the supervisor.
- NOTE:** Grid zone letters will be included in messages when they are necessary to the understanding of such messages. No other letters will be encrypted. If necessary to preclude misunderstanding, a statement may be made that grid zone letters are included in the message.
3. Encrypt numbers provided by the supervisor.
  4. Prepare for transmission.
  5. Decrypt grid zone letters and numbers.
  6. Perform challenge and reply authentication.
    - a. Challenge a station using authentication.
    - b. Reply to a station using authentication.
  7. Perform transmission authentication.

**Evaluation Preparation:****Performance Measures**

**SECURITY PRECAUTIONS:** Use of code sets. Each set of the KTC 1400(\*) is effective for 12 hours unless otherwise directed by the signal office. Encrypt no more than 15 characters with a single SET INDICATOR. If an entire message must be encrypted, use the operation code KTC 600(\*). Use only random letter combinations as SET INDICATORS. Variant letters are provided for each numeral. These should be used impartially and at random. Each table has plain text numbers and letters after the 6th, 12th, and 18th lines. These are to ease operation. Do not use these as cipher values. In challenge and reply authentication, only the station responding is verified. Do not accept a challenge as an authentication. To verify both stations, both stations should be challenged and should reply. Another challenge should be made if an incorrect reply is received, if a "standby" is requested, or if an unusual delay occurs between challenge and reply. Never give the challenge and reply in the same

**GO    NO GO**

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
transmission (self authentication).		
1. Find the line for encryption.	_____	_____
a. Randomly select any two letters for SET INDICATOR (SI), (except Z).		
b. Find the first letter of the SI in the LINE INDICATOR column.		
c. Find the second SI letter.		
d. Find the SET LETTER in the LINE INDICATOR column. This line will be used to encrypt up to 15 characters.		
2. Encrypt grid zone letters provided by the supervisor.	_____	_____
Note: Grid zone letters will be included in messages when they are necessary to the understanding of such messages. No other letters will be encrypted. If necessary to preclude misunderstanding, a statement may be made that grid zone letters are included in the message.		
3. Encrypt numbers provided by the supervisor.	_____	_____
4. Prepare for transmission.	_____	_____
5. Decrypt grid zone letters and numbers.	_____	_____
6. Perform challenge and reply authentication.	_____	_____
a. Challenge a station using authentication.		
b. Reply to a station using authentication.		
7. Perform transmission authentication.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show him what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

References	Related
Required	CE01
	CEOI
	KTC 1400D
	SS0470

## Recognize Electronic Attack (EA) and Implement Electronic Protection (EP)

113-573-6001

**Conditions:** Given a radio set, applicable operator's technical manual, Field Manual (FM) 24-1, FM 24-33, and unit signal operating instructions (SOI) extract or Data Transfer Device AN/CYZ-10 loaded with appropriate data.

**Standards:** Standards are met when you have determined that electronic warfare is directed at your station and electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM) are employed for continued operation.

### Performance Steps

1. Introduction. A close relationship exists between ECCM and communications security (COMSEC). Both defensive arts are based on the same principle. An enemy who does not have access to our essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) is a much less effective foe. The major goal of COMSEC is to ensure that friendly use of the electromagnetic spectrum for communications is by the enemy. The major goal of practicing sound ECCM techniques is to ensure the continued use of the electromagnetic spectrum. ECCM techniques are designed to ensure commanders some degree of confidence in the continued use of these techniques. Our objective must be to ensure that all communications equipment can be employed effectively by tactical commanders in spite of the enemy's concerted efforts to degrade such communications to the enemy's tactical advantage. The modification and the development of equipment to make our communications less susceptible to enemy exploitation are expensive processes. Equipment is being developed and fielded which will provide an answer to some of ECCM problems. Commanders, staff, planners, and operators remain responsible for security and continued operation of all communications equipment.
  - a. Operators of communications equipment must be taught what jamming and deception can do to communications. They must be made aware that incorrect operating procedures can jeopardize the unit's mission and ultimately increase unit casualties. Preventive and remedial ECCM techniques must be employed instinctively. Maintenance personnel must be made aware that unauthorized or improperly applied modifications may cause equipment to develop peculiar characteristics which can be readily identified by the enemy.
  - b. ECCM should be preventive in nature. ECCM should be planned and applied to force the enemy to commit more jamming, interception and deception resources to a target than it is worth, or is available. ECCM techniques must also be applied to force the enemy to doubt the effectiveness of the enemy's jamming and deception efforts.
  - c. Before we can begin to prevent electronic countermeasures (ECM), we must first be certain of what we are trying to prevent.
    - (1) Jamming is the deliberate radiation, reradiation, or reflection of electromagnetic energy with the object of impairing the use of electronic devices, equipment, or systems. The enemy conducts jamming operations against us to prevent us from effectively employing our radios, radars, navigational aids (NAVAIDS), satellites, and electro-optics. Obvious jamming is normally very simple to detect. The more commonly used jamming signals of this type are described below. Do not try to memorize them; just be aware that these and others exist. When experiencing a jamming incident, it is much more important to recognize it and take action to overcome it than to identify it formally.
      - (a) Random noise. It is random in amplitude and frequency. It is similar to normal background noise and can be used to degrade all types of signals.
      - (b) Stepped tones. These are tones transmitted in increasing and decreasing pitch. They resemble the sound of bagpipes.
      - (c) Spark. The spark is easily produced and is one of the most effective forms of jamming. Bursts are of short duration and high intensity. Sparks are repeated at a rapid rate and are effective in disrupting all types of communications.
      - (d) Gulls. The gull signal is generated by a quick rise and a slow fall of a variable radio frequency and is similar to the cry of a sea gull.

### Performance Steps

- (e) Random pulse. In this type of interference, pulses of varying amplitude, duration, and rate are generated and transmitted. Random pulses are used to disrupt teletypewriter, radar, and all types of data transmission systems.
  - (f) Wobbler. The wobbler is a single frequency which is modulated by a low and slowly varying tone. The result is a howling sound which causes a nuisance on voice radio communications.
  - (g) Recorded sounds. Any audible sound, especially of a variable nature, can be used to distract radio operators and disrupt communications. Examples of sounds include: music, screams, applause whistles, machinery noise, and laughter.
  - (h) Preamble jamming. This type of jamming occurs when the synchronization tone of speech security equipment is broadcast over the operating frequency of secure radio sets. Preamble jamming results in radios being locked in the receive mode. It is especially effective when employed against radio nets using speech security devices.
  - (i) Subtle jamming. This type of jamming is not obvious at all. With subtle jamming, no sound is heard from our receivers. They cannot receive incoming friendly signals, but everybody appears normal to the radio operator.
- (2) Meaconing. This is a system of receiving radio beacon signals from NAVAIDS and rebroadcasting them on the same frequency to confuse navigation. The enemy conducts meaconing operations against us to prevent our ships and aircraft from arriving at their intended targets or destinations.
  - (3) Intrusion. Intentional insertion of electromagnetic energy into transmission paths with the objective of deceiving equipment operators or causing confusion. The enemy conducts intrusion operations against us by inserting false information into our receiver paths. This false information may consist of voice instructions, ghost targets, coordinates for fire missions, or even rebroadcasting of prerecorded data transmissions.
  - (4) Interference. Interference is any electrical disturbance which causes undesirable responses in electronic equipment. As a meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion (MIJI) term, interference refers to the unintentional disruption of the use of radios, radars, NAVAIDS, satellites, and electro-optics. This interference may be of friendly, enemy, or atmospheric origin. For example, a civilian radio broadcast interrupting military communications is interference.
2. Communications Protective Measures.
- a. Considerations. Properly applied ECCM techniques will deny valuable intelligence sources to the enemy and eliminate much of the threat that he poses to our combat operations. The following discussion describes practical ways to protect communications systems.
  - b. The siting of the transmitting antenna is critical in the ECCM process. Before making a decision about a proposed site for either a single-channel or multichannel antenna, there are two basic questions to answer:
    - (1) Are communications possible from the proposed site?
    - (2) Are there enough natural obstacles between the site and the enemy to mask transmission?
  - c. The final decision on site selection will often be a tradeoff between the answers to these two questions. The communications mission must have first priority in determining the actual antenna sites. There are additional actions that must be taken to limit the enemy's chances of interception and location successes. Transmitters and antennas should be located away from the headquarters. The two locations should be separated by more than 1 kilometer (0.62 mile). Erroneous radio frequency direction (RFD) data used in conjunction with observation data may favor the targeting of a decoy site instead of the actual transmitter site. This ploy depends upon good camouflage at the actual site. Transmitters grouped in one area indicate the relative value of the headquarters. Directional antennas reduce radiation exposure to enemy receivers and enhance the intended signal. (For instruction on directional antennas, refer to TC 24-21.)
  - d. Use the lowest possible transmitter power output. Lower power means less radiated power reaches the enemy and thus increases his difficulty in applying ECM.

**Performance Steps**

- e. Use only approved code systems. Never use unauthorized (homemade) codes. Use of non-NSA generated codes can provide a false COMSEC sense of security that can be exploited by enemy radio intercept operators. Only when absolutely necessary should traffic be passed in the clear.
- f. Rather than assuming equipment is defective, assume that it is operational. Operators must not contact other stations for equipment checks simply because no message has been transmitted in a set time frame.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: A radio set operating in a radio net with interference applied to the system. Brief soldier. Tell the soldier to ensure that he is applying proper tactics to the jamming system.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Determine if ECM is being employed.	_____	_____
a. Check for accidental or unintentional interference. (Refer to FM 24-33.)		
b. Check for intentional interference. (Refer to FM 24-33.)		
2. Initiate operator's procedures. (Refer to FM 24-1 and FM 24-33.)	_____	_____
a. Check the equipment ground to ensure that the interference is not caused by a buildup of static electricity.		
b. Disconnect the antenna.		
c. Identify the type of sound.		
d. Move the receiver or reorient the antenna, if possible, and listen or look for variations in the strength of the disturbance.		
e. Tune the receiver above or below the normal frequency. If such detuning causes the intensity of the interfering signal to drop sharply, it can be assumed that the interference is the result of spot jamming.		
3. Identify jamming signals. (Refer to FM 24-33.)	_____	_____
4. Employ antijamming measures. (Refer to FM 24-1.)	_____	_____

NOTE: Antijamming measures are designed to allow radio operators to work effectively through intentional interference. Regardless of the nature of the interfering signal, radio operators WILL NOT reveal in the clear the possibility or success of enemy jamming.

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier fails any step, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly. Have the soldier practice until the task can be correctly performed.

**References**

Required	Related
FM 24-1	CEOI
FM 24-33	FM 24-18
UNIT SOI	IS3007
	IT0513
	TC 24-21



## Use an Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)

113-573-8006

**Conditions:** Given an SOI, KTV 1600, a radio, an operational radio net, scratch paper and a pencil.

**Standards:** This task has been performed correctly when the soldier does the following in 10 minutes. 1. Lists the item number of the SOI extract. 2. Lists a radio station call sign. 3. Lists a radio net frequency. 4. Lists an item number identifier. 5. Enters a radio net in which you do not normally operate. 6. Lists a challenge and reply authentication.

### Performance Steps

1. List an SOI Item number.
  - a. Get the SOI/extract for your unit.
  - b. Find the item number for the unit you want. See Figure 1. look down the left-hand column to find the unit (2ND, BDE, 1-80 IN BN). Then look immediately to the right of the unit to find the Item Number (8C).

**Multi Media Attached! Click here then press F9 to view.**

Figure 1

- c. Turn to the Item number page for the time period you are using. See Figure 2. The Item number is located at the upper and lower right of the page. The Time period is located at the top right of the page. Example: Time Period 01, Item number 8C.

**Multi Media Attached! Click here then press F9 to view.**

Figure 2

2. List a radio station call sign. See Figure 2.
  - a. Look down the left-hand column to find the unit. Example: Weapons platoon of Company C, 1-80 Infantry Battalion (WPNS/C/1-80)).
  - b. Then look immediately to the right of the unit to find the call sign (Z4N).
  - c. Find the suffix that designated the person or subordinate element of the unit by reading down the list of suffixes on the right side of the page and reading the two-digit suffix for that element. (The suffix for PLT LDR is 44). Add it to the previous call signs your found. You now have the five-character call sign for the element/person (Z4N44).
3. List a radio net frequency. See Figure 2. Look to the immediate right of your call sign. You now have the opening frequency of the weapons platoon (34.85MHz).
4. List an item number identifier.
  - a. With the item number for your unit (see paragraph 1,) turn to the Item Number Identifiers section of your SOI/extract. See Figure 3.

**Multi Media Attached! Click here then press F9 to view.**

Figure 3

- b. Find the column for the period you are in (Time period 01). The time periods 1-10 are the column heading across the top of the sheet.
  - c. Read down this time period column unit you find the Item Number for your unit. Example: The Item Number for 1-80/in BN is 8C.
  - d. Read the two-letter code in the left column opposite your unit Item Number (CF).
5. Enter a radio net in which you don not normally operate.
  - a. Turn to the Quick Ref Maj Subor Elms & CBT BNS items of your SOI/extract. There are two sets, one for call sign (Figure 4) and One for frequencies (Figure 5).

## Performance Steps

**Multi Media Attached! Click here then press F9 to view.**  
Figure 4

**Multi Media Attached! Click here then press F9 to view.**  
Figure 5

- b. Look down the left-hand column of the Call Signs set to find the unit (1-3 AR BN). Then look immediately to the right of the unit to find the call sign under the correct Time Period column. Example: 1-3 AR BN under Time Period 01, the call sign is X3W. See Figure 4.
- c. Turn to the Frequencies set and repeat the procedures to find the frequency of the battalion command net (1-3 AR BN, Time Period 01, 46.25MHz). See Figure 5.
- d. Set your radio to the frequency for the Net Control Station (NCS).
- e. Call the NCS and request permission to enter the net. Example: Call: X-RAY THREE WHISKEY ZERO EIGHT, THIS ZULU FOUR NOVEMBER FOUR, REFER TO CHARLIE FOXTROT. (CF is the Number Identifier for your unit). I HAVE TRAFFIC FOR X-RAY THREE WHISKEY EIGHT NINER. REQUEST PERMISSION TO ENTER YOUR NET. OVER.
- f. Give the correct reply when the NCS challenges. Example: (Challenge by the NCS.) ZULU FOUR NOVEMBER FOUR, THIS IS X-RAY THREE WHISKEY ZERO EIGHT. AUTHENTICATE CHARLIE HOTEL. OVER. (Reply by you or the caller). XRAY THREE WHISKY ZERO EIGHT, THIS IS ZULU FOUR NOVEMBER FOUR. I AUTHENTICATE LIMA. OVER.

**NOTE:** The station being called will make the first challenge. Both stations must find the correct reply so that the station being called can authenticate the reply by the calling station. If the called station does not respond to the challenge within a reasonable time, the station calling will require another authentication using different challenge. Either station can challenge the other if there is a reason to believe that the other station is not a friendly station.

- g. When the NCS grants permission to enter the net, find the call sign for the unit you want.
  - h. Call the unit you want and send your message.
  - i. After you finish sending your message, call the NCS and ask to leave the net. You should be required to authenticate.
6. List a challenge and reply authentication.
    - a. Get the KTC 1400 section of your SOI.
    - b. Turn to the Set (page) for the time period you are using (01). See Figure 6.

**Multi Media Attached! Click here then press F9 to view.**  
Figure 6

- c. The challenge is any two letters (except Z), selected at random. Example: "C H".
- d. Find the first letter of the challenge ("C") in the Line Indicator Column on the left of the page.
- e. Read to the right on that line to find the second letter ("H").
- f. Read the letter directly under the second letter ("L"). This is the correct reply to the challenge. If the first letter is "Y", go to the top of the sheet in the same column to find the reply. Example: For challenge "YR", the reply is "X".

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with an SOI KTV 1600D, KTC 1400 a radio, an operational radio net, scratch paper, and a pencil. Brief Soldier: Tell the soldier to perform each step correctly and to do it within a time limit of 10 minutes.

## Performance Measures

1. List the Item Number of the SOI extract.
2. List a radio net frequency.

<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
3. List a radio station call sign.	_____	_____
4. List an item number identifier.	_____	_____
5. Enter a radio net in which you do not normally operate.	_____	_____
6. List a challenge and reply authentication.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier fails any step, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
FM 24-35  
FM 24-35-1  
UNIT SOI

**Related**

## Operate SINGARS Single-Channel (SC)

113-587-2070

**Conditions:** Given an operational SINGARS, KYK-13/TSEC with keys or AN/CYZ-10, distant station, TM 11-5820-890-10-8, TM 11-5820-890-10-3, ACP 125 US Suppl-1, DA Pam 738-750, FM 24-19, FM 24-18, and unit SOI or ANCD w/SOI data loaded.

**Standards:** The standards are met when a secure communications check is conducted in SC mode with a distant station.

### Performance Steps

1. Perform starting procedures.
  - 1.
2. Load traffic encryption key (TEK).
3. Enter net.
  - a. Use correct procedures.
  - b. Conduct secure communications check.
4. Prepare control monitor for operation.
5. Change radio functions using the control monitor.
6. Exit net.
7. Perform stopping procedures.

### Performance Measures

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Perform starting procedures.	—	—
2. Load traffic encryption key (TEK).	—	—
3. Enter net.	—	—
a. Use correct procedures.		
b. Conduct secure communications check.		
4. Exit net.	—	—
5. Perform stopping procedures.	—	—
6. Exited the net.	—	—
7. Performed stopping procedures.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier fails any step, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly. Have the soldier practice until the task can be performed correctly.

**References**

**Required**

ACP 125 US SUPPL-1  
DA PAM 738-750  
FM 24-18  
FM 24-19  
TM 11-5820-890-10-1  
TM 11-5820-890-10-3  
TM 11-5820-890-10-8

**Related**

**Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members)**  
**113-587-2071**

**Conditions:** Given an operational SINCGARS radio, ECCM fill device with FH data, KYK-13/TSEC with keys, C-11291 CM, distant net control station (NCS), unit SOI, DA Form 2404, TM 11-5820-890-10-8, TM 11-5820-890-10-3, TM 11-5820-890-10-1, ACP 125 US Suppl-1, DA Pam 738-750, FM 24-19, and FM 24-18.

**Standards:** The standards are met when FH communications is established using the cold start and CUE late net entry methods, the radio check is successfully completed, and the radio functions are changed using the CM.

**Performance Steps**

1. Perform starting procedures. (Set radio to PLGR (AN/PSN-11) time)
2. Perform net member cold start procedures.
  - a. Use correct call signs.
  - b. Use correct procedures.
3. Perform net member CUE late net entry.
  - a. Use correct call signs.
  - b. Use correct procedures.
4. Prepare control monitor for operation.
5. Change radio functions using the control monitor.
6. Perform stopping procedures.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Ensure radio set is complete and operational with CM installed on radio set.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier all performance measures must be completed correctly within 20 minutes. All performance measures must be done in sequence.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Performed starting procedures. (Set Radio to PLGR (PSN-11) time).	_____	_____
2. Performed net member cold start procedures.	_____	_____
3. Performed net member CUE late net entry.	_____	_____
4. Prepared control monitor for operation.	_____	_____
5. Changed radio functions using the control monitor.	_____	_____
6. Performed stopping procedures.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier fails any step, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly. Have the soldier practice until he can correctly perform the task.

References	
<b>Required</b>	<b>Related</b>
ACP 125 US SUPPL-1	
DA FORM 2404	
DA PAM 738-750	

**References**

**Required**

FM 24-18

FM 24-19

TM 11-5820-890-10-1

TM 11-5820-890-10-3

TM 11-5820-890-10-8

**Related**

**Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) Net Control Station (NCS)**  
**113-587-2072**

**Conditions:** Given an operational SINCGARS, ECCM fill device with FH data, KYK-13/TSEC with keys, distant stations, TM 11-5820-890-10-1, TM 11-5820-890-10-3, ACP 125 US Suppl-1, DA Pam 738-750, FM 24-19, FM 24-18, and unit SOI.

**Standards:** The standards are met when an operational message is sent and received in the FH mode using the cold start and CUE late net entry procedures.

**Performance Steps**

1. Perform starting procedures. (Set Radio to PLGR (AN/PSN-11) time).
2. Perform NCS permission checks.
3. Perform NCS cold start net opening.
  - a. Use correct call signs.
  - b. Conduct FH communications.
4. Perform NCS CUE late net entry.
  - a. Use correct call signs.
  - b. Conduct FH communications.
5. Perform stopping procedures.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Performed starting procedures. (Set radio to PLGR (AN/PSN-11) time).	_____	_____
2. Performed NCS permission checks.	_____	_____
3. Performed NCS cold start net opening.	_____	_____
4. Performed NCS CUE late net entry.	_____	_____
5. Performed stopping procedures.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier fails any step, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly. Have the soldier practice until he can correctly perform the task.

**References**

**Required**

ACP 125 US SUPPL-1  
DA PAM 738-750  
FM 24-18  
FM 24-19  
TM 11-5820-890-10-1  
TM 11-5820-890-10-3

**Related**

TM 11-5820-890-10-8



**Operate Switchboard, Telephone, Manual SB-22/PT  
113-594-2014**

**Conditions:** This task is performed in a tactical or non-tactical situation, in all weather conditions, and may be performed in an nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) environment. Given a switchboard SB-22/PT, prepared traffic diagram, incoming calls to answer, TM 11-5805-201-12, battery BA-30 (four each), sledgehammer and shovel, ground rod MX-148/G with ground strap, field wire lines (from terminal equipment), tool kit TE-33, cleaning brush, pencil, Department of the Army (DA) Form 2404 (equipment inspection and maintenance worksheet), DA Pamphlet (Pam) 738-750.

**Standards:** Standard is met when switchboard is installed, local, trunk, and conference calls are processed, and preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) is performed in accordance with (IAW) Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-262-12, Allied Communications Publication (ACP) 134, chapters 2 and 3, and DA Pam 738-750.

**Performance Steps**

1. Install switchboard. (Refer to TM 11-5805-262-12, para 2/3 thru 2-9)

2. Perform PMCS. (Refer to TM 11-5805-262-12, para 3-3)

**Note:** Refer to TM 11-5805-262-12, para 3-5 thru 3-11 for steps 3-9.

3. Perform preliminary operating procedures.

4. Connect local calls.

5. Connect outgoing trunk calls.

6. Connect incoming trunk calls.

7. Perform recall procedures on local calls.

8. Perform recall procedures on trunk calls.

9. Connect conference calls.

**Performance Measures**

1. Installed switchboard.
2. Performed PMCS.
3. Performed preliminary operating procedures.
4. Connected local calls..
5. Connected outgoing trunk calls.
6. Connected incoming trunk calls.
7. Performed recall procedures on local calls.
8. Performed recall procedures on trunk calls.
9. Connected conference calls.

<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier fails any step, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.

STP 19-95C1-SM

**References**

**Required**

DA PAM 738-750

TM 11-5805-262-12

**Related**

**Install Antenna Group OE-254/GRC (Team Method)**  
**113-596-1068**

**Conditions:** Given antenna group OE-254/GRC, two persons for erecting the antenna, frequency modulation (FM) radio set (installed), Department of the Army (DA) Pamphlet (Pam) 738-750, and Technical Manual (TM) 11-5985-357-13. This task is performed in a tactical or nontactical situation.

**Standards:** The standards are met when the OE-254/GRC is installed and connected to the frequency modulated (FM) radio set, and preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) are performed in accordance with (IAW) TM 11-5985-357-13 and DA Pam 738-750 within 25 minutes.

<b>Performance Measures</b> (Refer to TM 11-5985-357-13 for all performance measures.)	<u><b>GO</b></u>	<u><b>NO GO</b></u>
1. Perform PMCS.	___	___
2. Plan antenna installation site.	___	___
3. Position baseplate and guy stakes.	___	___
4. Assemble antenna equipment.	___	___
5. Erect antenna using two persons.	___	___
6. Connect the CG-1889B/U connector to the radio.	___	___

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed. Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed. If the soldier fails any step, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly. Have the soldier practice until he can correctly perform the task.

<b>References</b>	
<b>Required</b>	<b>Related</b>
DA PAM 738-750	FM 24-18
TM 11-5985-357-13	GTA 11-03-020
	TB 43-0129

Install Telephone Set TA-312/PT  
113-600-1012

**Conditions:** Given telephone set TA-312/PT; battery BA-30 or BA-3030, two each; tool equipment TE-33; installed telephone cable WD-1( )/TT; tags; grease pencil; Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-201-12, and Training Circular (TC) 24-20.

**Standards:** The standards are met when the telephone set is installed and communications is established.

Performance Steps

- 1. Install the TA-312/PT on a desk, pole, or tree.
- 2. Set selector switch for proper service.
- 3. Connect telephone cable to the TA-312/PT.
- 4. Install power source.
- 5. Connect external headset when required.
- 6. Install/remove deicing screen when required.
- 7. Establish communications.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Ensure the telephone cable is laid. Brief soldier: Tell the soldier he must complete an outgoing call.

Performance Measures

(Refer to TM 11-5805-201-12 for performance measures (PMs) 1 through 7.)

	GO	NO GO
1. Install the TA-312/PT on a desk, pole, or tree.	_____	_____
2. Set selector switch for proper service.	_____	_____
3. Connect telephone cable to the TA-312/PT.	_____	_____
4. Install power source.	_____	_____
a. Connect external batteries when required.		
b. Install batteries in telephone set.		
NOTE: PMs 4a and 5 may be used if the telephone operator must have his hand free during operation.		
5. Connect external headset, when required.	_____	_____
6. Install/remove deicing screen when required.	_____	_____
7. Establish communications.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier a GO if all PMs are passed. Score the soldier a NO-GO if communications is not established. If the soldier fails any PM, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly. Have the soldier perform the PMs until they are done correctly.

References

Required  
TC 24-20  
TM 11-5805-201-12

Related  
SS0411

STP 19-95C1-SM

3 - 259 7640

**Perform Unit Level Maintenance (ULM) on Telephone Set TA-312/PT  
113-600-3017**

**Conditions:** Given telephone set TA-312/PT, battery BA-30 (two each), tool equipment TE-33, lint-free cloth and brush, cleaning compound trichlorotrifluoroethane, Department of the Army (DA) Form 2404, DA Form 2408-14, Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-201-12, and DA Pamphlet (Pam) 738-750.

**Standards:** The standards are met when ULM is performed and DA Form 2404 and DA Form 2408-14 are completed; or the defective telephone set is evacuated to a higher maintenance level.

**Performance Steps**

1. Initiate DA Form 2404.
2. Perform routine checks. (Refer to TM 11-5805-210-12.)
3. Check telephone set TA-312/PT.
4. Check case, telephone set.
5. Check handset.
6. Complete DA Forms 2404 and 2408-14. (Refer to DA Pam 738-750.)

**Performance Measures**

**WARNING:** Trichlorotrifluoroethane fumes are toxic. Provide ventilation whenever it is used.

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Initiate DA Form 2404.	_____	_____
2. Perform routine checks. (Refer to TM 11-5805-201-12.)	_____	_____
a. Clean, dust, and wash.		
b. Check for frayed cables.		
c. Store unused items.		
d. Cover unused receptacles.		
e. Check for loose nuts, bolts, and screws.		
3. Check telephone set TA-312/PT.	_____	_____
a. Batteries.		
b. Binding posts.		
c. Battery compartment.		
4. Check case, telephone set.	_____	_____
5. Check handset.	_____	_____
6. Complete DA Forms 2404 and 2408-14. (Refer to DA Pam 738-750.)	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier a GO if all performance measures (PMs) are passed. Score the soldier a NO-GO if any of PMs 2 through 5 are failed. If the soldier fails any PM, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly. Have the soldier perform the PMs until they are done correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
DA FORM 2404  
DA FORM 2408-14  
DA PAM 738-750

**Related**  
SS0411

**References**

**Required**

TM 11-5805-201-12

**Related**

Subject Area 12: Maneuver and Mobility Support Operations

**Operate a Traffic Control Post (TCP)**

**191-376-4105**

**Conditions:** You are assigned to operate a traffic control plan (TCP). You are given orders; a combat load according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOPs); a copy of the traffic circulation plan; a flashlight and a white cone with a filtered lens (and a red lens, if required by the tactical situation); white cuffs with light-reflecting stripes parallel to the arm; other reflectorized gear; a first aid kit with insect repellent; maps with overlays of the area, to include refugee control lines (boundaries) and guide signs according to Standardization Agreement (STANAG) 2019; communications equipment; signal operating instructions (SOI) and call signs for the day; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) monitoring equipment; NBC signs; hygiene supplies; paper; and a pencil.

**Standards:** Perform the necessary steps to expedite priority traffic, ensure traffic moves according to the traffic control plan, and enforce main supply route (MSR) regulations.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** When mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC) factors permit a TCP to be manned by one three-man team, the team leader is in charge of the operation. The second team member provides security (the team leader and the military police [MP] providing security usually occupy the fighting position) and relieves the third team member. The third team member watches the flow of traffic from a covered and concealed location near the road and moves to the center of the road to direct traffic flow whenever heavy traffic slows movement.

**DANGER: ALWAYS BE ALERT TO THE POSSIBILITY OF AN ENEMY ATTACK WHEN IN A COMBAT ENVIRONMENT.**

1. Establish the TCP as directed by the team leader.
  - a. Park the vehicle in a covered and concealed position. Camouflage the vehicle, if required.
  - b. Establish fields of fire.
  - c. Emplace the crew-served weapon in a fighting position. Refer to Task 071-326-5703.
  - d. Establish communications with your parent unit, mobile patrols, other TCPs, and the highway traffic division (HTD).
  - e. Maintain the duty routine established by the team leader.
2. Remain alert for enemy activity.
3. Report information about friendly and/or enemy units moving in the area. Information on may include—
  - a. TCP locations.
  - b. Enemy locations.
  - c. Conditions which require changes in routes, such as NBC attacks in the area.
  - d. Unusual movement or activities by civilians in the area.
4. Provide information to convoy personnel, other friendly personnel (on identification) using the main supply route (MSR) and requiring a need to know, and the parent unit. Include information such as—
  - a. Route conditions.
  - b. Unit locations.
  - c. Enemy activity in the area.
  - d. Contaminated areas.
  - e. Critical points.
  - f. Holding areas.
  - g. Medical facilities.
  - h. Petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) points.



**Performance Steps**

**NOTE: Use operations security (OPSEC) to prevent the enemy from getting information.**

5. Control vehicle movement according to the traffic control plan.
  - a. Be familiar with authorized routes, the MSR, and terrain features.
  - b. Expedite priority traffic.
  - c. Reroute traffic as needed.
  - d. Observe movements and report problems.
  - e. Use hand-and-arm signals. Refer to Task 071-326-0608.
  - f. Use flashlight signals. Refer to Task 071-326-0608.
  - g. Enforce the MSR regulations.
    - (1) Stop vehicles or convoys that are not following MSR regulations.
    - (2) Tell the convoy commander why the convoy was stopped.
    - (3) Allow the convoy commander to make immediate corrections.
    - (4) Record key information about the incident, and notify your squad leader when immediate corrections cannot be made.
6. Keep a record of convoys passing the TCP (when requested to do so by the HTD), and compile the information into a passing report according to the unit SOP. Ensure that this information includes the—
  - a. TCP location.
  - b. Date.
  - c. Convoy identification (unit or serial number).
  - d. Time the first vehicle passed the TCP.
  - e. Time the last vehicle passed the TCP.
  - f. Number of vehicles in the convoy.
7. Observe activity by guerrillas, conventional enemy forces, and enemy aircraft and develop a spot report (SPOTREP). Use the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) as a memory device to ensure that key information needed by higher headquarters is not omitted from the report.

S = What was the SIZE of the enemy force?

A = What ACTIVITY were they engaged in?

L = What is the LOCATION of the enemy?

U = What type of UNIT was seen?

T = What TIME was the enemy seen?

E = What EQUIPMENT were they carrying?

**NOTE: Drivers using the MSR may stop at the TCP to report suspected or actual enemy activity along the MSR.**

8. Relay the SPOTREP through the chain of command. Refer to Task 113-571-1016.
9. Control stragglers. Determine the categories of the stragglers, such as the injured, uninjured, and personnel avoiding return to their unit.
  - a. Direct stragglers to their unit or to a straggler collecting point.
  - b. Arrange for transportation, if available.
  - c. Administer first aid.
  - d. Place stragglers in medical channels if they are seriously wounded.
10. Control refugees.
  - a. Do not allow refugees to delay authorized military traffic.
    - (1) Redirect them to a refugee control route.
    - (2) Halt refugees temporarily until the MSR is open.
  - b. Redirect refugees to collecting points, assembly areas, refugee camps, or evacuation routes.
  - c. Enforce stand-fast orders.
  - d. Prevent unneeded movement.

**Performance Steps**

11. Monitor the area for NBC contamination. If contamination is detected—
  - a. Take immediate protective measures. Refer to Tasks 031-503-1018 and 031-503-1019.
  - b. Mark the contaminated area. Refer to Task 031-503-1020.
  - c. Request instructions for moving traffic out of and around the contaminated area.
12. Operate the TCP until told to stop. If operating for extended periods of time, sleep in shifts.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Use an intersection and vehicles with drivers to simulate convoys. Include a list of priority traffic. Have two soldiers dress in civilian clothing and provide them with civilian travel papers.

Brief soldier: Tell the role-players the actions and/or responses to make.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Established the TCP as directed by the team leader.	—	—
2. Remained alert for enemy activity.	—	—
3. Reported information about friendly and/or enemy units moving in the area.	—	—
4. Provided information to convoy personnel, other friendly personnel (on identification) who were using the MSR and requiring a need to know, and the parent unit.	—	—
5. Controlled vehicle movement according to the traffic control plan.	—	—
6. Kept a record of convoys passing the TCP (when requested to do so by the HTD) and compiled the information into a passing report according to the unit SOP.	—	—
7. Observed activity by guerillas, conventional enemy forces, and enemy aircraft and developed a SPOTREP.	—	—
8. Relayed the SPOTREP through the chain of command.	—	—
9. Controlled stragglers and placed them in categories of stragglers.	—	—
10. Controlled refugees.	—	—
11. Monitored the area for NBC contamination.	—	—
12. Operated the TCP until told to stop.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

Required  
STANAG 2019

**Related**

## Operate a Roadblock and a Checkpoint

**191-376-4106**

**Conditions:** You are assigned to operate a roadblock and a checkpoint. You are given orders, a combat load according to standing operating procedures (SOPs), additional team members, guide signs, obstacles, a flashlight with a cone and/or a filtered lens, and reflectorized gear.

**Standards:** Perform all the necessary steps to correctly operate a roadblock and a checkpoint according to the particular situation and orders.

### Performance Steps

1. Establish a roadblock according to the team leader's instructions. Refer to Figure 191-376-4106-1.

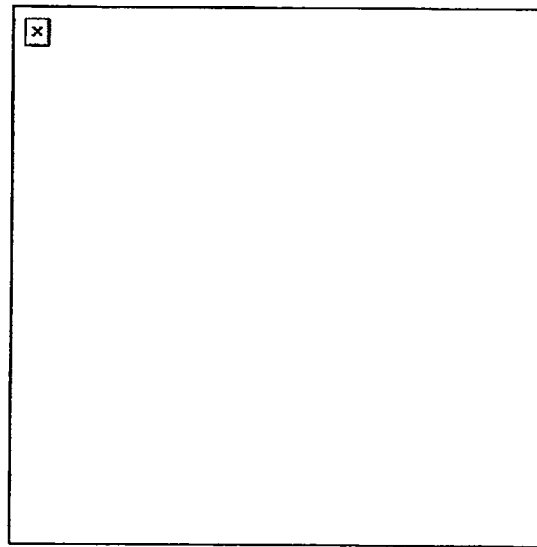


Figure 191-376-4106-1  
Roadblock and Checkpoint Operations

**NOTE:** Roadblocks may be used alone to limit the movement of vehicles along a route or to close access to certain areas.

- a. Emplace the crew-served weapon as directed.
  - b. Place the barricade across the road, on the shoulder of the road, in ditches, and/or in any area that could be used to avoid or bypass the roadblock.
  - c. Camouflage the weapon as directed by the team leader (when natural cover and concealment is not available).
  - d. Position the team vehicle. Camouflage the vehicle as directed when natural cover and concealment are not available.
  - e. Observe the noise, light, litter, and movement discipline.
2. Operate the roadblock.
    - a. Operate a crew-served weapon to provide security for the roadblock, if assigned the security position.
    - b. Direct traffic.
      - (1) Use hand-and-arm and flashlight signals.
      - (2) Direct drivers to the correct route.
      - (3) Provide information when necessary.
      - (4) Observe noise, light, litter, and movement discipline.
    - c. Direct traffic to the checkpoint (if a roadblock is used with a checkpoint).

**Performance Steps**

3. Establish a checkpoint, if required.
  - a. Emplace the crew-served weapon according to the team leader's instructions.
  - b. Set up the barricade following the team leader's instructions.
  - c. Prepare and post signs along the route, according to the team leader's instructions to show that military police (MP) checkpoints are in use.
  - d. Observe light discipline if the checkpoint is used at night.
4. Establish a holding area, if required. Refer to Task 191-376-4109.
5. Operate a checkpoint at the entrance to a controlled route or main supply route (MSR).
  - a. Operate the crew-served weapon and provide overwatch for the MP in the road (if assigned a security position).
  - b. Check or direct traffic.
    - (1) Check convoy vehicles for movement credits issued by the highway traffic division (HTD).
      - (a) Ensure that vehicles travel on the correct route and at the correct time.
      - (b) Instruct the drivers or convoy commanders, if ahead of schedule, to pull the vehicles into the holding area until it is time to pass.
      - (c) Allow the vehicles and convoys, if behind time, to pass (as traffic permits).
    - (2) Direct lost or misrouted drivers who are lost to their destination.
    - (3) Provide information.
    - (4) Be suspicious of military equipment, supplies, or weapons transported in civilian vehicles.
    - (5) Report any problems to the supervisor.
6. Operate a checkpoint that is located along a route. If you are assigned the—
  - a. Security position, repeat step 5a.
  - b. Position of checking traffic—
    - (1) Check vehicles and individuals for contraband.
    - (2) Be suspicious of military equipment, supplies, or weapons transported in civilian vehicles.
    - (3) Check the cargo against the manifest to ensure that they match.
    - (4) Report any problems to the team leader.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: To evaluate this task, develop a training exercise using the three-member team concept. Two Skill Level 1 soldiers can be evaluated at a time. Provide all required materials, personnel, and equipment listed in the conditions statement.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier that he will install and remove equipment for each position. Also tell him that a roadblock may be operated separately or with a checkpoint. Whatever the case, the team leader or squad leader will select the location and direct team members in establishing and operating both the roadblock and the checkpoint.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Established a roadblock according to the team leader's instructions.	___	___
2. Operated the roadblock.	___	___
3. Established a checkpoint.	___	___
4. Established a holding area, if required.	___	___
5. Operated a checkpoint at the entrance to a controlled route or MSR.	___	___

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

**References  
Required**

**Related  
FM 19-25**

**Operate a Dismount Point**  
**191-376-4108**

**Conditions:** You are assigned to operate a dismount point. You are given orders, unit standing operating procedures (SOPs), an access roster, a crew-served weapon, an individual weapon, ammunition, communications equipment (primary and backup), a flashlight with a filtered lens, night-vision devices, signs, and instructions from the team leader.

**Standards:** Perform all the necessary steps to ensure that only authorized personnel enter the command post (CP) area.

**Performance Steps**

1. Establish a defensive position as directed.
  - a. Establish fields of fire.
  - b. Emplace the crew-served weapon.
  - c. Maintain the routine duty assigned by the team leader.
  - d. Pay particular attention to cover and concealment, noise, light, litter, and movement discipline.
2. Set up communications as directed.
3. Mark the light line according to the team leader's instructions.
4. Operate the dismount point.
  - a. Use hand-and-arm and flashlight signals.
  - b. Stop vehicles at the dismount point.
  - c. Check the access roster, vehicle, and personnel identification to determine access clearance to the CP area.
    - (1) Direct the driver to the parking area if only personnel are authorized.
    - (2) Detain the vehicle and personnel if neither are authorized access, and notify a superior for guidance on further actions.

**NOTE:** Inspect packages, briefcases, and vehicle loads entering the area if required by the unit SOP.

- d. Provide information to personnel entering the CP area, to include the locations of other facilities, if required.
- e. Brief personnel on any recent enemy activity in the area of the CP.
- f. Ensure that operations security (OPSEC) procedures are enforced.
  - (1) Enforce light, noise, litter, and movement discipline.
  - (2) Ensure that the vehicles in the parking area are camouflaged.
- g. Prevent civilian traffic and refugees from entering the area by directing them to a new route.
- h. Control stragglers by giving directions, providing medical care, or detaining them for further disposition.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Because you will need a dismount point to evaluate this task, it is best to do it during a training exercise. Have another soldier role-play as the Skill Level 2 team leader. Evaluate two soldiers at a time. Give each soldier the opportunity to work at each position (one operating the M249 and the other directing traffic) so that you can evaluate each one on all performance measures. You will also need extra personnel, fully equipped, to provide traffic control at the dismount point. Provide all materials and equipment listed in the conditions statement.

**Brief soldier:** Tell soldiers that they will be expected to install and remove equipment for each position and that they should take the necessary steps to control traffic. Brief the role-players on the actions they are to take.

**Performance Measures**

1. Established a defensive position as directed.

<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
—	—

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
2. Set up communications as directed.	_____	_____
3. Marked the light line according to the team leader's instructions.	_____	_____
4. Operated the dismount point.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

<b>References</b>	<b>Related</b>
Required	FM 19-25

## Control Traffic at a Defile and Holding Area

191-376-4109

**Conditions:** You are given a situation that requires a defile operation, orders, individual- and crew-served weapons, ammunition, route-signing materials and equipment, a flashlight with a filtered lens, a TA-312 telephone or radio, and flags or other signaling devices.

**Standards:** Complete the necessary steps to ensure that traffic moves through the defile smoothly and quickly.

### Performance Steps

1. Establish security and assume the security position.
    - a. Emplace, cover, and conceal the crew-served weapon.
    - b. Provide security to the assigned area.
    - c. Establish communications.
  2. Post temporary signs. Ensure that the signs—
    - a. Mark alternate or bypass routes.
    - b. Designate the direction of traffic movement.
    - c. Designate the entrance and exits to the holding areas.
  3. Control the traffic flow according to the control plan.
    - a. Direct drivers into a holding area.
      - (1) Direct drivers and convoy commanders to park so that the first vehicle in will be the first vehicle out.
      - (2) Direct the drivers and the convoy commanders to park facing the exit.
    - b. Direct drivers out of the holding area into the defile in a single file.
      - (1) Permit vehicles to enter the defile on command only.
      - (2) Space vehicles entering the defile to avoid bunching.
      - (3) Use directional signs within the holding area to control traffic.
  4. Maintain communications between the entry and exit of the defiles and holding areas using the following modes:
    - a. Visual. Use hand-and-arm signals.
    - b. Radio or wire. Use the field phone TA-312 or radio.
    - c. A military police (MP) rider. MP ride the last vehicle in the column moving to the end of the defile. He dismounts and returns on the last vehicle of the column going the opposite direction.
    - d. Lead or trail. Have an MP vehicle lead or follow the column to the other end of the defile. Use this method when movement through a defile is complex and requires an escort.
- NOTE: The trail vehicle ensures that all vehicles clear the defile. Also, a single lead or a single trail vehicle can be used, depending on the number of vehicles and the complexity of the defile.**
- e. Flag. Take a flag from one end of the defile to the other by the last vehicle of the convoy.
5. Clear the defile, if the vehicle breaks down, using either field expedient methods or a recovery vehicle.
6. Notify the team and/or squad leader if there are problems.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide an area for a defile, vehicles with drivers to simulate traffic moving through the defile, and all materials and equipment necessary to operate the defile. The circumstances, which necessitate the defile and the size of the defile operation, will dictate the number of personnel required and the type of signals to be used. Use a three-member team so that you can evaluate two Skill Level 1 soldiers at a time. Have both soldiers work at each position in order to evaluate each soldier on all performance measures. Have another soldier role-play as role of the Skill Level 2 team leader.



Brief soldier: Tell the soldiers that they must take the necessary steps to correctly control traffic at each assigned position. Tell them they must also install and remove equipment at each position. Tell the role-player the actions he is to take.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Established security and assumed the security position.	—	—
2. Posted temporary signs.	—	—
3. Controlled the traffic flow according to the control plan.	—	—
4. Maintained communications between the entry and exit of the defiles and holding areas.	—	—
5. Cleared the defile using either field expedient methods or a recovery vehicle.	—	—
6. Notified the team and/or squad leader if there were problems.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

<b>References</b>	<b>Related</b>
<b>Required</b>	<b>FM 19-25</b>

## Perform as a Member of an In-Transit Security Team

191-376-4110

**Conditions:** You are required to escort personnel and provide them with protective equipment, to include a flak vest, a helmet, protective clothing, and a protective mask. As a member of a scout team, lead team, or trail team, you are given a high-mobility, multipurpose, wheeled vehicle (HMMWV) with a mounted radio, individual- and crew-served weapons, ammunition, a helmet, load-bearing equipment, a protective mask, a portable Single-Channel, Ground-to-Air Radio System (SINCGARS), and first aid equipment.

**Standards:** Provide the required security for the designated personnel from the point of origin to the destination.

### Performance Steps

1. Provide in-transit security for a land convoy.

- a. Use the following methods of escort, as directed by the team or squad leader:

**NOTE: Whenever possible, three teams will provide security. They will be briefed on which team they will be a member of and the role they will fill with the team.**

- (1) Scout team. If a member of the scout team—
      - (a) Precede the main body of the convoy by 3 to 5 minutes.
      - (b) Watch for conditions that may affect the convoy's security.
      - (c) Maintain an appropriate distance from the convoy's main body.
      - (d) Maintain radio contact and report all findings to the military police (MP) security force noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).
    - (2) Lead team. If a member of the lead team (usually the squad leader or NCOIC's team)—
      - (a) Lead the convoy and provide security for the convoy's lead elements.
      - (b) Closely observe the roadway and nearby terrain.
      - (c) Provide fire support in the event of an ambush or a sniper attack.
      - (d) Maintain the rate of march.
    - (3) Trail team. If a member of the trail team—
      - (a) Provide security for the convoy's rear elements.
      - (b) Keep close watch on the roadway and nearby terrain.
      - (c) Provide fire support in the event of ambush or sniper attack.
      - (d) Maintain the rate of march.
    - (4) Leap frog. The trail vehicle will move ahead of the convoy, set up a traffic control post (TCP), and direct the convoy through. After the convoy has passed, repeat the process as often as necessary.
    - (5) Empty truck.
      - (a) Drop off the TCP personnel at the designated locations.
      - (b) Assume the position as the last vehicle in the convoy.
      - (c) Pick up the TCP personnel after the convoy has passed the TCP.
    - (6) Perimeter. Use four security vehicles, one on each side, one in the front, and one in the rear.

**NOTE: The perimeter is the least-preferred method because it is slow on rough terrain and it is dangerous due to mines and booby traps.**

- b. Provide security for cargo at the point of origin.

- (1) Observe the loading procedures to detect theft, sabotage, or pilferage by being alert for suspicious activities, such as persons carrying unidentified packages close to or away from the convoy.
      - (2) Match the cargo manifest against the materials at hand.
      - (3) Check locks and seals.
      - (4) Report damaged containers and discrepancies.

- c. Provide security from mines and booby traps.

- (1) Drive in the tracks of the vehicle in front of you.
    - (2) Do not drive on the shoulder of the road.

**Performance Steps**

- (3) Do not run over foreign objects (such as boxes and cans).
- (4) Avoid fresh earth in the road.
- (5) Observe activities of the local nationals.
- (6) Have the engineers, if available, sweep the roadway.
- (7) Have armored or heavy vehicles lead the convoy to clear small mines.
- (8) Notify the MP leader (usually the squad leader) if mines or booby traps are spotted.

**NOTE: If the convoy cannot bypass the danger area, notify the security NCOIC who will obtain assistance to neutralize the obstacle.**

- d. Provide security for the convoy from artillery fire.
  - (1) Ensure that vehicles do not stop.
  - (2) Move out of the area as quickly as possible.
- e. Provide security for the convoy from an air attack.
  - (1) Alert the team or squad leader as soon as enemy aircraft are detected.
  - (2) Disperse vehicles, leave the roadway, and seek cover.
  - (3) Ensure that all troops who are not staffing vehicle-mounted weapons dismount and seek cover away from vehicle.
  - (4) Engage enemy aircraft.
- f. Provide security from a sniper attack.
  - (1) Keep the convoy moving. Pass as quickly as possible through the area without stopping.
  - (2) Mark the sniper by giving the prescribed signal (usually a red smoke grenade thrown in the direction of the fire).
  - (3) Notify the convoy commander by radio.
  - (4) Attempt to locate and destroy the sniper using long-range fire if in a free-fire zone.
  - (5) Direct fire only at a specialized target.
  - (6) Do not fire in a no-fire zone.

**NOTE: A no-fire zone exists when there are friendly troops around.**

- g. Provide security for the convoy from an ambush when the road is not blocked.
  - (1) Vehicles past the kill zone should—
    - (a) Proceed a moderate distance to allow vehicles in the kill zone space to get out.
    - (b) Pull vehicles off the roadway to the opposite side of the road.
    - (c) Dismount the vehicles.
    - (d) Seek cover.
    - (e) Return fire into the ambush.
    - (f) Attack the flanks of the ambush using fire and maneuver when ordered to do so by the team or squad leader.
  - (2) Vehicles in the kill zone should—
    - (a) Attempt to move out of the kill zone. All nondriving personnel will return fire into the ambush.
    - (b) Abandon disabled vehicles.

**NOTE: The vehicle behind a disabled vehicle will attempt to push the disabled vehicle out of the way. Remaining vehicles will pick up occupants of the disabled vehicles.**

- (c) Get out of the kill zone and repeat steps 1g(1)(a) through (f).
- (3) Vehicles that have not entered the kill zone should—
  - (a) Not enter the kill zone.
  - (b) Repeat steps 1g(1)(b) through (f).
- h. Provide security for the convoy from an ambush when the road is blocked.
  - (1) If vehicles are past the kill zone, repeat step 1g(1)(a) through (f).
  - (2) If vehicles are in the kill zone, personnel—
    - (a) Must dismount the vehicles.
    - (b) Should seek cover. Pay attention to ditches and shoulders. Look for mines and booby traps.
    - (c) Should lay down heavy fire on the ambush.
    - (d) Be ready to attack (charge) the ambush on order.
  - (3) If vehicles have not entered the kill zone, they should—
    - (a) Not enter the kill zone.

**Performance Steps**

( b ) Dismount and set up security around the vehicles.

( c ) Repeat steps 1g(1)(b) through (f).

**NOTE: When ambushed, you may be ordered to call for artillery fire, gunship support, or a reaction force. You may also be directed to perform recovery operations after the attack has taken place.**

- i. Provide security at the destination.
    - (1) Ensure that the cargo is not damaged.
    - (2) Check all locks and seals.
    - (3) Prevent pilferage and/or sabotage during unloading.
  - j. Provide information to the team or squad leader for the after-action report.
    - (1) Identify things that went well.
    - (2) List all the difficulties that were encountered.
    - (3) Recommend ways security can be improved.
2. Provide security when the movement is by water.
- a. Repeat steps 1b(1) through (4).
  - b. Conduct an inspection when guards are relieved from duty.
  - c. Maintain an inspection log, noting the results of each inspection.
- NOTE: Report to the ship's officer of the deck, and coordinate the inspection with the ship's cargo officer, and make the inspection together.**
- d. Notify the officer of the deck immediately and make a written report if there is damage to cargo or if other irregularities are noted.
  - e. Repeat step 1i.
  - f. Repeat step 1j.
3. Provide security when the movement is by air.
- a. Do not board an aircraft until the cargo area is secured.
  - b. Perform steps 1b(1) through (4).
  - c. Leave the aircraft first, and observe the opening of the cargo area.
  - d. Perform step 1i.
  - e. Perform step 1j.
4. Provide security when the movement is by rail.
- a. Perform steps 1b(1) through (4).
  - b. Keep a record, by car number, of all railcars that you have the responsibility of guarding.
  - c. Immediately report—
    - (1) Irregularities in procedures.
    - (2) The presence and actions of any unauthorized persons while in transit.
    - (3) Deficiencies and/or incidents that occur.
  - d. Watch for persons trying to board or damage the train when it is traveling at slow speeds.
  - e. When the train stops, dismount and verify that all seals, locks, and wires are intact. If any seals, locks, or wires are discovered broken or tampered with, immediately notify the NCOIC of the security detail.
  - f. Check for possible damage to cars, to include overheating journal boxes.
  - g. Perform step 1i.
  - h. Perform step 1j.
5. Provide security for designated personnel.
- a. Provide security at the pickup point.
    - (1) Arrive before the principal personnel.
    - (2) Set up a hasty circular defensive position with good fields of fire.
    - (3) Conceal the position.
    - (4) Check the area for enemy activity, mines, booby traps, contamination, and anything else that would affect security.
  - b. Before transporting the principal personnel—

**Performance Steps**

- (1) Provide the principal with protective equipment that may be needed, such as a flak vest, a helmet, and protective clothing.
  - (2) Fit the principal with a protective mask.
  - (3) Ensure that the principal knows how to use the protective equipment and clothing.
  - (4) Suggest that the principal remove or disguise any distinguishing features, clothing, or equipment.
  - (5) Place the principal in the vehicle in a position that provides the most security.
  - (6) Vary the vehicle's position in the movement according to the team or squad leader's instructions, if a number of vehicles are used and enough overwatch security can be provided.
- c. Provide security during the movement. When the movement is by—
- (1) Aircraft, MP ride with the person(s) being escorted.
  - (2) Wheeled vehicle, MP ride in the lead, in trail vehicles, and in the scout vehicle (if one is used).

**NOTE: If attacked by hostile fire, repeat steps 1c through h, as appropriate.**

- d. Provide security at the destination.
- (1) Perform steps 5a(2) through (4).
  - (2) When the transportation of the principal is by aircraft, deplane before the principal deplanes.
  - (3) Perform step 1j.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Schedule the training and evaluation of this task during field training exercises.

**Brief soldier:** Give the soldier a position in the scout team, lead team, and trail team and evaluate him on each team position.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
1. Provided in-transit security for a land convoy.	_____	_____
2. Provided security when the movement was by water.	_____	_____
3. Provided security when the movement was by air.	_____	_____
4. Provided security when the movement was by rail.	_____	_____
5. Provided security for designated personnel.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

**References  
Required**

**Related**  
FM 19-25  
FM 3-19.30

Subject Area 13: Emergency Procedures

**Operate Riot Control Agent Dispersers (M33A1/M36/M37)**

**191-376-4119**

**Conditions:** You are given a crowd control situation (where the lower levels of force have been ineffective) and orders from the commander to use riot control agents to disperse the crowd; an M33A1, M36, or M37 chemical-agent disperser; a spare agent container and cylinder; cleaning materials; a protective mask with hood; rubber gloves; and access to Technical Manual (TM) 3-1040-262-13&P.

**Standards:** Complete all necessary steps, in sequence, to put the chemical-agent disperser in operation to disperse the crowd.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** Riot control agent dispersers are the third level of force. Refer to Task 191-376-5106.

1. Perform preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the M33A1.
  - a. Perform an overall visual inspection of the frame and harness assembly and the M33A1 riot control agent using Figures 191-376-4119-1 and 191-376-4119-2.

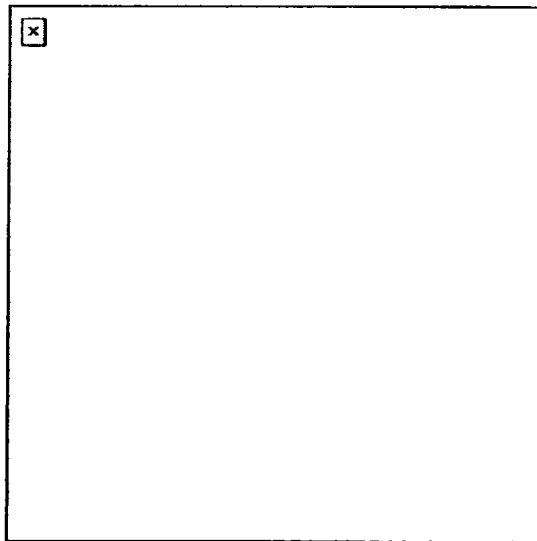


Figure 191-376-4119-1  
M33A1 Frame and Harness Assembly

## Performance Steps

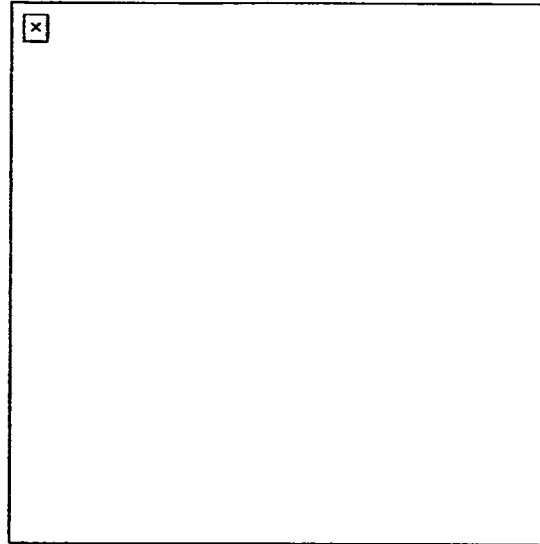


Figure 191-376-4119-2  
M33A1 Riot Control Agent Disperser

- (1) Ensure that the system is clean, properly installed, and usable.
- (2) Tighten all hose connections.
- (3) Ensure that the quick-disconnect coupling is serviceable.
- (4) Ensure that the agent container cylinder is not damaged.
- (5) Ensure that the drain cock is closed (fully clockwise).
- (6) Visually check the quick disconnect on the hose assembly.
- (7) Ensure that the connections on the air cylinder are tight.
- (8) Ensure that the high-pressure rupture disk assembly and the safety relief valve are not blown.
- (9) Inspect the frame and harness assembly.
  - (a) Ensure that the straps are fastened securely to hold the agent container and the air cylinder to the frame.
  - (b) Ensure that the spring-loaded clamps are fully closed.
  - (c) Ensure that the shoulder and waist straps are serviceable.
- (10) Inspect the frame for damaged or missing identification.
- (11) Ensure that the pressure regulator is securely fastened to the frame.
- b. Inspect the gun assembly.
  - (1) Ensure that the nozzle is installed in the disperser.
  - (2) Ensure that the pressurized air is turned off by turning the grip knob clockwise until there is resistance.
  - (3) Ensure that the hole in the check spring unit is unplugged.
  - (4) Squeeze the trigger to make sure that it works.
  - (5) Ensure that the adjust nut moves freely from its most forward position against the trigger and returns to the rear against the handle body.

**WARNING: WEAR A PROTECTIVE MASK AND RUBBER GLOVES WHEN OPERATING OR SERVICING A DISPENSER WITH RIOT CONTROL AGENTS. WEAR A PROTECTIVE HOOD. FILL THE DISPENSER IN AN AREA DESIGNATED BY THE LOCAL COMMANDER.**

- c. Inspect the air pressure assembly. Ensure that the air cylinder is charged and tagged to show the content and date.
- d. Check the agent cylinder assembly. Ensure that the agent cylinder is filled and tagged to show the content and date.

## Performance Steps

2. Replace the agent container and air cylinder on the M33A1.
  - a. Close the grip knob and remove the quick-disconnect coupling from the regulator or air cylinder.
  - b. Open the spring-loaded clamps (two places).
  - c. Remove the empty container.
  - d. Move the empty container away from the frame and harness assembly to keep from contaminating them.
  - e. Invert the empty containers so that the filling neck is up, and slowly open the drain cock.
  - f. After releasing the pressure, aim the gun away from friendly personnel and squeeze the trigger.
  - g. Release the trigger and close the drain cock.
  - h. Undo the manifold coupler assembly (with hoses and gun attached) from the quick-disconnect coupling half of the empty container assembly. Do not let the disconnect manifold coupling assembly, hoses, gun, and quick-disconnect coupling half become contaminated with dirt or foreign matter.
  - i. Hold the full container upright. Remove the support collar and cam action closure from the container assembly.
  - j. Install the cam action closure and the support collar on the removed empty container assembly. Place the cam action closure in the quick-disconnect coupling half. (The cam action closure is adjustable.) Turn the center stem clockwise to tighten snugly before closing the stem. Lock the closure in place and install the support collar to prevent spillage of leftover dry o-chlorobenzylidene malononitrile (CS) agent.
  - k. Hold the full container upright, insert the check-valve assembly (dry) into the container assembly. Connect the manifold coupling assembly to the quick-disconnect coupling half of the container assembly.
  - l. Connect the container assembly to the frame and harness assembly. The metallic hose assembly should be on the grip knob side for right-handed users and the reverse side for left-handed users.
  - m. Fasten the spring-loaded clamps (two places) to secure the container assembly on the frame and harness assembly.
  - n. Connect the two halves of the quick-disconnect coupling at the regulator.
  - o. Insert the gun into the holster.
  - p. Replace the air cylinder.
    - (1) Close the grip knob.
    - (2) Invert the disperser and slowly open the drain cock.
    - (3) Close the drain cock after the pressure has been released.
    - (4) Disconnect the valve-activating coupler assembly from the nipper assembly of the air cylinder.
    - (5) Open the spring-loaded clamp. Slide the air cylinder clear of the frame assembly.
    - (6) Obtain a charged air cylinder and slide it into position on the frame assembly.
    - (7) Fasten the spring-loaded clamp to secure the air cylinder to the frame assembly.
    - (8) Connect the valve-activating coupler assembly to the nipper assembly on the air pressure assembly.
3. Put on and adjust the M33A1 disperser harness.
  - a. Place your arms through the shoulder straps.
  - b. Adjust the harness to fit by using the slide buckles on the shoulder and waist straps.
  - c. Adjust the straps until the disperser feels comfortable, yet is held snugly so that it does not slip when you change positions.
4. Fire the M33A1 disperser. Fire it from any position that provides stability and enough freedom to aim at the target.



**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** Best results are achieved when a disperser is carried and fired with the agent container as close to vertical as possible.

**WARNINGS:**

- 1. NEVER DIRECT RIOT CONTROL AGENTS AT FRIENDLY PERSONNEL OR FIRE INTO THE WIND.**
- 2. NEVER FIRE A DISPERSER INDOORS WHEN USING DRY RIOT CONTROL AGENTS. AN OPEN FLAME OR SPARK CAN CAUSE A DUST EXPLOSION.**
- 3. THE DISPERSER CONTAINS A LARGE AMOUNT OF RIOT CONTROL AGENT WHICH CAN BE RELEASED QUICKLY. THE OPERATOR AND LOCAL COMMANDER MUST STAY VERY ALERT TO KEEP THE TARGET AREA FROM BEING COVERED WITH EXCESS RIOT CONTROL AGENTS.**

- a. Pressurize the agent container.
  - (1) Unlock the gun trigger and ensure that it is not pulled back to fire.
  - (2) Rotate the grip knob counterclockwise in the direction marked by the arrow and the word OPEN on the grip knob until resistance is felt (about one turn).
- b. Aim the disperser.

**NOTE:** There are no sights on the disperser.

- (1) Point the gun so that the wind will carry the riot control agent to the target area.

**NOTE:** The disperser will send the riot control agent up to a distance of 50 feet in still air.

- (2) Consider the wind direction.

**NOTE:** Best results are achieved with a tail wind. The tail wind will carry the riot control agent a greater distance depending on wind velocity. Crosswinds affect the discharge of riot control agent with possible undesired effects.

- c. Fire the disperser (short bursts are the most effective).
  - (1) Place one hand on the nozzle housing assembly for balance. Place the firing hand on the gun trigger and handle.
  - (2) Press the trigger with the fingers of the firing hand.

**NOTE:** Discharge begins as soon as the trigger is pulled.

- d. Clear the agent after firing.
  - (1) Close the grip knob on the air cylinder.
  - (2) Clear the agent from the hose, by aiming away from personnel and squeezing the trigger.

5. Perform after-operation maintenance on the M33A1 disperser in a safe area designated by the local commander.
  - a. Ensure that the grip knob on the air cylinder is closed.
  - b. Invert the container and slowly open the drain cock to release the pressure.
  - c. Aim the gun away from other personnel and squeeze the trigger to clear the gun assembly.
  - d. Release the trigger and close the drain cock.
  - e. Report to organization maintenance personnel that all of the agent was not used in the mission when you turn in the disperser.
6. Perform PMCS on the M36 when issued.
  - a. Ensure that the white paper seal on the actuator is unbroken.
  - b. Refuse to accept a disperser with a broken seal.
7. Use the M36 disperser.
  - a. Hold the can upright.
  - b. Break the seal and unlock by rotating the actuator counterclockwise as shown in Figure 191-376-4119-3 (A).

**Performance Steps**

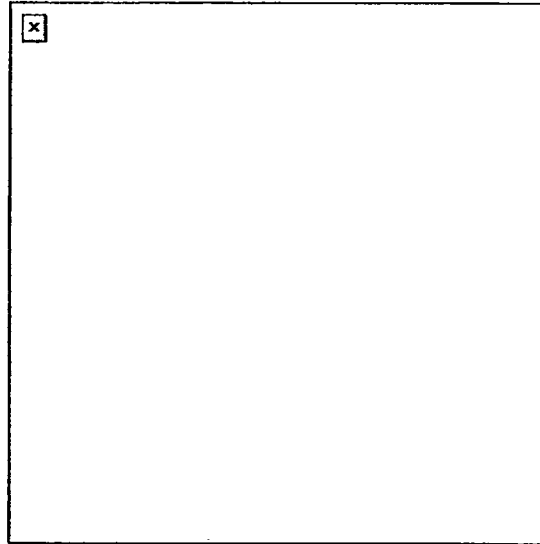


Figure 191-376-4119-3  
M36 Agent Dispenser

- c. Aim for the subject's face.
  - d. Press the actuator with the index finger to release a stream of wet dibenzoxazepine (CR) as shown in Figure 191-376-4119-3 (B).
  - e. Lock the actuator after use, by rotating it clockwise.
8. Decontaminate the M36 disperser.
- a. Remove light contamination from the disperser and carrier by wiping it three separate times with absorbent material. Use clean material for each wiping.
  - b. Remove heavy contamination by washing the disperser and carrier with water and a detergent that does not contain bleach.
  - c. Rinse well.
- WARNING: DO NOT USE HOUSEHOLD BLEACH OR ANY OTHER CHEMICAL CLEANER. WHEN CR AND BLEACH ARE MIXED TOGETHER, THEY FORM A HARMFUL VAPOR.**
9. Turn in the M36 disperser and carrier at the end of the mission or shift.
- a. Turn in the disperser even if it is empty.
  - b. Report the broken seal on the actuator when you return the disperser.
10. Perform PMCS on the M37 riot control disperser, when issued, according to the TM. Refer to Figure 191-376-4119-4.

## Performance Steps

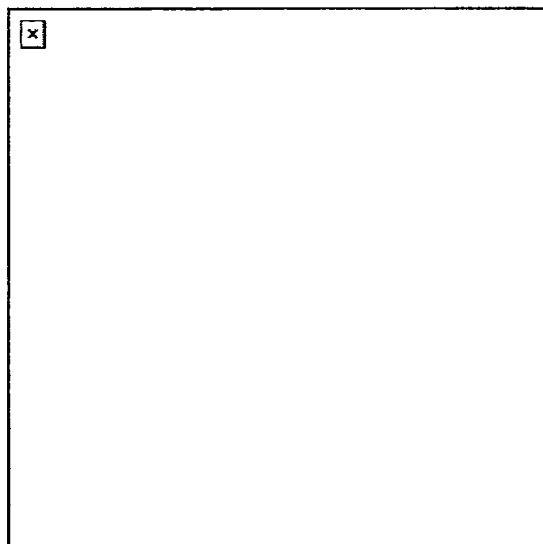


Figure 191-376-4119-4  
M37 Riot Control Dispenser

11. Fire the M37 riot control dispenser.

**WARNING: WEAR A PROTECTIVE MASK AND RUBBER GLOVES WHEN OPERATING OR SERVICING THE DISPENSER WITH RIOT CONTROL AGENT. WEAR A PROTECTIVE HOOD, IF AVAILABLE. REFER TO TM 10-8415-220-10 FOR INFORMATION ABOUT AUTHORIZED CHEMICAL PROTECTIVE CLOTHING. CR LIQUID AGENT CAUSES A TEARING AND PAINFUL BURNING SENSATION OF THE EYES, NOSE, THROAT, AND SKIN. IT CAN CAUSE DIFFICULT BREATHING. WASH HANDS THOROUGHLY WITH SOAP AND WATER AFTER HANDLING CONTAMINATED EQUIPMENT. IF EYES ARE EXPOSED TO CR, FLUSH WITH WATER. IF IRRITATION CONTINUES, CONTACT A DOCTOR.**

- a. Ensure that before operation PMCS have been completed.
- b. Ensure that the dispenser shows no visible damage or signs of leaking.
- c. Ensure that the pressure gauge indicates adequate pressure (within the green band or top half of the red band).
- d. Use the sling assembly (shoulder strap) and place the dispenser over your shoulder.
- e. Orient the dispenser 10 degrees to 15 degrees above the horizontal position.
- f. Remove the safety pull pin.

**NOTE: The adjustable nozzle is not labeled. Maximum range (stream) can be obtained by opening the nozzle barrel 1 1/2 full turns from the fully closed position.**

- g. Test the dispenser by squeezing the trigger and adjust the nozzle to the needed spray pattern (spray, mist, or stream).
- h. Aim the nozzle at the target, and with a quick, steady pressure, squeeze the trigger handle to spray the agent.
- i. Replace the safety pull pin when finished.

12. Perform after-operation PMCS on the M37.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide the soldier with all the equipment and materials given in the task conditions statement. Allow the soldier to use TM 3-1040-262-13&P.

**Brief soldier:** Brief the soldier on the use of force as outlined in the unit's SOP.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Performed PMCS on the M33A1.	_____	_____
2. Replaced the agent container and air cylinder on the M33A1.	_____	_____
3. Put on and adjusted the M33A1 disperser harness.	_____	_____
4. Fired the M33A1 disperser.	_____	_____
5. Performed after-operation maintenance on the M33A1 disperser in a safe area designated by the local commander.	_____	_____
6. Performed PMCS on the M36 when issued.	_____	_____
7. Used the M36 disperser.	_____	_____
8. Decontaminated the M36 disperser.	_____	_____
9. Turned in the M36 disperser and carrier at the end of the mission or shift.	_____	_____
10. Performed PMCS on the M37 riot control disperser when issued.	_____	_____
11. Fired the M37 riot control disperser.	_____	_____
12. Performed after-operation PMCS on the M37.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier a NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

References	
<b>Required</b>	<b>Related</b>
TM 10-8415-220-10	AR 190-14
TM 3-1040-262-13&P	FM 19-15

**Use a Riot Baton****191-376-4121**

**Conditions:** You are a member of a riot control formation and must position yourself in a crowd control situation. You are given a riot baton, a flak vest, shin guards, and a helmet with a face shield.

**Standards:** Perform all necessary steps to properly use the riot baton and defend yourself to defend against individuals in a crowd. Observe all safety precautions.

**Performance Steps**

1. Grip the riot baton.
  - a. Put the thong over your right thumb as shown in Figure 191-376-4121-1 and bring it around so that the thong wraps over the back of the hand as shown in Figure 191-376-4121-2. This is called the baton thong position.

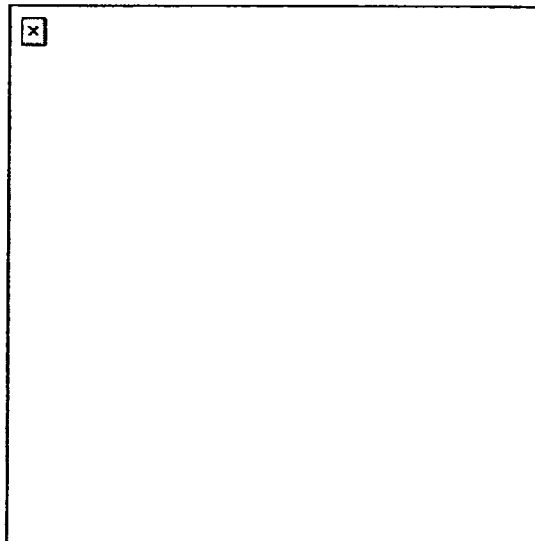


Figure 191-376-4121-1  
Baton Thong Position, Graphic 1

**Performance Steps**

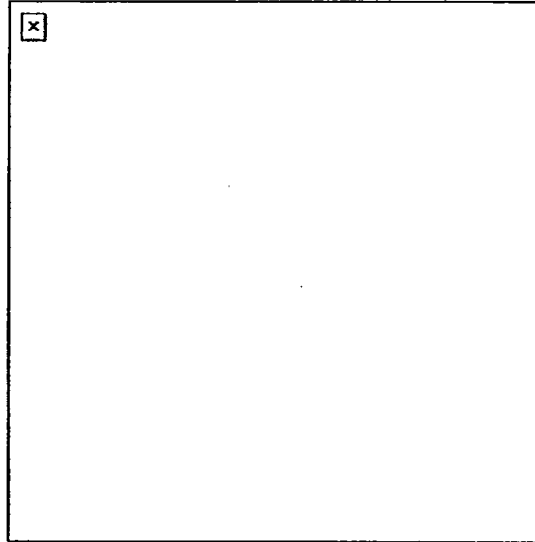


Figure 191-376-4121-2  
Baton Thong Position, Graphic 2

- b. Rotate your right hand over and onto the baton handle and grasp it about 6 inches from the end. The thong will be pressed against the back of the hand as shown in Figure 191-376-4121-3. This is called the right-hand grip.

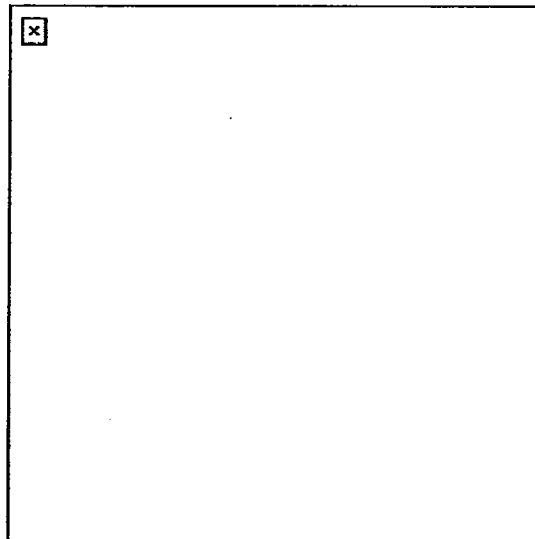


Figure 191-376-4121-3  
Right-Hand Grip

**NOTE:** This gives you a secure grip and allows for a quick release of the weapon when the hand is relaxed.

2. Assume the parade rest position.
  - a. Place your feet a comfortable distance (about shoulder width) apart.
  - b. Grip the baton in your right hand and allow your right arm to hang naturally.
  - c. Hold the baton horizontally across your body.

**Performance Steps**

- d. Grasp the baton with your left hand, palm facing out and away from the body and about 6 inches from the end of the baton as shown in Figure 191-376-4121-4.

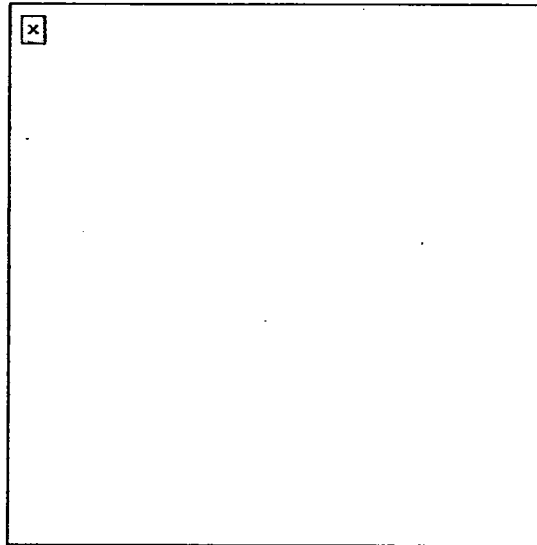


Figure 191-376-4121-4  
Parade Rest Position

3. Assume the port position. This is a ready position for individual defensive tactics.

**NOTE: Assemble and move to all formations in the port position.**

- a. Lift the left end of the baton up by bending your left elbow while in the parade rest position. Your left hand should be level with your left shoulder.
- b. Ensure that the striking end of the baton bisects the angle between the neck and the left shoulder.
- c. Hold the baton about 8 inches from the body as shown in Figure 191-376-4121-5. This is the port position.

**Performance Steps**

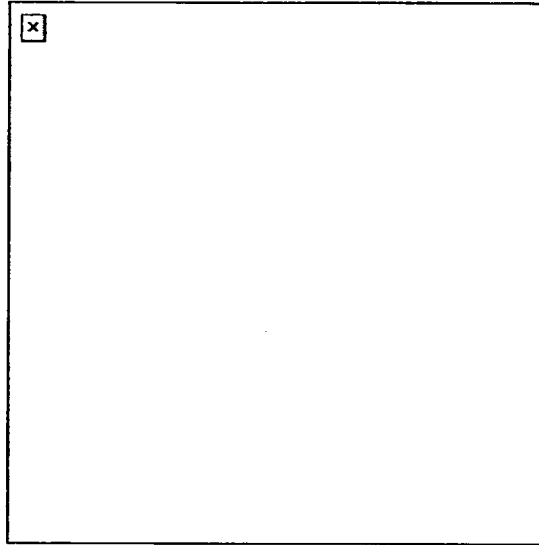


Figure 191-376-4121-5  
Port Position

4. Assume the on-guard position.

**NOTE:** This is a ready position used when making initial contact with rioters. Do not hold it for long periods because it is tiring to the body. Protective movements are normally executed from this position.

- a. Stand with your feet apart, and your left foot forward. Bend your knees slightly and lean forward.
- b. Hold the baton against your hip with your right hand.
- c. Hold your left forearm horizontally across your body with your palm up and at a level that will protect your throat area.
- d. With your left hand, grasp the baton about 6 inches from the end. Figures 191-376-4121-6 and 191-376-4121-7 shows the guard position from the front and side.



**Performance Steps**

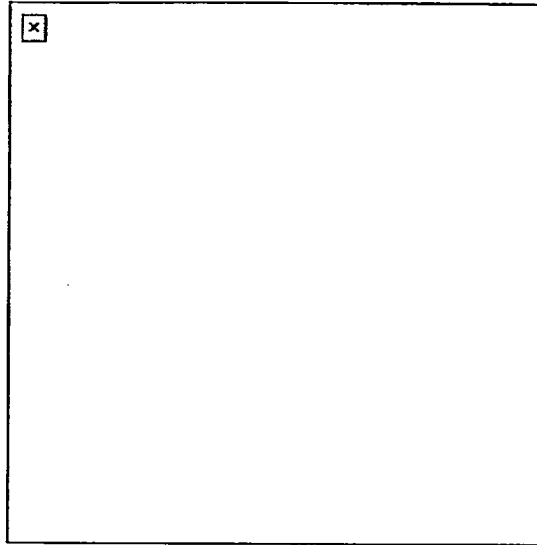


Figure 191-376-4121-6  
On-Guard Position (Front View)

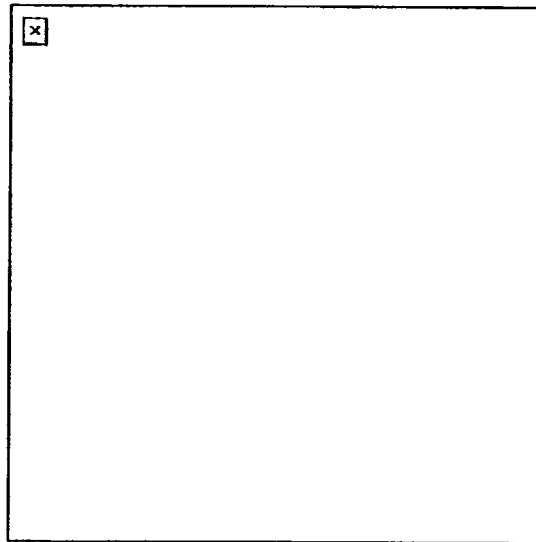


Figure 191-376-4121-7  
On-Guard Position (Side View)

5. Ensure that a blow is not directed to one of the five fatal points. Refer to Figure 191-376-4121-8.

### Performance Steps

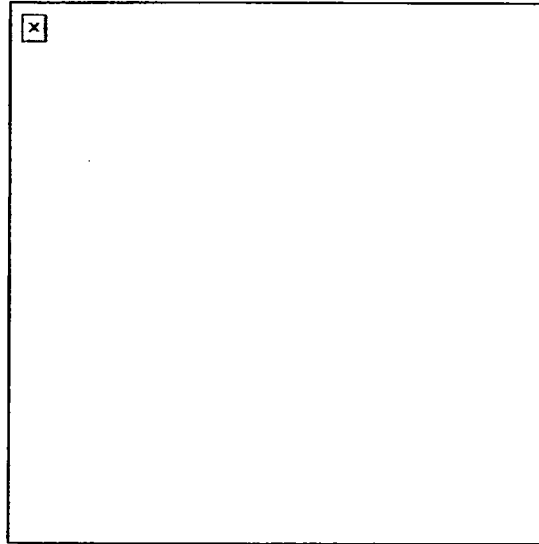


Figure 191-376-4121-8  
Five Fatal Points of Impact

**WARNING: NEVER DIRECT A BLOW TO ANY OF THE FIVE FATAL POINTS OF IMPACT ON THE HUMAN BODY. THESE ARE THE HEAD, THE SIDE OF THE NECK OR THROAT, THE CHEST CAVITY (HEART AREA), AND THE ARMPIT. DELIVER BLOWS ONLY TO VULNERABLE PARTS ON YOUR OPPONENT'S BODY, SUCH AS THE SHOULDER.**

6. Perform the short-thrust offensive technique from the on-guard position.
  - a. Take one rapid step forward with your left foot.
  - b. Snap your left arm straight and push your right hand to drive the striking end of the baton into a vulnerable point of the opponent's body.
  - c. Return to the on-guard position.
7. Perform the long-thrust offensive technique from the on-guard position.
  - a. Hold the baton in your right hand, take one rapid step forward with your right foot, and simultaneously release your left-hand grip.
  - b. Snap the baton forward by rapidly extending your right arm, driving the striking end of the weapon into a vulnerable point on the opponent's body.
  - c. Return to the on-guard position.
8. Perform the butt-stroke offensive technique from the on-guard position.
  - a. Raise your right hand (while keeping your left hand level with your left shoulder) until the baton is almost parallel to the ground.
  - b. Advance the body rapidly by moving your right foot forward one step.
  - c. Snap your right arm straight forward by sliding your right hand up the baton until the thong is tight across the back of the hand.
  - d. Drive the butt end of the baton to the left, striking the opponent's shoulder.
  - e. Return to the on-guard position.
9. Perform the baton smash offensive technique from the parade rest, port, or on-guard position.
  - a. Hold the baton at chest level, horizontal to the ground.
  - b. Advance your left foot rapidly and snap both arms straight.
  - c. Smash the length of the baton across the opponent's chest.
  - d. Return to the position.
10. Defend yourself against a blow to the head.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE: All defensive tactics are started from the parade rest, port, or on-guard position.**

- a. Assume the parade rest, port, or on-guard position.
  - b. Snap your left hand to the left side of your body and your right hand up and to the left.
  - c. Block the attacker's blow and immediately snap both arms up so that the left hand is near the left shoulder and the right hand is in front of the left shoulder.
  - d. Execute a jab or smash by stepping forward with your right foot, driving your body forward. Jab the thong end of the baton into the attacker's upper body.
  - e. Return to the original starting position.
11. Defend yourself against a backhand blow.
    - a. Assume either the parade rest, port, or on-guard position.
    - b. Snap both arms out and to your right or left front, depending on the direction of the oncoming blow.
    - c. Raise your left hand above your head so that the grip end of the baton is pointing down.
    - d. Block the attacker's blow.
    - e. After blocking the blow, bring your right hand up near the right shoulder.
    - f. Move the left hand down, parallel to the chest area, in preparation for a butt stroke. Refer to step 7.
  12. Defend yourself against a long thrust.
    - a. Assume the parade rest, port, or on-guard position.
    - b. Move your left hand across your body toward the left.
    - c. Move your right hand down and toward the left.
    - d. Slide your left hand down the baton to the right hand. Your body and baton are now in position to defend with a counterblow.
  13. Defend yourself against an overhead stab.
    - a. Assume the parade rest, port, or on-guard position.
    - b. Step backward with your left foot when the attacker stabs downward.
    - c. Slide your left hand down the baton to meet the right, and raise the baton up over your left side and shoulder.
    - d. Disarm the attacker by snapping the baton down against his wrist or forearm.
    - e. Return your left hand and left foot to their original position in preparation to execute a baton smash.
  14. Defend yourself against an upward thrust.
    - a. Assume the parade rest, port, or on-guard position.
    - b. Hold the baton horizontally, about 6 inches from your lower chest.
    - c. Snap both arms straight down, and strike the opponent's wrist to cause him to drop his weapon.
    - d. Hold the baton with both your hands and immediately bring the baton close to your shoulders and hold it across your chest in preparation to execute the baton smash.
  15. Defend yourself against an unarmed attacker.
    - a. Slide your left hand towards your right and lift the baton to shoulder level, parallel to the ground.
    - b. Move your body slightly to the rear by withdrawing your left foot.
    - c. Use your baton to deliver a counterblow to the attacker's shoulder or collarbone if he attempts to strike you with a blow.
    - d. Deliver a counterblow to the attacker's right forearm if he attempts to strike you with a blow.
    - e. Jab the attacker in the groin or stomach with your baton if he attempts to grab you.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier being evaluated with a riot baton, a flak vest, and a helmet with a face shield.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier being evaluated that he must perform each step to correctly demonstrate the

riot baton grip, the parade rest, port and on-guard positions, the three offensive techniques; and the six defensive techniques as described in this task in performance measures 1 through 14.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Gripped the riot baton.	_____	_____
2. Assumed the parade rest position.	_____	_____
3. Assumed the port position.	_____	_____
4. Assumed the on-guard position.	_____	_____
5. Ensured that a blow was not directed to one of the five fatal points.	_____	_____
6. Performed the short-thrust offensive technique from the on-guard position.	_____	_____
7. Performed the long-thrust offensive technique from the on-guard position.	_____	_____
8. Performed the butt-stroke offensive technique from the on-guard position.	_____	_____
9. Performed the baton smash offensive technique from the rest, port, or on-guard position.	_____	_____
10. Defended himself against a blow to the head.	_____	_____
11. Defended himself against a backhand blow.	_____	_____
12. Defended himself against a long thrust.	_____	_____
13. Defended himself against an overhead stab.	_____	_____
14. Defended himself against an upward thrust.	_____	_____
15. Defended himself against an unarmed attacker.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**  
Required

**Related**  
FM 19-15

**Position Yourself in Riot Control Formations****191-376-4122**

**Conditions:** You are given orders to be a member of a squad or platoon detailed in a crowd control situation. You are given a riot baton, an M16 rifle, a bayonet with a sheath, a flak vest, a protective mask, a helmet with a face shield, and shin guards.

**Standards:** Position yourself in a formation, as directed by the squad or platoon leader to effectively control the crowd.

**Performance Steps**

1. Assume the safe-port position as shown in Figure 191-376-4122-1.

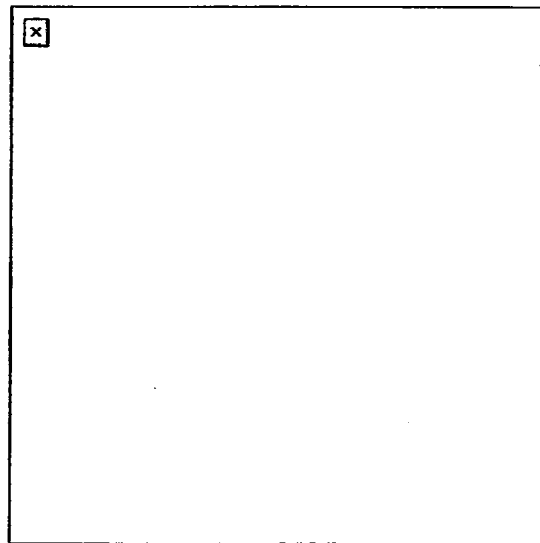


Figure 191-376-4122-1  
Safe-Port Position

**NOTE:** Use this position when moving into a riot control formation or when changing formations.

- a. Grasp the small of the gun stock with your right hand. The forefinger should be toward the rear of the pistol grip.
  - b. Use your left hand to hold the sling against the hand guard by grasping the weapon just below the sling and touching the upper swing swivel. Ensure that the magazine well faces away from your body.
  - c. Hold the upper part of your left arm parallel with the ground, and bend your elbow so that your forearm is straight up.
  - d. Keep your right elbow close to your body.
  - e. Position the heel of the rifle butt slightly to the right of your right shirt pocket.
  - f. Slant the rifle enough to look straight ahead over the magazine well.
2. Assume the safeguard position as shown in Figure 191-376-4122-2.

**Performance Steps**

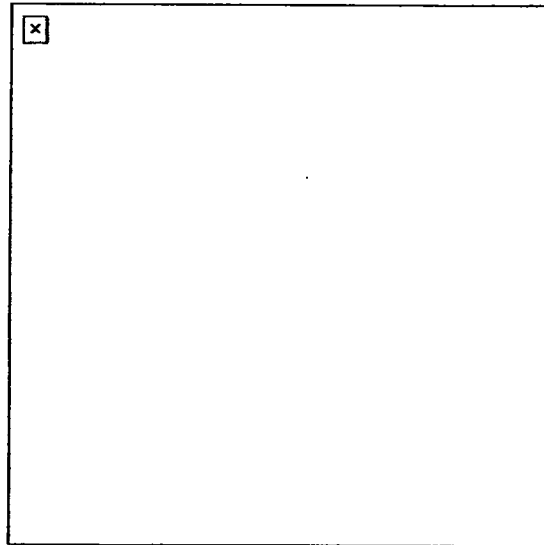


Figure 191-376-4122-2  
Safeguard Position

- a. Use your right hand to grasp the small of the stock and hold it against the right side of your waist. The butt of the stock will extend to the rear of your buttocks.
  - b. Use your left arm, slightly bent at the elbow, to grasp the weapon just below the sling swivel using your left hand. Turn the weapon so that the magazine well is facing down.
  - c. Raise the bayonet to throat level.
  - d. Place your feet together as done for the position of attention when at a halt.
3. Assume the on-guard position as shown in Figure 191-376-4122-3.

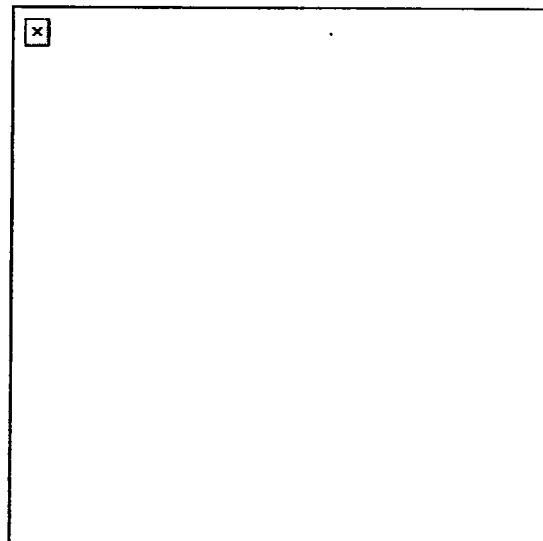


Figure 191-376-4122-3  
On-Guard Position

- a. Grasp the pistol grip with your right hand, and using the right forearm, hold the stock snugly against your right waist, with the rifle butt even with the right seam of your trousers.

**Performance Steps**

- b. Use your left arm, slightly bent at the elbow, to grasp the weapon just below the sling swivel using your left hand. Turn the weapon so that the magazine well is facing down.
- c. Place your feet a comfortable distance apart when at a halt. Line up your left heel with your right toe and point your toes at the crowd. Slightly bend your knees, and lean forward while keeping your hips level. Point the bayonet at throat level.
- d. Make a resounding stomp with your left foot when assuming the on-guard position.

**NOTE: When using riot batons, execute the positions according to the supervisor's commands. Refer to Task 191-376-4121.**

- 4. Form a squad line formation using the hand signal as shown in Figure 191-376-4122-4. Assume the safe-port position when the command, "Squad as skirmishers" is given or when the squad leader gives the hand-and-arm signal for a squad line formation.

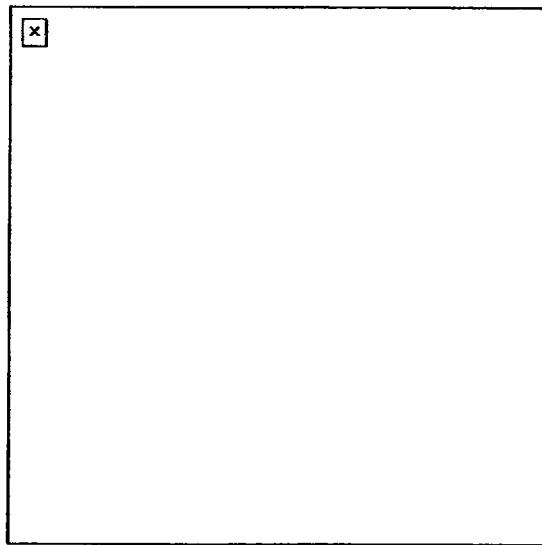


Figure 191-376-4122-4  
Hand Signal for a Squad Line Formation

**NOTES:**

- 1. On the command "Move," the base member will double-time to the position indicated by the squad leader.
- 2. Remaining squad members will double-time forward and position themselves on the line with the base member, one pace to the right of the preceding member.
- 3. Everyone will remain in the safe-port position until ordered to another position.
- 4. Any size squad, platoon, or larger unit can be employed, and a crowd control formation can be adapted to fit the unit's organization.
- 5. Form the squad echelon-right formation using hand signals as shown in Figure 191-376-4122-5. Assume the safe-port position when the command of "Squad echelon right" is given or when the squad leader gives the hand signal for an echelon-right formation.

**Performance Steps**

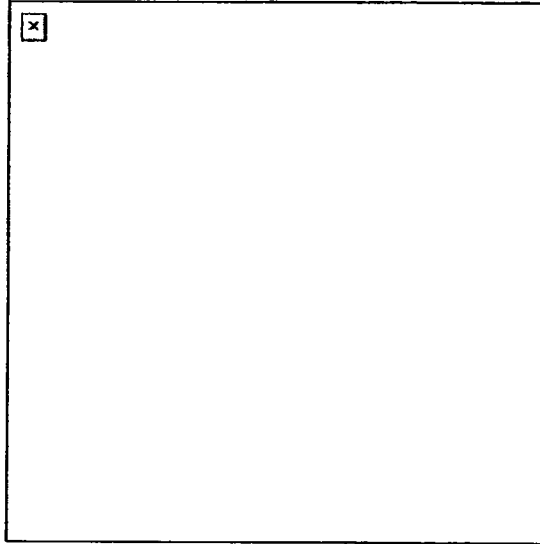


Figure 191-376-4122-5  
Hand Signal for a Squad Echelon-Right Formation

**NOTES:**

1. On the command "Move," the base member will double-time to the position indicated by the squad leader.
2. Remaining squad members will double-time forward and position themselves on the line with the base member, one pace to the right and one pace to the rear of the preceding member.
3. Everyone will remain at safe port until ordered to another position.
6. Form a squad echelon-left formation (Figure 191-376-4122-6).

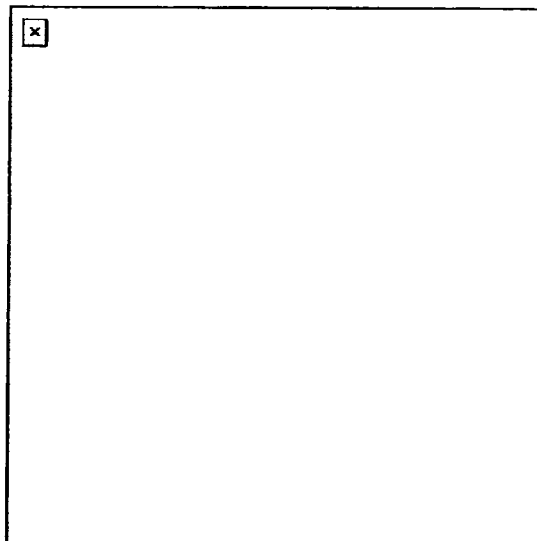


Figure 191-376-4122-6  
Hand Signal for a Squad Echelon-Left Formation



**Performance Steps**

7. Form the squad wedge formation using the hand signal shown in Figure 191-376-4122-7. Assume the safe-port position when the command "Squad wedge" is given or when the squad leader gives the hand signal for a wedge formation.

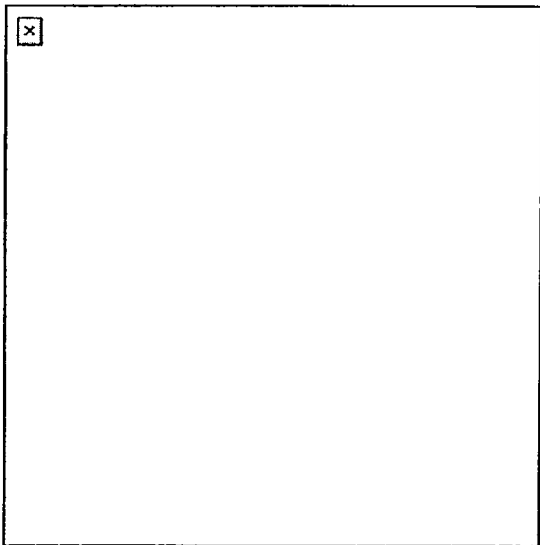


Figure 191-376-4122-7  
Hand Signal for a Squad Wedge Formation

**NOTES:**

1. On the command "Move" the base member will double-time to the position indicated by the squad leader.  
2. Remaining odd-numbered squad members will double-time forward and position themselves on line with the base member, one pace to the left and one pace to the rear of the preceding member. 3. Remaining even-numbered squad members will double-time forward and position themselves on line with the base member, one pace to the right and one pace to the rear of the preceding member. 4. Everyone will remain at the safe-port position until ordered to another position.  
8. Assemble from a riot control formation.  
a. On the command "Squad assemble," assume the safe-port position.  
b. On the command, "Move," the base member will double-time to the position indicated by the squad leader.

**NOTE:** Remaining squad members will double-time forward and form a column behind the base member. Everyone will remain at the safe-port position until ordered to another position.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Have each soldier being evaluated perform at every position within the formations.

**Brief soldier:** Brief the soldier on the nine positions of a squad, and review Task 191-376-4121.

**Performance Measures**

1. Assumed the safe-port position.  
2. Assumed the safeguard position.  
3. Assumed the on-guard position.

<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
—	—
—	—
—	—

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
4. Formed a squad line formation using hand signals.	_____	_____
5. Formed the squad echelon-right formation using hand signals.	_____	_____
6. Formed a squad echelon-left formation.	_____	_____
7. Formed a squad wedge formation.	_____	_____
8. Assembled from a riot control formation	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier a NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

<b>References</b>	<b>Related</b>
<b>Required</b>	FM 19-15

## React to a Bomb Threat and/or a Bomb in an Internment Facility

191-381-1250

**Conditions:** The internment facility is subject to a bomb threat or a bomb is discovered within the facility. You will be required to react to the situation. You will be given the facility standard operating procedure (SOP), a telephone, a Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) Form 2-182a, a recorder, a flashlight, a handheld mirror, plastic ribbon, chalk or crepe paper, string, a broom handle, a step ladder, first aid supplies, water hoses and/or fire extinguishers, file cabinets, desks with locks and keys, and flammable items.

**Standards:** Obtain the required information from the caller, and notify all designated personnel or agencies. Quickly and safely evacuate the facility while maintaining accountability of all internees and facility personnel. Thoroughly and accurately conduct a search of the area when directed to do so by a supervisor. Observe all safety precautions.

### Performance Steps

**NOTE:** The sequencing of the steps in this task may vary according to the SOP.

1. Respond to a bomb threat received by telephone.

**NOTE:** Bomb threats inside an internment facility may be received in a number of ways. They may be in the form of a suspicious package, a telephone call, a written message delivered through the mail or by messenger, or information given by internees.

- a. Remain calm.
  - b. Notify the supervisor using a prearranged signal.
  - c. Note the date and the time of the call on FBI Form 2-182a.
  - d. Refrain from interrupting the caller. Be courteous.
  - e. Keep the caller on the line as long as possible to allow time for the call to be traced, if a tracing capability is available.
  - f. Record the exact words of the caller (on FBI Form 2-182a or using a recorder). Note any accent or peculiarity of speech, and listen for background noises.
  - g. Obtain all available information about the caller. Attempt to determine the caller's sex, approximate age, mental attitude, and reason for placing the bomb. Record this information on FBI Form 2-182a.
  - h. Obtain information about the bomb. Find out where it is located, the type of device used, a description of the device, the number of bombs placed, and the expected time of detonation. Annotate this information on FBI Form 2-182a.
  - i. Inform the caller that the building is occupied.
  - j. Ensure that you do not use radio transmissions to communicate.
  - k. Remain in the area in case investigators need to talk with you.
2. Avoid contact with suspicious packages, objects, or mail (inside or outside the facility). Isolate the items, but do not touch them. Follow the procedures outlined in the SOP.
  3. Notify all personnel and agencies on the notification list (as outlined in the SOP).
- NOTE:** The notification list may include the supervisor, the facility or installation commander, the Emergency Operations Center (EOC), explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel, the military police (MP), emergency services (the fire department, the hospital, and an ambulance), maintenance personnel, the criminal investigation division (CID), and the bomb scene officer. The bomb scene officer will coordinate and control all activities related to the bomb. He may be identified in the SOP or be appointed by the installation commander.
4. Perform evacuation procedures according to the SOP and the bomb evacuation plan.
    - a. Unlock drawers and cabinets so that they can be searched.
    - b. Gather personal items such as your briefcase or radio.
    - c. Move internees and internment personnel at least 300 feet from the facility or according to the SOP. Alternate assembly areas each time you evacuate the internees.

**Performance Steps**

- d. Account for internees and internment personnel at the assembly area.
- e. Ensure that internees and internment personnel stay out of the line of sight of the bomb and away from glass windows. Direct them to lie down (or take cover) with their faces away from the facility.

**DANGER: DO NOT USE RADIO TRANSMISSIONS UNTIL THE AREA HAS BEEN CLEARED.**

**NOTE: The supervisor will determine if the search is to be a "supervisor's" search or a "search team" search. A supervisor's search consists of someone accompanying the supervisor through the work area using the quick-paced method. A search team search involves teams of two internment specialists who are familiar with the area.**

- 5. Identify items alien to the surroundings, hidden objects, and objects with an unusual appearance.

**NOTE: Search areas inside and outside of the facility. The order in which the areas are searched is dependant on the available information.**

- a. Search the area 25 to 50 feet out from the building (ground search).
- b. Search all vehicles in the area.

**WARNING: USE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN SEARCHING VEHICLES.**

- c. Search the area from the base of the building to the top. Ensure that the search includes window ledges, air conditioning units, signs, building ornamentation, fire escapes, gutters, drain pipes, and garbage cans.
- d. Search the common areas inside the building. Begin at the lowest level and work your way up. Ensure that the search includes utilities, hallways, administrative areas, dining areas, shipping and loading areas, supply rooms, latrines, lobbies, stairwells, and closets and storage areas.
- e. Remove all flammable items such as paint cans, aerosol cans, and liquids.
- f. Use plastic ribbon, crepe paper, or chalk to mark off each area as it is searched.
- g. Search any remaining rooms.

**DANGER: DO NOT USE LIGHT SWITCHES.**

- (1) Enter each room and listen for ticking or humming sounds.
- (2) Mentally divide the room into equal search areas according to the number of objects to be searched (not according to the room size).
- (3) Search areas from floor level to waist.
- (4) Search areas from waist level to chin.
- (5) Search areas from chin level to ceiling.
- (6) Search false ceilings, air ducts, and light fixtures.

- 6. Perform the proper procedures following the discovery of a bomb.

- a. Report the location of the bomb using a telephone or a messenger.

**DANGER: DO NOT TOUCH THE BOMB. DO NOT USE YOUR RADIO.**

- b. Secure the area.
- c. Instruct the engineers to turn off the gas and the electricity.
- d. Remove items that can cause secondary explosions.
- e. Open windows and doors. Mark the route from the bomb to the nearest exit or safe area with a string.
- f. Escort EOD personnel to the location of the bomb (if necessary).

- 7. Perform the proper procedures following a bomb detonation.

- a. Provide first aid for injured personnel.
- b. Evacuate the injured.
- c. Move flammable items away from open flames.
- d. Assist emergency personnel in controlling fires.
- e. Remove administrative files (if necessary and feasible).
- f. Secure the area. Use caution, and assume that other unexploded devices are present.

**CAUTION: AVOID CONTACT WITH DEBRIS.**

**NOTE: The bomb scene officer will determine if and when normal operations can resume.**

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: This task may be evaluated using a written test or through the use of scenarios and simulated bombs, bomb threats, or bomb detonations.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the evaluated soldier that when scenarios and simulated situations are used, he must perform all the required steps to complete the task.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Responded to a bomb threat received by telephone.	_____	_____
2. Avoided contact with suspicious packages, objects, or mail (inside or outside the facility). Isolated the items, but did not touch them. Followed the procedures outlined in the SOP.	_____	_____
3. Notified all personnel and agencies on the notification list (as outlined in the SOP).	_____	_____
4. Performed evacuation procedures according to the SOP and the bomb evacuation plan.	_____	_____
5. Identified items alien to the surroundings, hidden objects, and objects with an unusual appearance.	_____	_____
6. Performed the proper procedures following the discovery of a bomb.	_____	_____
7. Performed the proper procedures following a bomb detonation.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
FBI FORM 2-182A

**Related**  
FM 19-10  
FM 19-15  
FM 3-19.30

## Participate in Riot Control Formations to Control Internees

191-381-1258

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to participate in riot control formations to control internees. You are given a situation requiring crowd control measures, a squad- or platoon-size element, a riot baton, a flak vest, a protective mask, and a helmet with a face shield.

**Standards:** Participate in a riot control formation to control internees. Correctly position yourself in the formation according to the commands of the squad or platoon leader.

### Performance Steps

**NOTE:** Modify the riot control formations based on the size of the squad or platoon and the configuration of the internment facility.

1. Execute a squad column formation.
  - a. React to the command, "Count off." Follow the squad leader or the assistant squad leader by counting off in the sequence of your position.

**NOTE:** The squad leader may designate a specific interval when he gives the preparatory command. The interval used will be based on the specific situation. If an interval is not specified, the squad should automatically form using a one-pace interval.

- b. React to the command, "Move."

**NOTE:** The base man will double-time to the position indicated by the squad leader (the number two man will always be the base man). Remaining squad members will double-time forward and position themselves in line with the base man. When moving from a column formation to any crowd control formation, all members move in double time in the port position.

2. Execute a squad line formation (Figure 191-381-1258-1).

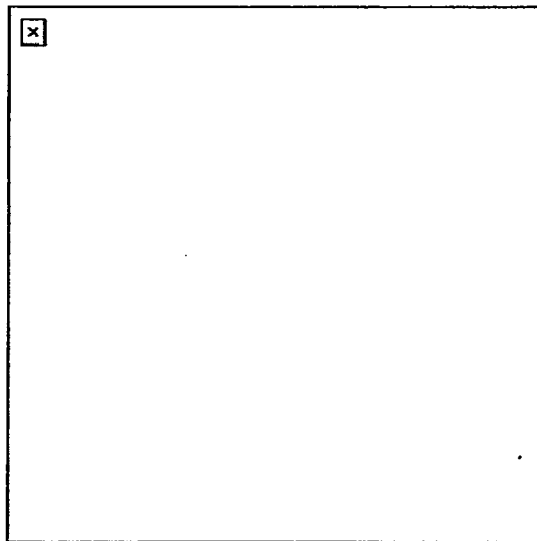


Figure 191-381-1258-1  
Squad Line Formation

- a. React to the command, "Squad as skirmishers" or when the squad leader gives the hand-and-arm signal. Assume the port position.
  - b. React to the command, "Move."

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** The base man will double-time to the position indicated by the squad leader. The remaining squad members will double-time forward and position themselves in line with the base man, one pace to the right of the preceding member. All other personnel will remain at the port position until ordered to another position.

3. Execute a squad echelon-right formation (Figure 191-381-1258-2).

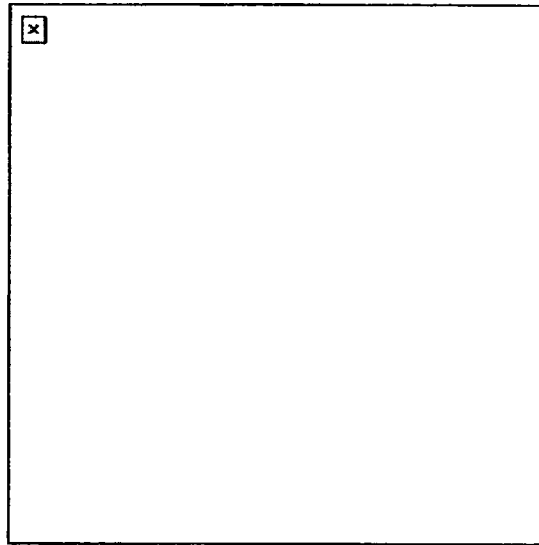


Figure 191-381-1258-2  
Squad Echelon-Right Formation

- a. React to the command, "Squad echelon right" or when the squad leader gives the hand-and-arm signal. Assume the port position.
- b. React to the command, "Move."

**NOTE:** The base man will double-time to the position indicated by the squad leader. The remaining squad members will double-time forward and position themselves in line with the base man, one pace to the right and one pace to the rear of the preceding member. All other personnel will remain at the port position until ordered to another position.

4. Execute a squad echelon-left formation (Figure 191-381-1258-3). Repeat the steps as for an echelon-right formation, substituting left for right.

**Performance Steps**

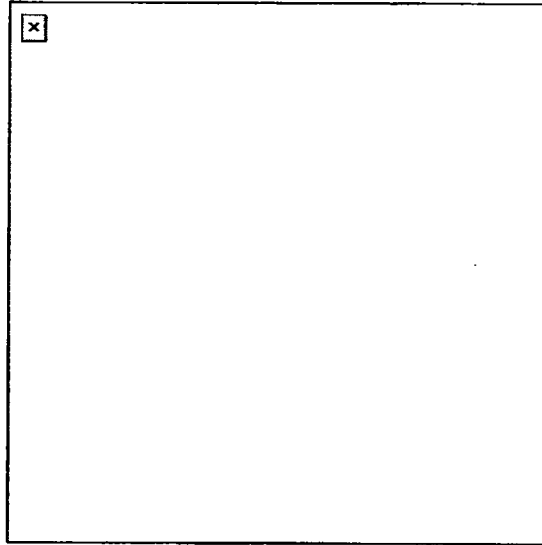


Figure 191-381-1258-3  
Squad Echelon-Left Formation

5. Execute a squad wedge formation (Figure 191-381-1258-4).

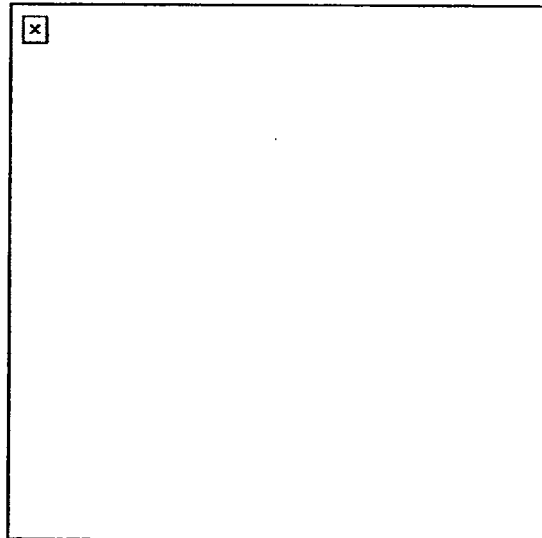


Figure 191-381-1258-4  
Squad Wedge Formation

- a. React to the command, "Squad wedge" or when the squad leader gives the hand-and-arm signal. Assume the port position.
- b. React to the command, "Move."



**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** The base man will double-time to the position indicated by the squad leader. The remaining squad members will double-time forward and position themselves in line with the base man. Odd numbered members will position themselves one pace to the left and one pace to the rear of the preceding members. Even numbered members will position themselves one pace to the right and one pace to the rear of the preceding member. All other personnel will remain at the port position until ordered to another position.

6. Execute a riot control formation while marching.
  - a. React to the command, "On guard." Assume the on-guard position (all members).
  - b. React to the command, "Forward, march." Stomp and drag at the command of execution.
    - (1) Pick up the left foot so the bottom of the left foot comes to the middle of the right calf.
    - (2) Take a step forward (approximately 15 inches) with the left foot, driving the heel into the ground.
    - (3) Drag the right foot forward so that the toes are in line with the heel of the left foot.
  - c. Maneuver around an obstacle.
    - (1) Break off into a column, to either the right or left, depending on the placement of the obstacle and the location of the member in the formation.
    - (2) Move back into formation immediately after passing the obstacle.
  - d. Execute a turn on the command, "Right turn, march" or, "Left turn, march."

**NOTE:** The member on the flank in the direction of the turn will begin marking time and slowly make the turn. The remaining members maintain their intervals and make the turn. After all members have turned the corner, the squad leader will give the command, "Forward, march."

7. Execute a riot control formation while assembling.
  - a. React to the command, "Squad, assemble" or the hand-and-arm signal given by the squad leader (right hand making a circular motion in the air). Assume the port position (all members).
  - b. React to the command, "Move."

**NOTE:** The base man will do an about face and double-time to the position indicated by the squad leader. Remaining squad members will face the base man and file in number sequence, marching in double-time, and form a column behind the base man. All other personnel will remain at the port position until ordered to another position.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Each evaluated soldier should perform at every position within the formation.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier that he is required to participate in riot control formations to control internees. Tell the soldier when the hand-and-arm signal is given he must double-time to his appropriate position within the riot control formation.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Executed a squad column formation.	—	—
2. Executed a squad line formation.	—	—
3. Executed a squad echelon-right formation.	—	—
4. Executed a squad echelon-left formation.	—	—
5. Executed a squad wedge formation.	—	—
6. Executed a riot control formation while marching.	—	—
7. Executed a riot control formation while assembling.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

STP 19-95C1-SM

**References  
Required**

**Related**  
FM 19-15  
FM 3-21.5

**Take Action in the Event of a Fire at an Internment Facility**  
**191-381-1320**

**Conditions:** You are given a fire alarm box, a fire evacuation plan, an internment facility with locked cells, keys to the locks, entrance and exit doors, windows, hallways, and stairwells.

**Standards:** In the event of a fire at an internment facility, alert all personnel and immediately and safely evacuate all internees. Maintain accountability.

**Performance Steps**

1. React to the discovery of a fire.
  - a. Activate the nearest fire alarm box according to the individual alarm box procedures. Repeat the activation process if it fails the first time.

**NOTE:** If there is not a fire alarm box, yell "fire, fire."

- b. Repeat the alarm (if necessary) until everyone is alerted.

**NOTE:** Personnel should pass along the warning as soon as it is received.

2. Evacuate all internees to the assembly area (AA) identified in the facility fire evacuation plan.
  - a. Unlock and open all cell and exit doors and leave them unlocked.
  - b. Escort internees, single file, along the evacuation route according to the fire evacuation plan. Use the identified alternate route if the route is blocked.
  - c. Keep internees orderly. Ensure that there is no running, pushing, or shoving.
3. Close all windows along the evacuation route as they are passed.
4. Ensure that all doors, hallways, and stairwells remain clear.
5. Assemble internees in the designated AA.
6. Perform additional duties assigned by the supervisor. These tasks may include—
  - a. Rechecking the cellblock to ensure that everyone is out.
  - b. Conducting a head count or a roll call in the AA (Refer to Task 191-381-1336).
7. Provide the supervisor with a status report (if required).

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Create a simulated cellblock area. Have other soldiers role-play the part of internees. Initiate the fire alarm. Tell the role-players to follow the commands of the soldier being evaluated.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to alert all personnel and immediately, safely evacuate all internees, and maintain accountability in the event of a fire.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Reacted to the discovery of a fire.	—	—
2. Evacuated all internees to the AA identified in the facility fire evacuation plan.	—	—
3. Closed all windows along the evacuation route as they were passed.	—	—
4. Ensured that all doors, hallways, and stairwells remained clear.	—	—
5. Assembled internees in the designated AA.	—	—
6. Performed additional duties assigned by the supervisor.	—	—
7. Provided the supervisor with a status report (if required).	—	—

STP 19-95C1-SM

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

**Related**

AR 190-47

FM 3-19.40

**Take Action in the Event of Disorder at an Internment Facility**  
**191-381-1321**

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to react to a reported disorder at an internment facility. You will be given Department of Defense (DD) Forms 2713 and 2714 and access to the local standing operating procedure (SOP). You are given a cue of a whistle or an appropriate alarm system to begin the task.

**Standards:** Maintain control of the internees and prepare a complete and accurate DD Form 2713 and/or DD Form 2714. Submit all paperwork to the supervisor. Observe all safety precautions.

**Performance Steps**

1. Observe internees for signs of disorderly conduct. Remain alert for small groups or individual troublemakers in places where disturbances are likely to occur (such as dining facilities, recreation areas, cellblocks, building entrances, gymnasiums, libraries, or chapels).
2. Control a single disorderly internee.
  - a. Order the internee to stop his unruly behavior. Prepare DD Forms 2713 and/or 2714 and submit them to the supervisor for internees that comply with the order.
  - b. Repeat the order for an internee not obeying the first command.
  - c. Notify the supervisor when an internee continues to ignore your order.
  - d. Order the other internees to move away from the scene of the disturbance, preferably to another room.

**CAUTION: DO NOT ATTEMPT TO SUBDUE THE INTERNEE BY YOURSELF. THE ONLY EXCEPTION IS IF LIFE OR PROPERTY IS IN IMMEDIATE DANGER. USE THE LEAST AMOUNT OF FORCE NECESSARY.**

- e. After the internee is brought under control, prepare DD Forms 2713 and/or 2714 and submit them to the supervisor.

3. Control a minor disorder involving two or more internees.

**NOTE: A minor disorder includes fighting or causing damage to equipment or property.**

- a. Request assistance by sounding the alarm as indicated in the local SOP.
  - b. Order the disorderly internees to disperse. Notify the supervisor, and wait for instructions when internees do not respond to the command.
  - c. Separate and isolate internees involved in the disorder.
  - d. Isolate the scene of the disorder by securing the cells, doors, gates, and other exits.

**NOTE: Guards in other cellblocks should secure their internees, keep order in their areas, and wait for further instructions from their supervisors.**

- e. Prepare a DD Form 2713 and/or DD Form 2714 as soon as possible following the incident (while the facts are still fresh in your mind). Submit the report to your supervisor.

4. Control a group and/or mass riot or other major disorder.

**NOTE: The same procedures apply to minor disorders that have escalated beyond control.**

- a. Sound the alarm.
  - b. Order the disorderly internees to disperse and stop their unruly behavior.
  - c. Isolate the area, and wait for the arrival of the shift correctional supervisor or immediate supervisor.
  - d. Order the ruly internees to move away from the unruly internees.
  - e. Observe the area. Identify and segregate the ring leaders and other internees taking part in the disturbance.
  - f. Brief the supervisor and follow his instructions.

**NOTE: The supervisor will advise you of the appropriate level of force to be used.**

- g. Conduct a head count as soon as the disturbance has been quelled. Conduct a roll call and notify the supervisor if there is a discrepancy in the count.
  - h. Prepare a DD Form 2713 and/or DD Form 2714. Submit the paperwork to the supervisor.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Create scenarios that require a guard to react to an internee disorder. Have other soldiers play the role of internees. Ensure that the mock internees are familiar with the rolls they are to play during the scenario.

Brief soldier: Tell the soldier to maintain control of the internees and prepare a complete and accurate DD Form 2713 and/or DD Form 2714. Tell the soldier to submit all paperwork to the supervisor and observe all safety precautions.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Observed internees for signs of disorderly conduct.	_____	_____
2. Controlled a single disorderly internee.	_____	_____
3. Controlled a minor disorder involving two or more internees.	_____	_____
4. Controlled a group and/or mass riot or other major disorder.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

DD FORM 2713

DD FORM 2714

**Related**

AR 190-47

FM 3-19.40

## Take Action in the Event of an Escape

191-381-1322

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to take action in the event of an escape. You are given a weapon with ammunition, a internee roster, a blank Department of Defense (DD) Form 2714, and a facility standing operating procedure (SOP). You are given a cue of a whistle or alarm to begin the task.

**Standards:** Respond to a internee escape attempt. Ensure that all safety precautions are followed.

### Performance Steps

**NOTE:** The term "shoot to disable" is defined as the following: discharging a weapon with the intent to stop an individual from continuing the activity which prompted the weapon firing.

1. Prevent an internee escape from inside the facility.
  - a. Sound the escape alarm according to the SOP (usually three short blasts of a whistle).
  - b. Order the internee to halt.
  - c. Repeat the order if the internee does not respond to the command.
  - d. Secure the other internees by having them lie face down on the ground or return to their cells, if in the cellblock area.
  - e. Use the minimum level of force required to prevent escape.
  - f. Brief the supervisor.
  - g. Prepare a DD Form 2714 and submit it to the supervisor.

**NOTE:** When notified of an escape attempt, follow the supervisor's instructions. The supervisor may direct you to secure the remaining internees, account for internees by performing a head count or a roll call, guard the avenues of escape and the perimeter fence, or assist other personnel in searching for the escapee.

2. Escort internees outside the facility, without the use of a weapon.

**NOTE:** You will carry a weapon only when you are directed to do so while escorting internees outside the internment facility. Weapons are normally carried when internees are considered potential security risks.

- a. Follow the proper procedures for a one-internee escape attempt (as the sole guard)
  - (1) Notify facility personnel of the escape and the direction of travel.
  - (2) Pursue the internee.
  - (3) Continue to search for the internee unless instructed to discontinue the search.
- b. Follow the proper procedures for a multiple-internee escape attempt (as the sole guard).
  - (1) Order the internee to "halt."
  - (2) Repeat the order if the internee does not obey the first command.

**NOTE:** Do not leave the other internees unattended.

**NOTE:** When a weapon is carried, shoot to disable, not to kill an internee refusing to obey the "halt" command.

**WARNING:** DO NOT SHOOT IF IT WILL ENDANGER ANYONE ELSE. DO NOT SHOOT UNLESS THE INTERNEE REFUSES TO HALT.

- (3) Request assistance from bystanders by asking them to notify the facility and the military police (MP).
- (4) Note the direction of the escaping internee, the time of the escape, and the internee's name and description. Report this information to assisting personnel or the MP.
- (5) Escort the remaining internees back to the facility as soon as possible.
- c. Follow the proper procedures for a multiple-internee escape attempt (as the senior guard, with additional internment specialists). Ensure that—
  - (1) The previously designated guard pursues the escaping internee.

**NOTE:** Prior to departing the facility, identify the guard responsible for pursuing escapees. The senior guard should always remain with the internees.

- (2) The remaining internees are secured. Direct them to lie face down.

**Performance Steps**

- (3) Notify the facility of the escape immediately (attempted or successful). Provide the facility information on any internees who successfully escaped.
  - (4) Return the remaining internees in your custody to the facility.
  - d. Prepare a DD Form 2714 and submit it to the supervisor.
3. Decline requests for information from the news media. Refer all requests for information regarding an attempted or successful escape to the Public Affairs Office (PAO).

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: This task may be evaluated with a written test or through the use of a scenario with other soldiers acting as mock internees. Inform the mock internees of their roles. Ensure that all personnel are familiar with the proper safety precautions.

Brief soldier:

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Prevented a internee escape from inside the facility.	_____	_____
2. Escorted internees outside the facility, without the use of a weapon.	_____	_____
3. Declined requests for information from the news media. Referred all requests for information regarding an attempted or successful escape to the PAO.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
DD FORM 2714

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40



## Apply Priorities of Force Within an Internment Facility

191-381-1324

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to apply force to control a internee within a internment facility. You are given a facility standard operating procedure (SOP), additional internment personnel (as required), special equipment, o-chlorobenzylidene malononitrile (CS) and oleoresin capsicum (OC) (also known as pepper spray), riot control agent dispensers, a riot baton, an authorized individual weapon, and ammunition (as required).

**Standards:** Apply the lowest level of force required to gain control of a given situation. Observe all safety precautions.

### Performance Steps

**NOTE:** The term "shoot to disable" is defined as the following: discharging a weapon with the intent to stop an individual from continuing the activity that prompted the weapon firing.

1. Use verbal persuasion and interpersonal skills (IPC) to direct disorderly internees to cooperate with the staff and follow the issued orders.

**NOTE:** The use of force must be commensurate with the situation. Do not implement force until directed to do so by supervisory personnel or according to the facility SOP. Always use the minimum level of force necessary to achieve control of the internees.

- a. Halt the onset of verbal altercations between internees or between internees and staff members.
  - b. Order disorderly internees to return to their cells or areas or order an unruly internee into special housing, to surrender property, or prepare to be placed in restraints.
  - c. Show groups of internees that authority prevails and order will be restored. Ensure that internees understand that the means are available to restore order by vigorous application of force if necessary.
2. Display a show of force to demonstrate to disorderly internees that correctional personnel can stop a disturbance.

**NOTE:** This level of force consists of assembling personnel and equipment at the scene to show the internees that the capability exists to regain control of the situation.

- a. Draw special equipment, as directed by the supervisor.
  - b. Report to the location, as directed by the supervisor.
  - c. Assume the position, as directed by the supervisor.
  - d. Remain silent.
  - e. Do not engage disorderly internees unless directed to do so.
  - f. Await further orders from the supervisor.
3. Use chemical aerosol irritant projectors when directed to do so by the supervisor. Irritants may be used if an internee—

**NOTE:** The installation commander or his designated representative(s) must authorize the use of CS and OC. The authorization must be in writing and on file at the facility.

- a. Displays unruly behavior and is known to have a weapon in his possession.
- b. Has barricaded himself inside his cell.
- c. Has smeared a slippery substance on his body or on the floor and walls of the cell or the immediate location.
- d. Poses the risk of serious physical injury or the danger of a major disturbance or serious property damage.

**NOTE:** All chemical aerosol irritant projectors must be approved by local and host nations.

**CAUTION:** UNLESS THE COMMANDER DETERMINES THAT CIRCUMSTANCES REQUIRE IMMEDIATE USE OF OC, HAVE A MEDICAL DOCTOR REVIEW THE INTERNEE'S MEDICAL FILE TO DETERMINE IF THERE ARE MEDICAL CONDITIONS SUCH AS ASTHMA, EMPHYSEMA, BRONCHITIS, OR TUBERCULOSIS.

## Performance Steps

4. Use physical force (other than weapons fire) only when necessary and reasonable to control the situation.

**NOTE: Physical force is authorized by the facility commander and may be used in instances when it is needed to remove the ringleaders and/or return disorderly internees back to their cells or designated areas.**

- a. Use physical force against an internee—
  - (1) In self-defense.
  - (2) To prevent an escape.
  - (3) To prevent injury to persons or damage to property.
  - (4) To quell a disturbance.
  - (5) To control an unruly internee.
  - (6) To ensure hygiene requirements such as baths, haircuts, and shaves.

**NOTE: Do not use physical force unless it is authorized by the facility commander. Ensure that there is enough personnel to overcome the individual's resistance.**

- b. Use riot batons according to the local SOP.
- c. Use high-pressure water according to the local SOP.

**WARNING: NEVER SPRAY HIGH-PRESSURE WATER DIRECTLY AT THE INTERNEE'S HEAD.**

- (1) Use the water to disperse a group of disorderly internees.
- (2) Spray the water over the internee's head (cold water) or at his lower body (legs and feet).

5. Display deadly force capability to show disorderly internees that the security personnel can and will stop the disturbance.

**NOTE: Displaying the ability to use deadly force consists of assembling enough personnel and weapons at the scene to stop the disturbance. The presentation may include yelling "halt", drawing a weapon, and pointing it at the internee attempting to escape.**

**NOTE: Always follow the appropriate plans, orders, SOPs, and instructions authorized by the installation commander.**

6. Use deadly force.

**NOTE: Internment facility commanders and installation commanders who have confinement facilities under their command will take the necessary action to authorize specifically designated representative(s) to direct the use of firearms in the event of a riot or other disturbance. They will publish the authorizations in the appropriate plans, orders, SOPs, and instructions. The commander will also specify the types of weapons to be used. Weapons should be fired by selected marksman.**

**DANGER: DO NOT USE DEADLY FORCE UNLESS YOU ARE ORDERED TO DO SO BY THE INSTALLATION COMMANDER, FACILITY COMMANDER, OR HIS DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE. SHOOT TO DISABLE; NEVER SHOOT TO KILL.**

- a. Draw individual weapons as directed by your supervisor and operate them according to their specific instructions. Fire only at the internees specifically identified by your supervisor.
- b. Use full firepower.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: This task may be evaluated using a written test or with the use of scenarios and simulated situations requiring the use of force. Have other soldiers role-play as internees.

**Brief soldier:** When scenarios and simulated situations are used, tell the evaluated soldier that he must perform all necessary steps.

## Performance Measures

GO    NO GO

1. Used verbal persuasion and IPC to direct disorderly internees to cooperate with the staff and follow the issued orders

—    —

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
2. Displayed a show of force to demonstrate to disorderly internees that correctional personnel could stop a disturbance.	—	—
3. Used chemical aerosol irritant projectors when directed to do so by the supervisor.	—	—
4. Used physical force (other than weapons fire) only when necessary and reasonable to control the situation.	—	—
5. Displayed deadly force capability.	—	—
6. Used deadly force.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
AR 190-14  
AR 190-47  
AR 190-8  
FM 19-15

**Perform as a Member of a Forced Cell Move (FCM) Team**

**191-381-1369**

**Conditions:** Given an unruly subject; a requirement to perform as a member of a FCM team within an internment facility; four other team members to make up a five-member team; a helmet with the appropriate number; a face shield for the helmet; a flak vest with the appropriate number; arm and/or elbow guards; gloves; leg and/or shin guards; groin protectors; a police pinning and/or protective shield; a surgical mask; mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear; wet-weather gear; hand irons with a key; leg irons with a key; flexi-cuffs with cutters; a set of restraining straps with a key; oleoresin capsicum (OC) (also known as pepper spray); a straitjacket; a medical litter; a video camera with a tape and an operator; support personnel to include a duty investigator, a duty medic, an officer in charge (OIC); and a facility standing operating procedure (SOP).

**Standards:** Execute the assigned duties as a FCM team member using the minimum amount of force necessary to subdue, restrain, and/or move an unruly internee who is a threat to himself or to others.

**Performance Steps**

**WARNING: IF THE INTERNEE IS HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS (HIV) POSITIVE OR HAS ACQUIRED IMMUNODEFICIENCY SYNDROME (AIDS), TAKE SPECIAL PRECAUTIONS TO INCLUDE THE USE OF OC AND THE WEARING OF MOPP AND/OR WET-WEATHER GEAR AND A SURGICAL MASK, ACCORDING TO THE LOCAL SOP.**

**CAUTION: EACH TEAM MEMBER MUST LEARN THE DUTIES OF THE OTHER TEAM MEMBERS TO ENSURE THE SAFETY OF THE TEAM.**

**NOTE: The team leader, who will always be team member number 5, will give all commands.**

**NOTE: The word "cell" used in this task may also apply to any location in which someone is confined.**

1. Put on the required uniform and gear on notification of the requirement for a FCM. Ensure that the number on the back of your helmet and vest reflect your position on the team.
2. Position yourself in a line formation in the order of your position on the team, and assume the position of attention.
3. Receive a briefing from the OIC/noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).
4. Announce the mission statement to the camera.
  - a. Step in front of the camera in the order of your position on the team and make the appropriate statement as follows:
    - (1) Team member number 1: "I am \_\_\_\_\_ (state your rank and name). I am the number 1 man. I will carry the shield to protect the team. My mission is to pin the prisoner using the minimum amount of force necessary. I will also secure the prisoner's head and protect it from injury throughout the move."
    - (2) Team member number 2: "I am \_\_\_\_\_ (state your rank and name). I am the number 2 man. My mission is to secure the internee's right arm and apply the wrist restraints to the internee, using the minimum amount of force necessary. I will carry the wrist restraints." (Place the restraints in the right vest pocket of your flak vest.)
    - (3) Team member number 3: "I am \_\_\_\_\_ (state your rank and name). I am the number 3 man. My mission is to secure the internee's left arm and to assist the number 2 man in applying the wrist restraints to the internee, using the minimum amount of force necessary."

**Performance Steps**

- (4) Team member number 4: "I am \_\_\_\_\_ (state your rank and name). I am the number 4 man. My mission is to secure the internee's right leg and apply the leg restraints to the internee, using the minimum amount of force necessary. I will carry the leg restraints." (Place the restraints in the right vest pocket of your flak vest.)
- (5) Team member number 5: "I am \_\_\_\_\_ (state your rank and name). I am the number 5 man and the team leader. My mission is to secure the internee's left leg and assist the number 4 man in applying the leg restraints to the internee, using the minimum amount of force necessary. I am responsible for ensuring that the team uses the minimum amount of force necessary at all times."
- b. Hold your equipment up at shoulder height to be recorded by the camera.
- c. Execute an about face to allow the camera to record the number on the back of your helmet and flak vest.
- d. Take one step forward and execute another about face, returning to your position in the formation.

**CAUTION: ALWAYS USE THE MINIMUM AMOUNT OF FORCE NECESSARY TO SUCCESSFULLY PERFORM YOUR ASSIGNED DUTIES.**

- 5. Assume the ready position upon receiving the command to move the unruly internee.

**NOTE: The ready position is a semi crouched position with the body leaning slightly forward, knees bent, and feet more than shoulder width apart. The left foot is facing forward 15 inches in front of the right foot. The right foot is at a 45° angle.**

- 6. Prepare to move into the cell. Perform the following duties assigned to your position on the team:
  - a. Team members 2 through 5. Grab the vest of the team member in front of you at the shoulder blade level, ready to push the team into the cell as the entrance to the cell is opened. Figures 191-381-1369-1 and 191-381-1369-2.

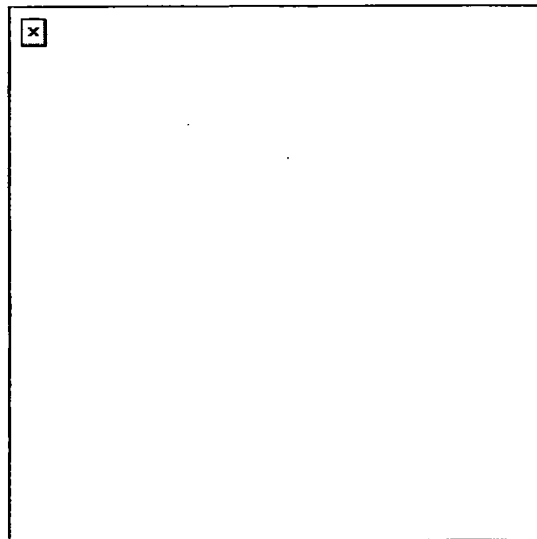


Figure 191-381-1369-1  
Team From the Front

**Performance Steps**

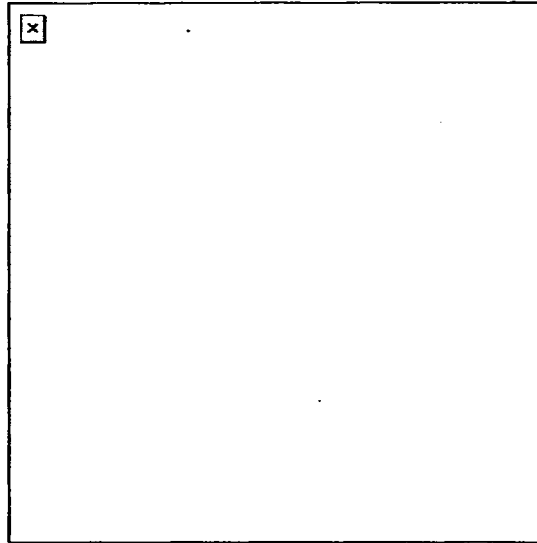


Figure 191-381-1369-2  
Team From the Rear

**CAUTION: REMAIN SILENT DURING THE MOVE EXCEPT TO RELAY INSTRUCTIONS TO OTHER TEAM MEMBERS OR TO ANSWER THE TEAM LEADER. USE NONVERBAL COMMUNICATION SKILLS ACCORDING TO THE LOCAL SOP TO RELAY INFORMATION TO OTHER TEAM MEMBERS WHEN POSSIBLE.**

**b. Team member number 1.**

- (1) Hold the protective and/or pinning shield up in front of yourself and the team immediately upon arriving at the cell, before receiving the command to enter the cell.
- (2) Observe the entire location. Check for anything that may cause harm to the team members or the internee. Consider things such as weapons, lights (on or off), or wet floor.
- (3) Announce the exact location of the internee in a loud, clear voice, whether or not he is armed, and/or if any condition identified in step 6b(2) exists.

**NOTE: CAUTION: DO NOT TAKE YOUR EYES OFF OF THE INTERNEE. CONSTANTLY OBSERVE THE INTERNEE TO ENSURE THAT NO WEAPONS ARE PRODUCED. IMMEDIATELY RELAY TO THE TEAM ANY SUDDEN CHANGE IN THE CONDITIONS.**

**NOTE: According to Army regulations and the local SOP, the OIC/NCOIC will determine the use of OC at this time.**

- (4) Observe for the nonverbal signal from the team that each member has heard and understands. Repeat the information if you do not receive an immediate response.
  - (5) Announce, "Ready" when you have received the nonverbal signal of understanding from team member number 2.
- c. Give the nonverbal signal of understanding by firmly tapping your right hand on the right shoulder of the team member to your front and then immediately return to the ready position beginning at the back of the formation with team member number 5.**

**NOTE: If you do not understand the instructions, remain as you are until the information is repeated.**

**NOTE: The team leader will cue the OIC/NCOIC when he has heard team member number 1 announce, "Ready."**

### Performance Steps

7. Perform the following duties assigned to your position on the team on receipt of the command "Enter," and as the entrance to the cell opens:

- a. Team member number 1.

- (1) Move immediately into the cell and pin the internee with the shield, using the minimum amount of force necessary.

**NOTE: If the internee is posing no immediate threat to himself or the team, the shield may be dropped before entering the cell.**

- (2) Move to secure the internee's head as the other team members simultaneously move into their positions to secure the internee using the minimum amount of force necessary.

- (a) Place the palms of your hands on the sides of the internee's head.

- (b) Turn the internee's head to the side.

**WARNING: KEEP YOUR FINGERS AWAY FROM THE INTERNEE'S EYES, MOUTH, AND THROAT.**

- (c) Keep both hands on the internee's head at all times, ensuring that it is protected from injury throughout the move.

- (3) Assist the team in lowering the internee's body to the ground.

- (a) Guide and protect the internee's head as the team lowers his body to the ground, keeping one hand between his head and the ground at all times.

- (b) Position yourself on your knees.

- (4) Position yourself to carry the internee at the direction of the team leader.

- (a) Place your feet flat on the ground.

- (b) Assume a crouched position.

- b. Team member number 2.

- (1) Secure the internee's right arm.

- (2) Apply the wrist restraints to the internee's wrists, securing the wrists behind the internee's back, using the minimum amount of force necessary.

- (3) Announce, "Hand secure" to the team after applying the wrist restraints.

- (4) Slide your left knee on the ground, securing the internee's left elbow.

- (5) Maintain a positive grip of the internee's right wrist, applying the minimum amount of pressure necessary to prevent the internee from resisting or causing injury to himself or another team member.

- (6) Position yourself as follows on the command from the team leader to prepare to carry the internee:

- (a) Place both feet flat on the ground.

- (b) Assume a crouched position.

- (c) Place both hands under the internee's chest.

- (d) Grasp team member number 3's hands.

- c. Team member number 3.

- (1) Secure the internee's left arm on entering the cell.

- (2) Assist team member number 2 in applying the wrist restraints using the minimum amount of force necessary.

- (3) Slide your right knee on the ground securing the internee's left elbow.

- (4) Maintain a positive grip of the internee's left wrist, applying the minimum amount of pressure necessary to prevent the internee from resisting or causing injury to himself or another team member.

- (5) Prepare to carry the internee on receipt of a command from the team leader.

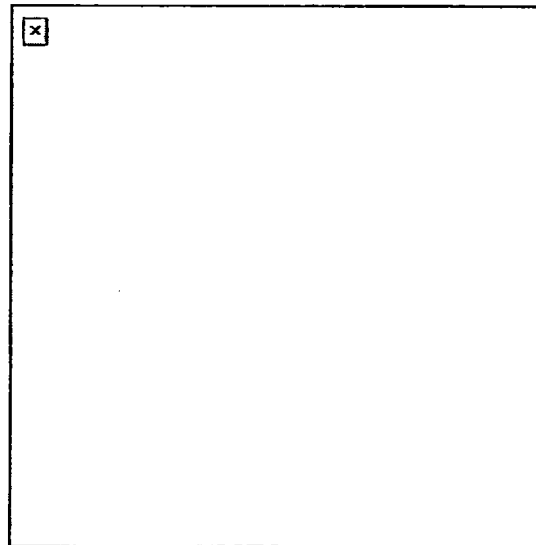
- (a) Place your feet flat on the ground.

- (b) Assume a crouched position.

- (c) Place both hands underneath the internee's chest.

- (d) Grasp team member number 2's hands (Figure 191-381-1369-3).

**Performance Steps**



191-381-1369-3

Team Restraining the Internee

- d. Team member number 4.
  - (1) Secure the internee's right leg on entering the cell.
  - (2) Apply leg restraints to the internee's ankles using the minimum amount of force necessary.
  - (3) Announce "Legs secure" to the team after applying the leg restraints.
  - (4) Maintain a positive grip of the internee's right foot and calf, applying the minimum amount of pressure necessary to prevent the internee from resisting or causing injury to himself or another team member.
  - (5) Place both knees on the ground to the side of the internee.
  - (6) Position yourself to carry the internee as follows at the discretion of the team leader:
    - (a) Place your feet flat on the ground.
    - (b) Assume a crouched position.
    - (c) Encircle and secure the internee's right thigh using both arms and the minimum amount of force necessary.
- e. Team member number 5.
  - (1) Give all commands during the FCM.
  - (2) Signal the OIC/NCOIC to open the entrance to the cell when the team is prepared to enter, using nonverbal communication.
  - (3) Secure the internee's left leg on entering the cell.
  - (4) Assist team member number 4 in applying the leg restraints, using the minimum amount of force necessary.
  - (5) Maintain a positive grip of the internee's left foot and calf, applying the minimum amount of pressure necessary to prevent the internee from resisting or causing injury to himself or another team member.
  - (6) Place both knees on the ground to the side of the internee.
  - (7) Check all team members visually to ensure that they have completed their tasks and are safe.
  - (8) Check the internee to ensure he is properly restrained.
  - (9) Check the cell for hazards visually.
  - (10) Issue the commands to carry the internee out of the cell after determining that the team is ready.
  - (11) Position yourself to carry the internee.



**Performance Steps**

- (a) Place your feet flat on the ground.
  - (b) Assume a crouched position.
  - (c) Using both arms encircle and secure the internee's left thigh using the minimum amount of force necessary.
8. Remove the internee from the cell (all team members).
- a. Position yourself to carry the internee on receipt of the command, "Team, prepare to lift."
  - b. Lift the internee to waist height on receipt of the command, "Team, lift" (Figure 191-381-1369-4).

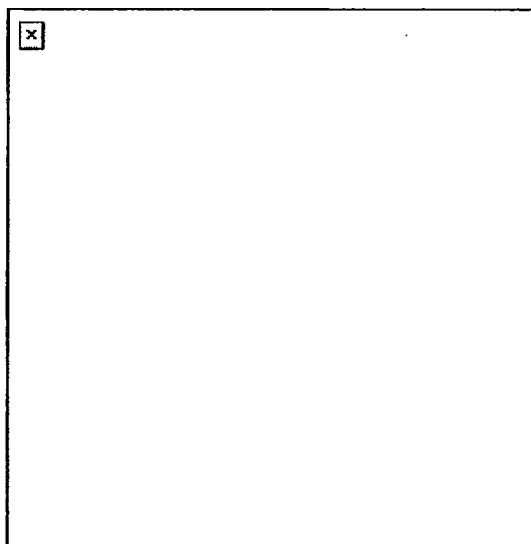


Figure 191-381-1369-4  
Internee Lifted and Turned

- c. Turn the internee's body to face the team leader on receipt of the command, "Team, prepare to turn," and then the command, "Team, turn."
  - d. Grasp the forearms of the team member facing you.
- NOTE: Team member 1 is not facing another team member.**
- e. The team leader will issue the preparatory command, "Team, prepare to move," and then the command "Team, move."

9. Move the internee out of the cell using short, choppy steps on receipt of the command, "Team, move."

**CAUTION: MAKE SURE THAT YOU HOLD THE INTERNEE SECURELY.**

**WARNING: ALWAYS ENSURE THAT THE INTERNEE IS MOVED HEAD FIRST WHEN GOING UP STAIRS AND FEET FIRST WHEN GOING DOWN STAIRS.**

- 10. Issue the preparatory command, "Team, prepare to stop," and then the command, "Team, stop," on arrival at the assigned destination, if you are the team leader.
- 11. Halt immediately on receipt of the command, "Team, stop."
- 12. Issue the preparatory command, "Team, prepare to turn," and then the command, "Team, turn," if you are the team leader.
- 13. Turn the internee face down.
  - a. Team members number 2 and 3 step back and regrasp each other's hands and turn the internee.

**Performance Steps**

- b. Team members number 4 and 5 step back, regrasp the internee's upper thigh on the side of the body nearest them, and turn the internee simultaneously with team member numbers 2 and 3.
14. Issue the preparatory command, "Team, prepare to lower," and then the command, "Team, lower," if you are the team leader.
15. Lower the internee slowly and simultaneously to the bunk or floor with the other team members upon receipt of the command to lower the internee. Use the minimum amount of force necessary to subdue the internee if he struggles (Figure 191-381-1369-5). Perform the following duties as assigned:

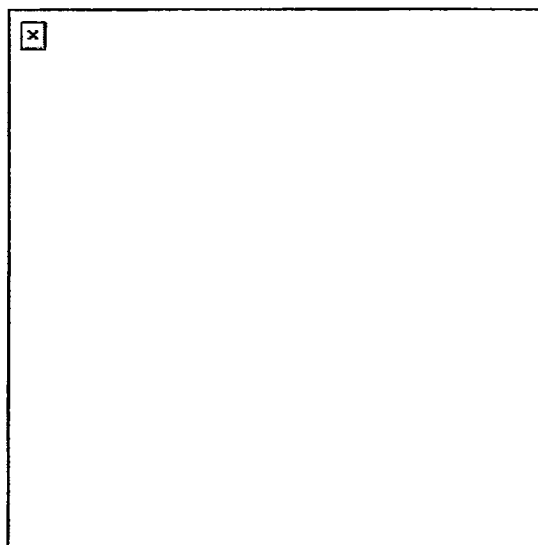


Figure 191-381-1369-5  
Internee Lowered

- a. Team member number 1. Kneel and continue to secure the internee's head.
    - b. Team member number 2.
      - (1) Slide your left knee on the ground securing the internee's right elbow in place.
      - (2) Maintain a positive grip of the internee's right wrist applying the minimum amount of pressure necessary to prevent the internee from resisting or causing injury to himself or another team member.
    - c. Team member number 3.
      - (1) Slide your left knee on the ground securing the internee's left elbow in place.
      - (2) Maintain a positive grip of the internee's left wrist, applying the minimum amount of pressure necessary to prevent the internee from resisting or causing injury to himself or another team member.
    - d. Team member number 4.
      - (1) Grasp the internee's right foot and calf, bend it upward crossing the buttocks, and apply the minimum amount of pressure to the foot necessary to prevent the internee from resisting or causing injury to himself or another team member.
      - (2) Place both of your knees on the ground to the rear of the internee.
    - e. Team member number 5.
      - (1) Grasp the internee's left foot and calf, bend it upward crossing the buttocks, and apply the minimum amount of pressure to the foot necessary to prevent the internee from resisting or causing injury to himself or another team member.
      - (2) Place both knees of your knees on the ground to the rear of the internee.
      - (3) Check the team visually to ensure that they are safe.

**Performance Steps**

- (4) Check the internee and cell visually for any hazards.
  - 16. Remove the restraints. Perform the following duties assigned to your position on the team:
    - a. Team leader. Signal the team to remove the restraints using nonverbal communication techniques.
    - b. Team member number 2.
      - (1) Remove the wrist restraints while team member number 3 temporarily secures both of the internee's wrists using the minimum amount of force.
      - (2) Announce to the team, "Hands unsecure."
      - (3) Retain the wrist restraints by placing them back into the right breast pocket of your flak vest.
      - (4) Assist team member number 3 in securing the internee's wrists.
    - c. Team member number 3. Assist team member number 2 by securing both of the internee's hands behind the internee's back.
    - d. Team member number 4.
      - (1) Remove the leg restraints while team member number 5 temporarily secures both of the internee's legs using the minimum amount of force.
      - (2) Announce to the team, "Legs unsecure."
      - (3) Retain the leg restraints by placing them back into the right breast pocket of your flak vest.
      - (4) Assist team member number 5 in securing the internee's leg.
    - e. Team member number 5.
      - (1) Assist team member number 4 by securing the internee's legs.
        - (a) Cross the internee's legs at the ankles.
        - (b) Fold the internee's legs against their buttocks.
        - (c) Apply the minimum amount of pressure necessary to secure the internee's legs and prevent him from resisting or causing injury to himself or another team member.
      - (2) Check all team members visually to ensure that they have completed all tasks, are ready to exit the cell and that the internee is secure.
      - (3) Signal the team members to exit the cell using nonverbal communication techniques.
  - 17. Exit the cell. Perform the following actions assigned to your position on the team:
- NOTE: Exit in reverse order of entry. Each team member grabs the vest of the team member in front of them as they exit the cell and continues to hold on until the entire team has exited. When team member numbers 5, 4, and 3 exit the cell, they remain in the ready position, prepared to reenter (according to the facility SOP) and assist the team if necessary.**
- a. Team member number 5.
    - (1) Signal team member number 4 that you are ready to exit using nonverbal communication.
    - (2) Wait until the team member number 4 gets into the correct position.
    - (3) Tap your palm firmly on the back of team member number 4 signaling that you are exiting the cell.
    - (4) Back out slowly, keeping your eyes fixed on the team and the internee.
    - (5) State, "5 man, out," as soon as you are out of the cell (Figure 191-381-1369-6).

**Performance Steps**

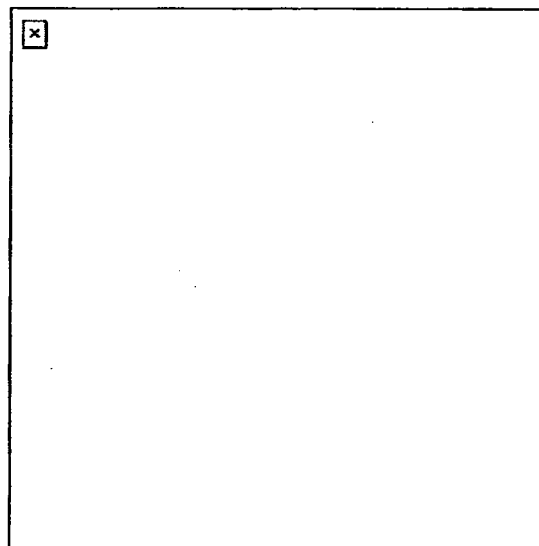


Figure 191-381-1369-6  
Team Member Number Five Out

- b. Team member number 4.
  - (1) Position your body, on your knees, to the rear of the internee and grasp the internee's crossed feet with both hands and apply the minimum amount of pressure necessary to prevent the internee from resisting or causing injury to himself or another team member immediately on receipt of the signal to exit.
  - (2) Signal team member number 3 that you are ready to exit using nonverbal communication.
  - (3) Wait for team member number 3 to get into position.
  - (4) Tap your palm firmly on the back of team member number 3 signaling that you are exiting the cell.
  - (5) Back out slowly, keeping your eyes fixed on the team and the internee.
  - (6) State, "4 man, out," as soon as you are out of the cell
- c. Team member number 3.
  - (1) Assume the position of team member number 4 immediately on receipt of the signal to exit the cell.
  - (2) Position your body, on your knees, to the rear of the internee and grasp the internee's crossed feet with both hands applying the minimum amount of pressure necessary to prevent the internee from resisting or causing injury to himself or another team member.
  - (3) Signal team member number 2 that you are ready to exit using nonverbal communication.
  - (4) Wait for team member number 2 to get into position.
  - (5) Tap the palm of your hand firmly on the back of team member number 2, signaling that you are exiting the cell.
  - (6) Back out slowly, keeping your eyes fixed on the team and the internee.
  - (7) State, "3 man, out," as soon as you are out of the cell.
- d. Team members 2 and 1 continue to restrain the internee while team members number 5, 4 and 3 exit the cell.
  - (1) Team member number 2.
    - (a) Assume the position of team member number 3 immediately on receipt of the signal to exit the cell.
    - (b) Perform step 17c(2).

**Performance Steps**

- (c) Signal team member number 1 that you are ready to exit, using nonverbal communication.
- (d) Watch for and respond to the nonverbal commands of team member number 1 (Figure 191-381-1369-7).

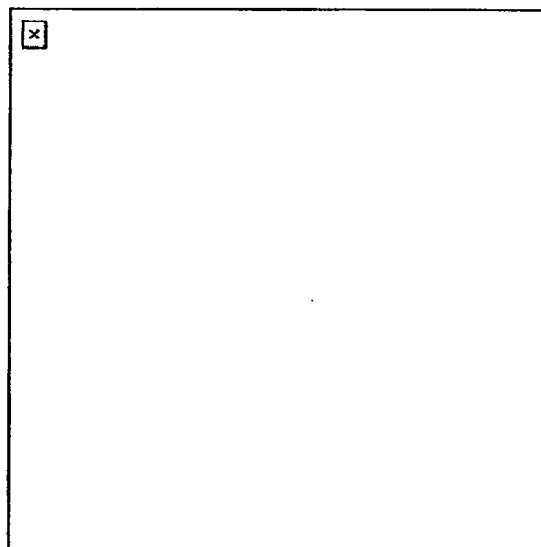


Figure 191-381-1369-7  
Team Members One and Two Preparing to Exit

- (2) Team member number 1.
  - (a) Position yourself to the side of the internee's head and back, securing the internee's hands behind his back simultaneously with team member number 2 as he assumes the position outlined in step 17c(2).
  - (b) Signal team member number 2 that you are ready to exit using nonverbal communication.
  - (c) Watch for and respond to the nonverbal commands of team member number 1.
- e. Team leader.
  - (1) Order the inmate to remain in the prone position at this time and to remain there until the team has exited the cell and the cell has been secured.
  - (2) Cue the OIC/NCOIC to secure the cell as team members number 2 and 1 exit.
- f. Team member numbers 3, 4, and 5. Assist team members number 2 and 1 to exit the cell by pulling them out quickly, quietly, and simultaneously.
- g. All team members.
  - (1) Position yourselves in order, in column formation.
  - (2) Follow the commands of the team leader.
- h. Team leader.
  - (1) Give the command, "Attention."
  - (2) Give the appropriate command to depart the area (for example, "Team, column right," or "Team, column left").
  - (3) March the team, in a column formation, away from the area.

**NOTE: As the team departs, the medic will reevaluate the internee's status.**

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Prepare a mock internment area, and have all the required equipment available. Assign each team member his position. Have role players play the part of the OIC, the photographer, the medic, and the unruly internee.

**Brief soldier:** Tell each team member and each role-player the actions they are to take.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
1. Put on the required uniform and gear on notification of the requirement for a FCM. Ensured that number on the back of his helmet and vest reflected his position on the team.	—	—
2. Positioned himself in a line formation, in the order of his position on the team, and assumed the position of attention.	—	—
3. Received a briefing from the OIC/NCOIC.	—	—
4. Announced the mission statement to the camera.	—	—
5. Assumed the ready position upon receiving the command to move the unruly internee.	—	—
6. Prepared to move into the cell.	—	—
7. Performed the duties assigned to his position on the team on receipt of the command, "Enter," and as the entrance to the cell opened.	—	—
8. Removed the internee from the cell (all team members).	—	—
9. Moved the internee out of the cell using short, choppy steps on receipt of the command, "Team, move."	—	—
10. Issued the preparatory command, "Team, prepare to stop," and then the command, "Team, stop" on arrival at the assigned destination if he was the team leader.	—	—
11. Halted immediately on receipt of the command, "Team, stop."	—	—
12. Issued the preparatory command, "Team, prepare to turn," and then the command, "Team, turn," if he was the team leader.	—	—
13. Turned the internee face down.	—	—
14. Issued the preparatory command, "Team, prepare to lower," and then the command, "Team, lower," if he was the team leader.	—	—
15. Lowered the internee slowly and simultaneously to the bunk or floor with the other team members upon receipt of the command to lower the internee. Used the minimum amount of force necessary to subdue the internee if he struggled.	—	—
16. Removed the restraints.	—	—
17. Exited the cell.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References  
Required**

**Related**  
AR 190-14  
AR 190-47  
FM 19-15  
FM 3-19.40  
FM 3-21.5  
FM 3-25.150

**React to an Internee Attack Using Self-Defense Techniques****191-381-1370**

**Conditions:** You are given a situation that requires you to use physical force against an internee who is attacking you in an internment facility. All lower levels of force have been ineffective.

**Standards:** Select the appropriate unarmed self-defense technique and perform all the necessary steps to defend yourself against a physical attack.

**Performance Steps**

1. Defend yourself against a front choke (Figure 191-381-1370-1).

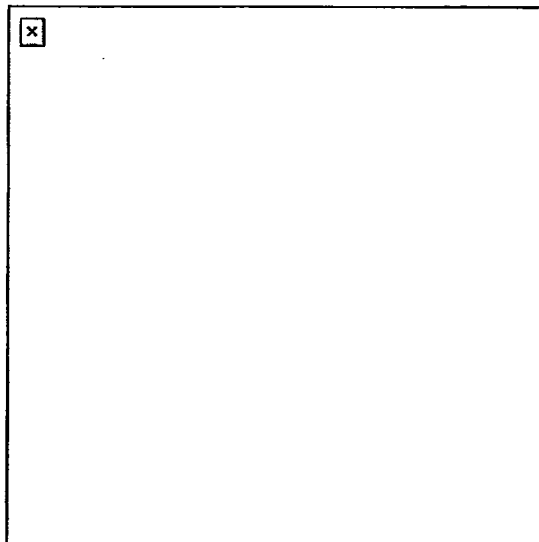


Figure 191-381-1370-1  
Front Choke

- a. Make a fist with your strong hand and simultaneously raise it until your arm is vertical and the biceps is as close to your ear as possible (Figure 191-381-1370-2).

**Performance Steps**

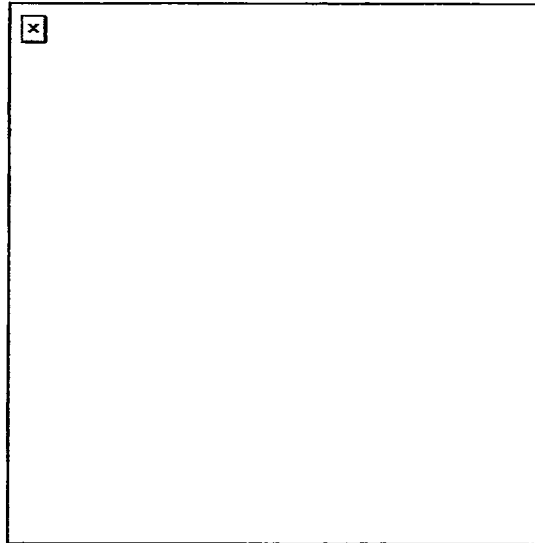


Figure 191-381-1370-2  
Raised Strong Hand (Front Choke)

- b. Place your strong foot in front of the internee's opposite foot, and rotate your upper body into the internee's wrist so that you are sideways to the internee.
- c. Bring your strong arm down and across both of the internee's arms (Figure 191-381-1370-3).

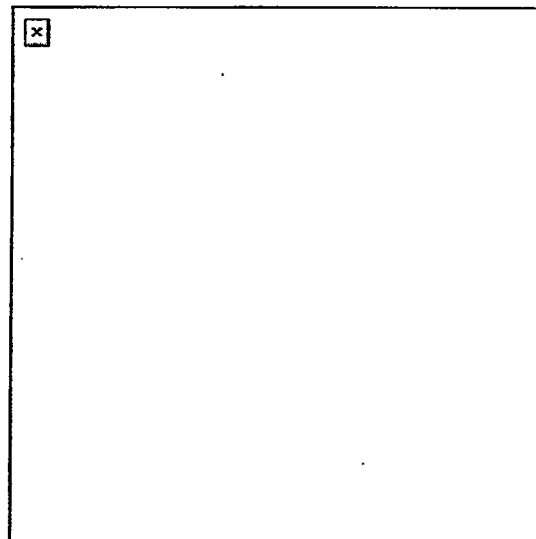


Figure 191-381-1370-3  
Strong Arm Down

- d. Bring your strong fist back toward your weak shoulder and immediately snap your arm toward the internee (191-381-1370-4). Strike the internee with—



**Performance Steps**

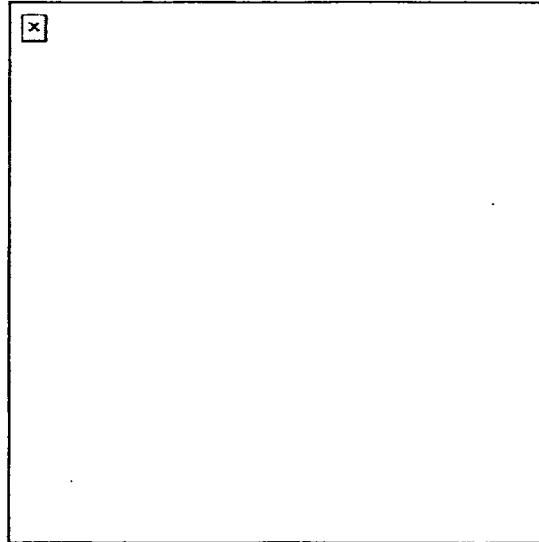


Figure 191-381-1370-4  
Elbow Strike to the Internee

- (1) An elbow to the hinge of the jaw.
- (2) A knuckle to the temple.
- e. Recover your strong arm by bringing it back to your weak shoulder.
- 2. Defend yourself against a rear choke.
  - a. Make a fist with your strong hand, and raise it so that your arm is vertical and your biceps is as close as possible to your ear. (Figure 191-381-1370-5).

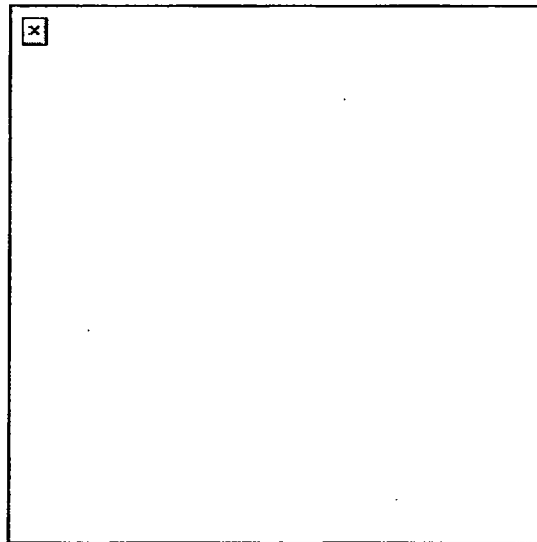


Figure 191-381-1370-5  
Raised Strong Hand (Rear Choke)

- b. Pivot on the ball of your weak foot and place your strong foot in front of the internee's opposite foot. Rotate your upper body into the internee's wrist (Figure 191-381-1370-6).

**Performance Steps**

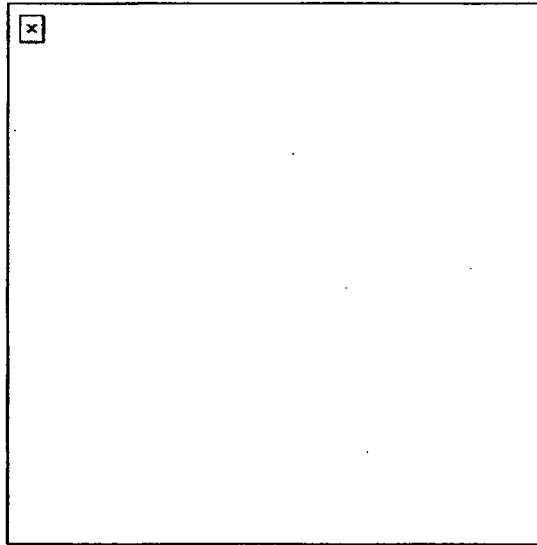


Figure 191-381-1370-6  
Rotate Toward the Internee

- c. Swing your strong arm back and down in a windmill motion, encircling the internee's arms (Figure 191-381-1370-7).

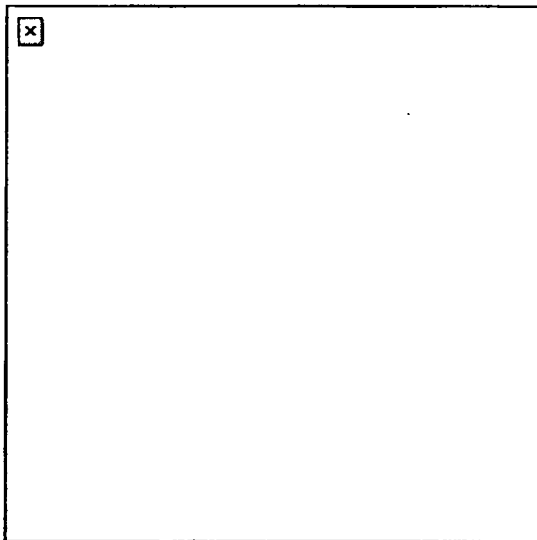


Figure 191-383-1370-7  
Encircle the Internee's Arms

- d. Quickly wrap your strong arm around the internee's arms at, or just below, the elbow. Use your weak hand to—
- (1) Punch the internee in the groin.
  - (2) Punch the internee in the solar plexus.
  - (3) Strike the edge of your hand to the kidney (Figure 191-381-1370-8).

## Performance Steps

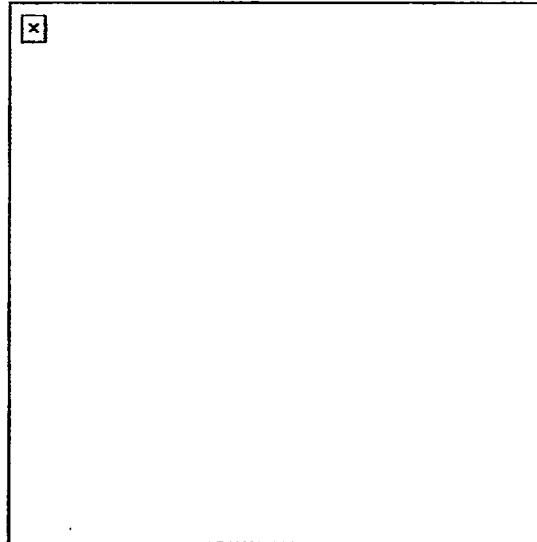


Figure 191-381-1370-8  
Strike to the Internee's Knee

- e. Recover your weak hand by bringing it back to your side in preparation for a second blow.
- 3. Perform a headlock escape.
  - a. Turn your chin toward the internee's body to prevent choking (Figure 191-381-1370-9).

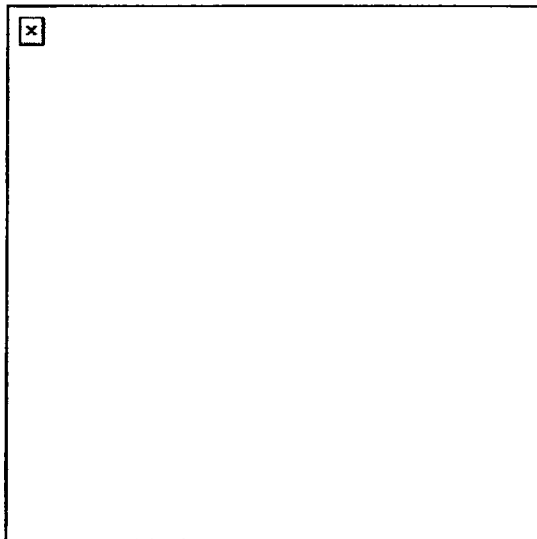
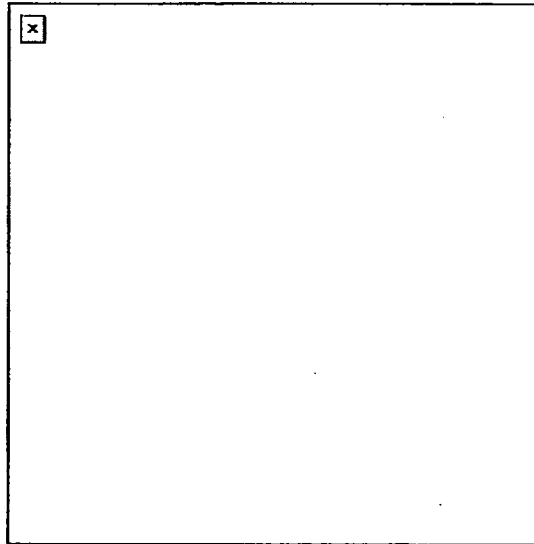


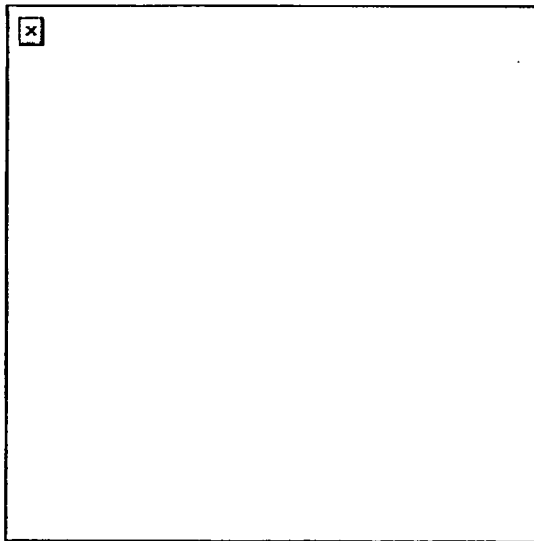
Figure 191-381-1370-9  
Prevent Choking in a Headlock

- b. Slide a hand up along the opponent's back, depending on the side from which you are being held (the left hand if on the left side and the right hand if on the right). Slide the hand up along the opponent's back, around to his face and find the sensitive nerve under his nose (Figures 191-381-1370-10 and 191-381-1370-11).

**Performance Steps**



**Figure 191-381-1370-10**  
Slide Your Hand Up and Around to His Face



**Figure 191-381-1370-11**  
Find the Sensitive Nerve Under His Nose

**WARNING: AVOID PLACING FINGERS NEAR THE INTERNEE'S MOUTH SO THAT YOU ARE NOT BITTEN.**

- c. Pull the opponent back, forcing them down and across your knee and then to the ground, keeping your feet more than shoulder width apart.
- d. Maintain control by keeping pressure under the nose (Figure 191-381-1370-12).

## Performance Steps

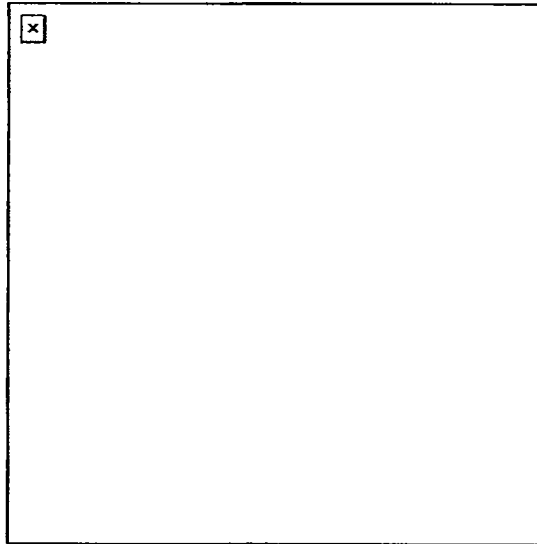


Figure 191-381-1370-12  
Maintain Control by Keeping Pressure Under the Nose

- e. Strike the internee in the groin.
- 4. Defend yourself against a collar or lapel grab.
  - a. Reach up and grab the internee's hand when he grabs your collar or lapel (to prevent him from withdrawing it). Step backwards to pull him off balance (Figure 191-381-1370-13).

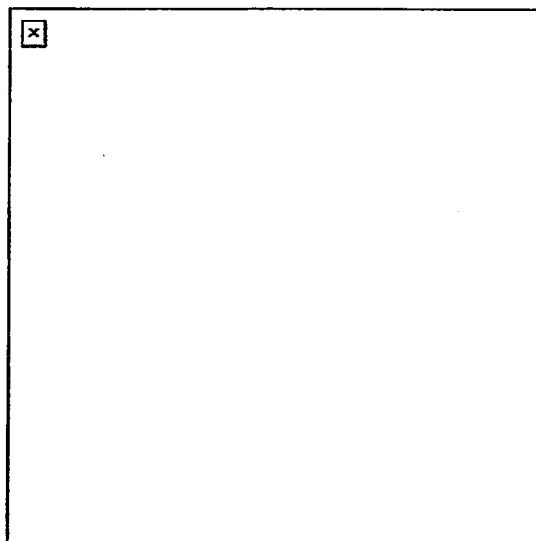


Figure 191-381-1370-13  
Grab the Internee's Hand While Pulling Him Off Balance

- b. Peel off the internee's hand by grabbing his thumb and bending it outward (Figure 191-381-1370-14).

**Performance Steps**

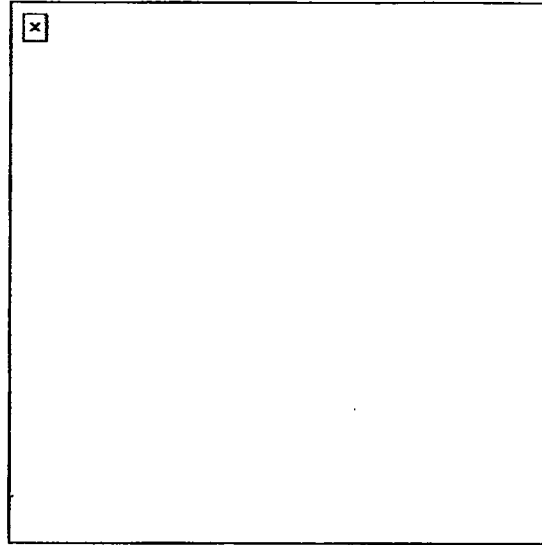


Figure 191-381-1370-14  
Grab the Internee's Thumb and Bend it Outward

**NOTE:** Keep the opponent's hand close to your body where you have the greatest amount of control.

- c. Turn your body inward toward the arm being held, turn the internee's wrist outward at a 45-degree angle, and bend it toward the elbow (Figure 191-381-1370-15).

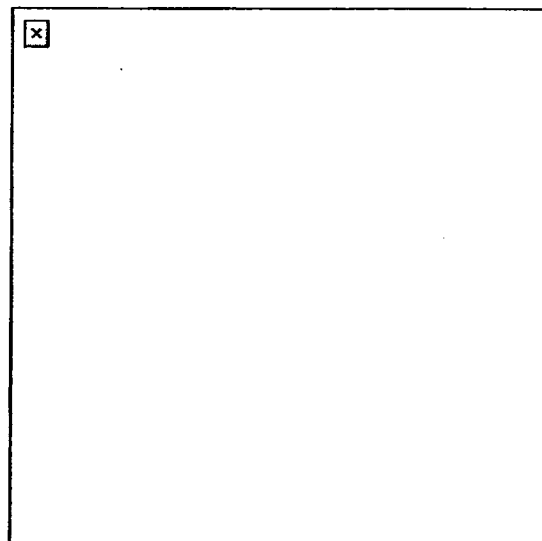


Figure 191-381-1370-15  
Turn Your Body and The Internee's Wrist Inward

- d. Drive the internee to the ground by putting his palm on the ground (Figure 191-381-1370-16).

**Performance Steps**

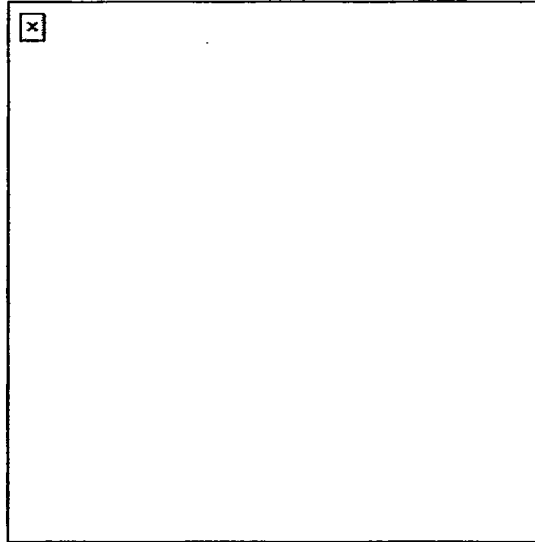


Figure 191-381-1370-16  
Drive the Internee to the Ground

5. Defend yourself against an arm grab.
  - a. Rotate your arm and grab the internee's forearm when he grabs your arm (Figures 191-381-1370-17 and 191-381-1370-18.)

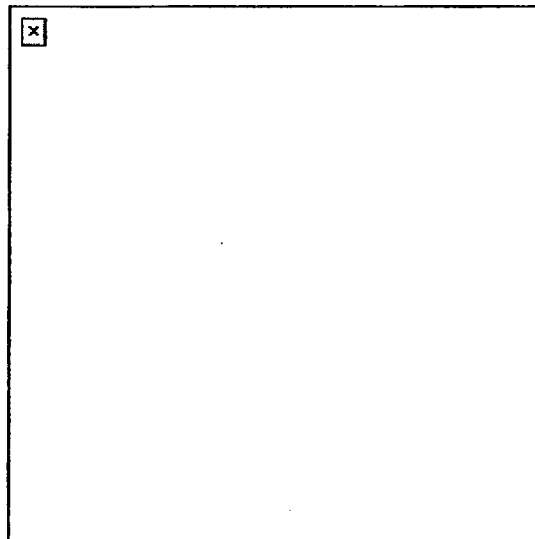


Figure 191-381-1370-17  
Internee Grabbing Your Arm

**Performance Steps**

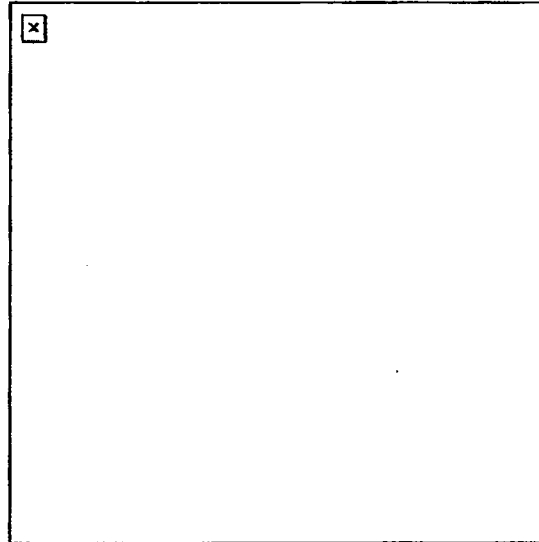


Figure 191-381-1370-18  
Grab the Internee's Forearm

- b. Secure the internee's grabbing wrist with your free hand by reaching across the back of his hand and forcefully gripping it at the same time (Figure 191-381-1370-19). This will assist in preventing his escape.

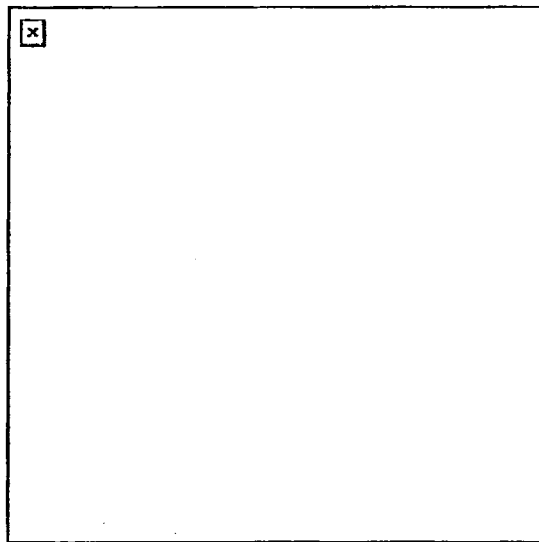


Figure 191-381-1370-19  
Secure the Internee's Grabbing Wrist

- c. Maintain a grip on the hand and forearm as you step in toward the internee. Turn the internee's hand inward to form a "z" shape with his arm, creating an effective wrist lock (Figure 191-381-1370-20).



## Performance Steps

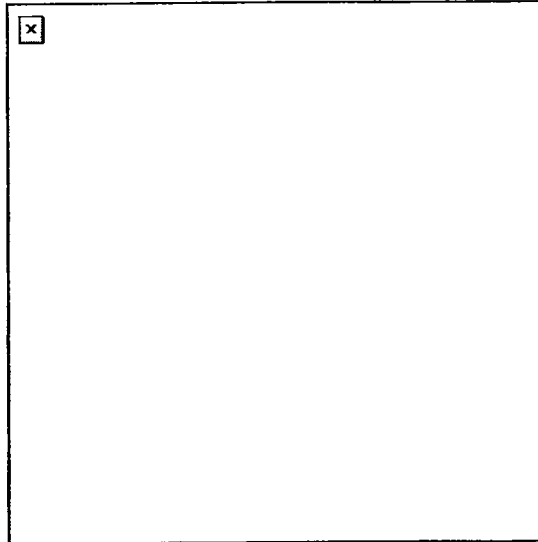


Figure 191-381-1370-20  
Form Effective Wrist Lock

- d. Apply additional pressure by forcing the internee's fingers toward his head, if necessary.
- 6. Apply a bar hammerlock takedown.
  - a. Approach the internee from the front and place your weak foot to the outside of his foot (Figure 191-381-1370-21).

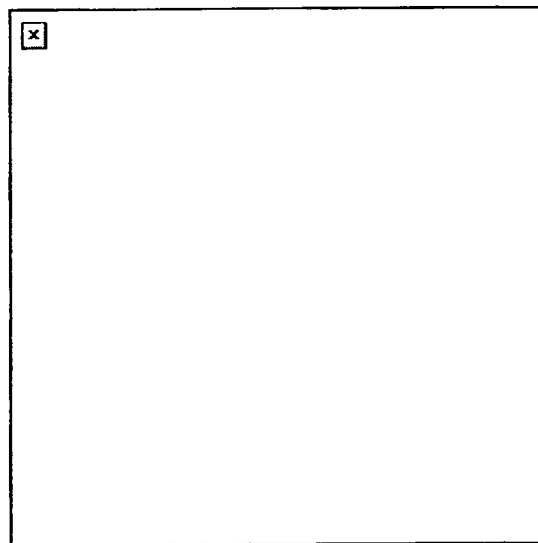


Figure 191-381-1370-21  
Place Your Weak Foot to the Internee's Foot

- b. Reach across your body with your strong hand and use an inverted grip to grasp the internee's elbow. Ensure that your thumb is in the bend of the internee's arm, with your fingers on the outside.

**Performance Steps**

- c. Pull the internee's arm slightly away from his body and turn it until his knuckles face his nearest thigh. Drive the internee's wrist to the rear by striking it with your weak hand (Figure 191-381-1370-22).

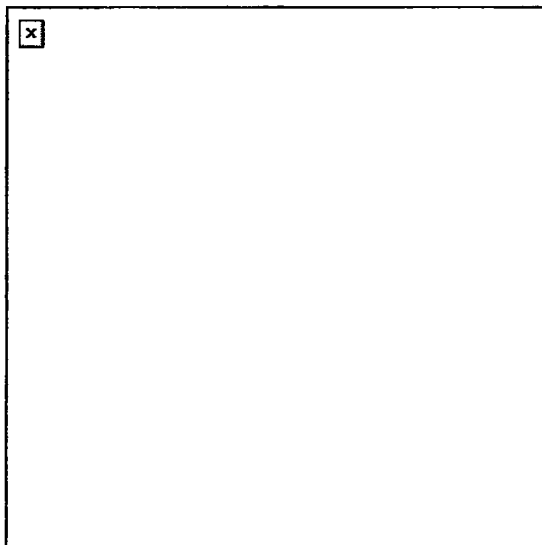


Figure 191-381-1370-22  
Grab the Internee's Arm and Drive it to the Rear

- d. Pivot on the balls of both feet until you are facing the same direction as the internee. Bend his arm behind his back. Drive your weak hand up the internee's back until his wrist is in the bend of your arm.
- e. Grasp the internee's arm above the elbow with your weak hand. Put the palm of your strong hand on the back of the internee's neck and turn his head away from you (Figure 191-381-1370-23).

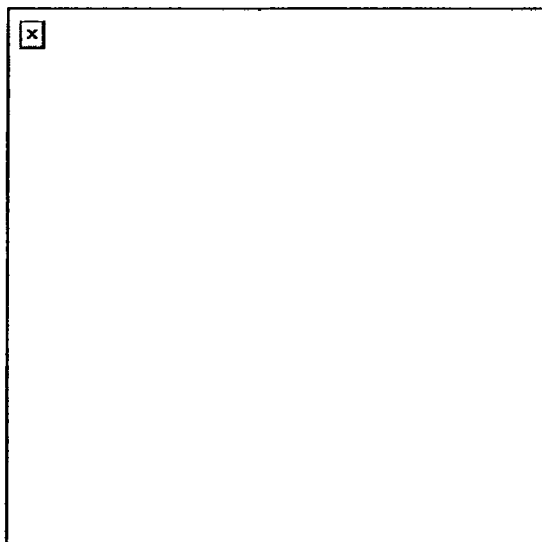


Figure 191-381-1370-23  
Place Your Strong Hand on the Back of the Internee's Neck

**Performance Steps**

- f. Put your weight against your weak arm and the internee's hammerlocked arm and press on the internee's neck with your strong hand while stepping forward with your strong foot (Figure 191-381-1370-24).

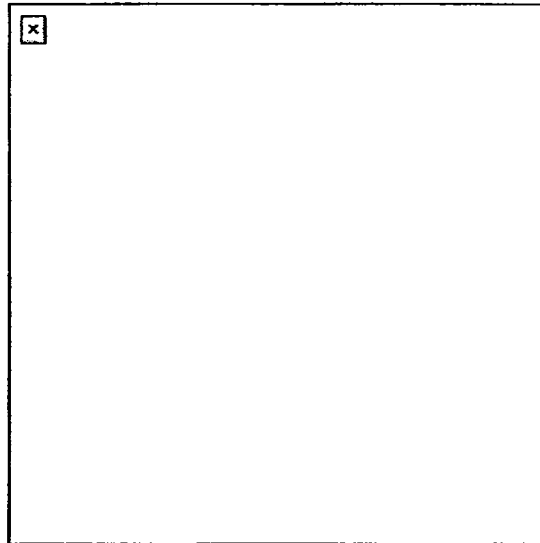


Figure 191-381-1370-24

Put Your Weight Against the Internee's Hammerlocked Arm

- g. Bend your knees and drag your weak foot forward while forcing the internee to the ground without losing your hammerlock (Figure 191-381-1370-25).

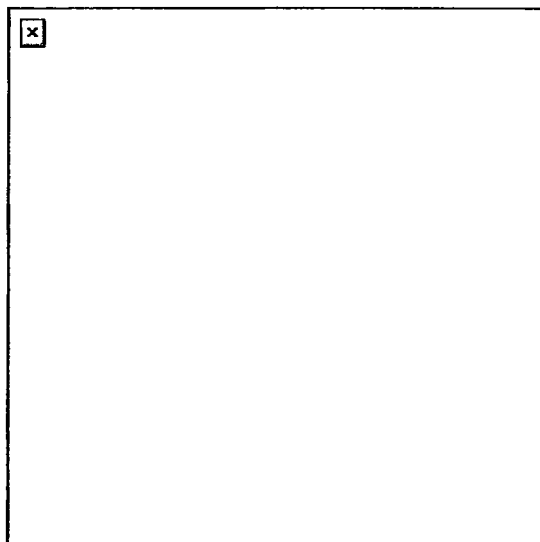


Figure 191-381-1370-25

Bend Your Knees While Forcing the Internee to the Ground

7. Fall in a "right-side" fall position when thrown over an internee's left side.
  - a. Use your right arm and left foot to help absorb the impact of your body on the ground. The arm and foot must contact the ground slightly before any other part of the body.

**Performance Steps**

- (1) Extend your right arm parallel with the ground, palm down, fingers extended and slap the ground the same time as your left foot hits.
  - (2) Hit the ground just behind the right knee, with the sole of your left foot at the same time your right arm hits.
- b. Bend your right leg slightly.
  - c. Tuck your chin and tense your neck to keep your head from striking the ground.
  - d. Hold your left arm across your face with the palm facing out.
  - e. Make sure your left shoulder and spine do not hit the ground (Figure 191-381-1370-26).

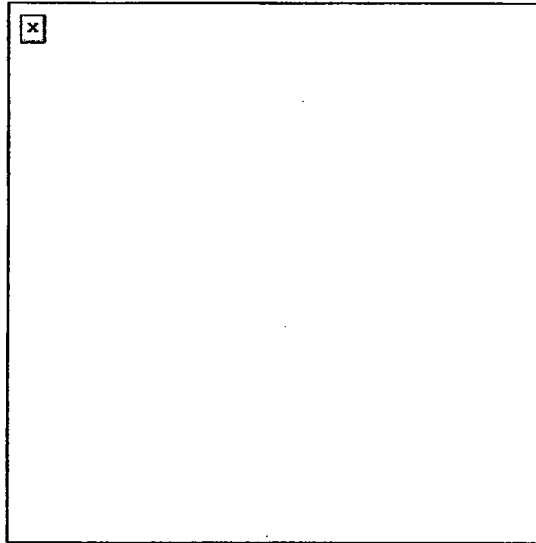


Figure 191-381-1370-26  
Right-Side Fall Position

8. Fall in a "left-side" fall position when thrown over an internee's right side. (Repeat steps 7a through e, substituting left for right (Figure 191-381-1370-27).

**Performance Steps**

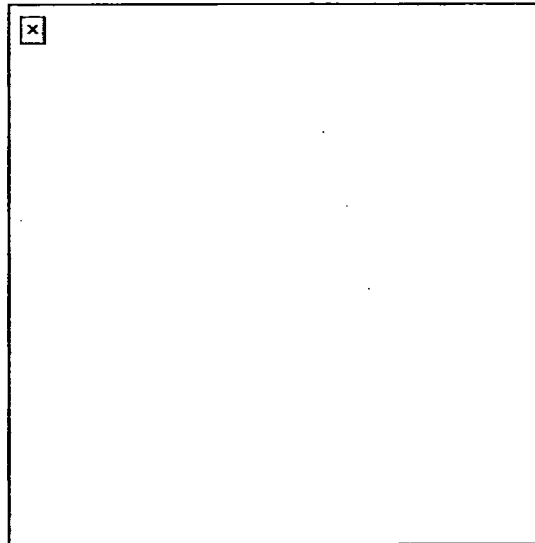


Figure 191-381-1370-27  
Left-Side Fall Position

9. Fall in a "rear fall" position when falling backward or when thrown backward over the internee's head.
  - a. Bend your knees at a 90-degree angle and extend your arms about 45 degrees.
  - b. Tighten your stomach muscles to keep your buttocks from hitting the ground first.
  - c. Tuck your chin and tense your neck to keep your head from striking the ground.
  - d. Slap the ground with the soles of your feet and the palms of your hands simultaneously to absorb the impact of your fall (Figure 191-381-1370-28).

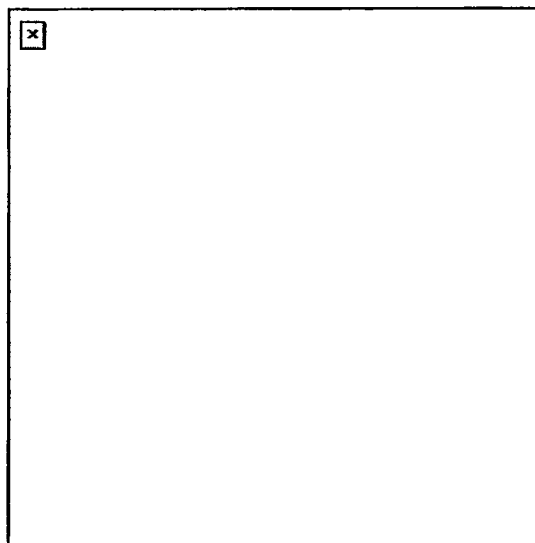


Figure 191-381-1370-28  
Rear Fall Position

10. Use a forward roll if pushed or shoved from the rear.

# Performance Steps

- a. Move with the force of the push by stepping forward with either foot.
- b. Curl your body into a ball by tucking your chin and tensing your neck and execute a—
  - (1) Forward roll.
    - (a) Drop your body by bending your knees and placing the palms of your hands on the ground.
    - (b) Roll forward and allow your shoulders to hit the ground evenly.
    - (c) Use your hands to push yourself into a standing position to complete the roll.
  - (2) Shoulder roll.
    - (a) Drop your body by bending your knees and bringing the arm of the shoulder on which you intend to roll, across your chest.
    - (b) Roll forward over your shoulder with your chin tucked.
    - (c) Use your hands to push yourself up into a standing position to complete your roll.
- c. Turn and face your opponent with your hands in a defensive position between your waist and neck. Your feet should be shoulder width apart with your strong foot to the rear.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Have another soldier play the part of the internee.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier being evaluated to correctly demonstrate each self-defense technique.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Defended against a front choke.	—	—
2. Defended against a rear choke.	—	—
3. Performed a headlock escape.	—	—
4. Defended against a collar or lapel grab.	—	—
5. Defended against an arm grab.	—	—
6. Applied a bar hammerlock takedown.	—	—
7. Fell in a "right-side" fall position when thrown over an offender's left side.	—	—
8. Fell in a "left-side" fall position when thrown over an offender's right side.	—	—
9. Fell in a "rear fall" position when falling backward or when thrown backward over the offender's head.	—	—
10. Used a forward roll if pushed or shoved from the rear.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier a NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

## References Required

**Related**  
FM 19-15  
FM 3-25.150

Subject Area 14: Crime Scenes

Collect Evidence

191-376-5125

**Conditions:** You are directed to collect evidence. You are given evidence and packaging materials of cardboard cartons, paper tape, paper envelopes, an engraver (if available), a notebook, a pen, and blank Department of the Army (DA) Forms 4137 and 4002.

**Standards:** Collect and preserve all evidence, correctly mark and record it, and complete DA Forms 4137 and 4002 with the correct information.

Performance Steps

1. Search the area for evidence.
  - a. Make a systematic search.
    - (1) Use a circle and/or zone to search indoors or small outdoor areas. Refer to Figure 191-376-5125-1.

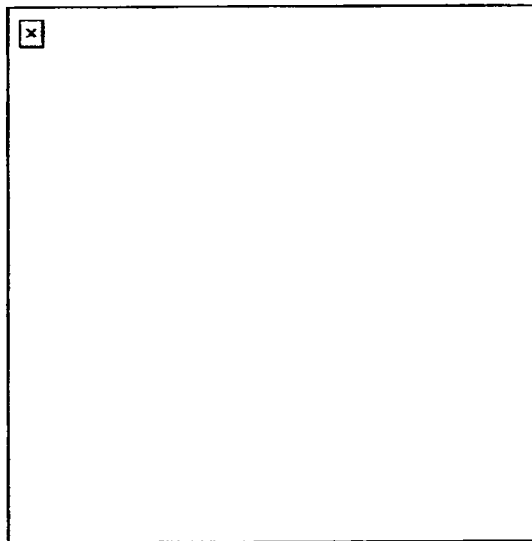


Figure 191-376-5125-1  
Circle Search Method

- (2) Use a grid search for larger outdoor areas. Refer to Figure 191-376-5125-2.

**Performance Steps**

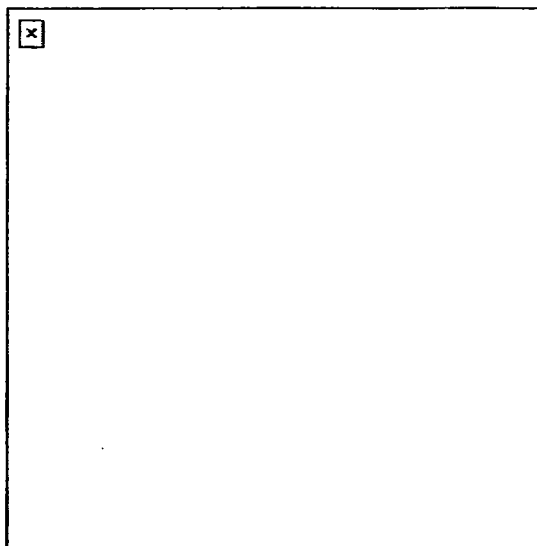


Figure 191-376-5125-2  
Grid Search Method

- b. Look for all items of value that may have fingerprints.
  - c. Treat items as though they have evidence value until proven otherwise.
2. Collect evidence.
- a. Fix the exact location using the triangulation search method before collecting an item of evidence. Refer to Figure 191-376-5125-3.

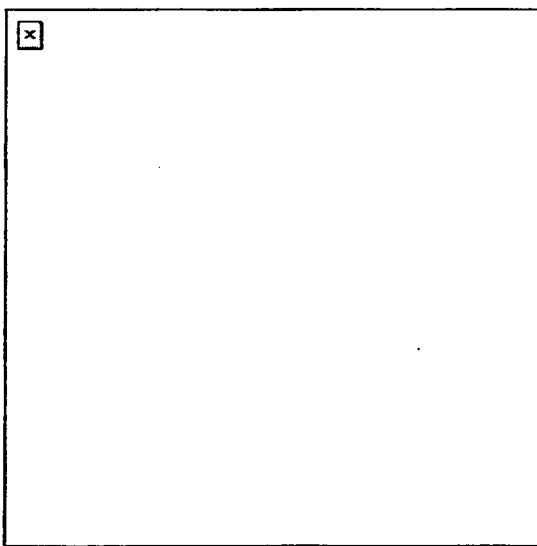


Figure 191-376-5125-3  
Triangulation Search Method

- b. Draw a sketch of the crime scene and list information about the crime scene in the military police (MP) notebook.
- c. Avoid unnecessary handling of the evidence.
- d. Place evidence that cannot be marked in an envelope or small cardboard box.



**Performance Steps**

- e. Seal the container with tape. Do not use cellophane tape since markings do not readily adhere to this type of tape and can easily be destroyed.

**NOTE: If fingerprints on evidence are touched or damaged, enter that information in the MP notebook.**

3. Mark evidence for identification.

**NOTE: Mark evidence according to the standing operating procedure (SOP).**

- a. Mark each item with your initials, the calendar date, and the military time.
- b. Mark each major interchangeable part separately (for example, mark a caliber .45 pistol on the barrel, slide, and receiver).
- c. Seal evidence preserved in a container with paper packaging tape and mark across all the seals.

4. Record each piece of evidence on DA Form 4137. Refer to Task 191-376-5138.

5. Tag each piece of evidence with DA Form 4002. Refer to Figure 191-376-5125-4.

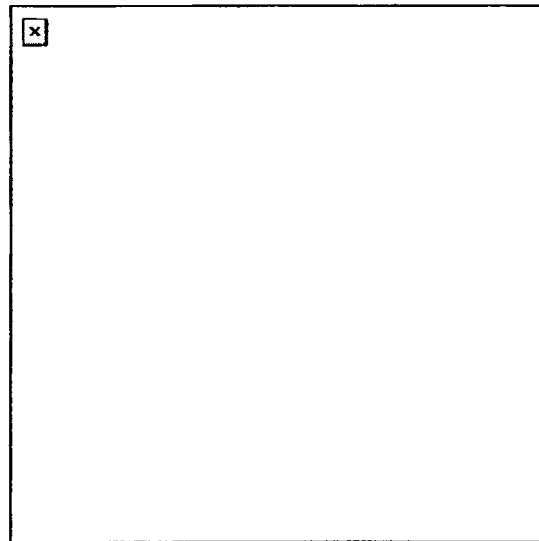


Figure 191-376-5125-4  
DA Form 4002

6. Enter a description of each item in the MP notebook, how each item is marked, and where the mark is located.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: At the test site, provide all the materials given in the conditions statement.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier that he will perform this task as directed.

**Performance Measures**

1. Searched the area for evidence.
2. Collected evidence.
3. Marked evidence for identification.
4. Recorded each piece of evidence on DA Form 4137.

**GO NO GO**

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Performance Measures**

5. Tagged each piece of evidence with DA Form 4002.

GO      NO GO

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Entered a description of each item in the MP notebook, how each item was marked, and where the mark was located.

\_\_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

DA FORM 4002

DA FORM 4137

**Related**

AR 195-5

FM 19-20

**Protect the Integrity of a Crime Scene in an Internment Facility**  
**191-381-1371**

**Conditions:** You are given a radio and a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2713 or 2714.

**Standards:** Perform all the necessary steps to protect the integrity of a crime scene so that evidence is not destroyed or damaged.

**Performance Steps**

1. Evaluate the crime scene, and report the information to the control desk. Ensure that the information includes—

- a. Your identity (such as block guard or escort guard).

**NOTE: Never use your name to identify yourself.**

- b. The location and nature of the crime.
  - c. Any injuries.
  - d. A request for assistance to secure or control the scene (if needed).

2. Secure the crime scene.

- a. Direct unauthorized personnel and internees away from the scene to protect the victim and the evidence.

- b. Provide assistance to injured personnel.

- (1) Render first aid treatment. The additional guard(s) should control the crime scene.

- (2) Provide security until assisting guards arrive (when only one guard is present).

- (3) Preserve evidence in a fatality situation. Do not cover the deceased victim.

- (4) Obtain the identification of the victim.

- c. Control any unruly behavior displayed by internees. Refer to Task 191-381-1321.

- d. Select a route to the victim that avoids known or suspected evidence, and advise all personnel to stay on that specific route as much as possible.

- e. Protect the victim and evidence until they are released by military police (MP) investigators.

- f. Record crime scene details in your notebook.

3. Restrict unauthorized personnel from entering the crime scene area.

- a. Check the identification of all personnel.

- b. Limit access to—

- (1) MP investigators and criminal investigation division (CID) personnel.

- (2) Medical personnel.

- (3) Guards assisting with controlling and protecting the crime scene.

4. Release the crime scene to MP investigators. Provide the following information:

- a. Your name.

- b. The time of the incident and your arrival time at the crime scene.

- c. The details of the crime scene.

- d. The names of personnel involved with the crime, including any witnesses.

- e. The status of medical personnel responding to the scene, to include—

- (1) Their name(s).

- (2) How the crime scene was affected by first aid measures.

5. Prepare a DD Form 2713 or 2714. Refer to Tasks 191-381-1339 and 191-381-1340.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Create a crime scene. Have additional soldiers act as victims and witnesses.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to protect the integrity of a crime scene so that evidence is not destroyed or damaged.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Evaluated the crime scene, and reported the information to the control desk.	—	—
2. Secured the crime scene.	—	—
3. Restricted unauthorized personnel from entering the crime scene area.	—	—
4. Released the crime scene to MP investigators. Provided the required information.	—	—
5. Prepared a DD Form 2713 or 2714.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
DD FORM 2713  
DD FORM 2714

**Related**  
FM 19-20

**Identify Evidence and/or Contraband Within an Internment Facility**  
**191-381-1372**

**Conditions:** You are given a crime scene containing a variety of testimonial, physical, and fragile evidence as well as a variety of contraband items. You are required to identify the evidence and contraband.

**Standards:** Identify physical evidence, fragile evidence, and contraband items.

**Performance Steps**

1. Identify types of evidence.

**NOTE: Evidence is something that tends to prove or disprove a point under investigation or consideration.**

- a. Identify testimonial evidence. This type of evidence (either written or verbal) consists of statements made by others on matters pertaining to the case.
- b. Identify physical evidence, including—

**NOTE: This type of tangible evidence can be anything, regardless of size.**

- (1) Movable evidence. Evidence that can be picked up and transported, such as tools, weapons, clothing, glass, and documents.
- (2) Fixed or immovable evidence. Evidence that cannot be removed from the scene without the use of special equipment because of its size, shape, or makeup.

**NOTE: Fixed or immovable evidence includes such things as walls, floors, and telephone poles.**

- c. Identify fragile evidence.

**NOTE: Fragile evidence is physical evidence that, if special care is not taken to preserve its state, can deteriorate to a point where it no longer has value as evidence. Fragile evidence is difficult to detect. It may be movable or immovable, such as fingerprints, footprints, or body fluids. A footprint in the snow is actually immovable, but a cast of it can be taken and preserved as evidence. Fingerprints can be lifted from a surface for use in court. Although skill level 1 soldiers are not trained to prepare casts or lift fingerprints, they should advise the supervisor, the military police (MP) operations sergeant, or the investigator if they observe prints.**

2. Identify contraband items.

**NOTE: Contraband is any item prohibited by law or directive. Contraband can be confiscated if a person has it in his possession, but its use as evidence may be restricted. The restrictions differ according to the jurisdiction and situation. What is contraband in one circumstance may not be in another, and the person possessing the items may not know it is prohibited. Remain calm and courteous, regardless of their reaction. Some examples of contraband are switchblade knives (a prohibited weapon), syringes (narcotic paraphernalia), cans of gasoline (in civil disturbance operations, they may be used in fire bombs), walking sticks (a potential weapon and permitted only if a medical need exists or if on a hike), razor blades, drugs or anything that may be used as a weapon.**

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide samples of physical evidence, fragile evidence, and contraband items. Give a situation where the MP must check a crime scene for possible evidence and contraband and provide a scenario with several pieces of evidence present.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier that he will normally perform this task as directed by the investigator.

**Performance Measures**

- 1. Identified types of evidence.
- 2. Identified contraband items.

**GO    NO GO**

\_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_

STP 19-95C1-SM

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
FM 19-20

## Conduct Interviews Within an Internment Facility

191-381-1373

**Conditions:** You are given orders to interview a witness, victim, and/or complainant. You are given the military police (MP) notebook.

**Standards:** Perform the necessary steps to obtain the appropriate initial information.

### Performance Steps

1. Identify yourself as an internment specialist.

**NOTE: Remember to use good interpersonal-communications (IPC) skills.**

2. Secure and segregate all the witnesses, victims, and complainants so that they can not compare stories.
3. Identify each internee before beginning the interview.
  - a. Ask for his identification badge.
  - b. Validate the identification badge by asking for his name and the cellblock that he is assigned to.
4. Record all information in the MP notebook. In addition to the information from 3a and 3b, record—
  - a. The time of the incident.
  - b. The location of the incident.
  - c. Specific details of the incident.
5. Record the necessary information for each internee involved. This information includes—
  - a. The time and location of the individual during the offense.
  - b. A description of the individual's involvement in the offense.
  - c. The type of offense.
  - d. The evidence found and the type of search conducted, if any.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Create scenarios depicting a crime scene . Provide personnel to roll-play as a witness, victim, or complainant.

**Brief soldier:** Remind the soldier being evaluated of the necessity to use good IPC techniques when interviewing. Tell him to obtain the required initial information and record it in the MP notebook.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Identified yourself as an internment specialist.	—	—
2. Secured and segregated all the witnesses, victims, and complainants so that they could not compare stories.	—	—
3. Identified each internee before beginning the interview.	—	—
4. Recorded all information in the MP notebook.	—	—
5. Recorded the necessary information for each internee involved.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**  
Required

**Related**  
FM 19-10

Subject Area 15: Internment Administration

**Prepare Department of the Army (DA) Form 4137  
191-376-5138**

**Conditions:** As an investigating agent, you are required to maintain the custody of property and/or evidence. During the performance of military police (MP) duties, you apprehend a suspect, then during the search you discover contraband. You are given DA Form 4137, Army Regulation (AR) 195-5, bond paper, and a pen.

**Standards:** Complete DA Form 4137 accurately, legibly, and without errors.

**Performance Steps**

1. Prepare DA Form 4137. Refer to Figures 191-376-5138-1 and 191-376-5138-2.
  - a. Insert the military police report (MPR) and/or the criminal investigation division (CID) sequence number in the "MPR/CID sequence number" block. Obtain the MPR number from the MP desk sergeant.
  - b. Insert the crime record depository (CRD) report and/or CID report of incident (ROI) number in the "CRD report/CID ROI number" block, if available. Otherwise, leave blank.

**NOTE: The CRD report/CID ROI number is normally assigned during administrative processing by MP operations personnel; this is usually done the next duty day following the initiation of the report.**

- c. Insert the name of the office or organization for which you work in the "receiving activity" block.
- d. Place the installation, state, and zip code in the "location" block.
- e. Fill in the "name, grade, and title of person from whom received" block. If evidence and/or property was obtained from—
  - (1) A person, check the "other" or "owner" block and enter the person's first name, middle initial, last name, rank, and title.
  - (2) A crime scene, check "other" and enter "crime scene."
- f. Fill in the "address" block. If the evidence and/or property was obtained from—
  - (1) A person, enter the person's address to include the zip code.
  - (2) A crime scene, enter "NA."
- g. Fill in the "location from where obtained" block. If evidence and/or property was obtained from—
  - (1) A person, enter "person of" and then enter the person's grade, last name, and the location where the evidence and/or property was collected. For example, "from the person of Sergeant (E5) Smith while in Room 1 (123rd Engineer Company Commanders Office) of Building 5901, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473."
  - (2) A crime scene, enter the complete location of the scene. For example, "reading room, Room 15, Building 2401 (144th Supply Company), Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473."
- h. Enter "evidence," "safekeeping," or "found property," as appropriate, in the "reason obtained" block.
- i. Enter the time and date the property and/or evidence was obtained in the "time/date obtained" block. For example, "1541, 7 April 2002."

**NOTE: If several items are collected, indicate the time span when they were collected. For example, "1322 to 1541, 7 April 2002." The first time (1322) is when the first item was collected, and the last time (1541) is when the last item was collected.**

- j. Number each item in the "item number" column.
- k. List the quantity of each item in the "quantity" column. (Like items may be listed as a group. For example, 20 pills found in a container may be entered as one entry.)
- l. Enter information in the "description of articles" block.
  - (1) Describe each item by stating what can be observed.



**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** Never list or estimate the value of articles or describe the type of metal or stone in the jewelry or similar items. List the color, size, and shape. For example, describe an item that looks like gold as "gold-colored metal."

- (2) List serial numbers or other identifying marks.

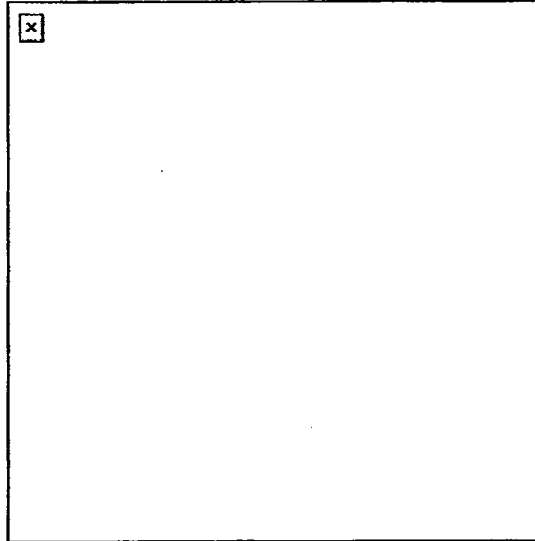


Figure 191-376-5138-1  
Sample DA Form 4137

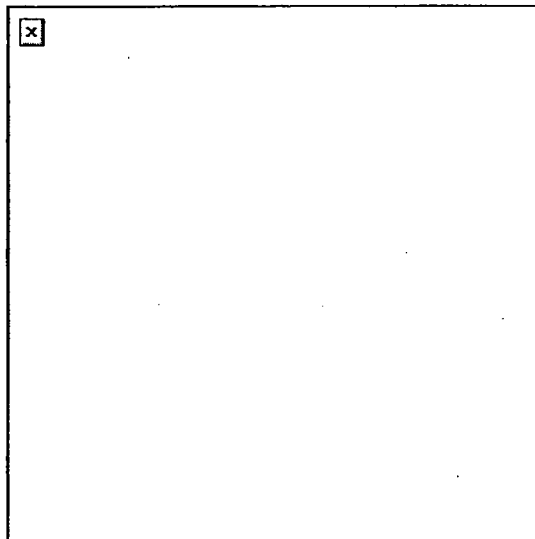


Figure 191-376-5138-2  
Sample DA Form 4137 (Continued)

- (3) Describe where the evidence and/or property was found. If the evidence and/or property was found—
- (a) On an individual, describe the location. For example, "removed from the left front battle dress uniform (BDU) pant pocket worn by Smith."

### Performance Steps

(b) At a crime scene, describe the exact location. For example, "top right dresser drawer."

- (4) Specify where and how you marked the items for identification (ID). For example, "Marked for ID, DRW, 02 October 02, 1510, on the barrel, slide, and receiver." (Always put your initials, the date, and the time period on each item marked.)

**NOTE: Give careful consideration to how and where ID marks are placed on items. Unnecessary damage or destruction of items of personal property or valuable items that may ultimately be returned to the owner is unwarranted. To avoid defacing or damaging items, ID markings should be as inconspicuous as possible. Otherwise, place the item in a container that can be sealed and marked.**

- (5) Use sheets of bond paper to record the continuation when space in the description of articles portion of the evidence custody document is not large enough to accommodate the information that must be recorded. Ensure that the bond paper continuation sheets are formatted to specifications according to AR 195-5.

- (6) Continue listing items until all items seized have been recorded.

- (7) Close the "description of articles" block. Place continuous slashes (///) from the left border of the document to the center. Place "last item" and continue with slashes (///), until the far right border has been reached.

m. Begin the "chain of custody" section by preparing each block as follows:

- (1) Write "1 through 3" in the "item number" column if three items are listed in the description of articles block. If only certain items are released to an individual, list only those items. For example, "1 and 3".
- (2) Enter in the "date" column the calendar date (day, month, and year) that items are received or released.
- (3) Fill in the "released by" column. If the evidence and/or property is—
  - (a) Received from an individual, enter his first name, middle initial, last name, and grade or title in the "name, grade or title" block. Have the individual sign in the "signature" block. If the individual refuses or is unable to sign the form, enter the words, "refused to sign" or "unable to sign" in the "signature" block.

**NOTE: There is no legal requirement for the form to be witnessed if the individual refuses to sign.**

(b) Obtained from a crime scene, enter "NA" in the "signature" block and in the "name, grade, or title" block.

- (4) Enter your name and grade or title in the "name, grade or title" block and sign in the "received by" column and sign in the "signature" block.
- (5) Describe the reason for the change of custody, such as "evaluation as evidence," "safekeeping," or "found property," in the "purpose of change of custody" block. When custody of sealed fungible evidence or sealed evidence is changed, the "purpose of change of custody" column should be noted, "sealed container received; contents not inventoried (SCRCNI)."

**NOTE: Correct errors by placing a single line through the error, enter the corrected information, and initial the change. Do not use correction paper or correction fluid to correct errors.**

2. Distribute DA Form 4137.

- a. Provide the individual with a copy of DA Form 4137 if you receive evidence and/or property from him for the first time or during the execution of a search warrant. Give the last copy of the signed DA Form 4137 to him as a receipt, or leave it in compliance with instructions for completing the search warrant.
- b. Do not leave any copies of the document at the scene when you seize evidence and/or property during the processing of a crime scene, except when pursuant to executing a search warrant.
- c. Give the evidence custodian the original and remaining copies of DA Form 4137 when releasing evidence and/or property to him.

**NOTE: All evidence and/or property must be released to the evidence custodian no later than the first working day after it is acquired. Evidence and/or property acquired during nonduty hours**

**Performance Steps**

must be secured according to AR 195-5. MP needing temporary storage for evidence and/or property usually releases it to the MP desk sergeant who will maintain the chain of custody until the evidence can be released to the evidence custodian.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with a blank DA Form 4137, evidence, and/or property that will be used to complete DA Form 4137.

Brief soldier: Tell the soldier being evaluated that, on apprehending a soldier, a search revealed contraband. Instruct him to seize the evidence, and correctly complete DA Form 4137. Explain to the role players the actions they are to take.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Prepared DA Form 4137.	—	—
2. Distributed DA Form 4137.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
AR 195-5  
DA FORM 4137

**Related**  
AR 190-45  
FM 19-20

**Check Department of Defense (DD) Form 2707 for Completeness and Accuracy**  
**191-381-1325**

**Conditions:** You are required to verify DD Form 2707 with the identification information of a newly assigned prisoner.

**Standards:** Verify the completeness and accuracy of DD Form 2707.

**Performance Steps**

1. Obtain the confinement order and inmate's identification card from the inmate's escort.
2. Verify the information on the inmate's completed DD Form 2707 (Figure 191-381-1325-1). Verify—

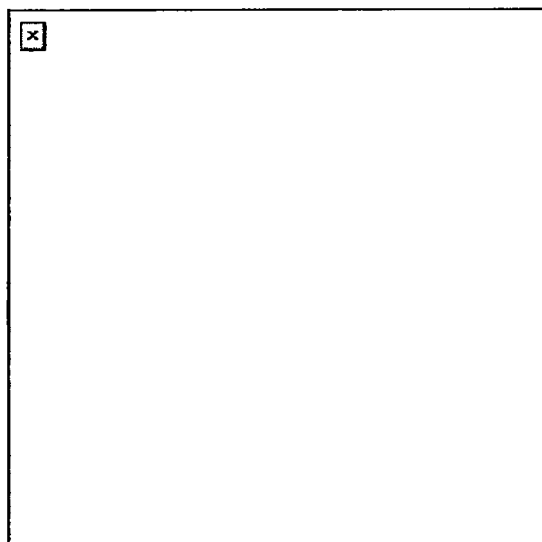


Figure 191-381-1325-1  
Completed DD Form 2707

- a. Block 1.
  - (1) Block 1a through 1d. Verify that the information shown in blocks 1a through 1d match the personal information found on the inmate's identification card.
  - (2) Block 1e. Verify the military organization with the senior escort guard.
- b. Block 2. Ensure that the date on the confinement order and the confinement date agree.
- c. Block 3 (Type of Confinement). Verify the type of confinement information shown.
  - (1) Block 3a. Verify that the correct box is checked in the pretrial information.
  - (2) Block 3b. Verify that the correct box is checked in the nonjudicial punishment (NJP) information.
  - (3) Block 3c. Verify that the correct box is checked in the result of the court martial information. Ensure that the "yes" or "no" and the "type" boxes are both checked accordingly.
- d. Block 4. Verify the information in the violated offenses and charges of the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ). Verify that the article number of the offense and the offense for each charge is recorded.
- e. Block 5. Verify the sentence adjudged information. Verify that the sentence is recorded (if not pretrial) and that the date is recorded in 5b.
- f. Block 6. Verify the deferred sentence termination date, if applicable.
- g. Block 7. Verify the information on the person directing confinement.
  - (1) Block 7a. Verify the name, grade, and title of the person ordering the confinement.

**Performance Steps**

- (2) Block 7b. Verify the signature of the person directing the confinement. Ensure that the form is signed only by the person ordering the confinement (no exceptions).
- (3) Block 7c. Verify that the date is correct.
- (4) Block 7d. Verify that the time is recorded correctly.
- h. Block 8. Verify the legal review and approval information.
  - (1) Block 8a. Verify the name, grade, and title of the person from the Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) Office who reviewed the confinement order.
  - (2) Block 8b. Verify the signature of the person from the SJA who reviewed the confinement order.
  - (3) Block 8c. Verify that the date is complete.

**NOTE: Blocks 9 and 10 should be completed by the medical officer.**

- i. Block 10. Verify the medical examiner information.
  - (1) Block 10a. Verify that the name, grade, and title of the medical officer are complete.
  - (2) Block 10b. Verify the signature of the medical officer.
  - (3) Block 10c. Verify the date that the medical officer completed his examination.
  - (4) Block 10d. Verify the time that the medical officer completed his examination.

**NOTE: The inmate receipt information in block 11 should be completed by the supervisor.**

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Have a soldier act as an escort guard and another as a prisoner. Provide the evaluated soldier with a prepared DD Form 2707 and a prisoner identification card.

**Brief soldier:** Coach the role-players on how to respond to the evaluated soldier's questions and directions.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Obtained the confinement order and inmate's identification card from the inmate's escort.	—	—
2. Verified the information on the inmate's completed DD Form 2707.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier a NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
DD FORM 2707  
UCMJ

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

**Verify the Accuracy of Department of Defense (DD) Form 2718**  
**191-381-1326**

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to verify a completed DD Form 2718 for an internee who is being permanently released from internment. The internee will be escorted by guards.

**Standards:** Verify the DD Form 2718 for accuracy using the internee's identification card and asking the escort guard(s).

**Performance Steps**

1. Ensure that blocks 2 through 13 on the DD Form 2718 are complete and accurate for an internee being permanently released (Figure 191-381-1326-1).

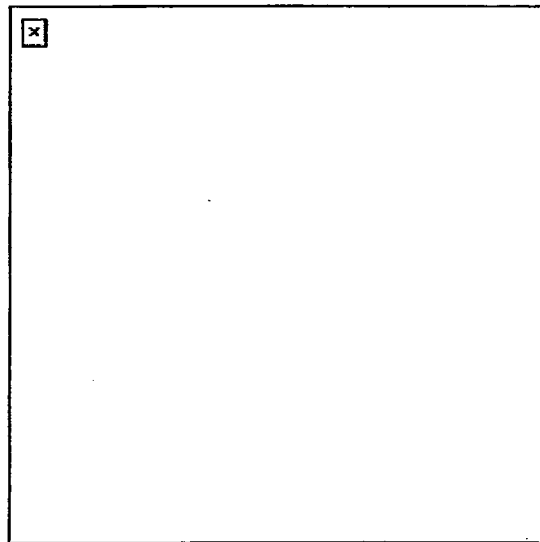


Figure 191-381-1326-1  
Completed DD Form 2718

**NOTE: Block 1 should be addressed to the internment brigade officer.**

- a. Verify that the correct installation is recorded in block 2.
- b. Ensure that the date is current in block 3.
- c. Ensure that the actual date of release is correct in block 4.
- d. Compare the name on the form in block 5 with the internee's identification card. Verify this information with the internee by asking him to state his name.
- e. Compare the social security number (SSN) recorded on the form in block 6 with the internee's identification card. Verify this information by asking the internee to recite his SSN.
- f. Verify the internee's grade recorded in block 7 by asking the internee and the escort guard for the information.
- g. Verify the internee's branch of service recorded in block 8 with the internee's identification card.
- h. Verify the full unit designation and the location of the unit recorded in block 9 with the internee or the escort guard.
- i. Ensure that the reason for release is completed in block 10 and one of the following is recorded:
  - (1) The expiration of his sentence.
  - (2) A mitigated, suspended, or remitted sentence.
  - (3) An acquittal or dropped charges.
  - (4) Pretrial internment no longer deemed necessary.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE: Do not use the DD Form 2718 as authority to transfer an internee from one internment facility to another.**

- j. Ensure that the authenticating officer's printed name is recorded in block 11 and that a matching signature is present in block 12.
  - k. Ensure that the grade, organization, and title of the authenticating officer are recorded in block 13.
2. Complete blocks 15 through 19 on the DD Form 2718.
- a. Complete blocks 15 and 16 with the actual release date and time.
  - b. Complete block 17 with the name, grade, organization, and title of the individual signing for the released internee. Obtain a matching signature in block 18.
  - c. Complete block 19 with any additional remarks.
3. Detain the internee and the escort and notify the supervisor if any errors or omissions are detected on the form.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the evaluated soldier with a completed DD Form 2718 with programmed errors. Have other soldiers role-play as the internee and escort guard(s). Provide a prisoner identification card.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the evaluated soldier that he must identify all errors on the internee release order. Coach the other soldiers on their responses to the evaluated soldier.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
1. Ensured that blocks 2 through 13 on the DD Form 2718 were complete and accurate for a prisoner being permanently released.	—	—
2. Completed blocks 15 through 19 on the DD Form 2718.	—	—
3. Detained the inmate and the escort and notified the supervisor if any errors or omissions were detected on the form.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
DD FORM 2718

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

**Verify the Accuracy of Department of Defense (DD) Form 2708  
191-381-1327**

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to verify a completed DD Form 2708 for a prisoner being released for a brief period, such as a doctor or dentist appointment. The prisoner will be escorted by guards.

**Standards:** Ensure that all entries on the DD Form 2708 are complete and accurate according to the performance steps and the facility standing operating procedure (SOP).

**Performance Steps**

1. Ensure the accuracy of the information contained on the DD Form 2708 (Figure 191-381-1327-1) for a inmate being released for a short period of time, such as for a doctor or dentist appointment.

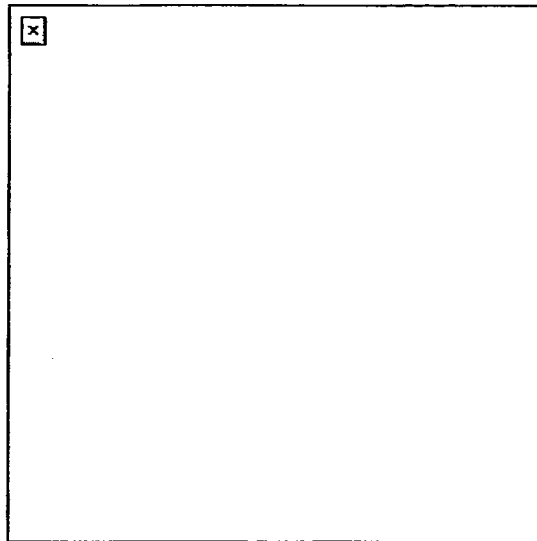


Figure 191-381-1327-1  
Completed DD Form 2078

- a. Verify the full unit designation and location in block 1.
- b. Ensure that block 2 contains the actual time the inmate is being released from the facility.
- c. Ensure that block 3 contains the date the inmate is being released from the facility.
- d. Verify block 4 by comparing the name on the form with the inmate's identification card.  
Ensure that you ask the inmate his name and verify it with the escort guard.
- e. Ask the inmate to state his social security number (SSN), compare it with the number on the inmate's identification card, and verify the same number in block 5.
- f. Ask the inmate to state his grade. Verify the accuracy with the escort guard and ensure that the correct grade is shown in block 6.
- g. Ask the inmate to state his organization, verify the accuracy with the escort guard, and ensure that the correct organization is shown in block 7.
- h. Verify the station in block 8. Ensure that this block contains the location of the unit of designation.
- i. Ensure that the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ) article number and title of offense are entered in block 9.
- j. Ensure that any items of personal property in possession by the inmate are listed in block 10.
- k. Ensure that the reason inmate is leaving the facility and when he is expected to return is listed in block 11.



**Performance Steps**

- l. Ensure that the name, title, SSN, and grade of the receiving escort are listed correctly in blocks 12, 13, and 14.
  - m. Ensure that the full designation and station of the receiving unit or activity is listed in block 15.
  - n. Ensure that the receiving escort signs block 16.
2. Detain the inmate and escort guard and notify the supervisor if the form contains errors or omissions.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the evaluated soldier with a completed DD Form 2708 with programmed errors. Have other soldiers role-play as the prisoner and escorts. Provide an identification card for the mock prisoner.

Brief soldier: Tell the evaluated soldier that he must identify all errors. Coach the mock prisoner and escorts on the responses to be given to the evaluated soldier.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Ensured the accuracy of the information contained on the DD Form 2708 for a prisoner being released for a short period of time.	—	—
2. Detained the prisoner and escort guard and notified the supervisor if the form contained errors or omissions.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
DD FORM 2708  
UCMJ

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

## Process an Internee Into an Internment Facility

191-382-2342

**Conditions:** You are required to process an internee into confinement. You are given an assistant (to witness the strip search); the internee's Department of Defense (DD) Form 2707; the internee's correctional treatment folder; the internee's clothing and personal property; access to a shower facility; health and comfort items for the internee; a camera and film; a name board and letters; access to a processing area away from the general internee population; access to the facility standing operating procedure (SOP) and Army Regulations (ARs) 190-47 and 700-84; and the following forms: Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1132-R, 3078, 3955, 3997, and 4137; DD Forms 499, 503, and 2710; and Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) Form FD 249.

**Standards:** Review the confinement order. Inventory, segregate, and ensure proper disposition and accountability of authorized and unauthorized property. Conduct a strip search of the internee, and direct him to shower. Photograph and fingerprint the internee, and ensure that all administrative facility inprocessing procedures are completed according to the performance steps and the local SOP.

**NOTE:** If processing an enemy prisoner of war (EPW) follow the detainee reporting system nine-station processing procedures.

### Performance Steps

1. Review DD Form 2707 to ensure that it is complete and accurate. Sign the receipt portion of the form.

2. Segregate the internee's authorized and unauthorized property according to the facility SOP.

**NOTE:** Ensure that the internee has a copy of the inventory of his personal property that was left at his unit. If the internee does not have a copy, tell the escort guard so that an inventory will be made by the unit personnel as soon as possible.

- a. Search all items that will remain at the confinement facility.
- b. Inventory the internee's clothing according to AR 700-84.
  - (1) Inventory the internee's clothing using DA Form 3078 or a locally produced form.
  - (2) Do the following if the internee is missing some required items of clothing or if some of the internee's items are unserviceable—
    - (a) Record the information and give a copy of the inventory to the unit escort guard.
    - (b) Tell the escort guard that the shortages must be made up within 24 to 48 hours.
  - (3) Do the following if the internee has excess or unauthorized property—
    - (a) Have the escort guard inventory the excess or unauthorized property using DA Form 4137.
    - (b) Have the internee sign the form releasing the property to the unit escort guard.
    - (c) Have the unit escort guard sign the receipt form for the property.

**NOTE:** Ensure that the escort guard gives the internee a copy of the form for his receipt.

- (d) Ensure that the unit escort guard takes the original form and the property back to the internee's unit for storage or disposition.

- c. Ensure that any medication that the internee has is checked by medical personnel and reissued if directed by a physician.

**NOTE:** This is done to prevent the internee from taking any unauthorized medications.

- d. Dispose of all contraband according to the facility SOP.
3. Strip-search the internee (see Task 191-381-1334).
  4. Search each piece of the internee's clothing as he disrobes. Place all articles of clothing and personal property on the search table.
  5. Direct the internee to shower (and shave if necessary) after you complete the search.
    - a. Provide the internee with soap, a bath cloth and towel, an authorized razor, shaving cream, and personal hygiene items.

**Performance Steps**

- b. Ensure that the internee carefully washes all areas of his body, especially where there is hair.
- c. Tell the internee to dress in the required uniform after showering.

- 6. Escort the internee to the property and funds section to have his personal valuables inventoried, recorded on DA Form 1132-R, and stored. If the internee is inprocessed after normal duty hours, inventory his property, record the results on DA Form 4137, and secure the property. The property and funds clerk will reinventory the internee's personal property and funds on DA Form 1132-R the following work day.

**NOTE: This is only for the personal property that the internee is authorized to keep at the confinement facility.**

- 7. Photograph the internee.

**NOTE: The size of the facility and the staff will dictate who photographs the internee.**

- a. Direct the internee to make a name board. As a minimum, the information on the board should include the internee's last name, first name, middle initial, and his social security number (SSN).
- b. Direct the internee to stand directly behind the name board.
- c. Make front- and right-profile pictures.

**NOTE: The facility SOP might direct that additional pictures be made.**

- d. Attach the photographs to DD Form 2710.

**NOTE: DD Form 2710 must be prepared within 24 hours of the internee's confinement.**

- 8. Fingerprint the internee using FBI Form FD 249 (see Task 191-390-0139) and distribute the form according to AR 190-47 and the facility SOP.
- 9. Schedule a physical exam for the internee. Initiate DD Form 503 by putting the date and the internee's name and SSN in the appropriate blocks.

**NOTE: An exam must be conducted within the first 24 hours of confinement.**

- 10. Escort the internee to the mail room to be briefed on his rights and privileges concerning mail. Direct him to fill out a DD Form 499 and a DA Form 3955.
- 11. Issue the internee a facility rule book and brief him on the rules and regulations of the facility according to AR 190-47 and the facility SOP.
- 12. Issue the internee bedding and authorized health and comfort items.
- 13. Segregate the internee from the main internee population so that he can be observed and evaluated for things such as symptoms of contagious diseases and/or adjustments to confinement.
- 14. Record the new confinement in the desk blotter (DA Form 3997).

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide all personnel, materials, and equipment listed in the conditions statement. Have other soldiers role-play the part of the internee and assisting the corrections specialist.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to process an internee into an internment facility following the proper steps.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Reviewed and signed the internee's DD Form 2707.	_____	_____
2. Segregated the internee's authorized and unauthorized property.	_____	_____
3. Strip-searched the internee.	_____	_____
4. Searched each piece of the internee's clothing as he disrobed. Placed all articles of clothing and personal property on the search table.	_____	_____

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
5. Directed the internee to shower (and shave, if necessary) after he completed the search.	—	—
6. Escorted the internee to the property and funds section.	—	—
7. Photographed the internee.	—	—
8. Fingerprinted the internee.	—	—
9. Scheduled a physical exam for the internee and initiated DD Form 503.	—	—
10. Escorted the internee to mail room to be briefed on his rights and privileges concerning mail.	—	—
11. Issued the internee a facility rule book and briefed him on the rules and regulations of the facility according to AR 190-47 and the facility SOP.	—	—
12. Issued the internee bedding and authorized health and comfort items.	—	—
13. Segregated the internee from the general internee population so that he could be observed and evaluated for things such as symptoms of contagious diseases and/or adjustments to confinement.	—	—
14. Recorded the new confinement in the desk blotter.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

#### References

##### Required

AR 190-47  
AR 700-84  
DA FORM 1132-R  
DA FORM 3078  
DA FORM 3955  
DA FORM 3997  
DA FORM 4137  
DD FORM 2707  
DD FORM 2710  
DD FORM 499  
DD FORM 503  
FBI FORM FD 249

##### Related

AR 210-174  
FM 3-19.40

### Prepare an Internment Facility Blotter

191-383-3373

**Conditions:** You are the internment facility blotter clerk with the requirement to prepare a Department of the Army (DA) Form 3997. You are given a blank DA Form 3997 and all the necessary data.

**Standards:** Prepare an internment facility blotter (DA Form 3997) without error.

#### Performance Steps

1. Enter the proper heading information at the top of the DA Form 3997 to include the—
  - a. Date, using the YYYYMMDD format.
  - b. Page number.
  - c. Unit or station.
2. Open a new blotter at 0001 hours. Enter—
  - a. The number "1" in the "entry no." column.
  - b. "Blotter opened" in the "summary of complaint, incident, police information" column.
  - c. The present prisoner population count in the "summary of action taken" column.
  - d. The shift internment supervisor's last name in the "entered by" column.
3. Record events that occurred during the work shift.
  - a. Assign each entry the next consecutive entry number.
  - b. Enter the time the entry is made, a brief summary of the event, and the action taken on the event. Use the words "logged" or "information" instead of "routine."
  - c. Enter the shift internment supervisor's last name in the "entered by" column.
  - d. Record the following in the blotter:
    - (1) Guard relief changes.
    - (2) Head counts, bed checks, and roll calls.
    - (3) Staff visits and inspections.
    - (4) Incidents concerning improper duty performance by anyone assigned or detailed to the facility staff.
    - (5) Tests of emergency plans.
    - (6) Fires, escapes, riots, disorders, suicides, serious self-inflicted wounds, or other similar incidents.
    - (7) Any other events the facility commander directs, such as internments, releases, or transfers; changes in a internee's legal status; completion of or failure to complete events in the facility schedule of calls.
4. Close the blotter at 2400 hours. Enter—
  - a. The next consecutive blotter entry number.
  - b. "Blotter closed" in the "summary of complaint, incident, police information" column.
  - c. "Information" in the "summary of action taken" column.
  - d. Your last name in the "entered by" column.
  - e. The shift internment supervisor's signature block five lines below the last entry.
  - f. The internment officer's signature block three lines below the shift internment supervisor's signature block.

**NOTE:** If the shift internment supervisor's signature block is at the end of the page, place the internment officer's signature block to the immediate right of the shift internment supervisor's signature block.

- g. The total number of pages in the "no. of pages" block (see Figure 191-383-3373-1).

Performance Steps

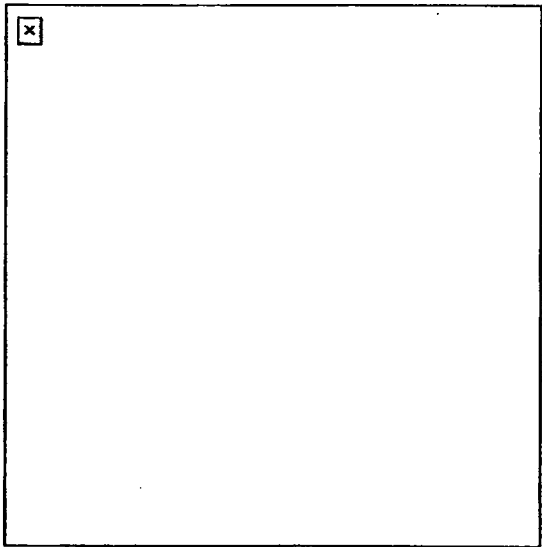


Figure 191-381-3373-1  
Sample of a Completed DA Form 3997

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with a blank DA Form 3997 and data for events that occur during a routine duty shift.

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to prepare an internment facility blotter (DA Form 3997) without error.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Entered the proper heading information at the top of each DA Form 3997.	—	—
2. Opened a new blotter at 0001 hours.	—	—
3. Recorded events that occurred during the work shift.	—	—
4. Closed the blotter at 2400 hours.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**  
DA FORM 3997

**Related**  
AR 190-45  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

## Take Record Fingerprint Impressions

191-390-0139

**Conditions:** You are required to take record fingerprint impressions of a subject, using a blank Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) Form FD 249, a card holder, plate glass (approximately 12" x 6" x 1"), printer's or special fingerprint ink, a rubber ink roller, hand cleaning agents, water, and paper towels.

**Standards:** Perform all necessary steps to ensure that fingerprint impressions are uniformly clear, visible, dark gray in color, and free of smudges.

### Performance Steps

1. Have the subject sign the fingerprint card.
2. Have the subject wash and dry his hands.
3. Place a small dab of ink on the plate glass and roll the ink until a thin, even film cover the surface.
4. Secure the fingerprint card in the holding device.
5. Ensure that the subject's fingers are dry and free of lint.
6. Fingerprint the subject.
  - a. Follow the sequence on the fingerprint card. Print each finger and thumb.
  - b. In a single movement, roll the finger or thumb in the ink from the tip of the finger to 1/4 inch below the first joint and from nail edge to nail edge.

**NOTE: Roll the thumbs and fingers from "awkward to comfortable," fingers away from the center of the body and the thumbs toward the center of the body.**

- c. Apply enough pressure to ensure an even coat of ink on each finger and thumb leaving a clear image on the card.
  - d. Have the subject look away from the fingerprint card to reduce possibility of smudging that can be created by his anticipation.
7. Make plain impressions in the appropriate blocks on the card.
  - a. Have the subject hold his four inked fingers straight, stiff and level with his wrist.
  - b. Grasp his wrist with one hand and press the fingers onto the card with the other hand.
  - c. Repeat step b for the thumb.
  - d. Print any extra finger (usually a "little" finger or a thumb) on the reverse side of the card. Print the innermost five as usual.
8. Note finger amputations in the correct box on the card (for example, "AMP" 1st joint, Feb 1943 or "tip AMP").
9. Direct the subject to clean his hands.
10. Fill in the administrative data on the fingerprint card after the procedure is complete.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with the items listed in the conditions.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to perform all the necessary steps to ensure that fingerprint impressions are uniformly clear, visible, dark gray in color, and free of smudges.

### Performance Measures

1. Had the subject sign the fingerprint card.
2. Had the subject wash and dry his hands.

**GO      NO GO**

\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
3. Placed a small dab of ink on the plate glass and rolled the ink until a thin, even film covered the surface.	—	—
4. Secured the fingerprint card in the holding device.	—	—
5. Ensured that the subject's fingers were dry and free of lint.	—	—
6. Fingerprinted the subject.	—	—
7. Made plain impressions in the appropriate blocks on the card.	—	—
8. Noted any finger amputations in the correct box on the card.	—	—
9. Directed the subject to clean his hands.	—	—
10. Filled in the administrative data on the fingerprint card after the procedure was complete.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
FBI FORM FD 249

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 19-20



## Subject Area 16: Cellblock Close Confinement Procedures

**Conduct an Inspection or a Shakedown of an Internee's Areas****191-381-1251**

**Conditions:** You are given order to perform an inspection or a shakedown in an internee's cellblock or domicile. You are given access to the facility standing operating procedure (SOP), a notebook, a pen or pencil, and blank Department of Defense (DD) Forms 2713 and 2714 to record any deficiencies or violations.

**Standards:** Conduct a complete and thorough inspection or shakedown, taking the necessary precautions to correct all discrepancies and confiscate all contraband.

**Performance Steps**

1. Conduct a daily inspection of the internee's area.

- a. Direct internees to prepare for inspection.

**NOTE:** Allow a specific amount of time, such as 15 minutes, according to the facility "schedule of calls."

- b. Give the command, "Fall in." Ensure that internees stand in the location designated in the SOP, usually at the head of their bunks, 1/2 step away from the bunk.
    - c. Move to the first internee and center on the internee using facing movements.
      - (1) Inspect the internee for cleanliness and overall appearance according to the regulations.
      - (2) Note all identified discrepancies.
      - (3) Correct minor discrepancies on-the-spot.
    - d. Inspect the internee's footlocker for compliance with the display sheet (usually a locally produced form attached to the inside of the footlocker).
    - e. Check that the internee has health and comfort items according to the SOP.
    - f. Inspect the internee's bunk area for neatness and cleanliness. Ensure that—
      - (1) The bed is made according to the facility SOP.
      - (2) Footgear is clean, polished, serviceable, and correctly positioned according to the facility SOP.
    - g. Search the following, systematically and thoroughly, in a clockwise manner:
      - (1) Door jams, seals, frames, and locks.
      - (2) Crevices.
      - (3) Lighting fixtures.
      - (4) Heating equipment.
      - (5) Plumbing fixtures
      - (6) Areas behind the baseboards and moldings.
      - (7) Crevices around sashes, frames, and the seals of all the windows.
    - h. Inform the internees of discrepancies. Explain that the discrepancies must be corrected and inform the internee when they will be inspected again. Allow a suitable amount of time before inspecting again to give the internees time to correct the deficiencies.
    - i. Confiscate any contraband items found and turn them in to your supervisor. Prepare a DD Form 2713 or DD Form 2714 as soon as possible after the inspection.
    - j. Move to the next internee and repeat steps 1d through 1i.
    - k. Inspect common areas, such as the latrine, showers, and sinks, for cleanliness, condition, and serviceability. Ensure that fixtures are intact and attached to the wall.

2. Notify the chain of command if there are deficiencies upon completion of the inspection.

3. Conduct an unannounced shakedown of internee's areas.

- a. Ensure that the internees are escorted out of the cellblock to a designated area. Make sure that there is an adequate number of guards available to assist with the shakedown.
  - b. Search the cellblock. Do not disturb or damage the prisoner's quarters or their personal effects more than necessary.

### Performance Steps

- (1) Check the bunk display first. This may include a display on the bed, a footlocker, or possibly a wall locker.
  - (a) Search toothpaste, shaving cream, soap and soap dish, writing materials, and books. Use a probe to search shoe polish, soap, or other hard to reach areas.
  - (b) Search (but do not read) mail for contraband.
  - (c) Search clothing thoroughly. Turn all clothing inside out when searching it.
  - (d) Search the mattress, mattress cover, pillow, pillowcase, and other bedding.
  - (e) Check all crevices and hollow areas of the bunk or cot frame.
- (2) Replace all items neatly after completing the shakedown.
- (3) Search the following, systematically and thoroughly, in a clockwise manner:
  - (a) Door jams, seals, frames, and locks.
  - (b) Crevices.
  - (c) Lighting fixtures.
  - (d) Heating equipment.
  - (e) Plumbing fixtures.
  - (f) Areas behind the baseboards and moldings.
  - (g) Crevices around sashes, frames, and the seals of all the windows.
4. Ensure that a strip search of the internees is conducted before returning them to the cellblock.
5. Notify the supervisor and complete a DD Form 2713 or DD Form 2714 for any contraband that is confiscated. Contraband includes excess amounts of authorized items.
6. Notify the supervisor when the daily inspection or shakedown is complete.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Select an area that could be used as a mock cellblock with materials that internees normally have in their areas. Create several scenarios that include deficiencies and have other soldiers act as internees. Tell the role-players the actions they are to take.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to conduct a complete and thorough inspection or shakedown, correct all discrepancies, and confiscate all contraband.

### Performance Measures

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Conducted a daily inspection of the internee's area.	—	—
2. Notified the chain of command if there were deficiencies upon completion of the inspection.	—	—
3. Conducted an unannounced shakedown of internee's areas.	—	—
4. Ensured that a strip search of the internees was conducted before returning them to the cellblock.	—	—
5. Notified the supervisor and completed a DD Form 2713 or DD Form 2714 for any contraband that was confiscated.	—	—
6. Notified the supervisor when the daily inspection or shakedown was complete.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

### References

**Required**  
DD FORM 2713  
DD FORM 2714

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

## Observe Internees in Close Confinement

191-381-1317

**Conditions:** You are assigned to observe internees in a close-confinement area. You are given a prepared Department of Defense (DD) Form 509 for each internee, eating utensils, cleaning supplies, and blank DD Forms 2713 and 2714.

**Standards:** Perform all the necessary steps to implement the requirements listed on each internee's DD Form 509, ensure that each internee's health and welfare is sustained, and report all problems and deficiencies to your supervisor.

### Performance Steps

1. Observe internees in close confinement.
  - a. Check each internee in disciplinary segregation once every 30 minutes or as called for in each internee's DD Form 509, Part I.
  - b. Check suicide risk internees and internees in restraining devices every 15 minutes or as called for by the internee's DD Form 509, Part I.
2. Be alert for potential problems and/or conditions which may affect the internee's health, such as burned-out lights, clogged or broken toilets and lavatories, and contraband.
3. Observe for anything unusual or out of the ordinary. Call for assistance if needed, and check more closely.
4. Notify the supervisor when something out of the ordinary is found.
5. Maintain DD Form 509 for each internee in disciplinary segregation, each suicide risk internee, and other internees in administrative segregation, as directed by the facility commander.
  - a. Ensure that the internee's DD Form 509 is posted outside his cell, if applicable. Notify the supervisor if the form is missing or damaged beyond use.
  - b. Check DD Form 509 for the facts about the internee's segregation.
    - (1) Find the following information in the heading:
      - (a) The internee's name.
      - (b) If the internee is in administrative or disciplinary segregation.
      - (c) The reason for segregation.
      - (d) The date the internee was placed in segregation.
    - (2) Check Part I for special instructions such as how often to check the internee, what items the internee may not have, and any other internee restrictions.
  - c. Ensure that all daily inspections are made and that the inspecting officers record their visits in the right place in Part II. Advise the supervisor if a scheduled inspection is not made. The following persons inspect each internee and cell to ensure that the internee is well and living conditions are healthy:
    - (1) The facility commander (or his representative) visits twice each day. That person records the time of the check and the conduct of the internee, then signs the form.
    - (2) The installation, facility, or MP duty officer checks twice each day. That person records the time of the check and signs the form (Figure 191-381-1317-1).

**Performance Steps**

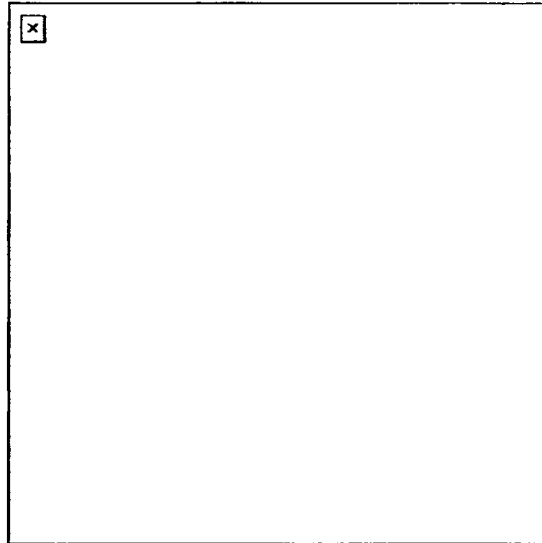


Figure 191-381-1317-1  
Example DD Form 509

- (3) The medical officer, warrant officer physician assistant, or nurse clinician inspects daily. He records the time of the check and the condition of the internee, and then signs the form.

**NOTE : A medical-staff representative visits each internee in close confinement daily.**

- d. Record inspections by having the inspecting officer place his initials in Part III. Each hour is divided into four parts on the form in order to conduct 15-minute checks.

**NOTE: Your supervisor will also use this part of the form for inspections.**

- (1) Initial the upper left block if the internee is checked during the first 15 minutes of the hour.
- (2) Initial the upper right side of the block if the internee is checked during the second 15 minutes of the hour.
- (3) Initial the lower left block if the internee is checked during the third 15 minutes of the hour.
- (4) Initial the lower right block if the internee is checked during the last 15 minutes (between 45 and 59 minutes) of the hour.
- (5) Initial the upper left block for the first 30 minutes of the hour and the lower right block for the last 30 minutes, when the internee is checked every 30 minutes.

6. Ensure that internees in close confinement for disciplinary segregation clean their quarters daily.

**NOTE: All internees in close confinement must clean their quarters daily. If an internee is in disciplinary segregation, give him the necessary cleaning supplies.**

- a. Obtain cleaning supplies from the supply room and give each cleaning item to the internee as needed.
- b. Observe the internee while he cleans his area, and retrieve each cleaning item after the internee has used it.

**NOTE: Internees placed in administrative segregation or special quarters may be employed in work. They may be required to undergo training which is consistent with their custody and classification and the circumstances surrounding their segregation. Internees in disciplinary segregation will not be required to work other than to clean their own quarters.**

7. Ensure that internees authorized outside their cells follow all rules and regulations.
8. Allow each internee at least 30 minutes of physical exercise each day.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** Physical exercise may be denied to those internees who are classified as intractable. Check each internee's DD Form 509.

9. Ensure that all eating utensils are returned to the cellblock guard for accountability and disposal at the end of each internee's meal.
10. Call for assistance if any problems are encountered, and follow up with DD Form 2713 or DD Form 2714, as applicable.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Create a simulated close-confinement area, and post prepared DD Forms 509 with programmed errors. Have other soldiers role-play the part of internees. Tell the role-players what actions they are to take.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to perform all necessary steps to implement the requirements listed on each internee's DD Form 509, ensure that each internee's health and welfare is sustained, and report all problems and deficiencies.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
1. Observed internees in close confinement.	—	—
2. Was alert for potential problems and/or conditions which may affect the internee's health.	—	—
3. Observed for anything unusual or out of the ordinary. Called for assistance if needed, and checked more closely.	—	—
4. Notified the supervisor when something out of the ordinary was found.	—	—
5. Maintained DD Form 509 for each internee in disciplinary segregation, each suicide risk internee, and other internees in administrative segregation, as directed by the facility commander.	—	—
6. Ensured that internees in close confinement for disciplinary segregation cleaned their quarters daily.	—	—
7. Ensured that internees authorized outside their cells followed all rules and regulations.	—	—
8. Allowed each internee at least 30 minutes of physical exercise each day.	—	—
9. Ensured that all eating utensils were returned to the cellblock guard for accountability and disposal at the end of each internee's meal.	—	—
10. Called for assistance if any problems were encountered, and followed up with a DD Form 2713 or DD Form 2714, as applicable.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier a NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
DD FORM 2713  
DD FORM 2714  
DD FORM 509

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

## Control a Shower and Shave Call Within Close Confinement

191-381-1319

**Conditions:** You are the guard in a close-confinement area, and you must conduct a shower and shave call for a internee. You are given a prepared Department of Defense (DD) Form 509, a close-confinement cell, shower facilities, a container with a lock and key, soap, a towel, shower shoes (if allowed), toothpaste, a toothbrush, a razor and blade (or disposable razor), shaving cream, DD Forms 2713 and 2714, and access to Army Regulation (AR) 190-47.

**Standards:** Complete all the necessary steps to ensure that the internee showers and shaves. Ensure that he is returned to his cell and that the cell is locked. Report any incidents to the supervisor. Prepare a complete and accurate DD Form 2713 (and DD Form 2714, if necessary) and turn it in to the supervisor. Observe all safety precautions.

### Performance Steps

1. Review the internee's DD Form 509 to determine if there are any special instructions for handling him.

**NOTE:** Check with your supervisor to determine if there are special instructions if a DD Form 509 is not available.

2. Obtain controlled shower and shave items (items the internee is not allowed to keep in his cell) from the locked container.
  - a. Obtain the key for the locked container from your supervisor.
  - b. Unlock the container.
  - c. Remove the items from the container.
  - d. Close and lock the container.
  - e. Return the key to your supervisor.
3. Direct the internee to prepare for a shower and shave call.
  - a. Direct the internee to remove his clothing and to either wear his underwear or drape a towel around himself.
  - b. Notify your supervisor if the prisoner refuses to comply.
  - c. Direct the internee to gather from his cell the items he will need to shower and shave, such as soap, a towel, shower shoes, a toothbrush, and toothpaste.
4. Escort the internee from his cell to the shower area.
  - a. Wait for additional noncommissioned officers (NCOs) before opening the cell door, if required by DD Form 509 or your supervisor.
  - b. Direct the internee to stand at the rear of the cell.
  - c. Unlock and open the cell door according to procedures required by the cellblock construction and the local standing operating procedure (SOP).

**CAUTION: DO NOT STAND IN THE PATH OF THE CELL DOOR AS IT OPENS.**

- d. Ensure that the internee is carrying the required shower and shave items taken from in his cell.
  - e. Direct the internee to step out of his cell and into the corridor.
  - f. Direct the internee to proceed to the latrine.
    - (1) Follow slightly behind the internee, out of his reach, and to his left or right.
    - (2) Direct the internee to halt at the latrine.
5. Direct the internee to shower. (Allow the amount of time that the local SOP indicates for showering.)
    - a. Direct the internee to enter the latrine area.
      - (1) If the latrine area is equipped with a security cage, unlock and open the cage according to the local SOP.
      - (2) Close and lock the cage according to the local SOP, after the internee enters.
      - (3) Remain outside the caged area.
      - (4) Hand the internee all the shower and shave items you obtained from the locked container, except the razor.

**Performance Steps**

- b. Notify your supervisor if the prisoner refuses to shower.
- c. Observe the internee while he takes a shower.

**WARNING: IF THE INTERNEE IS THOUGHT TO BE SUICIDAL, BE EXTREMELY ALERT.**

- d. Alert the other guards for assistance if the internee attempts suicide; stop the internee and notify your supervisor.

6. Direct the internee to shave. Allow the internee the amount of time that is indicated for shaving in the local SOP.

- a. Give the internee the razor when he is ready to shave.
- b. Notify your supervisor if the internee refuses to shave.

**NOTE: If an internee refuses to shave, he may be restrained and administered reasonable force to shave him. Check with your supervisor and the facility SOP. AR 190-47 gives strict guidance on the use of force and restraint for shaves and haircuts.**

- c. Observe the internee closely while he shaves.
- d. Immediately notify the other internment specialists if the internee attempts suicide, and stop the attempt.
- e. Ensure that the internee returns the razor to you as soon as he finishes shaving.

7. Maintain control of all items that must be secured.

- a. Do not give the internee the razor until he is ready to shave. Retrieve it as soon as the internee has shaved.
- b. Inspect the razor as soon as it is returned to you. Ensure that you have the razor and the blade.
- c. Obtain all items from the internee that must be secured in the locked container.
- d. Notify your supervisor if any items are missing, and have the internee remain in the latrine area.

8. Escort the internee back to his cell.

- a. Direct the internee to exit the latrine area. If the latrine area is equipped with a security cage, unlock and open the cage.
- b. Direct the internee to proceed to his cell.
  - (1) Follow slightly behind the internee, out of his reach, and to his left or right.
  - (2) Direct him to halt at his cell.
- c. Direct the internee to enter the cell and stand to the rear of it.
- d. Lock the cell door. Use the locking procedure required by the cellblock construction and the local SOP.

9. Secure controlled shower items in the locked container.

- a. Obtain the key for the container from your supervisor.
- b. Unlock the container.
- c. Return the items to the container.

**NOTE: Dispose of the used razor blade or the disposable razor according to your supervisor's instructions or the local SOP.**

- d. Lock the container.
- e. Return the key to your supervisor.

10. Notify the supervisor and prepare a DD Form 2713 (and DD Form 2714, if necessary) if anything unusual occurs or if there are problems with the internee during the shower and shave call.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: It is best to evaluate this task in a mock close-confinement area. Have another soldier role-play the part of the internee.

**Brief Soldier:** Explain to the role-player the actions he is to take.

**Performance Measures**

**GO      NO GO**

- 1. Reviewed the internee's DD Form 509 to determine if special instructions applied.

—      —

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
2. Obtained controlled shower and shave items from the locked container.	_____	_____
3. Directed the internee to prepare for a shower and shave call.	_____	_____
4. Escorted the internee from his cell to the shower area.	_____	_____
5. Directed the internee to shower.	_____	_____
6. Directed the internee to shave.	_____	_____
7. Maintained control of all items that must be secured.	_____	_____
8. Escorted the internee back to the cell.	_____	_____
9. Secured controlled shower items in the locked container.	_____	_____
10. Notified the supervisor and prepared a DD Form 2713 (and DD Form 2714, if necessary).	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

References	Related
Required	
AR 190-47	FM 3-19.40
DD FORM 2713	
DD FORM 2714	
DD FORM 509	



## Inspect the Physical Security of a Cellblock

### 191-382-2347

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to inspect the physical security of a fully equipped cellblock within an internment facility.

**Standards:** Perform all the necessary steps to ensure that there are no physical security deficiencies within the cellblock area while observing all safety precautions.

#### Performance Steps

1. Test the intercommunication system to ensure that it is operable.
2. Check all lights, light switches, and emergency lighting to ensure that they are in working order.
3. Check the bars in the cellblock area to ensure that they are intact and not loose. Ensure that the bars have not been sawed, filed, or tampered with.
4. Check all keys for cracks or breaks. Ensure that the keys to internal doors and gates do not fit any cellblock exit doors.
5. Ensure that each person who has signed for keys has all of those keys on his person.
6. Check all locking devices. Ensure that—
  - a. Key slots are free of debris which could prevent the key from being inserted or that could keep the lock from working properly.
  - b. The operating bolts of electrically operated doors and/or gate locks cannot be pushed back by hand.
  - c. The door frames are permanently attached to the building and are not loose.
  - d. The adjustment screw on each hydraulic closing device allows the door to close completely and that the operating bolt secures the door.
  - e. Each entrance and exit door and gate can be locked and unlocked from both sides.

**CAUTION: NEVER USE PADLOCKS AND CHAINS TO SECURE CELL DOORS WHERE INTERNEES ARE HOUSED.**

- f. Test the gang-locking devices or arrange to have them tested. To test the system yourself—
  - (1) Ensure that you have enough guards to control the internees.
  - (2) Notify the shift internment supervisor that you are going to test the gang-locking system.
  - (3) Check the inside panel of the master control box for detailed operating instructions for the system.
  - (4) Test the system and ensure that it will open all the selected doors at once.

**WARNING: DO NOT TEST THE DOORS OF THE CELLS IN WHICH INTRACTABLE INTERNEES ARE CONFINED.**

- (5) Check the tracks of the doors to ensure that they are free of debris. Ensure that the door does not come off the bottom track when it is being opened or closed because this will keep the door from being secured properly.
7. Ensure that bunk adapters are welded to the bunk.
8. Ensure that all tools, equipment, and supplies within the cellblock area are secured in a container that is not accessible to the internees.
9. Check that the floors, walls, and ceilings of all cells have smooth surfaces and are free of physical hazards.
10. Ensure that fixtures in every cell (such as sinks and toilets) work and are permanently attached to the building.
11. Make on-the-spot corrections when possible.

**Performance Steps**

12. Notify the supervisor immediately of deficiencies found and any situation that requires more than an on-the-spot correction.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Ensure that the soldier has access to a fully equipped cellblock within an internment facility.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to inspect the physical security of a fully equipped cellblock within an internment facility.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
1. Tested the intercommunication system to ensure that it was operable.	—	—
2. Checked all lights, light switches, and emergency lighting and ensured that they were in working order.	—	—
3. Checked the bars in the cellblock area to ensure that they were intact and not loose. Ensured that bars had not been sawed, filed, or tampered with.	—	—
4. Checked all keys for cracks or breaks. Ensured that the keys to internal doors and gates did not fit cellblock exit doors.	—	—
5. Ensured that each person who had signed for keys had all of those keys on his person.	—	—
6. Checked all locking devices.	—	—
7. Ensured that bunk adapters were welded to the bunk.	—	—
8. Ensured that all tools, equipment, and supplies within the cellblock area were secured in a container that was not accessible to the internees.	—	—
9. Checked that the floors, walls, and ceilings of all cells had smooth surfaces and were free of physical hazards.	—	—
10. Ensured that fixtures in every cell (such as sinks and toilets) worked and were permanently attached to the building.	—	—
11. Made on-the-spot corrections when possible.	—	—
12. Notified the supervisor immediately of deficiencies found and any situation that required more than an on-the-spot correction.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
**AR 190-47**

## Subject Area 17: Basic Internment

## Prepare Department of the Army (DA) Form 2823

191-376-0002

**Conditions:** You are given a situation that will require you to prepare a sworn statement. You are given a military police (MP) notebook and blank DA Forms 2823 and 3881.

**Standards:** Record accurately all information provided by the witness, complainant, victim, and/or subject on DA Form 2823 without error, and have the subject sign the sworn statement.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** For any person that you suspect of having committed an offense, advise him of his appropriate rights and prepare DA Form 3881 (Task 191-376-5127). Ensure that the suspect waives his right to an attorney and is willing to make a statement and be questioned before you prepare DA Form 2823.

1. Complete the following blocks of DA Form 2823. Refer to Figure 191-376-0002-1.

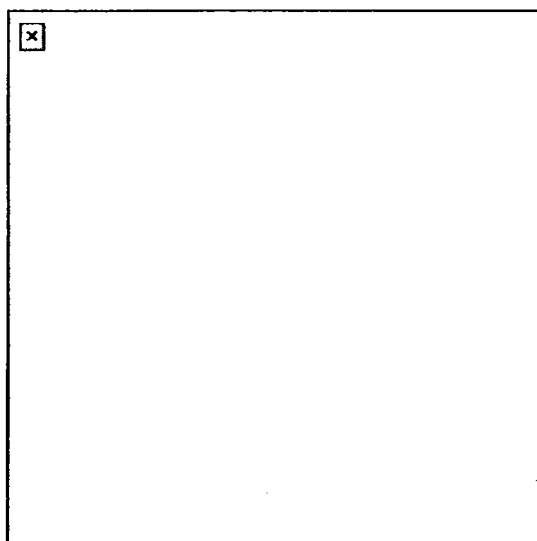


Figure 191-376-0002-1  
Sample DA Form 2823 (Page 1)

**NOTE: Use only a black ink pen to complete DA Form 2823.**

- a. Block 1. Enter the post location and state where the form is being completed. Do not enter specifics, such as building numbers or MP station.
- b. Blocks 2 and 3. Leave the date and time blocks blank. They will be filled out later.
- c. Block 4. Leave the file number block blank.
- d. Block 5. Enter the last, first, and middle name of the person making the statement.
- e. Block 6. Enter the social security number of the person making the statement.
- f. Block 7. Enter the grade and status of the person making the statement; for example, private first class (E3), captain (O3), or general schedule-5 (GS-5) and the status, such as regular Army (RA), United States Army Reserve (USAR), or inactive ready reserve (IRR).

**Performance Steps**

- g. Block 8. Enter the complete military address, including the post, state, and zip code or Army post office (APO) or fleet post office (FPO) number of the person making the statement. If a civilian other than a government employee is making the statement, enter the individual's home address, including the city, state, and zip code or APO or FPO number. Use the military address for civilians employed by the government.
- h. Block 9. Print or type the first name, middle initial, and last name of the person making the statement in the space provided.
- i. Block 9. Enter the person's statement. Either the MP or the person giving the statement may complete this part. It may be written, printed, or typed.

**NOTE: When written or printed use only a black ink pen.**

- (1) Write the statement as a narrative, as a series of questions with the individual's answers, or as a combination of both of these methods.
- (2) Ensure that the body of the statement contains information about who, what, where, when, why, and how.
- (3) Ensure that your last question is always: "Do you have anything you wish to add concerning the matter under investigation?"

**NOTE: Ensure that the statement is sequential.**

- (4) Ensure that all elements of proof for the crime are included. Be sure to include that the times and dates of specific acts and the methods used to complete the crime. Include information—
  - (a) To identify suspects, accomplices, witnesses, and persons knowing of the crime.
  - (b) To account for stolen property and instruments used in the crime.
  - (c) To tie the evidence to the victim and/or the suspect.

**NOTE: Give the person a chance to express anything he or she wishes that is related to the crime.**

- (5) Ensure that the statement is written from border to border on the form. Continue the second page of the form if there is not enough space on the first page. Refer to Figure 191-376-0002-2.

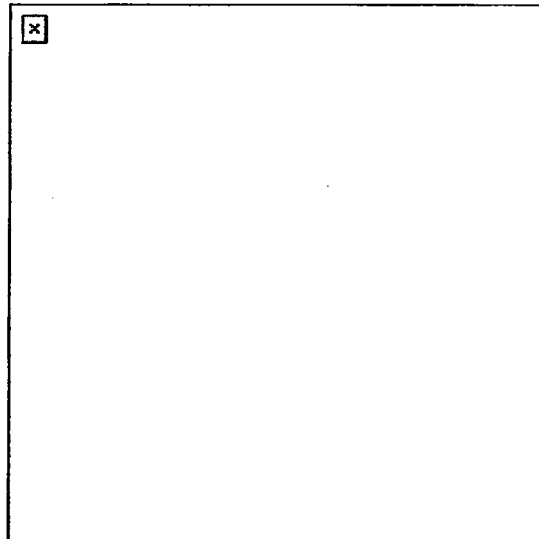


Figure 191-376-0002-2  
Sample DA Form 2823 (Page 2)

- (a) Use a continuation page for the statement, if needed. On each continuation page, place in the space provided, the same information of the person making the statement, as identified in the heading on the first page of DA Form 2823. Refer to Figures 191-376-0002-2 and 191-376-0002-3.

**Performance Steps**

- (b) Complete the time and date. The time and date will be the same as on page 1 and will be completed after the statement is sworn to.
- (6) Refer to Figure 191-376-0002-1. When ending the body of the statement (to include any questions and answers), add the words **END OF STATEMENT** (in capital letters). Place three slashes (///) before the word "end" and immediately following the word "statement" to completely close the statement out. Have the person making the statement place their initials after the last slash mark to represent nothing else was or will be added.
- (7) Place a single line through a word if a mistake is made and noticed while the statement is being typed, enter the correct information, and leave a space for the initials of the person making the statement.
- j. Leave the exhibit block blank.
- k. Block 11. Have the person enter his initials (located at the bottom of each page of the statement).
- l. Enter the total number of pages used to complete the statement.

**NOTE: There will never be fewer than two pages in the statement.**

- m. Complete the last page of the statement heading as in paragraph 1i(5)(a) and (b). Refer to Figure 191-376-0002-3.

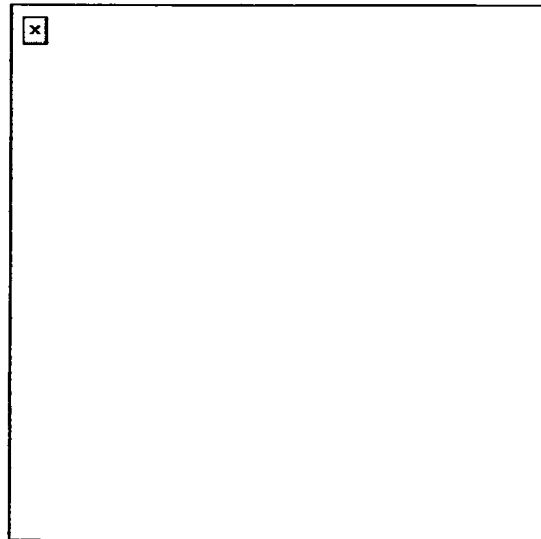


Figure 191-376-0002-3  
Sample DA Form 2823 (Page 3)

- n. Complete the affidavit block. Refer to Figure 191-376-0002-3.

**NOTE: The affidavit states that the information is given voluntarily, mistakes on the affidavit have been corrected, and the number of pages have been verified.**

- (1) Print or type the person's first name, middle initial, and last name.
- (2) Enter the total number of pages used to complete the statement on the second line.

**NOTE: The statement does not end until it has been sworn to and signed. There will always be at least two pages.**

- (3) Have the person making the statement initial at the bottom of each page.
- (4) Complete the page count on the last page of the statement. Ensure that each blank contains the same number, such as 2 of 2 or 3 of 3.

**NOTE: There will never be fewer than two pages in the statement and the last page will never contain the number 1.**

### Performance Steps

2. Have the person making the statement review and correct any errors. Let the subject read the affidavit or read it to him. If a mistake is found after the statement is completed, line the word out with a single line, write the correction above the mistake, and then have the person initial it.

**NOTE: Do not use correction tape or correction fluid to correct errors.**

3. Administer the oath.
  - a. Ask the person making the statement: "Do you swear or affirm that the information given by you is true and correct to the best of your knowledge, so help you God?"

**NOTE: If the subject objects to the use of the word "God," delete it.**

- b. Ensure that the person signs his payroll signature if he is satisfied that the information is correct. Refer to Figure 191-376-0002-3.
  - c. Enter the date that the statement was signed. Use DOD dates (four-digit year, two-digit month, and two-digit day). Have the person making the statement complete each page heading with the same date and their initials. Refer to Figure 191-376-0002-3.
  - d. Enter the time that the statement was signed in the time block on the first page, and have the person initial above it. Use military time (four digit number, such as 2345 hours). Have the person making the statement complete each page heading with the same time and their initials. Refer to Figure 191-376-0002-1.

4. Complete the affidavit section. Refer to Figure 191-376-0002-3.
  - a. Enter the date, city, state, and zip code where the oath was given under the person's signature in the affidavit section. Do not abbreviate the month.
  - b. Enter your payroll signature in the (appropriate signature of the person administering the oath) block. Print or type your first name, middle initial, last name, rank, and official position (for example, MP, MP investigator) on the next line.
  - c. Enter "Article 136(b)(4), Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ)" for military personnel only on the authority to administer oath line. The authority to administer the oath to a civilian is the United States Code (USC). Enter 5 USC, Chapter 3, Section 303b on the authority to administer the oath line for civilians.
  - d. Complete the witnesses section.
    - (1) Print or type the first name, middle initial, and last name on the first line.
    - (2) Enter the complete unit address on the second line.
    - (3) Enter the post, state, and zip code or the APO or FPO number on the third line.
    - (4) Have the witness sign, using his payroll signature, on the first line that contains the witnesses' information.

**NOTE: A witness is a person who witnesses the signing of the form. Ensure that this statement is witnessed by two persons whenever possible.**

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with a scenario that will require the use of DA Forms 2823 and 3881.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier where local standing operating procedures (SOPs) may impact the completion of these forms.

### Performance Measures

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Completed DA Form 2823.	___	___
2. Had the person making the statement review it and corrected any errors.	___	___
3. Administered the oath.	___	___
4. Completed the affidavit section.	___	___

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (G). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

DA FORM 2823

DA FORM 3881

**Related**

AR 190-45

FM 19-10

FM 19-20

UCMJ

**Detect Symptoms of Unusual or Potentially Deviant Behaviors of Internees**  
**191-381-1298**

**Conditions:** You are given internees and Department of Defense (DD) Form 2713.

**Standards:** Detect and report all unusual or potentially deviant behavior of internees to the supervisor and prepare a DD Form 2713.

**Performance Steps**

1. Identify a display of symptoms of a potentially deviant behavior that could lead to problems. Look for indications of:
  - a. Escape mindedness. Internees may talk openly about escaping or you may hear rumors from other internees.
  - b. Aggressive homosexual behavior, by deed or intent. Observe internees who prefer the mannerisms and behaviors of the opposite sex. Observe internees who enjoy being admired by other internees of the same sex. Observe internees who continually make degrading remarks about members of the opposite sex.
  - c. Substance abuse. Some of the following may indicate substance abuse:
    - (1) Nervousness.
    - (2) Sweating.
    - (3) Irritability.
    - (4) Changes in personality.
    - (5) Changes in mannerisms.
  - d. Neurotic behavior. Note if internees express unreasonable desire, or worry to the point that it seems they could become obsessed with them.
  - e. Psychotic behavior. Note if internees exhibit bizarre behaviors or extreme violence without an identifiable cause.
2. Watch for specific unusual or potentially deviant behaviors. Identify the following:
  - a. Barracks thieves who steal from others within the cellblock.
  - b. Dependent internees who ask for approval, recognition, or reward.
  - c. Manipulators who try to get special benefits by doing favors for guard personnel.
  - d. Rebels who instigate trouble or who always follow the "internee" code.
3. Take appropriate action and notify the supervisor if any type of unusual or deviant behaviors are observed.
4. Prepare and turn in a DD Form 2713 when unusual or potentially deviant behaviors are observed.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: You may evaluate this task with a written test.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to detect and report all unusual or potentially deviant behavior of internees to the supervisor and prepare a DD Form 2713.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
1. Identified a display of symptoms of a potentially deviant behavior that could lead to problems.	—	—
2. Watched for specific unusual or potentially deviant behaviors.	—	—
3. Took appropriate action and notified the supervisor if any type of unusual or deviant behaviors was observed.	—	—
4. Prepared and turned in a DD Form 2713 when unusual or potentially deviant behaviors were observed.	—	—



**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

DD FORM 2713

**Related**

FM 3-19.40

TF 19-4882

## Perform as a Tower Guard

191-381-1302

**Conditions:** As a tower guard in an internment facility with guard towers that have doors with locks, keys to the locks, and a perimeter fence, you are given an individual weapon, ammunition, internees, assisting guards, communications equipment, lights, emergency lights, a whistle or alarm system, and a facility standing operating procedure (SOP).

**Standards:** Perform all the necessary steps to provide security for the facility, maintain custody and control of the internees, prevent contraband from being passed over or through the perimeter fence, and observe all safety precautions.

### Performance Steps

1. Prepare for a shift of duty as a tower guard according to the facility SOP.
  - a. Obtain the applicable special instructions from the supervisor.
  - b. Accept responsibility from the guard who is being relieved, if working at a 24-hour post.
    - (1) Obtain the weapon and ammunition from the guard currently on duty and inspect them.
    - (2) Receive the keys.
    - (3) Check the tower according to the facility SOP to ensure that all required lighting and emergency devices are operational.
    - (4) Obtain a briefing from the guard currently on duty.
    - (5) Notify the supervisor of the change of relief.
  - c. Perform the following steps if you are opening the tower:
    - (1) Obtain the keys from the key custodian and sign for them.
    - (2) Obtain a weapon and ammunition from the arms room.
    - (3) Clear the weapon and perform a functions check.
    - (4) Check the tower according to the facility SOP to ensure that all required lighting and emergency devices are operational.
    - (5) Notify the supervisor when the tower is operational.
2. Observe all activities within your line of sight and report all incidents to the shift supervisor.

**NOTE: Your line of sight should not be less than 80 yards in any direction of the fence line.**
3. Keep internees away from the perimeter fence.
  - a. Use a loud tone of voice or other means available to attract attention and order prisoners who are too close to the fence to move back.
  - b. Request assistance from compound guards when needed.
  - c. Inform your immediate supervisor when an internee refuses to obey an order.
4. Do not permit anyone outside of the facility to get near the fence or to communicate with the internees. If anyone tries to talk to an internee through the fence—
  - a. Ask the individual to leave.
  - b. Record a description of the individual.
  - c. Notify your supervisor.
5. Do not permit anyone outside the facility perimeter to throw or hand items to internees.
  - a. Order the person to stay where he is.
  - b. Record a description of the person, his vehicle, and the direction of travel.
  - c. Take the following steps when an internee catches or receives an item that was passed from outside the facility:
    - (1) Order the internee to stay where he is.
    - (2) Watch the internee until a compound guard can get to him.
  - d. Take the following steps if a thrown item falls to the ground inside the facility:
    - (1) Watch to ensure that an internee does not pick it up.
    - (2) Call for a compound guard to secure it.
  - e. Report to your immediate supervisor all attempts by individuals to pass an item into the facility.

**Performance Steps**

6. Provide backup security for the compound guards.
7. Watch for signs of fire, escape, or internee disorder, and immediately sound the alarm if these things are observed.
8. Respond to escape attempts.
  - a. Sound the alarm by blowing three short blasts on your whistle or using other designated alarm signals as directed in the facility SOP.
  - b. Order the internee to halt. Repeat the order if the internee does not stop.
  - c. Fire at the internee only when all of the following conditions exist:
    - (1) He is outside the last barrier.
    - (2) He continues to attempt the escape.
    - (3) He is 20 meters or more from your position (see Task 191-381-1324).

**DANGER: NEVER SHOOT AT AN ESCAPEE IF IT WILL ENDANGER THE LIVES OF OTHER PERSONS.**

9. Prepare for the end of your shift relief according to the facility SOP.
  - a. Perform the following steps if you are working at a 24 hour post:
    - (1) Sign over the weapon, ammunition, and keys to the guard coming on duty.
    - (2) Brief the oncoming guard.
  - b. Perform the following steps if you are closing the tower:
    - (1) Notify the supervisor on duty at the end of your shift that you have closed the tower and brief him on the activities that occurred during your shift of duty.
    - (2) Turn in the weapon and ammunition to the arms room.
    - (3) Turn in the keys to the key custodian.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a mock internment facility to include a security guard tower and a perimeter fence. Create several scenarios such as a recreation call, an escape attempt, the passing of contraband, and/or an unauthorized visitor attempt. Have other soldiers act as internees and compound guards.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier that you will evaluate him on the action he takes in response to a given scenario. Brief the soldiers acting as internees and compound guards on the scenario selected, and give them instructions on the actions they should take.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Prepared for a shift of duty as a tower guard according to the facility SOP.	___	___
2. Observed all activities within your line of sight and reported all incidents to the shift supervisor.	___	___
3. Kept internees away from the perimeter fence.	___	___
4. Did not permit anyone outside of the facility to get near the fence or to communicate with the internees.	___	___
5. Did not permit anyone outside the facility perimeter to throw or hand items to internees.	___	___
6. Provided backup security for the compound guards.	___	___
7. Watched for signs of fire, escape, or internee disorder and immediately sounded the alarm if these things were observed.	___	___
8. Responded to escape attempts.	___	___
9. Prepared for the end of your shift relief according to the facility SOP.	___	___

STP 19-95C1-SM

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

## Interact With Internees

191-381-1328

**Conditions:** You are given an assignment at a internment facility that requires interaction with internees.

**Standards:** Interact with internees to establish rapport, to establish open lines of communication, and/or to assist the internee in solving his problems.

### Performance Steps

**NOTE:** To effectively interact with internees, you must not only talk to them, you must be an active listener. You must be able to read the internee's body language. The way you react to the internees may have a direct influence on their attitudes and behaviors.

1. Identify elements that influence the behavior of internees. Consider the following:

**NOTE:** You must also identify your own prejudices and experiences and how they can affect your response to another person. For example, if you have children, you may have a strong prejudice or reaction to an accused child molester.

- a. Age.
- b. Race.
- c. Experience.
- d. Training.
- e. The behavior itself.
- f. The time of the behavior.
- g. The location of the behavior.

2. Observe each internee's conduct (visible behavior). You must observe each internee to obtain information about where he is in relation to the policies of the facility and whether he needs some attention or assistance.

- a. Observe the body language. This is silent communication that physically expresses one's emotional moods and reactions, often without the individual being aware of it. Look for—
  - (1) Facial expressions such as smiles, frowns, tightly pressed lips, and blinking eyes.
  - (2) Gestures such as tapping fingers, clenching fists, and wringing hands.
  - (3) Body positions which may include hugging oneself, crossing the arms, standing with feet braced, or continually shifting one's weight from one foot to the other (fighting stance).
  - (4) Body distance. The internee may invade another person's body space by jabbing the person with his finger, placing his hand or arm on the other person's arm or shoulder, or standing very close to the person while speaking or listening to him.
- b. Observe for behaviors that express attitudes and emotions. This is important to help determine if the internee is acting normally or to help detect a change in his normal demeanor that could possibly be the beginning of trouble and/or problems. These may be shown through—
  - (1) Hurt. An internee may display hurt by appearing embarrassed, becoming withdrawn, showing grief, or crying.
  - (2) Anger. An internee may display anger by becoming aggressive, using sarcasm, using loud or abusive language, refusing to cooperate, displaying a stiff and stony face, or showing resentment and/or frustration.
  - (3) Fear. An internee may display fear by sweating, becoming nauseous, running away, freezing in place, becoming nervous, becoming physically or mentally unable to cooperate, or becoming overly cooperative or submissive.
  - (4) Concern. An internee may show concern by offering aid and comfort by word or deed, offering to listen to your problems, or exhibiting other similar acts of caring.

**NOTE:** For example, he may tell you he knows you have had a hard day and offer to help you with something you have to do or say, "I know this must be a tough job." Be careful that you do not discuss your problems or personal life with an internee. The internee could possibly use information such as this for manipulative purposes.

3. Exhibit good listening skills.

### Performance Steps

**NOTE: Some internees may attempt to have lengthy conversations with guards as a distractor to cover up unauthorized activities of other internees. Be careful not to engage in lengthy conversations that deter you from your primary mission of custody and control.**

- a. Listen for practical and worthwhile ideas in what the speaker is saying. Do not dominate the conversation, but listen for new information.
  - b. Concentrate on content, not the speaker's delivery. Remember, the message is important, not the way he chooses to deliver it. For example, a internee may talk in an excited manner, jumping from one idea to another, but what he says is important despite an ineffective delivery.
  - c. Hear all the speaker has to say before evaluating it. Don't decide a subject is uninteresting until you screen what is said. When a prisoner tries to tell you why he committed an offense, don't dismiss his comments as exaggerated or untrue. What he tells you may give you an important key to his future behavior.
  - d. Listen for concepts and main ideas, not just for facts. A good listener is an idea listener.
  - e. Be a flexible note taker. You don't need to outline everything you hear. Adapt your note taking to the organizational pattern of the speaker. Don't write notes while talking to an internee if it makes the him nervous. Write your notes immediately after the interview if you cannot take them while the internee is talking.
  - f. Pay attention and be an active listener.
    - (1) Maintain good eye contact.
    - (2) Maintain good posture (neither too rigid nor too relaxed).
    - (3) Nod your head occasionally to let the internee know you are paying attention.
    - (4) Maintain natural and relaxed facial expressions.
  - g. Tune out distractions and interruptions. If you cannot hear the internee, move the conversation to a quieter place.
  - h. Accept the challenge of new and complex ideas. Do not seek to avoid difficult, expository, or technical material. Have a positive attitude toward learning experiences.
  - i. Ignore emotion-laden words or phrases that upset you and disrupt your thought. Don't get upset over something that is being said and miss the rest of the message. For instance, if a prisoner makes an ethnic slur, remain impartial and listen to his story.
4. Identify speech patterns that will help you interpret the true meanings of what the internee is saying. Listen intently to the content and feelings to help identify the underlying meaning of what he is saying. True meanings may be implied by his tone of voice, emphasis or inflection given, breaks in the sentence, the speed of delivery, the degree of loudness or softness, and the pitch of his voice. Listen for negative emotions such as hate and frustration.
  5. Assist an internee to define a problem.
    - a. Help the internee think through the problem, understand his involvement and define the problem. Do not define the problem yourself. Some problems the internee may have are emotional, financial, with family members, personal illness, or spiritual.
    - b. Assist the internee in considering alternate courses of action, but let him select the solution. By doing this, the internee learns to make decisions and to accept responsibility.
    - c. Assist the internee in implementing the solution. If you tell the internee that you will find the answer to a question or that you will take some action of his behalf, make sure you follow through, and then inform him of the results.
  6. Obtain assistance from trained professionals according to facility regulations and the standing operating procedure (SOP) if you are unable to help the internee.
  7. Use the proper standards of conduct when interacting with internees. Do not—
    - a. Physically or verbally abuse internees.
    - b. Fraternize with internees or their families.
    - c. Use your position to obtain personal favors from internees.
    - d. Manipulate internees.
    - e. Reward informants.
    - f. Bring contraband or unauthorized items into the facility.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** There is a fine line between performing your duty and being a friend; therefore, you must use sound judgment when working with internee.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: You may give either a paper and pencil test or arrange for a group of soldiers to act as internees and create various scenarios where the internees have different problems.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldiers acting as internees what the problem is, how to act, and how to respond to the soldier being evaluated. Tell the soldier being evaluated that he must correctly interact with the internees according to the scenario.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
1. Identify elements that influence the behavior of internees.	_____	_____
2. Observed each internee's conduct.	_____	_____
3. Exhibited good listening skills.	_____	_____
4. Identified speech patterns.	_____	_____
5. Assisted an internee define the problem.	_____	_____
6. Obtained assistance, when required.	_____	_____
7. Used the proper standards of conduct when interacting with internees.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier a NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

**Prepare a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2713**

**191-381-1339**

**Conditions:** You are given a situation involving one or more internees that require a written report and a DD Form 2713.

**Standards:** Prepare a complete and accurate report without error and turn it in to the supervisor for review.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** Use a DD Form 2713 to report either positive or negative information about an internee. For example, you will normally prepare an DD Form 2713 if you observe an internee sitting in his cell and crying.

1. Prepare DD Form 2713 using precise terms or language, not slang.

**NOTE:** If hearsay is used, identify it as such so that it can be verified or dismissed through investigation.

2. Complete all the blocks of the form, as applicable (Figure 191-381-1339-1). Complete—
  - a. The report date. Enter the date that the report was prepared.
  - b. Block 1. Enter the internee's full name (last, first, middle).
  - c. Block 2. Enter the internee's social security number (SSN).
  - d. Block 3. Enter the internee's identification (ID) number, if applicable.
  - e. Block 4. Enter the internee's custody level.
  - f. Block 5. Enter the internee's quarters and detail names.
  - g. Block 6. Enter the name of the cellblock or dormitory to which the internee is assigned.
  - h. Block 7. Enter the cell and bunk number to which the internee is assigned.
  - i. Block 8.
    - (1) Block 8a. Check the box which corresponds to the type of observation being reported (favorable, unfavorable, injury, or behavioral).
    - (2) Block 8b. Enter the date that the incident occurred.
    - (3) Block 8c. Enter the time that the incident occurred.
    - (4) Block 8d. Enter where the incident occurred.
    - (5) Block 8e. Check "yes" or "no" to indicate whether or not the internee was informed that the report was prepared.
  - j. Block 9.
    - (1) Block 9a. Enter your full name (last, first, middle).
    - (2) Block 9b. Enter your pay grade.
    - (3) Block 9c. Enter your duty title.
    - (4) Block 9d. Enter the date the report was prepared.
  - k. Block 10.
    - (1) Block 10a. Enter the full name of a witness (last, first, middle)
    - (2) Block 10b. Enter the pay grade of the witness, if applicable.
    - (3) Block 10c. Enter the title of the witness.
    - (4) Block 10d. Enter the date of witness to the incident.
  - l. Block 11. Include all facts about the incident, including the date and time of the incident, what was seen, what was said, who was involved, why the incident occurred (if known) and how it occurred. Be as specific as possible. If additional space is needed to complete this report, use DD Form 2719.



## Performance Steps

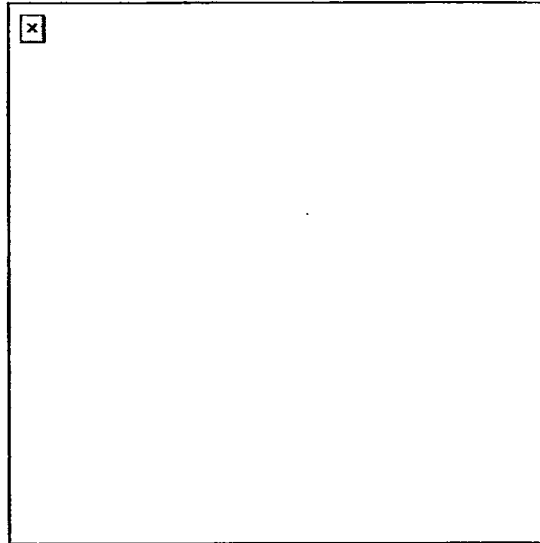


Figure 191-381-1339-1  
DD Form 2713

- m. Block 12.
  - (1) Place your signature in this block. This block should only be signed by the person preparing the report.
  - (2) Block 12b. Enter the date the report was signed by the reporting person.
- n. Block 13.
  - (1) Check the appropriate block, as to whether or not immediate medical attention was required.
  - (2) Block 13b. Enter the date immediate medical attention was administered.
  - (3) Block 13c. Enter the time immediate medical attention was administered.
  - (4) Block 13d. Give a brief description of any medical attention that was given to the internee.
- o. Block 14.
  - (1) Block 14a. Enter the name of the supervisor to which the incident was reported (last, first, middle).
  - (2) Block 14b. Enter the date that the incident was reported to the supervisor.
  - (3) Block 14c. Enter the time that the incident was reported to the supervisor.
- p. Block 15. Give a brief description of the actions taken by the supervisor in response to the incident.
- q. Block 16. Give a brief description of the actions taken by the reviewing authority in response to the incident.
- r. Block 17.
  - (1) Block 17a. Enter the name, grade, and title of the commanding officer or his designated representative.
  - (2) Block 17b. The commanding officer or his designated representative will sign this block.
  - (3) Block 17c. Enter the date that the commanding officer or his designated representative signs the form.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with one or more role-players to act as internees that are creating a situation that requires a DD Form 2713.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to properly prepare a complete and accurate DD Form 2713 without error and turn it in to the supervisor for review.

**Performance Measures**

**GO**    **NO GO**

1. Prepared DD Form 2713 using precise terms or language, not slang.
2. Completed all the applicable blocks of the form.

\_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_    \_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

DD FORM 2713  
DD FORM 2719

**Related**

AR 190-47

**Prepare a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2714**

**191-381-1340**

**Conditions:** You are given a situation where you observe one or more internees engaging in an activity that requires you to prepare a DD Form 2714. You are given DD Form 2714.

**Standards:** Prepare a complete and accurate report without error and turn it in to the supervisor for review.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** Use a DD Form 2714 to report negative information about an internee. For example, you will prepare a DD Form 2714 if you observe internees in a physical altercation.

1. Complete DD Form using precise terms or language, not slang.

**NOTE:** If hearsay is used, identify it as such so that it can be verified or dismissed through investigation.

2. Complete the form (Figures 191-381-1340-1 and 191-381-1340-2) , as applicable. Complete—

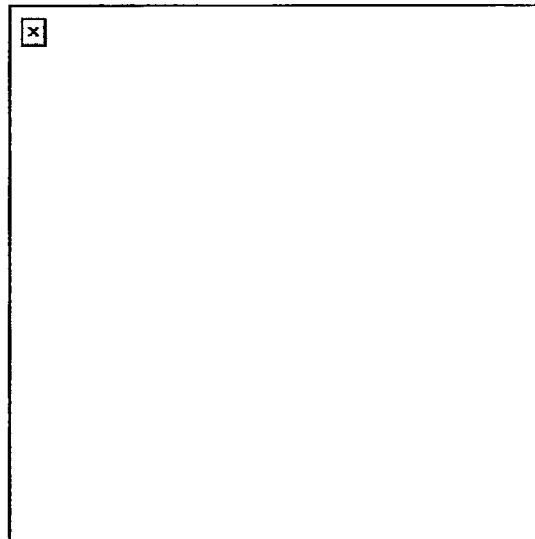


Figure 191-381-1340-1  
Sample of a DD Form 2714 (Front Side)

**Performance Steps**

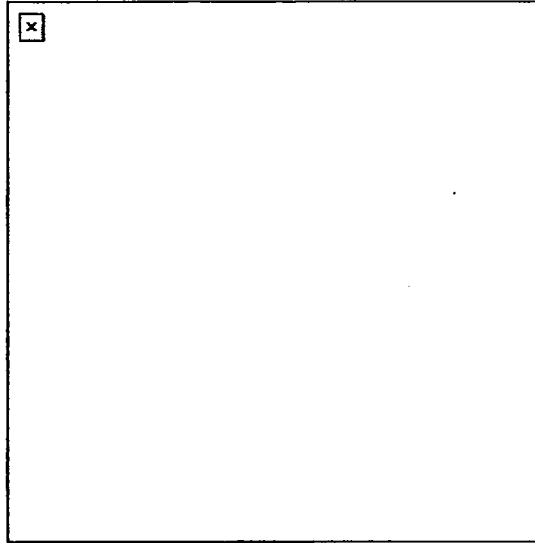


Figure 191-381-1340-2  
Sample of a DD Form 2714 (Reverse)

- a. The report date. Enter the date that the report was prepared.
- b. Block 1.
  - (1) Block 1a. Enter the internee's full name (last, first, middle)
  - (2) Block 1b. Enter the internee's social security number (SSN).
  - (3) Block 1c. Enter the internee's identification (ID) or registration number, if applicable.
- c. Block 2. Enter the internee's current custody level.
- d. Block 3. Enter the name of the cellblock/dormitory to which the internee is assigned.
- e. Block 4. Enter the internees detail name or number.
- f. Block 5.
  - (1) Block 5a. Enter the name and/or number of the violation(s) or offense(s).
  - (2) Block 5b. Enter the date of the incident.
  - (3) Block 5c. Enter the time of the incident.
  - (4) Block 5d. Enter the location of the incident.
  - (5) Block 5e. Include all facts about the incident, to include the date and time of the incident, what was seen, what was said, who was involved, why the incident occurred (if known), and how it occurred. Be as specific as possible. If additional space is needed to complete this report, use DD Form 2719.
- g. Block 6.
  - (1) Block 6a. Enter your full name (last, first, middle).
  - (2) Block 6b. Enter your pay grade.
  - (3) Block 6c. Enter your duty title.
  - (4) Block 6d. Place your signature in this block. This block should only be signed by the person preparing the report.
  - (5) Block 6e. Enter the date that the report was prepared.
- h. Block 7.
  - (1) Block 7a. Your supervisor will enter his name in this block (last, first, middle).
  - (2) Block 7b. Your supervisor will enter the date that the incident was reported in this block.
  - (3) Block 7c. Your supervisor will enter the time that the incident was reported in this block.
  - (4) Block 7d. Your supervisor will write a brief description of the actions taken in response to the incident.
- i. Block 8.

**Performance Steps**

- (1) Block 8a. Check the appropriate block as to whether or not medical attention was needed
- (2) Block 8b. Enter the date that medical attention was administered.
- (3) Block 8c. Enter the time that medical attention was administered.
- (4) Block 8d. Briefly describe any medical attention that was administered to the internee.
- j. Block 9. The investigator will check the appropriate block as to whether or not an investigation was required.
- k. Block 10.
  - (1) Block 10a. The investigator will check the appropriate block as to whether or not the internee was advised of his rights.
  - (2) Block 10b. The investigator will check the appropriate block as to whether or not the internee waived his rights.
  - (3) Block 10c. The investigator will check the appropriate block as to whether or not the internee made a statement.
- l. Block 11.
  - (1) Block 11a. The investigator will check the appropriate block as to whether or not he completed an investigative summary.
  - (2) Block 11b. The investigator will write a brief synopsis of his findings.
  - (3) Block 11c. The investigator will enter his name and title.
  - (4) Block 11d. The investigator will place his signature in this block.
  - (5) Block 11e. The investigator will enter the date that the form was signed.
- m. Block 12. Use DD Form 2719 if additional space is required.
- n. Block 13.
  - (1) Block 13. The reviewing authority will enter recommendations and/or actions taken regarding the incident.
  - (2) Block 13b. The reviewing authority will enter his name, grade, and title.
  - (3) Block 13c. The reviewing authority will place his signature in this block.
  - (4) Block 13d. The reviewing authority will enter date that the form was signed.
- (5) Block 14.
  - (a) Block 14a. The disciplinary and adjustment board president will check the appropriate block according to the board findings and enter a brief summary, based on those findings.
  - (b) Block 14b. The board president will enter the actions recommended by the board.
  - (c) Block 14c. The board president will enter his name and title.
  - (d) Block 14d. The board president will place his signature in this block.
  - (e) Block 14e. The board president will enter the date that the form he signed the form.
- (6) Block 15. The reviewing officer will enter the actions recommended.
  - (a) Block 15b. The reviewing officer will enter his name and title.
  - (b) Block 15c. The reviewing officer will place his signature in this block.
  - (c) Block 15d. The reviewing officer will enter the date that he signed the form.
- (7) Block 16. The approving authority will enter the actions taken.
  - (a) Block 16b. The approving authority will enter his name and title.
  - (b) Block 16c. The approving authority will place his signature in this block.
  - (c) Block 16d. The approving authority will enter the date that he signed the form.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Create a realistic situation that fully exploits the use of DD Form 2714. Provide the soldier with the necessary personal information to properly fill out the form.

Brief soldier: Tell the soldier to complete an accurate report without error and turn it in to the supervisor for review.

**Performance Measures**

- 1. Used precise terms and language, not slang.

GO    NO GO

—       —

**Performance Measures**

**GO**    **NO GO**

2. Completed the form, as applicable.

\_\_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier a NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

DD FORM 2714

DD FORM 2719

**Related**

AR 190-47

## Subject Area 18: Visitors' Room Procedures

## Search a Visitor Room Before and After Visits

191-381-1313

**Conditions:** You are given a furnished room, keys to the door locks, searching devices, assisting guards, and a requirement to perform a search of the visitor room before and after visits.

**Standards:** Search the visitor room before and after visits to ensure that no contraband is present. Observe all safety precautions.

## Performance Steps

1. Search the visitor room and adjacent areas before allowing any visitors to enter.
  - a. Perform a systematic and thorough search. Select a point in the room and begin a clockwise or counterclockwise search around the room.
  - b. Search for contraband such as messages, weapons, and money (refer to Task 191-381-1288).  
**CAUTION: USE SEARCHING DEVICES SUCH AS A FLASHLIGHT, MIRROR, OR PROBING DEVICE WHEN SEARCHING AREAS THAT CANNOT BE READILY SEEN IN ORDER TO AVOID THE POSSIBILITY OF INJURY.**
  - c. Ensure that you check all areas, including—
    - (1) Underneath chair cushions.
    - (2) Behind pipes.
    - (3) Behind curtains.
    - (4) Around and underneath latrine fixtures.
    - (5) Underneath tables and chairs.
    - (6) All cracks, holes, or small open spaces in the structure itself.
  - d. Report the results of the search to the supervisor.
    - (1) Turn in all contraband.
    - (2) Prepare and submit a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2713 (refer to Task 191-381-1339).
2. Repeat the search procedures after the visiting period is over and the room has been cleared.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Create a visitor room with contraband placed in selected areas.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to safely perform a proper search of the visitor room before and after visits to ensure that no contraband is present. Prepare a DD Form 2713 if any contraband is found.

## Performance Measures

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Searched the visitor room and adjacent areas before allowing any visitors to enter.	—	—
2. Repeated the search procedures after the visiting period was over and the room was cleared.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

## References

**Required**  
DD FORM 2713

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

**Inform an Internee of Rules and Regulations Regarding Visitors**  
**191-381-1329**

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to inform a newly confined internee of the rules and regulations regarding visitors.

**Standards:** Inform a newly confined internee of all facility rules and regulations that govern internee visitations.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE:** The facility standard operating procedure (SOP) will dictate when and under what circumstances visitors or facility personnel may enter areas within the internment facility that are outside the visitor area.

1. Inform the internee that he must submit a list of requested visitors. Inform him that this list may include—
  - a. Members of his immediate family (such as his spouse, children, parents, brothers, and sisters).
  - b. Members of the clergy (other than the facility chaplain).
  - c. Other personnel identified in the facility SOP.
2. Inform the internee that visitors will not be permitted until the requested list is authorized by the facility commander or his designated representative.
3. Inform the internee of personnel who do not require prior approval. Inform him that this list may include—
  - a. Members of Congress.
  - b. The prison chaplain.
  - c. Official visitors, such as members of his chain of command.
4. Explain the rules and regulations governing the visiting period.
  - a. Brief the internee on the visiting hours and days, the time limits, and the number of visitors permitted.
  - b. Ensure that the internee understands that he will be frisked before each visit and strip-searched after each visit.
  - c. Ensure that the internee understands that there will be a guard on duty during visiting hours to provide security and control, not to overhear or record conversations.
  - d. Ensure that the internee understands that the facility commander or his designated representative must approve, in advance, gifts from visitors. Inform him that all unapproved items will be considered contraband.
  - e. Inform the internee that he may briefly embrace a visitor at the beginning of the visit and again at the completion of the visit.
  - f. Inform the internee that he may hold the visitor's hands throughout the visit, but their hands must always be visible to the guard.
  - g. Ensure that the internee understands that a violation of the rules and regulations by either himself or the visitor may result in termination of the visit.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with a role-player to act as a newly confined internee who is to be informed of the rules and regulations regarding visitors.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to ensure that the newly confined internee is briefed and understands the rules and regulations regarding visitors.

**Performance Measures**

1. Informed the internee that he must submit a list of requested visitors.

**GO**      **NO GO**

—      —



**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
2. Informed the internee that visitors will not be permitted until the requested list is authorized by the facility commander or his designated representative.	—	—
3. Informed the internee of personnel not requiring prior approval.	—	—
4. Explained the rules and regulations governing the visiting period.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References****Required****Related**

AR 190-47

FM 3-19.40

## Assist in the Control of Internee Visits

191-381-1330

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to assist in the control of internee visits within a furnished visitor room in a internment facility. You are given internees, assisting guards, visitors, the facility standing operating procedures (SOPs), and a facility rule book.

**Standards:** Position yourself in the visitor room where you can be seen and observe the visits, without calling undue attention to yourself. Enforce the facility rules and take action to correct violations, stop fights, and, if necessary, end the visit.

### Performance Steps

1. Assume a position in the visitor room where you can be seen without calling undue attention to yourself.
  - a. Choose a location where you will not interfere with the visits.
  - b. Move around the room as necessary to allow for good observation.

**NOTE: Do not act as though you are spying on the internees and their visitors.**

2. Observe the visits and enforce the facility visitation rules as outlined in the facility SOPs and rule book.
  - a. Allow internees and visitors to embrace briefly at the beginning and again at the end of the visit.
  - b. Allow internees to hold hands with their visitors during the visit. Ensure that their hands are always visible.
  - c. Do not listen to conversations between internees and visitors. Do not repeat conversations that are overheard.
  - d. Ensure that the internees and visitors are properly dressed and that they stay dressed throughout the visit.
  - e. Do not allow visitors and internees to exchange items.
  - f. Watch for violations of other rules set by the facility commander.
3. Take corrective action if an internee or visitor breaks a visitation rule.
  - a. Direct the internee to move away from the visitor so you can speak to him privately. Do not embarrass the internee by correcting him in front of the visitor (refer to Task 191-381-1328).
  - b. Remind the internee about the violated rule.
  - c. Remind the internee that the visit can be stopped if the misconduct continues.
  - d. Allow the internee to rejoin the visitor (unless the circumstances prohibit a continuation of the visit).
  - e. Advise the supervisor of the incident.
4. Use tact and courtesy when speaking to visitors.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a furnished room for the visiting area. Have additional soldiers play the roles of guards, internees, and visitors. Create various scenarios using role-players that depict various situations (such as an argument between a internee and a visitor) that may occur during a visit.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to maintain control of internee visits by enforcing the rules, regulations, and local SOPs.

### Performance Measures

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Assumed a position in the visitor room where you could be seen without calling undue attention to yourself.	—	—
2. Observed the visits and enforced the facility visitation rules as outlined in the facility SOPs and rule book.	—	—

**Performance Measures**

- 3. Took corrective action if a internee or visitor broke a visitation rule.
- 4. Used tact and courtesy when speaking to visitors.

GO      NO GO

\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

Subject Area 19: Escort Guard Duties

**Escort Internees on Foot Outside an Internment Facility**  
**191-381-1300**

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to escort internees outside an internment facility. You are given additional personnel, prepared Department of Defense (DD) Forma 2708, blank DD Forms 2713 and 2714, a telephone or radio, and a weapon (when required).

**Standards:** Complete the performance steps, and maintain control and custody of all internees while moving them to a designated destination outside the internment facility. Observe all safety precautions.

**Performance Steps**

1. Sign a DD Form 2708 on each internee being escorted.
2. Frisk each internee before leaving the facility.
3. Obtain weapons and restraints (as directed by your supervisor).
4. Place the restraints on the internees.
5. Implement procedures while moving internees to the destination.
  - a. Escort a single internee. Stay behind and slightly to the left or right, out of the internee's reach.
  - b. Escort multiple internees.
    - (1) Instruct internees to form a line, single file or in columns of twos.
    - (2) Stay 6 to 8 feet behind and slightly to the left or right of the formation. Ensure that your position allows observation of all the internees at all times.
    - (3) Direct the assisting guards to the flank of the formation, out of the internees' reach.

**WARNING: ENSURE THAT ARMED GUARDS ALWAYS KEEP THEIR WEAPONS ON THE SIDE AWAY FROM THE INTERNEES.**

**CAUTION: BE PARTICULARLY CAREFUL WHEN MOVING AROUND CORNERS.**

- (4) Move the internees along the most direct route to the designated point, as quickly as possible. Do not allow anyone or anything to pass through the formation or between you and the internees.
  - c. Escort multiple internees along a roadway.
    - (1) Move the internees on the left side of the road, facing the traffic.
    - (2) Keep the internees far enough off the road to prevent them from jumping into a passing vehicle.
    - (3) Use a flanking movement to move the internees across the road.
    - (4) Be especially watchful at intersections.
6. Take appropriate corrective action to handle any disciplinary problems.
  - a. Correct the misconduct using the least amount of force necessary.
  - b. Request assistance when needed. Notify your supervisor by telephone or messenger.
  - c. Return all internees to the facility upon identification of a problem internee.
  - d. Report all incidents to your immediate supervisor.
  - e. Prepare a DD Form 2713 or DD Form 2714.
7. Take the appropriate corrective action for an escape attempt (refer to Task 191-381-1322).

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Use predetermined routes to evaluate the soldier's ability to escort internees on foot. Create scenarios involving incidents such as disorders and escape attempts. Select other soldiers to role-play the part of internees and assistant guards. Coach the mock internees and guards on the actions they are to take.

Brief soldier: Tell the evaluated soldier that he will be rated on his responses to the various scenarios.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
1. Signed a DD Form 2708 on each internee being escorted.	—	—
2. Frisked each internee before leaving the facility.	—	—
3. Obtained weapons and restraints (as directed by your supervisor).	—	—
4. Placed the restraints on the internees.	—	—
5. Implemented procedures while moving internees to the destination.	—	—
6. Took appropriate corrective action to handle any disciplinary problems.	—	—
7. Took the appropriate corrective action for an escape attempt.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

#### References

**Required**  
DD FORM 2708  
DD FORM 2713  
DD FORM 2714

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

## Escort Internees by Motor Vehicle

191-381-1301

**Conditions:** You are given weapons (if required), a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2708 for each internee, an internee roster, hand irons, additional restraining devices, drivers, and assistant escort guards (if needed).

**Standards:** Escort internees by motor vehicle according to the performance steps and the local standing operating procedure (SOP).

### Performance Steps

1. Attend the mission information briefing provided by your supervisor. Obtain information about the—
  - a. Type of vehicle.
  - b. Departure time.
  - c. Number of and status of internees.
  - d. Number of assisting escorts.
  - e. Type of weapon, if applicable.
  - f. Type of restraints (in addition to the required hand irons), if applicable.
  - g. How, when, and to whom you will release the prisoners at the final destination.
  - h. Actions to take in case of a disorder or an escape attempt.

2. Sign a DD Form 2708 for each internee escorted out of the facility.

3. Take actions prior to loading the internees in the vehicles.
  - a. Ensure that all vehicles are thoroughly searched and that all items considered potential weapons are removed or secured.
  - b. Brief the driver.

**NOTE: The vehicle drivers may not necessarily be internment personnel.**

- (1) Instruct him not to talk to the internees.
- (2) Establish emergency signals, such as one tap to start and two taps to stop the vehicle.
- (3) Inform him of pertinent information required to complete the mission, such as the destination.
- (4) Instruct the driver to secure the tailgate or doors of an open-bed truck or ambulance after the internees and escorts have boarded.
- c. Ensure that all internees are frisked.

4. Apply restraining devices as directed or required.

**CAUTION: DO NOT RESTRAIN TWO ESCAPE RISK INTERNEES TOGETHER. DO NOT RESTRAIN INTERNEES TO ANY PART OF THE VEHICLE.**

5. Transport internees on a caged bus.
  - a. Direct the internees to form lines, single file or in two columns (depending on the number of internees).
  - b. Provide an unarmed guard with the seating plan, and instruct him to enter the bus and move to the rear. Instruct the guard to direct the internees to their seats as they board the bus, filling the bus from the back to the front. Instruct the guard to take a seat at the back of the bus.

**NOTE: Internees should not be seated near emergency exits or directly behind the driver. Do not allow them to move around after they are seated.**

- c. Give an unarmed guard the internee roster, and direct him to assume a position by the door, outside of the bus. Instruct him to call each internee's last name and match it against the first name and social security number (SSN) on the roster. Instruct him to individually board each cleared internee.
- d. Instruct the internees to approach the door of the bus, one at a time, as his last name is called and to respond with his first name and SSN. Match the name and SSN against the roster and then allow the internee to board.
- e. Take a seat near the driver if you are unarmed. Take a seat outside the cage if you are armed.

**Performance Steps**

- f. Direct the guards to open the windows (no more than 4 inches) if ventilation is required.
- g. Unload the bus by reversing the boarding procedures (steps 5d through 5a).

## 6. Transport internees on an uncaged bus.

- a. Perform steps 5a through 5d.
- b. Do not board the bus if you have a weapon. Ride in an escorting vehicle.
- c. Unload the bus by reversing the loading order (steps 5a through 5d).

## 7. Transport internees in an open-bed truck.

- a. Board the vehicle first if you are armed. Have the assisting guard hold the weapon while you board and then hand it back to you.
- b. Stand just behind the truck cab facing the internees during internee loading.
- c. Call each internee's last name and tell him to respond with his first name and SSN. Match the name and SSN against the roster and then allow the internee to board.
- d. Direct the internees to board the truck one at a time. Tell them to go to the front of the truck and to sit alternating one on each side, filling the truck from the front to the rear.
- e. Ensure there is space between the guards and the internees and between the tailgate and the internees.

**NOTE: The assistant guard always boards last and sits on the opposite side of the vehicle from the senior guard, between the tailgate and the internees to allow for maximum internee observation.**

- f. Keep your weapon on your side if armed, away from the internee.
- g. Unload the truck by reversing the loading order (the last internee boarded is the first internee to unload).

## 8. Transport internees in a high-mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicle (HMMWV).

- a. Follow the procedures for escorting one internee.
  - (1) Direct the internee to sit in the back seat, directly behind the front passenger seat. Place a seat belt around him.
  - (2) Enter the vehicle after the internee. Sit in the back seat behind the driver if you are alone. Direct the assistant guard to sit in the back seat behind the driver, if you have one, and you sit in the front passenger seat.
  - (3) Keep your weapon on your side if armed, away from the internee.
  - (4) Unload the HMMWV by reversing the loading order.
- b. Follow the procedures for escorting two internees, without the use of assistant guards.
  - (1) Direct one internee to sit in the front passenger seat and the other to sit in the rear seat directly behind the front passenger seat.
  - (2) Fasten each internee's seat belt.
  - (3) Sit in the rear seat directly behind the driver.
  - (4) Keep your weapon on your side if armed, away from the internee.
  - (5) Unload the internees by reversing the loading order.

## 9. Transport internees in an ambulance or a van.

- a. Direct the internees to board the vehicle.
- b. Board the vehicle and position yourself between the side and rear doors. Instruct the assistant guards to board.
- c. Place your weapon on your side, away from the internees (if armed).
- d. Unload the vehicle by reversing the loading order.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a vehicle or reasonable simulation for each type vehicle in this task. Have other soldiers role-play the part of internees. Coach the mock internees on the actions they are to take. Tell them that they must obey all directives issued by internment personnel.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to complete the appropriate steps and to follow the local SOP to properly escort internees by motor vehicle.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Attended the mission information briefing.	—	—
2. Signed a DD Form 2708 for each internee escorted out of the facility.	—	—
3. Took actions prior to loading the internees in the vehicles.	—	—
4. Applied restraining devices as directed or required.	—	—
5. Transported internees on a caged bus.	—	—
6. Transported internees on an uncaged bus	—	—
7. Transported internees in an open-bed truck.	—	—
8. Transported internees in a HMMWV.	—	—
9. Transported internees in an ambulance or a van.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
DD FORM 2708

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40



## Escort Internees by Aircraft

191-381-1540

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to escort internees by aircraft. You are given a weapon (if required), hand irons, assisting internment personnel, additional restraints, Department of Defense (DD) Form 2708, and access to Army Regulation (AR) 190-47.

**Standards:** Complete the appropriate steps. Maintain custody and control of the internees while observing all safety precautions.

### Performance Steps

1. Attend the mission briefing and obtain all available information. Obtain information on the—
  - a. Number of internees to be escorted.
  - b. Custody grade of each internee.
  - c. Guard-to-internee ratio, as required by AR 190-47.
  - d. Type of weapon required.
  - e. Use of force.
  - f. Type of restraints required (in addition to hand irons).
  - g. Mode of transportation to be used to transport the internee to the airport or aircraft.
  - h. Type of aircraft that will be used (such as commercial, military, or charter).
  - i. Procedures to be taken in the event of a disorder or escape attempt.
  - j. Release of the internees (who, when, and where).

2. Escort internees on a commercial aircraft.

**NOTE:** Twenty-four hours before the flight, the chief of internee services will coordinate with the air carrier representative regarding the transfer of the internees. He will provide the carrier with a list containing the name, rank, and social security number (SSN) of each internee and escort guard and any other information that could possibly affect the security of the move.

- a. Coordinate with the air carrier regarding specific requirements (as directed by your supervisor).
- b. Notify the air carrier of the following information at least one hour before departure (when directed by your supervisor):
  - (1) The identity of the internees.
  - (2) The flight on which the internees will be transported.
  - (3) If an internee is considered dangerous.

**NOTE:** If a internee is classified as maximum custody or dangerous, he will be the only internee allowed on that flight.

- (4) If you are armed.
- c. Assure the air carrier that the internees will have been searched before the flight and that you have adequate restraining devices to secure the internees.
- d. Search the internees before the move.
- e. Sign a DD Form 2708 for each internee you escort outside the internment facility.
- f. Place restraining devices on the internees according to the briefing instructions.
- g. Transport the internees to the aircraft according to the briefing instructions.
- h. Keep the internees out of the public view as much as possible.

**NOTE:** If a delay occurs or if you must wait for connecting flights, ask an airline representative or the terminal manager for a waiting room or area away from the main terminal.

- i. Board the internees before the other passengers board (when possible).
- j. Turn your weapons over to the aircraft commander.

**NOTE:** The aircraft commander will maintain custody of the weapons while you are onboard the aircraft.

- k. Select seats to the rear of the aircraft, when possible, but ensure that the seats are not located in a lounge area or next to or directly across from an aircraft exit.

**CAUTION:** DO NOT SECURE INTERNEES TO ANY PORTION OF THE AIRCRAFT. FOLLOW AIRLINE POLICIES AND DIRECTIVES ON THE USE OF RESTRAINTS WHILE ON BOARD THE AIRCRAFT.

### Performance Steps

- l. Ensure that there is always a guard between an internee and the aisle.
- m. Ensure that the internees remain seated at all times, with the exception of using the latrine.
- n. Allow only one internee at a time to go to the latrine.
  - (1) Escort each internee to the latrine.
  - (2) Search the latrine for items that could be used as weapons before allowing the internee to enter.
  - (3) Do not allow the internee to lock the door. Hold the door handle or place your foot between the door and the door jam.
  - (4) Remain outside the door of the latrine until the internee comes out.
  - (5) Escort the internee back to his seat.

- o. Do not drink intoxicating beverages or allow the internees to do so.

**NOTE: If a hijacking attempt occurs, do not take action unless requested to do so by the aircraft commander (on a commercial, military, or charter flight).**

- p. When meals are served, account for the eating utensils.
- q. Allow internees to smoke (if the airline permits) only when seated and under your supervision.
- r. Exit the plane after all disembarking passengers have left the aircraft and you have obtained your weapon from the aircraft commander.

- 3. Escort internees on a military or charter aircraft carrier.

**NOTE: Twenty-four hours before the flight, the chief of internee services will coordinate with the air carrier representative regarding the transfer of the internees. He will provide the carrier with a list containing the name, rank, and SSN of each internee and escort guard and any other information that could possibly affect the security of the move.**

- a. Search each internee before the move.
- b. Place restraining devices on the internee, as required.
- c. Sign a DD Form 2708 for each internee you escort outside the internment facility.
- d. Transport the internees to the airport or aircraft according to the briefing instructions.
- e. Turn over all weapons to the aircraft commander.

**NOTE: The aircraft commander will maintain custody of the weapons while you are onboard the aircraft.**

- f. Inspect the aircraft before boarding. Remove and secure all equipment or gear that could be used as a weapon (if possible).
- g. Request, if possible, a separate latrine for the internees. Remove the door lock and all loose items that could be used as weapons, and secure the items in an appropriate area.
- h. Request that box lunches be prepared that do not require eating utensils.
- i. Develop and implement a seating plan that allows for maximum surveillance of the internees.
- j. Instruct the internees that the areas approaching the flight deck and the crew compartment are off limits.
- k. Ensure that the internees always remain in their seats, with the exception of using the latrine.

**NOTE: When on board a military or chartered aircraft, ensure that dangerous, escape risk, and maximum-custody internees are escorted at all times. Allow other internees (one at a time) to move to the latrine without escort but keep them under constant surveillance.**

- l. Allow internees to smoke (if the airline permits) only when they are seated and under your supervision.
- m. Exit the plane after all disembarking passengers have left the aircraft and you have obtained your weapon from the aircraft commander.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide the soldier with the items listed in the conditions

**Brief Soldier:** Tell the soldier to complete the appropriate steps to escort an internee by aircraft while maintaining custody and control of the internee and observing all safety precautions.

### Performance Measures

- 1. Attend the mission briefing and obtained all available information.

GO    NO GO

—       —

**Performance Measures**

- 2. Escorted internees on a commercial aircraft.
- 3. Escorted internees on a military or charter aircraft carrier.

<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
AR 190-47  
DD FORM 2708

**Related**  
FM 3-19.40

Subject Area 20: Main Gate/Sally Port Procedures

**Control Vehicle Entry To and Exit From an Internment Facility**

**191-381-1304**

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to control vehicle traffic at a sally port. You are given keys, a vehicle, a driver, tools, a personnel register, a vehicle register, visitor badges, a facility standing operating procedure (SOP), and an escort guard.

**Standards:** Control vehicle entry and exit from a internment facility according to the performance steps and local SOP.

**Performance Steps**

1. Identify the driver of the vehicle by looking at his driver's license or identification card.
2. Ask the driver the reason the vehicle is required inside the facility.
  - a. Check the work order if the driver is entering to do maintenance work. Determine if the vehicle is needed in the facility to complete the maintenance.
  - b. Check with the supervisor if you are unable to determine if the vehicle is needed. Do not allow the vehicle to enter if it is not needed.
3. Process personnel into the facility (refer to Task 191-381-1306).
4. Ensure that the vehicle register is prepared correctly. Ensure that the register contains—
  - a. The driver's name.
  - b. The vehicle sticker or license plate number.
  - c. The type of vehicle.
  - d. The date and time of entrance and exit.
  - e. A completed remarks section.

**NOTE:** The remarks section should contain information such as the destination of the vehicle inside the facility.

5. Search the vehicle.
  - a. Direct the driver to get out of the vehicle and accompany you while you search the vehicle.
  - b. Have the driver open all doors and compartments inside and outside the vehicle. Search the interior of the vehicle, in the following sequence:
    - (1) Behind and under the seats.
    - (2) Under the dashboard.
    - (3) In the glove and tool compartments.
    - (4) Above the sun visors.
  - c. Use an improvised mirror device to check places that are difficult to see. Search the exterior of the vehicle, in the following sequence:
    - (1) The left front fender well and behind the wheel.
    - (2) Under the front bumper and behind and underneath the grill.
    - (3) The underside of the hood.
    - (4) Behind the radiator and around the engine.
    - (5) The right front fender well and behind the wheel.
    - (6) Underneath the right side of the body, back to and including the right rear fender well and behind the wheel.
    - (7) Inside all cargo areas, including the trunk.
    - (8) Underneath and behind the rear bumper.
    - (9) The left rear fender well and behind the wheel.
    - (10) Underneath the left side of the body, back to the left front fender well.
    - (11) The top of the vehicle.

**Performance Steps**

6. Inventory the contents of the vehicle. Make a complete list of all items, including emergency tools such as a tire iron.
7. Request an escort for the vehicle and its occupants from the shift internment supervisor before allowing them to proceed.
8. Search and inventory the vehicle before it exits the facility (according to step 5).
  - a. Compare the inventory with the one made when the vehicle entered the facility. Ensure that the driver did not leave any unauthorized items inside the facility.
  - b. Ensure that the driver has written authorization to remove anything from the facility.
  - c. Notify your supervisor if the inventory does not match the items in the vehicle.
9. Process personnel out of the internment facility (refer to Task 191-381-1306).
10. Record the vehicle departure time on the vehicle register.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a vehicle and a simulated sally port. Create several scenarios involving the introduction of contraband and escape attempts. Have additional soldiers role-play as the driver and an internee. Brief the role-players on the scenario and tell them that they must obey all directives.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to control entry and exit from an internment facility by following the proper steps and local SOPs without compromising the security of the facility.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Identified the driver of the vehicle by looking at his driver's license or identification card.	—	—
2. Asked the driver the reason the vehicle was required inside the facility.	—	—
3. Processed personnel into the facility.	—	—
4. Ensured that the vehicle register was prepared correctly.	—	—
5. Searched the vehicle.	—	—
6. Inventoried the contents of the vehicle.	—	—
7. Requested an escort for the vehicle and its occupants before allowing them to proceed.	—	—
8. Searched and inventoried the vehicle before it exited the facility.	—	—
9. Processed personnel out of the internment facility.	—	—
10. Recorded the vehicle departure time on the vehicle register.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References****Required****Related**

AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

## Control Packages and Materials at a Main Gate or Sally Port

191-381-1305

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to control packages and materials at a main gate or sally port. You are given lockers, a personnel register, inventory forms, and the facility standing operating procedure (SOP).

**Standards:** Perform the appropriate steps to prevent contraband from being taken into the facility and to prevent facility property and unauthorized items from being taken out of the facility.

### Performance Steps

1. Check all packages brought into the facility.
  - a. Ensure the following if the item is not needed inside the facility and there are lockers at the main gate or sally port:
    - (1) Ensure that the person secures the item in a locker.
    - (2) Ensure that the person signs for the locker key on the personnel register.
  - b. Perform the following if the item is not needed in the facility and there are no lockers available:
    - (1) Examine the contents of the package.
    - (2) Ask the individual if he would like to return the item to his vehicle (if the vehicle is not going to be taken into the facility) or notify your supervisor or a designated representative of the correctional officer and obtain instructions for securing the property.
  - c. Examine and inventory the contents if the item needs to be taken into the facility. Inventory all items, to include tool boxes, that are taken into the facility using a locally produced form. Keep the inventory sheet available so you can check it again when the items are brought back out of the facility.
    - (1) Obtain all information according to the requirements of the inventory form.
    - (2) Describe the items in writing if they cannot be identified by name.
    - (3) Ensure that the name of the person who prepares the inventory is printed on the form.
2. Ensure that no items are removed from the facility without permission.
  - a. Stop anyone who attempts to remove an item from the facility and ask to see their authorization. Ensure that—
    - (1) The authorization includes the date, time, and place and a description of the item being removed.
    - (2) The authorization is signed by the internment officer or his designated representative.
    - (3) The supervisor is called if the person does not have authorization.
  - b. Inventory all property, including packages and tool boxes, that is being taken out of the facility. Compare the items to the inventory form that was made when the person entered the facility and make sure everything is accounted for.

**NOTE: Tools or items left inside the facility in the prisoner billeting area could be used by the internees in an escape attempt.**

- c. Make a note on your personnel register of any item that you allowed to be removed from the facility. See Task 191-381-1306.
3. Return any item that was stored at the main gate or sally port when the individual departs the facility.
  - a. Perform the following if the property was kept in a locker:
    - (1) Ensure that the individual removes the property from the locker and returns the key to you.
    - (2) Annotate on the personnel register that the key was returned.
  - b. Perform the following if a locker was not available:
    - (1) Return the property to the owner.
    - (2) Obtain a receipt from the individual showing that the property was returned to him.

**NOTE: The local SOP will indicate the receipt form to use.**

4. Notify the supervisor if anyone refuses to cooperate or if the two inventories do not match.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a sally port or a simulated main gate or sally port area, lockers, a personnel register, inventory forms, and various materials and packages. Have additional soldiers role-play the part of persons entering and exiting the facility. Tell role-players what actions they are to take.

**Brief soldier:** Read the task conditions and standards to the soldier being evaluated.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Checked all packages brought into the facility.	_____	_____
2. Ensured that no items were removed from the facility without permission.	_____	_____
3. Returned any item that was stored at the main gate or sally port when the individual departed the facility.	_____	_____
4. Notified the supervisor if anyone refused to cooperate or if the two inventories did not match.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

<b>References</b>	<b>Related</b>
<b>Required</b>	AR 190-47
	FM 3-19.40

## Control Personnel Entry to and Exit From an Internment Facility

191-381-1306

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to control personnel at a main gate or sally port. You are given the facility standing operating procedure (SOP), a personnel register, badges (if applicable), visitor's identification (ID), prepared Department of Defense (DD) Forms 2707 and 2708, and lockers or storage areas.

**Standards:** Ensure that only authorized personnel enter and exit the facility. Prevent contraband from being taken into the facility and ensure that only authorized items are taken out of the facility according to the facility SOP.

### Performance Steps

1. Verify the badges of all internment staff members before allowing them to enter or exit the facility. Notify the supervisor if any of the individuals attempting to enter or exit the facility does not have a badge.
2. Check that all internees who enter or exit the facility are searched according to the facility SOP.
3. Verify that DD Forms 2708 are correct when internees attempt to exit the facility. See Task 191-381-1326.
4. Check DD Forms 2707 for completeness and accuracy for all new internees. See Task 191-381-1325.
5. Process nonstaff members into the facility.
  - a. Identify each person by checking his ID or his driver's license.
  - b. Ensure the personnel register is completed for all visitors who enter or exit the facility. As a minimum, the form must contain the following:
    - (1) The date and time in and out of the facility.
    - (2) The visitor's printed name, grade, unit address, or home address.
    - (3) The visitor's signature
    - (4) The name of the internee or section of the facility to be visited.
    - (5) The reason for the visit.
    - (6) The badge number (if badges are used).
    - (7) The number of the key to the locker if a locker is used.
    - (8) The guard's initials.
  - c. Issue visitors an ID badge, if applicable, and note the badge number on the personnel register.
  - d. Check a visitor's handbag and parcels according to the SOP. Store all items not needed by the person entering the facility. See Task 191-381-1305.
  - e. Scan visitors visually for:
    - (1) Bulges under the clothing that may be weapons or other contraband.
    - (2) Proper attire as stated in the SOP.
  - f. Request escorts from the shift internee supervisor.
  - g. Follow the same procedures as in step 5(a) through (f) for groups of visitors, in addition to the following:
    - (1) Take a head count of the group and give it to the escort guard.
    - (2) Note the head count at the main gate or sally port for ready reference.
6. Require departing personnel and visitors to—
  - a. Complete the time out block of the personnel register.
  - b. Turn in all badges (if issued).
  - c. Obtain items stored in locker, if applicable.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a simulated internment facility entry area. Create several scenarios involving personnel and internees entering and exiting the facility. Have additional soldiers role-



play the part of internees, soldiers, and civilians entering and leaving the facility. Use prepared DD Forms 2707 and 2708 for internee role-players. Tell role-players the actions they are to take.

Brief soldier: Tell the soldier to ensure that only authorized personnel enter and exit the facility, prevent contraband from being taken into the facility, and ensure that only authorized items are taken out of the facility according to the facility SOP.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Verified the badges of all internment staff members before allowing them to enter or exit the facility. Notified the supervisor if any of the individuals attempting to enter or exit the facility did not have a badge.	—	—
2. Checked that all internees who entered or exited the facility were searched according to the facility SOP.	—	—
3. Verified that DD Forms 2708 were correct when internees attempted to exit the facility.	—	—
4. Checked DD Forms 2707 for completeness and accuracy for all new internees.	—	—
5. Processed nonstaff members into the facility.	—	—
6. Required departing personnel and visitors to—	—	—
a. Complete the time out block of the personnel register.		
b. Turn in all badges (if issued).		
c. Obtain items stored in locker, if applicable.		

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

#### References

##### Required

DD FORM 2707  
DD FORM 2708

##### Related

AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

Subject Area 21: Custody and Control

**Maintain Accountability of Silverware During Mealtimes**

**191-381-1315**

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to maintain accountability of silverware. You are given a dining facility, assisting internment personnel, a secured container, and a facility blotter.

**Standards:** Account for all the silverware before and after internee meals and secure the silverware in a locked container when not in use.

**Performance Steps**

1. Count each knife, fork, and spoon before the internees come into the dining facility. Write down the count on a piece of paper, and keep it to compare with the final count.
2. Position yourself at the silverware issue point to ensure maximum observation of the internees when they pick up their silverware.
3. Control the issue and turn in of silverware.
  - a. Ensure that each internee takes only one fork, one knife, and one spoon.
    - (1) Allow internees to return silverware to the guard at the issue point for an exchange if there is an accident and the silverware becomes dirty.
    - (2) Ensure that each internee maintains possession of the silverware that was issued to him throughout the meal.
    - (3) Do not allow anyone to remove silverware from the dining area.
  - b. Ensure that each internee turns in all the silverware that was issued (one fork, one knife, and one spoon) at the end of the each meal.
    - (1) Count each internee's silverware as he turns it in.
    - (2) Search internees that did not have all of their silverware to turn in. Direct them to step out of line for the search.

**NOTE: Escort the internee to an appropriate search area if a strip search is necessary.**

- (a) Prepare Department of Defense (DD) Form 2714 if the silverware was found on the prisoner.
  - (b) Stop all activity in the dining area and notify the supervisor and assisting guards to conduct a search for any silverware that was unaccounted for.
4. Count each knife, fork, and spoon after the internees have left the dining facility and the silverware has been washed. Write down the count on a piece of paper.
5. Compare the count made after the meal to the count made before the meal.
  - a. Report the count to the supervisor.
  - b. If the counts were not the same—
    - (1) Count the silverware again and compare the count.
    - (2) Notify the supervisor and begin searching for the missing silverware if the counts are still different.
6. Lock the silverware in a secure container after the inventory.
7. Record the results of the count in the facility blotter.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a simulated dining area with the required materials and equipment. Create scenarios involving missing silverware. Have additional soldiers play the part of internees and assistant guards. Tell the role-players the actions they are to take for a given scenario. Instruct the role-players portraying internees to obey all commands of the guards.

Brief soldier: Tell the soldier to account for all the silverware before and after internee meals and secure the silverware in a locked container when not in use.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Counted each knife, fork, and spoon before the internees came into the dining facility. Wrote down the count on a piece of paper and kept it to compare with the final count.	—	—
2. Positioned himself at the silverware issue point to ensure maximum observation of the internees when they picked up their silverware.	—	—
3. Controlled the issue and turn in of silverware.	—	—
4. Counted each knife, fork and spoon after the internees had left the dining facility and the silverware had been washed. Wrote down the count on a piece of paper.	—	—
5. Compared the count made after the meal to the count made before the meal.	—	—
6. Locked the silverware in a secure container after the inventory.	—	—
7. Recorded the results of the count in the facility blotter.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

References	Related
Required	AR 190-47
	FM 3-19.40

## Restrain an Internee

191-381-1331

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to restrain an internee. You are given a set of restraining straps, a straitjacket, a set of hand irons, a set of leg irons, two medical litters, reinforced duct tape, a belt, a mattress, four assisting corrections personnel, a medic (if required), and access to the facility standing operating procedure (SOP).

**Standards:** Complete all the necessary steps, based on the specific situation, to correctly select and apply the appropriate restraining device while observing all safety procedures.

### Performance Steps

**NOTE:** Check restraining devices before applying them to be sure that they work properly and that they are not worn excessively.

**NOTE:** When it becomes necessary to restrain unruly internees, request medical personnel, if available, to check the internee. However, it is not necessary for medical personnel to check internees who are wearing hand irons and leg irons for escort purposes.

1. Apply hand irons to an internee. Ensure that there is at least one other internment assistant or military policeman present before applying the hand irons if the internee is uncooperative.
  - a. Apply hand irons to an internee with his arms in front.
    - (1) Stand in front of the internee.
    - (2) Direct the internee to extend both arms to the front with the elbows locked and the palms facing each other.
    - (3) Grasp the internee's right hand with your left hand. Use your right hand to put the hand iron on the internee so that the double lock is up and the keyhole is facing you.
    - (4) Move your left hand to the chain and grasp the internee's left hand with your right. Use your left hand to put the hand iron on the internee so that the double lock is up and the keyhole is facing you.
    - (5) Tighten the hand iron. Check each hand iron by inserting your fingertip between the internee's wrist and the hand iron to be sure it is not too tight.
    - (6) Double-lock both hand irons. Check the lock by squeezing the hand irons.
    - (7) Remove the internee's belt if the internee will not cooperate. Pass the belt around the chain and fasten it with the buckle in back of the internee.
  - b. Apply hand irons to an internee with his hands behind him.
    - (1) Stand behind the internee.
    - (2) Direct him to place his left hand behind his back with the palm facing out.
    - (3) Grasp the internee's left hand with your left hand using the handshake method. Apply the hand iron with your right hand so that the double lock is up and the keyhole is facing you.
    - (4) Direct the internee to place his right hand behind his back with the palm facing out.
    - (5) Grasp his right hand with your right hand using the handshake method. Apply the hand irons, with your left hand, with the double lock up and the keyhole facing you.
    - (6) Tighten the hand irons. Check each hand iron by inserting your fingertip between the internee's wrist and the hand iron to ensure that it is not too tight.
    - (7) Double-lock both hand irons.
    - (8) Check the double lock by squeezing the hand irons.
  - c. Apply hand irons to an internee who is sitting.

**NOTE:** You will normally use this method when transporting internees.

- (1) Direct the internee to lean forward and place his arms around his legs so that his hands are under his legs. Tell him to place his palms together.
- (2) Move to the right side of the internee and squat. Grasp his right hand with your left. Apply the hand iron with your right hand and make sure that the keyhole is up with the double lock facing out.

**Performance Steps**

- (3) Grasp the chain with your right hand and reach under the internee's legs with your left hand. Pull his left arm to the right and apply the hand iron.
  - (4) Tighten the hand iron. Check each hand iron by inserting your fingertip between the internee's wrist and the hand iron to be sure it is not too tight.
  - (5) Double-lock both hand irons. Check the lock by squeezing the hand irons.
2. Place leg irons on an internee.
    - a. Stand behind the internee and direct the internee to stand with his feet spread shoulder width apart. Place the internee face down on the floor to apply the leg irons if the internee will not cooperate. Have at least one other internment assistant or a military policeman present. Use the minimum force to control the internee.
    - b. Crouch behind the internee and be sure to keep your balance.
    - c. Grasp one of the internee's ankles.
    - d. Place the leg iron above the ankle so that the keyhole is up and the double lock is facing you.
    - e. Tighten the leg iron without cutting off the internee's circulation.

**NOTE: It may be necessary to turn down the boot tops to make room for the leg irons.**

- f. Grasp the chain between the leg irons to keep control of the internee.
- g. Apply and tighten the other leg iron in the same way.
- h. Check to ensure that the leg irons are not too tight. Double-lock them.
- i. Check the double lock by squeezing the irons.

3. Place restraining straps on a manageable internee.

- a. Approach the front of the internee with caution. Have four assisting internment personnel approach the internee from the sides and the rear.
- b. Immobilize the internee by having the assistants grasp his legs and arms.

**CAUTION: MAKE SURE EACH ASSISTANT KNOWS WHICH ARM OR LEG TO GRASP. THIS WILL KEEP THE INTERNEE FROM HURTING ANYONE.**

- c. Apply wrist cuffs.

- (1) Direct your assistants to extend the internee's arms toward you. Place a wrist cuff on the internee's extended wrist so that the metal cuff loop is on the inside of the internee's wrist. Tighten the cuff to make it secure but not so tight that it cuts off his circulation.
- (2) Close the cuff by placing the cuff loop through the proper slot in the cuff.

**NOTE: Each cuff has three slots in it. Use the slot which is the closest to the degree of tightness you need.**

- (3) Cuff the other wrist the same way.
- (4) Pass the end of the long strap through the cuff loop away from the internee and toward you. This will keep the cuff securely on the internee's wrist.
- (5) Pass the end of the strap through the second cuff loop, toward the internee. Be sure you do not twist the strap.
- (6) Bring both ends of the strap around the internee's waist so the strap encircles the internee and the strap buckle is behind the internee.
- (7) Adjust the strap as much as needed to limit the movement of the internee.
- (8) Lock the buckle and secure the excess strap within the waist strap so that it will not unwrap.

- d. Apply ankle cuffs.

- (1) Place the ankle cuff on the internee with the metal cuff loop facing in. Remove the internee's boot if necessary. Adjust the ankle cuff as you did the wrist cuff.
- (2) Cuff the other ankle and pass the strap up through the loop.
- (3) Pass the short strap down the cuff loop. (The direction of the strap as in 3c(2) and 3c(3) may be reversed.)
- (4) Adjust the short strap to restrict the movement of the internee.

**NOTE: The internee's feet should be about 12 inches apart.**

- (5) Lock the ankle cuff strap as you did the wrist cuff strap. Wrap the excess strap so that it will not unwrap.

4. Place restraining straps on an unmanageable internee.

### Performance Steps

- a. Approach and immobilize the internee as in steps 3a and 3b.
- b. Place the internee face down on the floor.
- c. Apply the wrist cuffs.
  - (1) Direct your assistants to bring the internee's arms behind his back with the palms facing out.
  - (2) Place the cuff on each wrist as in steps 3c(1) through 3c(3), but you must put the metal cuff loop on the outside of the internee's wrist.
- d. Cuff each ankle as in step 3d.
- e. Secure the internee using either the single-strap or the two-strap method.
  - (1) The single-strap method.
    - (a) Have your assistants bend the internee's legs so that his feet are near his buttocks.
    - (b) Pass the long strap through one ankle loop and through the wrist loop for the same side.
    - (c) Pass the long strap through the remaining wrist loop and down through the remaining ankle loop.
    - (d) Adjust the strap to the desired tightness and lock the buckle.
  - (2) The two-strap method. Use this method if there is a danger of injuring the internee or if the internee might injure himself if you use the single strap method.
    - (a) Perform steps 4a through 4d.
    - (b) Pass the long strap through both wrist cuffs and around the internee's waist.
    - (c) Adjust the strap to the desired tightness and lock the buckle.
    - (d) Have assistants bend the internee's legs so that his feet are near his buttocks.
    - (e) Pass the short strap down through one ankle loop and up through the other loop. (The direction may be reversed.)
    - (f) Pass the ends of the short strap around the long strap between the internee's hands. Adjust the tightness so that the internee cannot move, but do not cut off his circulation.
    - (g) Lock the buckle on the short strap.

**CAUTION: AVOID INJURING THE INTERNEE. BE CAREFUL THAT YOU DO NOT USE TOO MUCH FORCE OR PULL THE STRAP TO TIGHT.**

**NOTE: Check an internee who is restrained with restraining straps every 15 minutes.**

5. Place a straitjacket on an internee.
  - a. Approach the internee from the front using extreme caution. Have four assistants approach the internee from the sides and rear.

**NOTE: You may have to modify the approach to fit the situation.**

- b. Direct each of the assistants to grasp and hold one of the internee's arms while you put the jacket on the internee.

**NOTE: Direct the assistants to use the least amount of force necessary to control the internee.**

- c. Slide the internee's arms into the jacket sleeves. Bring the collar close around the internee's neck.
- d. Move behind the internee and buckle the four horizontal straps from top to bottom. Make sure the lower vertical buckle in the back is underneath the last horizontal strap.
- e. Move to the front of the internee, grasp the jacket sleeves in front of his hands, and pull firmly on the sleeves.
- f. Bring his right arm across his torso and pass the strap through the loop under his left arm.
- g. Tell one assistant to hold the sleeve securely.
- h. Bring the internee's left arm across his torso, over his right arm, and then underneath his right upper arm to interlock his arms.
- i. Pass the end of the left arm sleeve through the loop under his right arm and direct an assistant to hold it securely.
- j. Buckle the sleeves in the back.
- k. Pull down firmly on the bottom edge of the jacket. Then, reach through the internee's legs and pull the crotch strap through the internee's legs (front to back).
- l. Buckle the strap firmly in the rear but not so tightly that the internee is uncomfortable.

**Performance Steps**

**CAUTION: CHECK INTERNEES WHO ARE IN DISCIPLINARY SEGREGATION AND RESTRAINED WITH A STRAITJACKET EVERY 30 MINUTES. CHECK SUICIDE RISK INTERNEES WHO ARE RESTRAINED WITH A STRAITJACKET EVERY 15 MINUTES.**

6. Restrain an internee using double litters.

**NOTE: If possible, video the entire procedure from the initial briefing of the team to the actual restraining of the internee.**

**CAUTION: THIS IS A SHORT-DURATION RESTRAINT PROCEDURE TO PREVENT AN INTERNEE FROM INJURING HIMSELF OR OTHERS. IT SHOULD NOT BE USED FOR OVER A 3 HOUR PERIOD EXCEPT IN EMERGENCY CASES THAT REQUIRE IMMEDIATE RESTRAINT. A MEDIC SHOULD ALWAYS BE PRESENT UNTIL THE INTERNEE IS RESTRAINED AND CHECKED FOR INJURY.**

- a. Place a straitjacket on the internee. Place leg restraints on the internee and tie the restraints to the end of the litter.
- b. Place the internee on the litter. Place a second litter on top of him, carrying side down, while holding him in place.
- c. Bind the litters together using reinforced duct tape. Be careful not to tape the skin of the internee.

**CAUTION: DO NOT USE AN EXCESSIVE AMOUNT OF TAPE AND DO NOT BIND THE INTERNEE TOO TIGHTLY.**

- d. Place the litter on top of a mattress with the internee face down and with his head turned to the side.

**CAUTION: BE SURE THE INTERNEE IS FACE DOWN. THIS WILL HELP PREVENT CHOKING IF THE INTERNEE VOMITS OR HAS A SEIZURE.**

- e. Examine the internee to ensure that he is able to breathe comfortably and that he is not positioned where he can be injured.
- f. Carry the internee face down if it is necessary to move him.
- g. Observe the internee constantly and be alert for the hazards of restraints such as the following:
  - (1) The straitjacket or litters rubbing the internee's skin.
  - (2) Violent movements by the internee.
  - (3) Seizures.
  - (4) Trauma.
  - (5) Indications of nerve damage. (This may be visible or the internee may complain.)
  - (6) Breathing difficulties such as that caused by vomit, sputum, or blood.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a suitable training environment and have additional soldiers role-play the part of internees to be restrained. Tell role-players what actions they are to take.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to complete all necessary steps, based on the specific situation, to correctly select and apply the appropriate restraining device while observing all safety procedures.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Applied hand irons to an internee.	_____	_____
2. Placed leg irons on an internee.	_____	_____
3. Placed restraining straps on a manageable internee.	_____	_____
4. Placed restraining straps on an unmanageable internee.	_____	_____
5. Placed a straitjacket on an internee.	_____	_____
6. Restrained an internee using double litters.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

STP 19-95C1-SM

**References  
Required**

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40



## Control Internee Movement Within an Internment Facility

191-381-1332

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to control internee movement. You are given a radio and/or telephone, a pen, and intrafacility passes, if applicable.

**Standards:** Maintain control of the internees when escorting them to areas within the facility, process facility passes, and control the movement of an internee who has been issued an intrafacility pass.

### Performance Steps

**NOTE:** Allow only authorized persons such as the facility commander, the chaplain, internee' counselors, a medical officer or his representative, official visitors, engineers, workmen, and assigned internees to enter or exit a cellblock. Follow the facility standing operating procedure (SOP) when escorting facility personnel or official visitors.

1. Escort an internee within the facility.
  - a. Coordinate the movement with the senior cellblock guard.
  - b. Check that the internee is in the proper uniform.
  - c. Position yourself behind and slightly to the right or left of the internee and out of his reach.
  - d. Escort the internee directly to the assigned appointment.
  - e. Move the internee in the least amount of time possible.
  - f. Do not allow the internee to loiter or speak with others.
  - g. Do not allow anyone to move between you and the internee.
  - h. Stay with the internee at all times during the escort.
  - i. Return the internee to his cell or other location as directed by your supervisor.
2. Escort a group of internees within the facility.
  - a. Coordinate the move with the senior cellblock guard.
  - b. Ensure each internee is in the proper uniform.
  - c. Form internees into files or columns as required based on the construction of the facility and the number of internees.
  - d. Walk behind and slightly to the right or left of the internees and out of their reach.
  - e. Post assistant internment personnel on the flanks and out of reach of the internees if there are assisting personnel. Never allow anyone to pass between the guards and the internees or through the group of internees.

**NOTE:** The number of guards used to escort a group of internees will be dictated by the local facility SOP.

- f. Maintain a position where you can see the entire formation. Be especially alert at corners and blind spots.
  - g. March the formation to and from the destination without permitting talk or horseplay among the internees.
3. Notify the supervisor when internees are returned to cellblocks.
4. Process internee passes.
  - a. Check passes to ensure that the internee is where he is supposed to be and to ensure that he is not overdue at his destination.
  - b. Enter, in ink, the time and place where you check the pass, and your name and rank each time—
    - (1) An internee is released from a point in the facility.
    - (2) An internee is allowed through a gate or door outside his quarters or work area.
    - (3) An internee is received at a point.
  - c. Collect used passes when an internee returns to the starting point.
  - d. Turn in all used passes to the supervisor at the end of the shift.
  - e. Ask the supervisor when you are in doubt about whether an internee should be allowed in or out of a cellblock.

### Performance Steps

- f. Notify the supervisor when there are problems.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Create multiple scenarios where the soldier will be required to maintain control of the internees when escorting them to areas within the facility, process facility passes, and control the movement of a internee who has been issued an intrafacility pass.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to maintain control of the internees when escorting them to areas within the facility, process facility passes, and control the movement of an internee who has been issued an intrafacility pass.

### Performance Measures

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Escorted an internee within the facility.	_____	_____
2. Escorted a group of internees within the facility.	_____	_____
3. Notified the supervisor when internees are returned to cellblocks.	_____	_____
4. Processed internee passes.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

### References

#### Required

#### Related

AR 190-47

FM 3-19.40

**Frisk an Internee**  
**191-381-1333**

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to frisk an internee. You are given a facility rule book and blank Department of Defense (DD) Forms 2713 and 2714.

**Standards:** Frisk an internee according to the task performance steps. Seize any contraband found and turn it in to the supervisor and complete a DD Form 2713 or DD Form 2714, if applicable.

**Performance Steps**

**NOTE: Soldiers will not search a member of the opposite sex, nor conduct the search in view of members of the opposite sex or in view of visitors of either sex.**

1. Stand directly behind the internee approximately one step back.
2. Direct the internee to put his jacket and anything he may be carrying on the ground next to his right foot. Search each item thoroughly.

3. Position the internee. Direct him to—
  - a. Stand erect with his feet approximately shoulder width apart.

**NOTE: You may have the internee unlace his boots and turn the tops down.**

- b. Roll down his sleeves.
  - c. Remove his headgear and place everything from his pockets into his headgear.
  - d. Place his headgear in the palm of his right hand.
  - e. Hold his arms straight out to the side at shoulder height, palms up, and fingers spread.
4. Search a male internee. Use the crunching method, grabbing the material, pulling it away from the skin, and squeezing.
  - a. Take the headgear from the internee.
  - b. Direct the internee to look over his shoulder so he can see his headgear while it is searched.
  - c. Search his headgear and its contents.
    - (1) Bend the seams of the headgear before crushing because razor blades and similar devices may be hidden in the seams.
    - (2) Crush the material in your hand.
    - (3) Place the headgear and its contents next to the internee's right foot after you have checked them.
    - (4) Direct the internee to turn his head to the front.
  - d. Direct the internee to run his fingers through his hair using the brushing method.
  - e. Mentally divide the internee's body in half lengthwise. Search one side of the body in the following order:
    - (1) The collar and neck. Bend the material before crushing to detect razor blades or similar objects.
    - (2) The arm. Search from shoulder to fingertips.
      - (a) Direct internee to spread his fingers.
      - (b) Look at the palm and between the fingers.
      - (c) Direct the internee to turn his palm down.
      - (d) Check the back of his hand.
      - (e) Check his armpit.
    - (3) Upper body (back, side, and chest) from shoulder to waist.
      - (a) Check pockets and pocket flaps, seams, buttons, and buttonholes closely. Do not put your hands into the internee's pocket as it may contain sharp items.
      - (b) Direct the internee to empty the pocket if an item is detected in it, unless you suspect a weapon that can be used against you. Notify the supervisor in that event.
    - (4) Waist and waistband.
      - (a) Check from the front to the middle of the back.
      - (b) Check between the waist and waistband and between the waistband and belt.

### Performance Steps

- (5) Lower body, crotch, and buttocks.
    - (a) Crouch rather than bend when searching the lower half of internee's body.
    - (b) Check the trouser fly and zipper, pockets, and seams.
  - (6) Shoe.
    - (a) Carefully place fingers inside the top edge of the boot or shoe and feel for evidence of contraband.
    - (b) Check the outside of the boot using the crushing method.
    - (c) Direct the internee to lift the foot behind him.
    - (d) Hold the ankle with one hand and check the heel and sole of the boot with your free hand making sure the heel and sole are not loose.
    - (e) Direct the internee to lower his foot.
  - f. Repeat steps 4e(1) through 4e(6) to search the other side of the internee.
  - g. Seize any contraband that is found during the search and immediately turn it in to the supervisor after the search.
5. Search a female internee. Repeat steps 4e through 4f except when searching the following:
    - a. Upper body, check:
      - (1) The middle of the bra (between the cups).
      - (2) Around the breasts.
      - (3) Below the bra.
      - (4) Between the body and the back strap.
    - b. Check all folds or pleats in the skirt while searching the lower body when the internee is wearing a skirt.
  6. Prepare DD Form 2713 or DD Form 2714, if necessary.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a suitable training environment and blank DD Forms 2713 and 2714. Have other soldiers role-play the part of internees. Give the role-players some contraband items to secure on their body. Tell the role-players what actions they are to take.

**Brief soldier:** Frisk an internee according to the task performance steps. Seize any contraband found, turn it in to the supervisor, and complete a DD Form 2713 or DD Form 2714, if applicable.

### Performance Measures

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Stood directly behind the internee approximately one step back.	___	___
2. Directed the internee to put his jacket and anything he may be carrying on the ground next to his right foot.	___	___
3. Positioned the internee.	___	___
4. Searched a male internee.	___	___
5. Searched a female internee.	___	___
6. Prepared DD Form 2713 or DD Form 2714, if necessary.	___	___

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

### References

**Required**  
DD FORM 2713  
DD FORM 2714

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

### Strip-Search an Internee

191-381-1334

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to strip-search an internee. In a suitable (private) area, you are given a flashlight, a witness who is of the same sex as the searcher and the internee, and an available medical officer.

**Standards:** Search all of the internee's clothing as he disrobes, visually examine the internee's entire body. Locate and confiscate any contraband. Call for medical personnel to extract items that are suspected to be in body cavities.

#### Performance Steps

**NOTE:** There will never be members of the opposite sex present during a strip search.

1. Select an appropriate area for the search.
  - a. Ensure that there are no objects in the area that can be used as weapons.
  - b. Ensure that the area is private.

2. Ensure that there is a witness in the search area.

**NOTE:** The witness must be the same sex as the internee and the searcher.

3. Strip-search a male internee.
  - a. Direct the internee to remove all his clothing.
  - b. Search all his clothing as the internee disrobes.
  - c. Direct him to stand erect, facing you, with his feet about 2 feet apart.
  - d. Direct him to extend his arms out to the sides at shoulder level, with the palms up and the fingers spread.
  - e. Direct him to bend slightly forward.
  - f. Search the top of his head.
    - (1) Direct the internee to run his fingers through his hair while you observe.
    - (2) Direct him to remove his wig or hairpiece if he is wearing one. Look for contraband.
    - (3) Direct the internee to stand erect and to extend his arms out to his side at shoulder level with his palms up and fingers spread after his hair is searched.
  - g. Examine all parts of internee's body visually in the following order:
    - (1) Direct the internee to tilt his head slightly at an angle to the point where the inside of the nose, mouth, and ears can be viewed.

**NOTE:** Use a flashlight, if necessary, so that you can see inside the body cavities. Examine all body cavities visually, but do not touch the areas either to search or to remove items. If you observe something located inside the body cavities, request a medical officer to search those areas. If the internee is wearing a bandage, ask him to remove it or request that a medical officer check it.

- (a) Direct the intern to remove his dentures if he wears removable dentures.
    - (b) Notify the supervisor if the internee refuses or becomes unruly.
  - (2) Look at his arms.
    - (a) Begin at the fingertips and then look between his fingers.
    - (b) Have the internee slightly rotate his arms so the bend of the arms and the elbows can be seen.
  - (3) Have him lift his arms so that the armpit area can be examined.
  - (4) Look at the front of the internee from the neck to the waist.
  - (5) Examine the penis visually.
    - (a) Direct the internee to hold back the skin if he is uncircumcised.
    - (b) Direct him to lift the penis and scrotum so that the underneath can be seen.
  - (6) Direct the internee to return to the original position (see step 3c).
  - (7) Look at the front of both legs.
  - (8) Direct the internee to rock backward slightly. Look at and between his toes.
  - (9) Direct him to turn around.

**Performance Steps**

- (10) Look at his neck and behind his ears.
- (11) Look at his back and down to his waist.
- (12) Direct the internee to bend forward at the waist and to spread the buttocks. Examine the anus visually and then allow the internee to stand up.
- (13) Look at the back of his legs, paying particular attention to the bend of the knees.
- (14) Direct him to place his hands against a wall to support himself and to lift one foot at a time. Look at the soles of his feet.
- (15) Direct a newly confined internee to shower and shave, if necessary, and dress.

**NOTE: When conducting a monthly strip search of all internees at a large facility, you normally do not require the internees to shower and shave. Check the facility standing operating procedure (SOP) for guidance.**

- 4. Strip-search a female internee. Perform steps 1 through 4. Omit 3g(5) and add the following:
  - a. Direct the internee to lift her breasts if you cannot observe underneath them.
  - b. Instruct her to straddle a toilet and remove the sanitary napkin or tampon, if she is menstruating.

**NOTE: Provide the internee a fresh sanitary napkin or tampon after the area is visually examined. The internee may be allowed to wear her underpants, except during steps 4b and 4c, if she uses sanitary napkins and is experiencing a heavy menstrual flow.**

- c. Check the vaginal area visually. Have the internee spread the skin and then squat with her feet approximately 2 feet apart.

**NOTE: This will allow any items of weight or size to fall out.**

- 5. Report anything unusual or questionable, such as signs of disease or infection, needle marks, contraband, cuts, or bruises to your supervisor.

**NOTE: There will always be an escort guard present while conducting a strip search of a new internee. Give all contraband to the escort so that it can be returned to the internee's unit. If the search is a routine search of internees already at the facility, turn in all contraband to your supervisor.**

**NOTE: According to Army Regulation (AR) 190-47, each facility commander has the authority to decide what constitutes contraband at that facility. The term "contraband" in the corrections military occupational specialty (MOS) includes anything the internee is not allowed to have, such as an excessive amount of cigarettes.**

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: You may evaluate this task as a written test or you may have other soldiers play the part of internees and witnesses. If role-players are used, direct them to wear swimwear. Prepare an oral or written evaluation for the body areas underneath the swimwear.

**Brief Soldier:** If a search is conducted for the evaluation, tell the soldier being evaluated that he will perform all steps except those pertaining to the body areas beneath the swimwear.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Selected an appropriate area for the search.	_____	_____
2. Ensured that there was a witness in the search area.	_____	_____
3. Strip-searched a male internee.	_____	_____
4. Strip-searched a female internee.	_____	_____
5. Reported anything unusual or questionable, such as signs of disease or infection, needle marks, contraband, cuts, or bruises to your supervisor.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References  
Required**

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

## Control Internee Movement in a Dining Facility

191-381-1335

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to control internee movement. You are given a dining area and blank Department of Defense (DD) Forms 2713 and 2714.

**Standards:** Maintain custody and control of internees in a dining area. Control their entry, exit, and movement within the dining area. Search the dining area before the internees arrive.

### Performance Steps

**NOTE:** During meals, individual internment personnel may be required to perform all the steps of this task. However, in some facilities, there may be several internment personnel and each one will be assigned specific duties such as searching the internees or the dining area or issuing silverware. These assignments may be rotated from meal to meal. The primary aspects which impact on the performance of this task are: (1) the number of internees, (2) the layout of the dining area, (3) the local standing operating procedure (SOP), and (4) the number of guards.

1. Search the dining area before internees arrive.
  - a. Look for any items that the internees may be able to pick up such as drugs and weapons.
  - b. Remove all unauthorized items from the dining area.
  - c. Notify the supervisor of the search results.
  - d. Prepare DD Form 2713 detailing any suspicious items found.
2. Control internee entry into the dining area.
  - a. Take a position by the entrance of the dining area. Other noncommissioned officers (NCOs) will assume positions that ensure there is maximum observation of the internees.
  - b. Check the internees' uniforms before allowing them to enter the dining area.
    - (1) Check that each internee is in the proper uniform before allowing him access to the dining area.
    - (2) Make on the spot corrections for minor uniform violations according to the SOP.
    - (3) Do the following if the violation cannot be corrected on the spot:
      - (a) Direct the internee to step out of the line.
      - (b) Have the internee escorted to his cellblock to correct the violation, and then back to the dining area.
      - (c) Prepare DD Form 2713 or DD Form 2714, as applicable.
  - c. Do not allow internees to enter the dining area if there are no seats available or if the traffic flow is congested. Ask another NCO to let you know when to allow the internees to enter if you cannot observe the eating area from where you are stationed.
  - d. Inform the internees of the traffic plan.
3. Control internee movement within the dining area.
  - a. Observe internees to make sure each one moved through the serving line, picked up the silverware (see Task 191-381-1315), and was seated according to the traffic flow plan.
  - b. Take action to break up congestion if internee traffic became heavy in any area.

**NOTE:** Likely places for congestion the areas near milk or soda machines, the salad or condiment area, and the silverware issue and turn-in point.

  - c. Ensure that the aisles are not blocked.

4. Maintain order during the meal.
  - a. Allow normal table conversation between internees, but do not allow loud talking, whistling, horseplay, or talking with internees at another table.
  - b. Ensure that internees do not pass or conceal food or silverware.
  - c. Try to determine the reason if an internee refuses to eat (he may be upset or ill). Prepare DD Form 2713 after the meal is completed.
  - d. Direct large groups of internees to move to the silverware and tray turn-in points in groups or by table or sections according to the facility SOP.



**Performance Steps**

- e. Allow internees to move individually if the population is small. Do not allow them to leave the table without your permission.
- 5. Control internee exit from the dining area.
  - a. Frisk each internee as he departs the dining area.
  - b. Confiscate any contraband found on a internee.
  - c. Notify your supervisor.
  - d. Prepare DD Form 2713 or DD Form 2714, as applicable.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Create various scenarios that require the guards to react. Provide the soldier with blank DD Forms 2713 and 2714. Have other soldiers play the role of internees. Tell the role-players the actions they are to take. Instruct them to obey the commands of the soldier being evaluated.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to search the dining area before the internees arrive and maintain custody and control of internees in a dining area by controlling their entry, exit, and movement within the dining area.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Searched the dining area before internees arrive.	_____	_____
2. Controlled internee entry into the dining area.	_____	_____
3. Controlled internee movement within the dining area.	_____	_____
4. Maintained order during the meal.	_____	_____
5. Controlled internee exit from the dining area.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

Required	Related
DD FORM 2713	AR 190-47
DD FORM 2714	FM 3-19.40

## Account for Internees

191-381-1336

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to conduct an internee head count, roll call, or bed check. You are given a cellblock area, the internee roster, the internee manning board, the facility standing operating procedure (SOP), and a flashlight.

**Standards:** Account for all the general population and close confinement prisoners by conducting head counts, roll calls, and bed checks.

### Performance Steps

1. Conduct a facility head count.

**NOTE:** Head counts will be conducted (as a minimum) immediately on the return of all internees from work details and at noonday formations according to the facility SOP. The facility commander or your supervisor may direct head counts at other times in addition to the minimum requirements.

- a. Obtain the internee roster from the shift internment supervisor.
- b. Place a check mark on the internee roster beside the name of each internee who has been excused from the head count.
- c. Conduct a head count of the general internee population in an outside area, if weather permits.
  - (1) Ensure that you have enough guards to control the internees. Tell the shift internment supervisor if you think you will need more guards.
  - (2) Command the internees to "Fall in."
    - (a) Form internees into a military formation.
    - (b) Form one or more ranks, depending on the number of internees.
    - (c) Form them by cellblocks or by internee status, like platoons.
  - (3) Count the internees and write down the number present.
  - (4) Conduct the head count indoors in inclement weather.
    - (a) Tell internees to stand by their assigned bunks.
    - (b) Give the command, "Attention."
    - (c) Count the internees.
- d. Conduct a head count of internees in close confinement.
  - (1) Tell the senior cellblock guard that you are conducting a facility head count. Ask him to escort you through the close-confinement area or to assign an escort to you.
  - (2) Count each internee in close confinement and write down the number present.
- e. Ensure that the count matches the number of confined internees listed on the internee roster.
  - (1) Count the number of internees you have checked on your roster.
  - (2) Add that number to the number of internees you counted in the general population and close confinement.
  - (3) Compare the total to the total number of internees on the roster.
  - (4) Contact the shift internment supervisor if the counts do not match. The supervisor will either conduct, or direct you to conduct, a roll call.
- f. Report the results of the head count to the shift internment supervisor.

2. Conduct a facility roll call.

**NOTE:** As a minimum, conduct roll calls at the morning and evening formations. The facility commander or your supervisor may direct roll calls at other times, in addition to the minimum requirements or the additional requirements listed in your facility SOP.

- a. Obtain the internee roster from the internment shift supervisor and place a check mark on the roster beside the name of each internee who has been excused from the roll call.
- b. Ensure that you have enough guards to control the internees. Tell the shift internment supervisor if you think you will need more guards.
- c. Conduct roll call for the general internee population.
  - (1) Command the internees to "Fall in."
  - (2) Form one or more ranks, depending on the number of internees.

**Performance Steps**

- (3) Form the internees by cellblocks or internee status, like platoons.
- (4) Command the internees to "About face."
- (5) Instruct them to—
  - (a) Remain facing away from you until you call their last name.
  - (b) Execute an "About face" when you call their last name.
  - (c) Answer by calling out their first name and middle initial.
- (6) Call out the last name of each internee on your roster. Look at the internee and ensure that he answers with his first name and middle initial.
- (7) Place a check mark beside the internee's name on the roster when he answers. Have assisting internment personnel make sure the internees answer only to their names. You may also check the photograph, name, social security number (SSN), and/or register number of each internee's badge.
- (8) Conduct the roll call indoors in inclement weather.
  - (a) Tell the internees to stand by their assigned bunks.
  - (b) Give the command, "Attention."
  - (c) Conduct the roll call as in step 2c(4) through 2c(7).
- d. Conduct roll call for internees in close confinement.
  - (1) Tell the senior cellblock guard that you are conducting a facility roll call. The senior guard will escort you through the close-confinement area or assign an escort to you. He will direct the internees to stand facing away from you, to execute an "About face" when their last name is called, and to answer with their first name and middle initial.
  - (2) Stop at each cell in the area and call out the internee's last name. Ensure that he does an "About face" and answers by calling out his first name and middle initial.
  - (3) Have the escort verify the internee's name.
  - (4) Check off the internee's name on the internee roster before you move to the next cell.
- e. Review the internee roster when you have finished both parts of the roll call.
  - (1) Ensure that every name is checked off.
  - (2) Notify the shift internment supervisor immediately if any internee is not accounted for.
- f. Report the results of the facility roll call to the shift internment supervisor so he may record it in the facility blotter.

**3. Conduct a facility bed check.**

**NOTE: As a minimum, bed checks are conducted between taps and midnight and between midnight and reveille. Bed checks will also be conducted at such times as directed by the facility commander or your supervisor, or as directed in the facility SOP.**

- a. Check each assigned bunk in the cellblocks and close-confinement area to ensure that each internee is in bed. Ensure that you actually see skin, not lumps or the shape of a body. Use your flashlight, if necessary.
- b. Verify the number of internees present with the assigned number that is indicated on the internee roster.
- c. Enter the results of your bed check in the facility blotter or report them to your supervisor so that he can record them in the blotter.

**NOTE: The facility SOP will specify the procedure you must follow for recording in the facility blotter.**

**4. Maintain an internee manning board for your cellblock.**

- a. Ensure that each assigned internee's name and cell or bunk assignment is listed on the manning board.
- b. Keep the manning board current by marking it to show where each internee is at all times.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Create scenarios to evaluate this task. Provide a mock cellblock area, the internee roster, the internee manning board, the facility SOP, and a flashlight. Have other soldiers play the role of internees.

Brief soldier: Tell the soldier to account for all the general-population and close-confinement internees by conducting head counts, roll calls, and bed checks.

Performance Measures	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Conducted a facility head count.	_____	_____
2. Conducted a facility roll call.	_____	_____
3. Conducted a facility bed check.	_____	_____
4. Maintained an internee manning board for his cellblock.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

<b>References</b>	<b>Related</b>
<b>Required</b>	AR 190-47
	FM 3-19.40

## Monitor Internee Movement Within an Internment Facility

191-381-1337

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to monitor internee movement. You are given internee escorts and/or intrafacility passes, assistant internment personnel, and the facility standing operating procedure (SOP).

**Standards:** Ensure that custody and control of internees is maintained when internees are escorted within the facility or when intrafacility passes are used.

### Performance Steps

1. Ensure that there are enough guards available to escort the internees.

**NOTE: The facility SOP will dictate the number of guards required for the number of internees to be escorted.**

2. Ensure that the escort guards clear all internee movements with the cellblock guards before the movements take place.
3. Ensure that the guards at the release point log out all internees.
4. Ensure that all internees in close confinement are escorted when moving outside their cellblock area.
5. Ensure that all individual internees in the general prison population are either escorted or have a facility pass when moving within the facility.
6. Ensure that mass or group movements of internees are in formation, orderly, on time, and well supervised.
7. Direct escort guards to watch for unusual activity, such as internees passing contraband, signs of escape attempts, or disturbances in the facility routine.
8. Ensure that groups of two or more internees are escorted even when a pass system is used for individual internees.

**NOTE: A facility may use an intrafacility pass system (passes are locally produced) to let individual internees move without an escort.**

9. Supervise the facility pass system.
  - a. Ensure that the issue of passes is controlled.
    - (1) Ensure that passes are not issued to internees who are in administrative segregation, disciplinary segregation, or maximum custody.
    - (2) Ensure that all requests for passes are completely filled out, submitted in advance, and approved by the facility commander or his designated representative.
    - (3) Ensure that the internment personnel within the facility have an ample supply of passes and that the supply is secured in a locked container or cabinet.
  - b. Ensure that each guard who checks the passes notes on each pass, in ink, the time and place where the pass was checked and his name and rank. This information must be recorded on the pass at the point of issue and each time the internee:
    - (1) Passes through a gate or guarded door outside the internee's immediate quarters or work area.
    - (2) Arrives at a point in the facility.
    - (3) Leaves an assigned area.
  - c. Check to ensure that—
    - (1) All used passes are collected when the internee returns to the starting point.
    - (2) All used passes are turned in to the administrative section for filing at the end of each shift.
    - (3) Used passes are retained for 60 days.

**Performance Steps**

10. Take appropriate action, according to the facility SOP, if an internee using an intrafacility pass fails to report to his destination or does not return to the point of origin in a reasonable amount of time.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Create multiple scenarios were the soldier is required to monitor internee movement within an internment facility. Provide the soldier with role players, internee escorts, and/or intrafacility passes, assistant internment personnel, and the facility SOP.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to ensure that custody and control of internees is maintained when internees are escorted within the facility or when intrafacility passes are used. Ensure that the cellblock guards maintain accountability for all assigned internees.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
1. Ensured that there were enough guards available to escort the internees.	___	___
2. Ensured that the escort guards cleared all internee movements with the cellblock guards before the movements take place.	___	___
3. Ensured that the guards at the release point logged out all internees.	___	___
4. Ensured that all internees in close confinement were escorted when moving outside their cellblock area.	___	___
5. Ensured that all individual internees in the general prison population were either escorted or had a facility pass when moving within the facility.	___	___
6. Ensured mass or group movements of internees were in formation, orderly, on time, and well supervised.	___	___
7. Directed escort guards to watch for unusual activity, such as internees passing contraband, signs of escape attempts, or disturbances in the facility routine.	___	___
8. Ensured that groups of two or more internees were escorted even when a pass system was used for individual internees.	___	___
9. Supervised the facility pass system.	___	___
10. Took appropriate action, according to the facility SOP, if an internee using an intrafacility pass failed to report to his destination or did not return to the point of origin in a reasonable amount of time.	___	___

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**  
**Required**

**Related**  
 AR 190-47  
 FM 3-19.40

### Issue Medication to Internees

191-381-1338

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to issue medication to one or more internees as prescribed. You are given the internee's medications, the internee medication issue registers, medication cabinets and/or dispensary with locks, a pen, Department of Defense (DD) Forms 2713 and 2714.

**Standards:** Issue medication, as prescribed, to each internee identified on the medication register. Complete the medication register without error. Ensure that all medication is secured after dispensing it. Report the completion of the medication call to the shift internment supervisor.

#### Performance Steps

1. Inventory the medication at the beginning of each shift and log it in the medication register.
2. Issue medicine to the general-population internees.
  - a. Check the internee medication issue registers to determine—
    - (1) Who receives the medicine.
    - (2) How much of each medicine to issue.
    - (3) How often to issue the medicine.
  - b. Obtain the medicine from the locked medication cabinets and/or dispensary for those internees who will be given medication during the medication call.

**NOTE: Request the key to the locked cabinet and/or dispensary from the shift internment supervisor. Depending on the size of the facility, the medicine cabinets and/or dispensary may be in a medical clinic or secured to a wall in another area.**

- c. Direct all general-population internees who have prescribed medicine to report to the issue point at the medication call.
  - d. Ensure that the medicine is given to the internee for whom it is prescribed and that the exact quantity is dispensed.
  - e. Watch each internee to ensure that they take the medications correctly. If the medicine is to be—
    - (1) Taken internally, ensure that the internee swallows the medication, such as a pill or cough syrup. Direct the internee to drink water to wash down pills. Direct the internee to open his mouth. Examine the internee's mouth visually to ensure that the medication was swallowed.
    - (2) Used externally, such as an ointment. Squeeze the ointment on the internee's finger and watch to be sure he applies it as directed by the physician.
    - (3) Kept by the internee (this must be directed by a doctor), ensure that the container is marked "may keep in cell" (MKIC). Do not allow the internee to keep excess amounts of any medication without the prescribing doctor's permission. For example, if an internee is issued two bottles of a liquid antacid, he may keep one bottle in his cell. Keep the other bottle in the medication cabinet until the first is used. Always obtain the empty container from the internee before issuing him the next bottle.
  - f. Prepare DD Forms 2713 or 2714 for internees that refuse to take their medication and inform the supervisor.
3. Complete the internee medication issue register each time a medicine is issued. Include—
  - a. The date the medicine is issued.
  - b. The name of the internee who received the medicine.
  - c. The name of the medicine.
  - d. The time, frequency, and amount to issued.
  - e. The amount of medicine remaining in the container after each dosage is issued.
  - f. The signature of internment personnel who issued the medicine.
  - g. The internee's signature (to show that he received the medicine).
  - h. Notations on the register, such as when the last of the medicine is used, that the medication is terminated due to full usage.

**Performance Steps**

4. Dispose of empty medicine containers and unused medication according to the facility standing operating procedure (SOP).
5. Issue medicine to close-confinement internees after the general-population internees are given their medication.
  - a. Obtain the internees' medication registers.
  - b. Remove the medicine for the close-confinement internees from the medicine cabinet and/or dispensary. Lock the cabinet and/or dispensary.
  - c. Take both the registers and the medication to the close-confinement area.
  - d. Issue the medicine as described in performance steps 2a, 2b, and 2d through 2f.
  - e. Complete the internee medication issue register (step 3).
6. Place all unused medicines in the medication cabinet and/or dispensary, and lock the cabinet and/or dispensary.
7. Report to the shift internment supervisor when the medication call is completed. Inform him of any problems that occurred.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Provide a mock medicine cabinet and/or dispensary, a simulated medication register, simulated medicine, and water. Have other soldiers play the part of internees. Instruct the role-players on the actions they are to take.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to issue medication, as prescribed, to each internee identified on the medication register, complete the medication register without error, ensure that all medication is secured after dispensing it, and report the completion of the medication call to the shift internment supervisor.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Inventoried the medication at the beginning of each shift and logged it in the medication register.	—	—
2. Issued medicine to the general-population internees.	—	—
3. Completed the internee medication issue register each time a medicine was issued.	—	—
4. Disposed of empty medicine containers and unused medication according to the facility SOP.	—	—
5. Issued medicine to close-confinement internees after the general-population internees were given their medication.	—	—
6. Placed all unused medicines in the medication cabinet and/or dispensary, and locked the cabinet and/or dispensary.	—	—
7. Reported to the shift internment supervisor when the medication call was completed. Informed him of any problems that occurred.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**  
DD FORM 2713  
DD FORM 2714

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40



**Segregate Internees by Internee Status**  
**191-382-2295**

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to segregate the internees by internee status during inprocessing or for billeting, dining, or work details. You are given the internee's transfer orders, court-martial orders, Department of Defense (DD) Forms 2707 and 2708, and Department of the Army (DA) Form 4430.

**Standards:** Segregate all internees by status during inprocessing and for billeting, dining, and work details.

**Performance Steps**

1. Determine the status of an internee being inprocessed by reviewing the internee's confinement order, result of trial, transfer order, court-martial order, or DD Form 2707. His status will be one of the following:
  - a. Detained. An internee who is in internment waiting for charges to be filed against him, the disposition of those charges, or a trial by court-martial.
  - b. Adjudged. An internee whose sentence has been given in open court, but which the convening authority has not yet approved.
  - c. Sentenced. An internee whose sentence has been ordered into execution.
  - d. Casual. An internee who is in internment waiting for another command or military service to give further instructions on his disposition, or he is waiting to be transferred to another facility, or back to his unit.
2. Segregate internees by status for billeting.
3. Segregate internees by prisoner status for dining.
4. Segregate internees by status for work details.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Create multiple scenarios where the soldier will be required to segregate the internees by internee status during inprocessing or for billeting, dining, or work details. Provide the soldier with the items listed in the conditions.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to segregate all internees by status during inprocessing and for billeting, dining, and work details.

**Performance Measures**

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Determined the status of an internee being inprocessed by reviewing the internee's confinement order, result of trial, transfer order, court-martial order, or DD Form 2707.	___	___
2. Segregated internees by status for billeting.	___	___
3. Segregated internees by prisoner status for dining.	___	___
4. Segregated internees by status for work details.	___	___

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

**References**

**Required**

DA FORM 4430  
DD FORM 2707  
DD FORM 2708

**Related**

AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

STP 19-95C1-SM

**Supervise Work Activities Within an Internment Facility**  
**191-382-2352**

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to supervise work activities. You are given an internee roster, assistant internment personnel, and blank Department of Defense (DD) Forms 2713 and 2714.

**Standards:** Ensure that work is accomplished; custody and control of internees is maintained at all times; and all rules, regulations, and safety precautions are followed at all times.

**Performance Steps**

1. Obtain complete information and instructions about the work detail from the supervisor. The information may include things such as the following:
  - a. What and where the job is.
  - b. Names and status of the internees assigned to the detail.
  - c. The location of the required equipment and materials.
  - d. Information that would assist in assigning the internees to jobs and in maintaining custody and control of the internees.
2. Obtain the needed equipment and materials from the sources the supervisor provides. Check to ensure that the equipment is operational and sign for the equipment, if required.
3. Organize the work detail.
  - a. Learn each internee's name so the name can be associated with the internee's face.
  - b. Separate the internees by internee status.

**NOTE: Do not place a detained (pretrial) internee together with an adjudged or sentenced (post trial) internee on work details.**

- c. Assign duties to each internee, as appropriate, based on his status.
  - (1) Do not assign officer or noncommissioned officer (NCO) internees jobs that are not done by officers or NCOs.
  - (2) Distribute the workload evenly among the internees.
  - (3) Do not give duties that are degrading to internees.
  - (4) Do not assign duties to internees as a method of punishing or harassing an internee.
  - (5) Do not place internees in charge of other internees.
  - (6) Do not allow internees to work where they have access to personnel records, narcotics, arms, ammunition, money, drugs, intoxicants, or keys to the facility.
  - (7) Give internees specific instructions on what they are expected to do.
  - (8) Do not assign internees work that is inherently dangerous.
  - (9) Do not have internees perform work that permits association with persons of the opposite sex unless there is close supervision.
  - (10) Ensure that each internee is in the appropriate uniform. Consider weather conditions and the type of work being done.

4. Issue each internee the equipment and materials he will need to perform his duties.

**CAUTION: MAKE SURE THE INTERNEE IS QUALIFIED TO OPERATE COMPLEX EQUIPMENT BEFORE ASSIGNING DUTIES AND EQUIPMENT.**

5. Maintain accountability and control of the internees.
  - a. Move the internees to and from the work site in a military formation.
  - b. Make periodic head counts of internees on details.
  - c. Conduct a roll call for all discrepancies.
  - d. Give rest breaks as needed. Consider weather conditions, the type of work being done, the progress the internees are making, and when you expect the job to be completed.
  - e. Check each detail at intervals when there is more than one detail to supervise. Ensure that all internees are accounted for and that adequate progress is being made.
6. Watch for and immediately correct safety hazards.

### Performance Steps

7. Conduct a head count when the work detail is complete. Contact the shift internment supervisor if the count does not match the count on the roster.

**NOTE: The supervisor will conduct or direct you to conduct a roll call.**

8. Check equipment to ensure that it is returned in the same condition as when it was issued.

**DANGER: INTERNEES MIGHT USE PARTS FROM THE EQUIPMENT, SUCH AS BLADES, SCREWS, OR SHARP OBJECTS AS WEAPONS. THEY MIGHT ALSO USE THE PARTS TO AID THEM IN AN ESCAPE.**

9. Ensure that all unused materials are turned in.

10. Report all incidents that occur during the detail to the supervisor.

11. Prepare DD Form 2713 or 2714, if required.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Create a scenario with role-players that will require the soldier to supervise work activities within an internment facility. Provide the soldier with the items that are listed in the conditions.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier to ensure that work is accomplished; custody and control of internees is maintained at all time; and all rules, regulations, and safety precautions are followed at all times.

### Performance Measures

	<u>GO</u>	<u>NO GO</u>
1. Obtained complete information and instructions about the work detail from the supervisor.	—	—
2. Obtained the needed equipment and materials from the sources the supervisor provided. Checked to ensure that the equipment was operational and signed for the equipment, if required.	—	—
3. Organized the work detail.	—	—
4. Issued each internee the equipment and materials he needed to perform his duties.	—	—
5. Maintained accountability and control of the internees.	—	—
6. Watched for and immediately corrected safety hazards.	—	—
7. Conducted a head count when work detail was completed. Contacted the shift internment supervisor if the count did not match the count on the roster.	—	—
8. Checked equipment to ensure it was returned in the same condition as when it was issued.	—	—
9. Ensured that all unused materials were turned in.	—	—
10. Reported all incidents that occurred during the detail to the supervisor.	—	—
11. Prepared DD Form 2713 or 2714, if required.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

### References

**Required**  
DD FORM 2713  
DD FORM 2714

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
FM 3-19.40

STP 19-95C1-SM

3 - 443 7824

Subject Area 22: Internment Operations

**Perform Enemy Prisoner of War/Civilian Internee (EPW/CI) Security and Control Activities at an EPW/CI Camp**  
**191-376-4100**

**Conditions:** You have been given an assignment to provide security and control activities at an EPW/CI camp. You are given orders, other guards, an assigned individual weapon, a crew-served weapon, ammunition, communications equipment (for example, a Single-Channel, Ground-to-Air Radio System [SINCGARS] radio and/or TA-312 field telephone), local standing operating procedures (SOPs), and the signal operating instructions (SOI).

**Standards:** Perform security and control activities by preventing unauthorized personnel from entering the camp, preventing captives from escaping, and maintaining captive discipline and control.

**Performance Steps**

**WARNING: WHEN WORKING WITH ENEMY CAPTIVES, OBSERVE ALL SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND ALWAYS BE AWARE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF PERSONAL INJURY.**

1. Enforce discipline and control measures.
  - a. Require that the EPW/CI comply with posted rules, regulations, and announcements. Report captives who refuse or fail to obey an order or regulation.
  - b. Ensure that captives do not—
    - (1) Fraternize or exchange gifts with United States (US) personnel.
    - (2) Establish courts or administer punishment.
    - (3) Display national flags, political emblems, or pictures of political leaders.
    - (4) Gamble.
    - (5) Possess weapons or anything that could be used as a weapon.
    - (6) Possess or consume intoxicating beverages.
  - c. Segregate uncooperative captives according to the local SOP.
2. Observe security precautions.
  - a. Make at least two surprise searches each day.
    - (1) Include the dispensary, the food distribution point, the hospital, and other areas in the enclosure.
    - (2) Look for tunnels, caches of food, clothing, weapons, communication systems, maps, money, or other valuables that might aid in an escape.
  - b. Maintain strict accountability for tools and equipment used by the captives.
    - (1) Check tools and equipment into and out of the compound or enclosure by item and number.
    - (2) Search all captives when they enter or leave an enclosure.
  - c. Prevent food caches by observing the disposition of uneaten rations, both in the camp and on work calls.
  - d. Account for captives by number when conducting roll call formations on both an announced and an unannounced basis. Do this—
    - (1) At least twice each day (morning and evening).
    - (2) Immediately following a mass disturbance, the discovery of a tunnel, or the detection of a hole or break in the perimeter fence.
  - e. Perform random head counts frequently while on work details and when enroute to another facility.
  - f. Inspect identification (ID) bands at random intervals.
    - (1) Ensure that each captive has an ID band that has not been altered.
    - (2) Compare the ID band with an ID card when positive identification is required.
    - (3) Replace ID bands when the internment serial number (ISN) or the name is not legible or the band is weakened because of wear or damage.

**Performance Steps****NOTE: Normally, ID bands will last about six months.**

- g. Examine all perimeter fences daily. Report and immediately investigate any evidence of weakness or damage.
  - 3. Perform as a gate guard.
    - a. Allow only authorized personnel to enter or leave.
    - b. Record incoming and outgoing personnel, vehicles, work details, and equipment.
    - c. Conduct shakedown searches according to the local policy.
    - d. Search all vehicles and containers taken into or out of a compound or enclosure.
    - e. Search all captives as they enter or leave the enclosure.
    - f. Observe and make note of civilians who may be loitering near the gates.
  - 4. Perform as a tower or perimeter guard.
    - a. Prevent escapes. If an escape attempt is from—
      - (1) Outside a fenced enclosure, shout "halt." If the captive does not stop after you have called "halt" at least three times, and there does not seem to be any way to prevent the escape, fire your weapon.
- WARNING: FIRE ONLY TO DISABLE; NOT TO KILL. REFER TO TASK 191-376-5106.**
- (2) Inside a fenced enclosure, do not fire unless the captive is trying to go over, under, or through the fence. Before firing, verify that the captive is actually attempting to escape.
  - b. Patrol perimeters.
    - (1) Increase security by patrolling between guard towers if weather or light failure prevents tower guards from clearly seeing the entire perimeter.
    - (2) Check perimeter fences daily for evidence of wire cutting or weaknesses.
    - (3) Ensure that during darkness—
      - (a) The perimeter is checked for poorly lighted areas.
      - (b) Any broken or burned out bulbs are replaced.
      - (c) Problems are reported to the supervisor.
    - (4) Be alert for escape attempts and report unauthorized or suspicious captive activities.
  - 5. Perform special guard duties (for example, work or escort guards).
    - a. Maintain a reasonable distance between captives during movement and work details.
    - b. Position yourself so that you can easily observe the captives.
    - c. Prohibit the labor detail from mingling with, or coming into close contact with, other work details.
    - d. While captives are working, space breaks so that only one guard at a time is on break.
    - e. Move captives in columns on secondary roads and areas not normally used by military elements.
    - f. Keep an accurate count of captives. Make random counts during work details.
  - 6. Enforce military courtesies.
    - a. Ensure that, regardless of grade, officer EPWs salute higher-ups and the camp commander.
    - b. Ensure that enlisted captives salute all commissioned officers of the US armed forces.
    - c. Ensure that if the US National Anthem, To the Colors, or Retreat is sounded while the captives are outdoors, they face the direction of the music or the colors.
  - 7. Report any of the following to military intelligence (MI):
    - a. Unusual captive activities, especially before holiday celebrations.
    - b. Messages passed at food and supply distribution points, the dispensary, or the hospital.
    - c. Messages passed when captives are on labor details.
    - d. Messages signaled between compounds.
    - e. Information volunteered by captives.
    - f. Suspicious actions of local civilians.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: For training and testing, this task will require a mock EPW/CI enclosure. Additional soldiers will be needed to act as assistant guards and as EPW/CI role players. To evaluate all

performance measures, the soldier must be tested as a tower, perimeter, gate, and special guard (for example work guard or escort guard).

Brief soldier: Tell the soldier being evaluated that he must prevent escapes and maintain discipline and control of the captives. Explain to the role players the actions they are to take.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Enforced discipline and control measures.	_____	_____
2. Observed security precautions.	_____	_____
3. Performed as a gate guard.	_____	_____
4. Performed as a tower or perimeter guard.	_____	_____
5. Performed special guard duties.	_____	_____
6. Enforced military courtesies.	_____	_____
7. Reported enemy activity to MI.	_____	_____

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all steps are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any step is failed (F). If the soldier fails any step, show him how to do it correctly.

References	Related
Required FM 3-19.40	AR 190-8 FM 3-19.4



**Process Authorized and Unauthorized Property Within an Internment Facility**  
**191-381-1288**

**Conditions:** You are given a requirement to process an internee's property. You are given a search area with a table, access to the facility standing operating procedure (SOP), and a newly confined internee.

**Standards:** Segregate and process authorized property from unauthorized property according to the facility SOP.

**Performance Steps**

1. Direct the internee to center himself in front of the search table and assume the parade rest position.
2. Perform the following procedures to remove the internee's property:
  - a. Direct the internee to place all personal items in his headgear.
  - b. Direct the internee to empty his pockets and to remove all personal effects off his person, to include his wallet, eyeglasses, watch, rings, and dog tags. Instruct him to place these items in his headgear.
  - c. Direct the internee to turn his pockets inside out.
3. Separate the authorized and unauthorized items according to the facility SOP.
4. Search for any hidden items.
5. Place items the internee may keep on his person in his headgear and move the headgear to one side of the table where it will be out of the way.
6. Search the duffel bag and its contents.
  - a. Direct the internee to empty his duffel bag onto the search table.
  - b. Separate the contents into authorized and unauthorized items.
7. Notify the supervisor and prepare Department of Defense (DD) Form 2713, according to Task 191-381-1339, if hidden items are found.
8. Direct the internee to place in his duffel bag those items he may keep in his cell.
9. Turn in all contraband and other property that the internee is not allowed to keep in his cell.
  - a. Give the items to the property noncommissioned officer (NCO) or his assistant during normal duty hours.
  - b. Give the items to the shift internment supervisor for safekeeping after normal duty hours, ensuring that the chain of custody is maintained using a Department of the Army (DA) Form 4137. See Task 191-381-1371.
10. Strip-search the internee (Task 191-381-1334).
11. Direct the internee to shower and shave, if necessary.
12. Give the internee the items he is allowed to keep during his internment after he showers. Direct the internee as to which items he may carry on his person and which ones he may keep only in his cell.
13. Notify the supervisor that authorized and unauthorized property has been segregated.

**Evaluation Preparation:** Setup: Select an area to use as a search room. Provide a table and the facility SOP. Have another soldier role-play the role of an internee. Provide a duffel bag containing both authorized and unauthorized items.

**Brief soldier:** Tell the soldier being evaluated that he must correctly segregate and process all authorized and unauthorized property.

<b>Performance Measures</b>	<b><u>GO</u></b>	<b><u>NO GO</u></b>
1. Directed the internee to center himself in front of the search table and assume the parade rest position.	—	—
2. Performed procedure to remove the internee's property.	—	—
3. Separated authorized items from unauthorized items according to the facility SOP.	—	—
4. Searched for any hidden items.	—	—
5. Placed items the internee may keep on his person in his headgear and moved the headgear to one side of the table where it was out of the way.	—	—
6. Searched the duffel bag and its contents.	—	—
7. Notified the supervisor and prepared DD Form 2713 if hidden items were found.	—	—
8. Directed the internee to place in his duffel bag those items he may keep in his cell.	—	—
9. Turned in all contraband and other property that the internee was not allowed to keep in his cell.	—	—
10. Strip-searched the internee.	—	—
11. Directed internee to shower and shave, if necessary.	—	—
12. Gave the internee the items he was allowed to keep during his internment after he showered. Directed the internee as to which items he may carry on his person and which ones he may keep only in his cell.	—	—
13. Notified the supervisor that authorized and unauthorized property had been segregated.	—	—

**Evaluation Guidance:** Score the soldier GO if all measures are passed (P). Score the soldier NO-GO if any measure is failed (F). If the soldier fails any measure, show him how to do it correctly.

#### References

**Required**  
DA FORM 4137  
DD FORM 2713

**Related**  
AR 190-47  
AR 700-84  
FM 3-19.40

## CHAPTER 4

## Duty Position Tasks

Section I. Subject Area Codes				
<b>Skill Levels 2, 3, and 4</b> 1. NBC 2. Combat Techniques 3. Night Vision Devices 4. Weapons-M9 5. Weapons-MK19 6. Weapons-M249 7. Weapons-12 Gauge 8. Urban Operations 9. Vehicle Operations 10. Land Navigation 11. Communications 12. Maneuver and Mobility Support Operations 13. Emergency Procedures 14. Crime Scenes 15. Internment Administration 16. Cellblock Close Confinement Procedures 17. Basic Internment 18. Visitors' Rom Procedures 19. Escort Guard Duties 20. Sally Port Procedures 21. Custody and Control 22. Internment Operations				
Section II. Duty Position Training Requirement				
SL	Duty Position	Subject Areas	Cross Training	Train-Up/Merger
1	Internment Specialist	1-22	All SL 1 soldiers should receive cross-training in the duty position of Internment Specialist.	Consider all soldiers for training as Internment NCO SL 2.
	Key Control Custodian	1-22		
	Military Police Investigator	1-22		
	Internee Work Supervisor	1-22		

Figure 4-1. 95C MOS Training Plan



## APPENDIX A - METRIC CONVERSION CHART

Table A-1. Metric Conversion Chart

US Units	Multiplied By	Equals Metric Units
<b>Length</b>		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.04470	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
<b>Weight</b>		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
Metric Units	Multiplied By	Equals US Units
<b>Length</b>		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
<b>Weight</b>		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds



**GLOSSARY**

<b>%</b>	percent
<b>+</b>	plus
<b>=</b>	equal
<b>1LT</b>	first lieutenant
<b>1SG</b>	first sergeant
<b>AA</b>	avenue of approach; assembly area
<b>AC</b>	active component; assistant commandant; alternating current
<b>ACCP</b>	Army Correspondence Course Program
<b>ACP</b>	allied communication publication
<b>AD</b>	air defense; armored division
<b>ADA</b>	air defense artillery
<b>AIDS</b>	Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome
<b>AJ</b>	antijamming
<b>ALTN</b>	alternate
<b>AMP</b>	amputated; Aircrew Mask Programs
<b>AN</b>	annually
<b>ANCD</b>	automated net control devices
<b>ANCOC</b>	Advanced Noncommissioned Officer Course

STP 19-95C1-SM

**APO**

Army post office

**Apr**

April

**AR**

Army regulation; Army Reserve; armor

**ARNG**

Army National Guard

**ARTEP**

Army Training and Evaluation Program

**ASAC**

apprentice special agent course

**ASL**

authorized stockage list; assistant squad leader

**asst**

assistant

**AT**

antiterrorism; antitank

**ATTN**

attention

**AUG**

August

**auto**

automatic

**AWOL**

absent without leave

**BA**

battery; biannually

**bde**

brigade

**BDU**

battle dress uniform

**BII**

basic-issue items

**BL**

low battery

**bn**



battalion

**BNCOC**

Basic Noncommissioned Officer Course

**BOD**

bore obstruction device

**brig**

brigade

**BW**

bi-weekly; biological warfare

**CAB**

combat aviation battalion; combat aviation brigade

**cal**

caliber

**CAM**

chemical-agent monitor

**CAV**

cavalry

**CBT**

computer-based training; combat; Common Bridge Transporter

**CEO**

communications-electronics officer

**CEWI**

combat electronic warfare and intelligence

**CF**

correlation factor; covering force

**CH**

chaplains

**CI**

civilian internees; command information; criminal investigation; criminal intelligence

**CID**

criminal investigation division

**CLP**

cleaner lubricant preservative

**CM**

centimeter(s)

**CMF**

career management field

STP 19-95C1-SM

**CO**

commissioned officer; carbon monoxide; commanding officer; company

**comm**

commercial; communication

**COMSEC**

communications security

**CONUS**

continental United States

**CP**

command post

**CPM**

career progression model; Critical Path Method; construction project maintenance

**CPT**

captain

**CR**

dibenzoxazepine

**CRC**

camera-ready copy; Crime Record Center

**CRD**

crime record depository

**CS**

combat support; Costa Rica; o-chlorobenzylidene malononitrile; cost sharing; confidential source

**CSC**

command and staff college

**CSM**

command sergeant major

**CT**

Connecticut

**cue**

A word, situation, or other signal for action; an initiating cue is a signal to begin performing a task or task performance step. An internal cue is a signal to go from one element of a task to another. A terminating cue indicates task completion.

**D**

drive; dispenser; day

**DA**

Department of the Army, Denmark; direct action

**DAP**

decontamination apparatus, portable

<b>DC</b>	dental corps; dislocated civilian; District of Columbia; direct current
<b>DD</b>	Department of Defense; day
<b>Dec</b>	December
<b>DIA</b>	Defense Intelligence Agency; diameter
<b>DISCOM</b>	division support command
<b>DIV</b>	division
<b>DIVARTY</b>	division artillery
<b>DOD</b>	Department of Defense
<b>DS2</b>	decontaminating solution number 2
<b>DTG</b>	date-time group
<b>E</b>	east
<b>E1</b>	private 1
<b>E2</b>	private 2
<b>E3</b>	private first class
<b>E4</b>	specialist
<b>E5</b>	sergeant
<b>E6</b>	staff sergeant
<b>E7</b>	sergeant first class
<b>E8</b>	master sergeant/first sergeant

**E9**  
sergeant major; command sergeant major

**EA**  
each; engagement area; electronic attack

**ECCM**  
electronic countercountermeasures

**ECM**  
electronic countermeasures

**EEFI**  
essential elements of friendly information

**elms**  
elements

**EMO**  
electronic media only

**engr**  
engineer

**enl**  
enlisted

**EOC**  
Emergency Operations Center

**EOD**  
explosive ordnance disposal

**EP**  
electronic protection

**EPW**  
enemy prisoner of war

**F**  
frequency; fail; failed; Fahrenheit; full; fully automatic; financial; fire

**FA**  
field artillery

**FBI**  
Federal Bureau of Investigation

**FCM**  
flow cytometer; forced cell move

**FD**  
firing device; fire direction; federal document

**FDC**

fire direction center

**Feb**  
February

**FIST**  
fire support team

**FM**  
field manual; frequency modulated/modulation

**FOV**  
field of view

**FPF**  
final protective fire; final protection fire

**FPO**  
Fleet Post Office

**FSO**  
fire support officer

**Ft**  
feet; fort

**GCM**  
general court-martial

**G-M**  
grid-magnetic

**GMD**  
grease

**grp**  
group

**GS-5**  
general schedule 5

**GSR**  
general support-reinforcing; ground surveillance radar

**GTA**  
graphic training aid

**H&C**  
health and comfort

**HHC**  
headquarters and headquarters company

**HIMS**  
HMMWV Interchangeable Mount System

STP 19-95C1-SM

**HIV**

human immunodeficiency virus

**HMMWV**

high-mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicle

**HQ**

headquarters

**HTD**

highway traffic division

**HTF**

how-to-fight

**IAW**

in accordance with

**ID**

identification; infantry division; indefinite delivery

**IN**

infantry

**inv**

investigator

**IPC**

interpersonal communications

**IR**

internment and resettlement; intelligence requirement; infrared

**IRR**

individual ready reserve

**ISN**

internment serial number

**Jul**

July

**kmph**

kilometers per hour

**KTV**

cryptographic training, SOI

**LAW**

light antitank weapon; lubricating oil

**ldr**

leader

**LIF**

light interference filter; logistics intelligence file

<b>LRA</b>	local reproduction authorized
<b>LSA</b>	lubricating oil, semifluid, automatic weapon; logistics support analysis; lubricant oil
<b>LSAT</b>	lubricating oil
<b>LTC</b>	lieutenant colonel
<b>M .</b>	mud; month
<b>mag</b>	magnum
<b>maint</b>	maintenance
<b>MAJ</b>	major
<b>MANSCEN</b>	United States Army Maneuver Support Center
<b>Mar</b>	March
<b>med</b>	medical; medium
<b>MEDEVAC</b>	medical evacuation
<b>medic</b>	medical aid specialist
<b>METL</b>	mission-essential task list
<b>METT-T</b>	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, and time available (Army); mission, enemy , terrain and weather, troops and support available, and time available (USMC)
<b>METT-TC</b>	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations
<b>mfg</b>	manufacturer
<b>MI</b>	military intelligence; middle initial

STP 19-95C1-SM

**MIJI**

meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion

**MKIC**

may keep in cell

**mm**

millimeter

**MO**

Missouri; monthly; methods of operation/modus operandi

**MOPP**

mission-oriented protective posture

**MOPP4**

mask worn, protective suit, boots, and gloves worn

**mort**

mortar

**MOS**

military occupational specialty; months

**MOUT**

military operations on urbanized terrain

**MP**

military police

**MPH**

miles per hour

**MPR**

military police report

**MSR**

main supply route

**MTP**

mission training plan

**MTR**

motorized; missile tracking radar

**N**

neutral; north; northings; nose lift; number

**NA**

not applicable; nation assistance

**NAVAIDS**

navigational aids

**NBC**

nuclear, biological, and chemical



**NBC 1 report**

Observer's initial report; used by the observing unit to give basic initial and follow-up data about an nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) attack. It is sent by platoons and companies to battalion headquarters or by designated observers to the division NBC center.

**NBCC**

Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Center

**NCO**

noncommissioned officer

**NCOIC**

noncommissioned officer in charge

**NCS**

net control station

**NJP**

nonjudicial punishment

**NMC**

nonmission capable

**no.**

number

**Nov**

November

**NSN**

nonstandard number; national stock number

**o**

degree

**O3**

captain

**OC**

oleoresin capsicum

**ODCSOPS**

Office of the Deputy Chief of Staff for Military Operations

**off**

office

**OIC**

officer in charge

**OPSEC**

operations security

**OSUT**

one-station unit training

**P**

needs practice; pass; passed; barometric pressure; mean radius of curvature; pivot point; park; pedestrian; artificial paving

**pam**

pamphlet

**PAO**

public affairs office(r)

**PD680**

cleaning solvent

**PDF**

principal direction of fire

**PLT**

platoon

**PM**

program manager; provost marshal; performance measures

**PMCS**

preventive-maintenance checks and services

**POL**

petroleum, oils, and lubricants

**QT**

quarterly

**R**

right; religious organization; rock

**RA**

regular Army; resident agency

**RBC**

rifle bore cleaner

**RC**

reserve component

**RCF**

regional corrections facility

**ref**

reference

**retrans**

retransmit

**RFD**

radio frequency direction

**ROI**  
rules of interaction; report of investigation; report of incident

**RPO**  
radiation protection officer

**RTO**  
radio/telephone operator

**S**  
safe; south; semi-automatic; society/public; start; sand

**S&T**  
supply and transport

**S1**  
Adjutant (US Army)

**S2**  
Intelligence Officer (US Army)

**S3**  
Operations and Training Officer (US Army)

**S4**  
Supply Officer (US Army)

**SA**  
special agent; semiannually

**SALUTE**  
size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment

**SC**  
supply catalog; single channel

**SCM**  
summary court-martial

**SCRCNI**  
sealed container received; contents not inventoried

**sct**  
scout

**sec**  
section; second

**Sept**  
September

**SF**  
standard form

**SFC**  
special forces command, sergeant first class

STP 19-95C1-SM

**SGM**

sergeant major

**SGT**

sergeant

**sig**

signal

**SINCGARS**

Single-Channel, Ground-to-Air Radio System

**SJA**

Staff Judge Advocate

**SL**

skill level; squad leader

**SM**

soldier's manual; selected marksman

**SMCT**

soldier's manual of common tasks

**SOI**

signal operating instructions

**SOP**

standing operating procedure

**SPCM**

special court-martial

**SPOTREP**

spot report

**sqd**

squad

**sqdn**

squadron

**SSG**

staff sergeant

**SSN**

social security number

**STANAG**

standardization agreement (NATO)

**STP**

soldier training publication

**sup**

	supply
<b>suppl</b>	supplement
<b>T&amp;E</b>	traversing and elevating
<b>TACP</b>	tactical air control party
<b>TAMMS</b>	The Army Maintenance Management System
<b>TC</b>	technical coordinator; training circular; team chief; tactical commander
<b>TCP</b>	traffic control post
<b>TEK</b>	traffic encryption key
<b>TF</b>	task force; training film
<b>TG</b>	trainer's guide
<b>thru</b>	through
<b>TM</b>	technical manual; team
<b>TOC</b>	tactical operations center
<b>TOW</b>	tube-launched, optically tracked, wire-guided, heavy antitank missile system
<b>trk</b>	truck
<b>TSEC</b>	terminal secondary radar beacon
<b>UCMJ</b>	Uniform Code of Military Justice
<b>UI</b>	unit integration
<b>ULM</b>	unit-level maintenance

STP 19-95C1-SM

**US**

United States

**USA**

United States Army; United States of America

**USACIDC**

United States Army Criminal Investigation Command

**USAMPS**

United States Army Military Police School

**USAPA**

United States Army Publishing Agency

**USAR**

US Army Reserve

**USC**

United States code

**V**

nerve agent; volt; vehicular

**W**

with; west; flooding

**w/**

with

**WK**

weekly

**wps**

weapons

**x**

times; by

**XO**

executive officer

**Y**

significant; limited, all-weather route; year

**ZULU TIME**

Greenwich mean time

## REFERENCES

## Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

**Army Regulations**

AR 190-47	The Army Corrections System. 15 August 1996
AR 195-5	Evidence Procedures. 28 August 1992
AR 55-162	Permits for Oversize, Overweight, or Other Special Military Movements on Public Highways in the United States. 1 January 1979
AR 700-84	Issue and Sale of Personal Clothing. 15 May 1983

**Department of Army Forms**

DA FORM 1132-R	Prisoner's Personal Property List - Personal Deposit Fund. 1 April 1986
DA FORM 1971-7-R	NBC-1 Observers Initial/Followup Report (LRA). 1 October 1992
DA FORM 2404	Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet. 1 April 1979
DA FORM 2408-14	Uncorrected Fault Record. 1 June 1994
DA FORM 2823	Sworn Statement. 1 December 1998
DA FORM 3078	Personal Clothing Request. 1 May 1993
DA FORM 3881	Rights Warning Procedure/Waiver Certificate. 1 November 1989
DA FORM 3955	Change of Address and Directory Card. 1 February 1979
DA FORM 3997	Military Police Desk Blotter. 1 December 1998
DA FORM 4002	Evidence/Property Tag. 1 July 1992
DA FORM 4137	Evidence/Property Custody Document. 1 July 1976
DA FORM 4430	Department of the Army Report of Result of Trial. 1 September 2002

**Department of Army Pamphlets**

DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994
----------------	---

**Department of Defense Publications**

DD FORM 2707	Confinement Order. 1 November 1999
DD FORM 2708	Receipt for Inmate or Detained Person. 1 November 1999
DD FORM 2710	Inmate Background Summary. 1 November 2002
DD FORM 2713	Inmate Observation Report. 1 November 1999
DD FORM 2714	Inmate Disciplinary Report. 1 November 1999
DD FORM 2718	Inmate's Release Order. 1 November 1999
DD FORM 2719	Continuation Sheet. 1 November 1999
DD FORM 499	Prisoner's Mail and Correspondence Record. 1 October 1967
DD FORM 503	Medical Examiner's Report. 1 December 1955
DD FORM 509	Inspection Record of Prisoners in Segregation. 1 July 1970

**Field Manuals**

FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000
FM 21-305	Manual for the Wheeled Vehicle Driver. 27 August 1993
FM 23-27	MK19, 40-MM Grenade Machine Gun, MOD 3. 27 December 1988
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the Airland Battle. 15 October 1990

STP 19-95C1-SM

FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990
FM 24-35	Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI." 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990
FM 3-06.11	Combined Arms Operation in Urban Terrain. 28 February 2002
FM 3-19.40	Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations. 1 August 2001
FM 3-25.26	Map Reading and Land Navigation. 20 July 2001
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992
FM 3-3-1	Nuclear Contamination Avoidance. 9 September 1994
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000
FM 4-01.30	Movement Control. 1 September 2003
FM 55-15	Transportation Reference Data. 27 October 1997
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 7-1	Battle Focused Training. 15 September 2003
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992

**Graphic Training Aids**

GTA 03-06-008	NBC Warning and Reporting System. 1 August 1996
GTA 05-02-013	How to Avoid Getting Lost. 17 October 2001

**Other Product Types**

ACP 125 US SUPPL-1	Communications Instructions Radiotelephone Procedures for Use by United States Ground Forces. 1 October 1985.
FBI FORM 2-182A	Bomb Threat. 20 April 1982
FBI FORM FD 249	Arrest and Institutional Fingerprint Card. 11 May 1999
STANAG 2019	Military Symbols for Land Based Systems - APP-6(A). 18 December 2000
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice.
UNIT SOI	Unit/Unit's Signal Operation Instructions (SOI)

**Soldier Training Publications**

STP 21-1-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 31 August 2003
STP 21-24-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 31 August 2003

**Technical Manuals**

TM 10-8415-220-10	Operator Manual for Joint Service Lightweight Integrated Suit Technology (JSLIST) Chemical Protective Ensemble. 1 September 1998
TM 11-5805-201-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Telephone Sets, TA-312/PT and TA-312A/PT. 1 August 1990
TM 11-5805-262-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone Manual, SB-22/PT and SB-22A/PT (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT). 15 June 1990
TM 11-5820-890-10-1	Operator's Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, ICOM Manpack Radio AN/PRC-119A, AN/VRC-87A, AN/VRC-87C, AN/VRC-88A, AN/VRC-88C, AN/VRC-89A, AN/VRC-90A, AN/VRC-91A, AN/VRC-92A 1 September 1992



TM 11-5820-890-10-3	Operator's Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, Non ICOM Manpack Radio AN/PRC-119, AN/VRC-87, AN/VRC-87D, AN/VRC88, AN/VRC-88D, AN/VRC-89, AN/VRC-90, AN/VRC-91, AN/VRC-92 1 September 1992
TM 11-5820-890-10-8	Operator's Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, ICOM Manpack Radio, AN/PRC-119A, Short Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-87A, Short Range Vehicular Radio with Single Radio Mount AN/VRC-87C, Short Range Vehicular Radio with Dismount ..... 1 December 1998
TM 11-5985-357-13	Operator's, Organizational, and Direct Support Maintenance Manual for Antenna Group, OE-254/GRC. 1 February 1991
TM 3-1040-262-13&P	Operator's, Organizational, and Direct Support Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List): Disperser, Riot Control Agent, Portable: M33A1. 25 September 1978
TM 3-6665-312-12&P	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List for M8A1 Automatic Chemical Agent Alarm.... 17 March 1985
TM 3-6665-331-10	Operator Manual for Chemical Agent Monitor (CAM). 12 June 1992
TM 9-1005-201-10	Operator's Manual for Machine Gun, 5.56mm, M249 w/Equip. 26 July 1991
<b>Training Circulars</b>	
TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988

### Related Publications

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

#### Army Correspondence Course Program Subcourses

IN0606	Landmine Warfare.
IN1002	Small Unit Mine Warfare and Demolition.
IS3007	Electronic Warfare. 1 December 1998
IT0513	Electronic Counter-Countermeasures (ECCM).
OD1009	Maintenance Procedures.
SF0746	Military Handguns and Rifles
SS0411	Troubleshooting and Final Testing of the TA-312/PT Telephone Set.
SS0470	THE CEOI

#### Army Regulations

AR 190-14	Carrying of Firearms and Use of Force for Law Enforcement and Security Duties. 12 March 1993
AR 190-45	Law Enforcement Reporting. 20 October 2000
AR 190-47	The Army Corrections System. 15 August 1996
AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997
AR 195-5	Evidence Procedures. 28 August 1992
AR 210-174	Accounting Procedures for Prisoners' Personal Property and Funds. 17 September 1986

STP 19-95C1-SM

AR 700-84 Issue and Sale of Personal Clothing. 15 May 1983

**Department of Army Forms**

DA FORM 2404 Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet. 1 April 1979

**Department of Army Pamphlets**

DA PAM 738-750 Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

**Department of Army Visual Information Production and Distribution Program**

TF 19-4882 Collective Behavior-Civil Disturbances, PT I - Evol of Disorder and Crowd

**Field Manuals**

FM 17-95 Cavalry Operations. 24 December 1996  
FM 19-10 The Military Police Law and Order Operations. 30 September 1987  
FM 19-15 Civil Disturbances. 25 November 1985  
FM 19-20 Law Enforcement Investigations. 25 November 1985  
FM 19-25 Military Police Traffic Operations. 30 September 1977  
FM 20-32 Mine/Countermining Operations. 29 May 1998  
FM 21-305 Manual for the Wheeled Vehicle Driver. 27 August 1993  
FM 21-60 Visual Signals. 30 September 1987  
FM 23-14 M249 Light Machine Gun in the Automatic Rifle Role. 26 January 1994  
FM 23-27 MK19, 40-MM Grenade Machine Gun, MOD 3. 27 December 1988  
FM 24-18 Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987  
  
FM 3-06.11 Combined Arms Operation in Urban Terrain. 28 February 2002  
FM 3-19.30 Physical Security. 8 January 2001  
FM 3-19.4 Military Police Leaders' Handbook. 4 March 2002  
FM 3-19.40 Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations. 1 August 2001  
FM 3-21.5 Drill and Ceremonies. 7 July 2003  
FM 3-21.71 Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 20 August 2002  
FM 3-22.68 Crew-Served Machine Guns, 5.56-MM and 7.62-MM. 31 January 2003  
FM 3-23.35 Combat Training With Pistols, M9 and M11. 25 June 2003  
FM 3-25.150 Combatives. 18 January 2002  
FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998  
FM 7-7 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985  
FM 7-8 Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992  
FM 90-3 Desert Operations. 24 August 1993

**Graphic Training Aids**

GTA 03-06-004 Chemical Agent Monitor (CAM) User's Guide. 24 July 2000  
GTA 11-03-020 OE254 Antenna Installation (Card). 1 July 1983

**Other Product Types**

CE01 CE01  
CEOI CEOI  
DVC 05-17 Land Mine Training Kit.  
ENG 051-142 Soviet Mine Card.  
KTC 1400D KTC 1400D

TB 43-0129	Safety Requirements for Use of Antenna and Mast Equipment. 15 June 1986
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice.
<b>Technical Manuals</b>	
TM 11-5820-890-10-8	Operator's Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, ICOM Manpack Radio, AN/PRC-119A, Short Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-87A, Short Range Vehicular Radio with Single Radio Mount AN/VRC-87C, Short Range Vehicular Radio with Dismount ..... 1 December 1998
TM 11-5855-213-10	Operator's Manual for Night Vision Sight, Individual Served Weapon, AN/PVS-4. 1 February 1993
TM 3-4230-214-12&P	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List for Decontaminating Apparatus: Portable, 14 Liter, M13 and Decontaminating Apparatus: Portable, 14 Liter, M13 (Practice) (4230-01-345-5172). 15 August 1992
TM 3-4230-216-10	Operator's Manual for Decontamination Kit, Skin: M285A1 (NSN 4230-01-101-3984) and Training Aid, Skin Decontaminating: M58A1 (6910-01-101-1768). 17 May 1985
TM 3-4240-279-10	Operator's Manual for Mask, Chemical-Biological: Field, ABC-M17 Small; Medium; Large; M17A1 Small; Medium; Large; M17A2 X-Small; Small; Medium; Large. 5 October 1987
TM 3-6665-307-10	Operator's Manual for Chemical Agent Detector Kit: M256 and M256A1. 1 September 1985
TM 9-1005-201-10	Operator's Manual for Machine Gun, 5.56mm, M249 w/Equip. 26 July 1991
TM 9-1005-303-14	Operator's, Organizational, Direct Support and General Support Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List): Shotgun, 12 Gage, Winchester Model 1200, Riot Type, 20-Inch Barrel W/E. 29 July 1968
TM 9-1005-317-10	Operator's Manual for Pistol, Semi-Automatic, 9-MM M9. 31 July 1985
TM 9-1010-230-10	Operator's Manual for Machine Gun, 40-MM, MK 19, MOD 3. 30 May 2001
<b>Training Circulars</b>	
TC 24-21	Tactical Multichannel Radio Communications Techniques. 3 October 1988

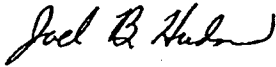


STP 19-95C1-SM  
XXXX 2003

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

JOHN M. KEANE  
General, United States Army  
Acting Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON  
Administrative Assistant to the  
Secretary of the Army

DISTRIBUTION:

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve:* Not to be distributed. EMO.

**STP 19-95C24-SM-TG**

**MOS 95C, Corrections  
Specialist, Skill Levels 2/3/4,  
Soldier's Manual and  
Trainer's Guide**

**DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION:** Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

**DESTRUCTION NOTICE:** Follow the procedures in AR 380-5, chapter IX.

**HEADQUARTERS  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

7857